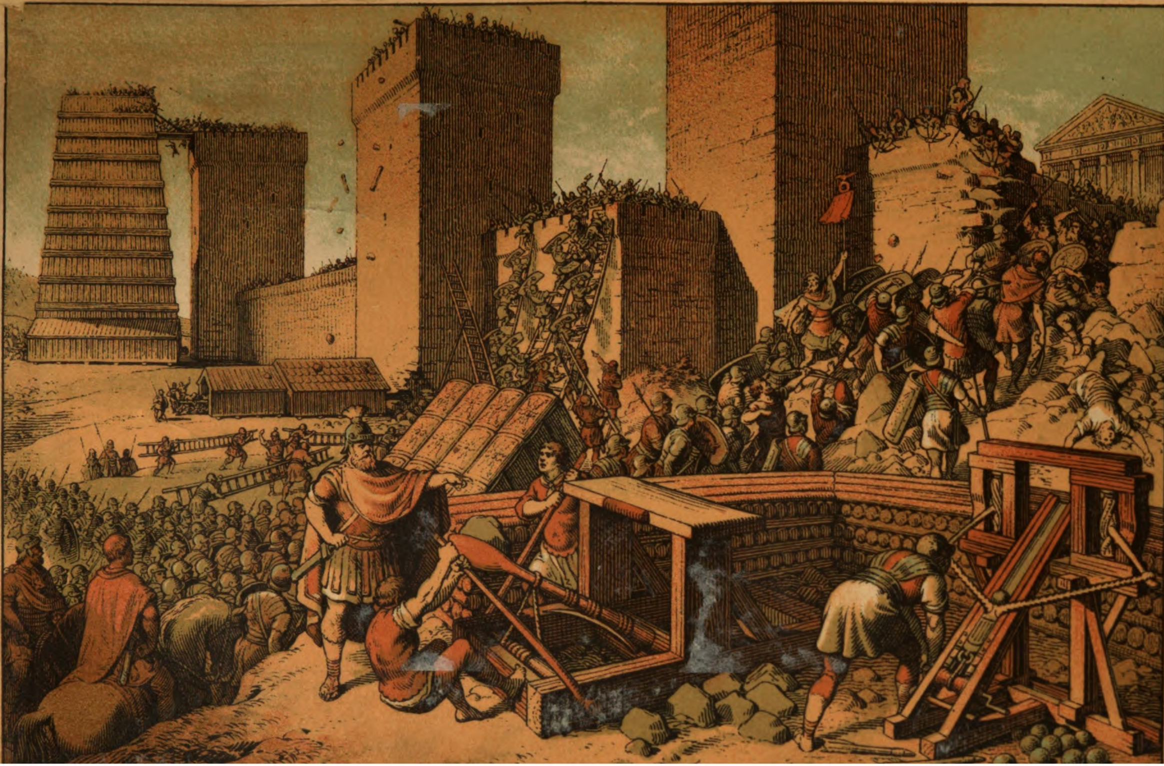


C. Iuli Caesaris De bello gallico libri VII.

Julius Caesar, Francis Willey Kelsey

PLATE I.

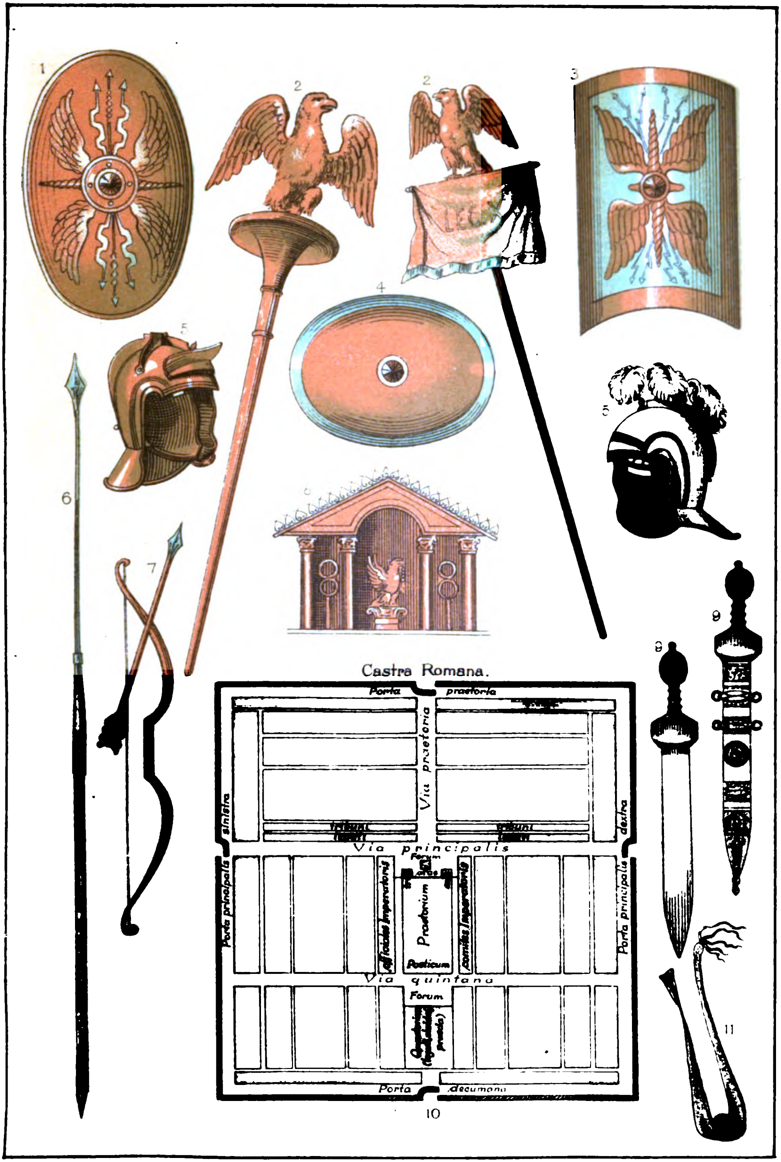




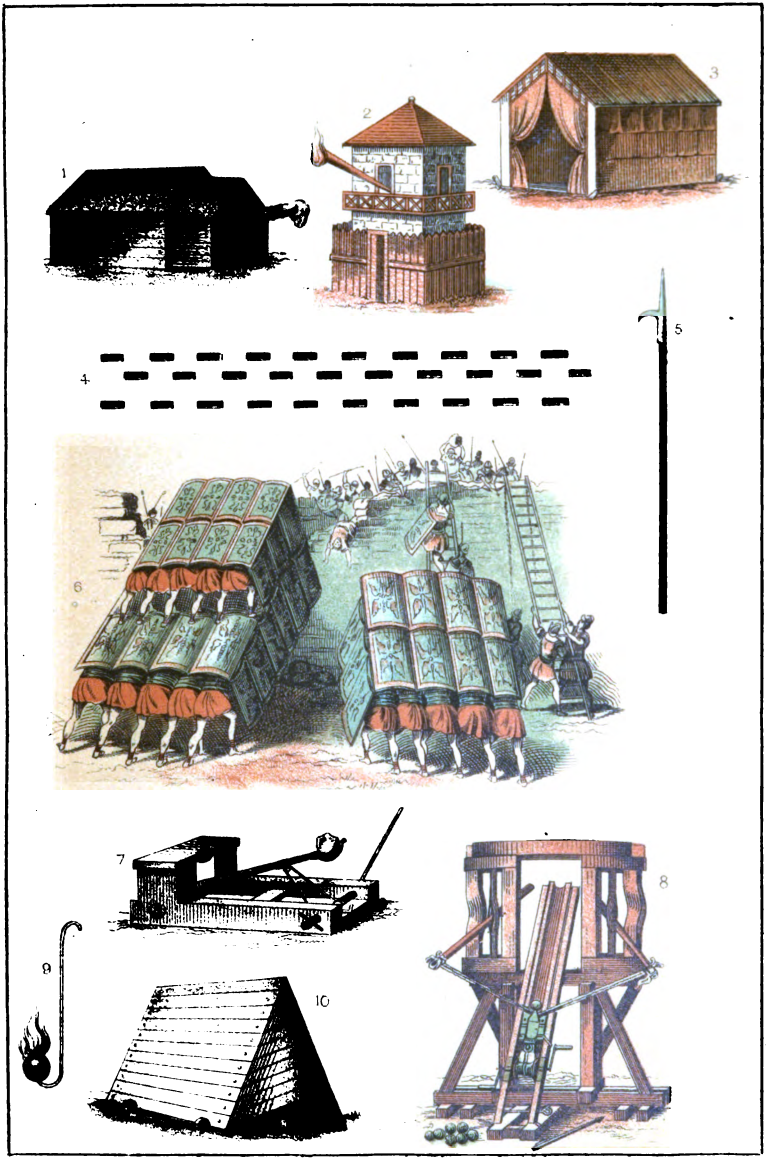
1. *Imperator.* 2. *Legatus.* 3. *Centurio.* 4. *Lictor.* 5. *Signiferi.*
6. *Bucinator.* 7. *Tubicen.* 8. *Vexillum.* 9. *Aquila.*



1. Slinger. *2. Light-armed Soldier.* *3. Soldier of the Legion.*
4. Sarcinae. *5. Cavalry.*

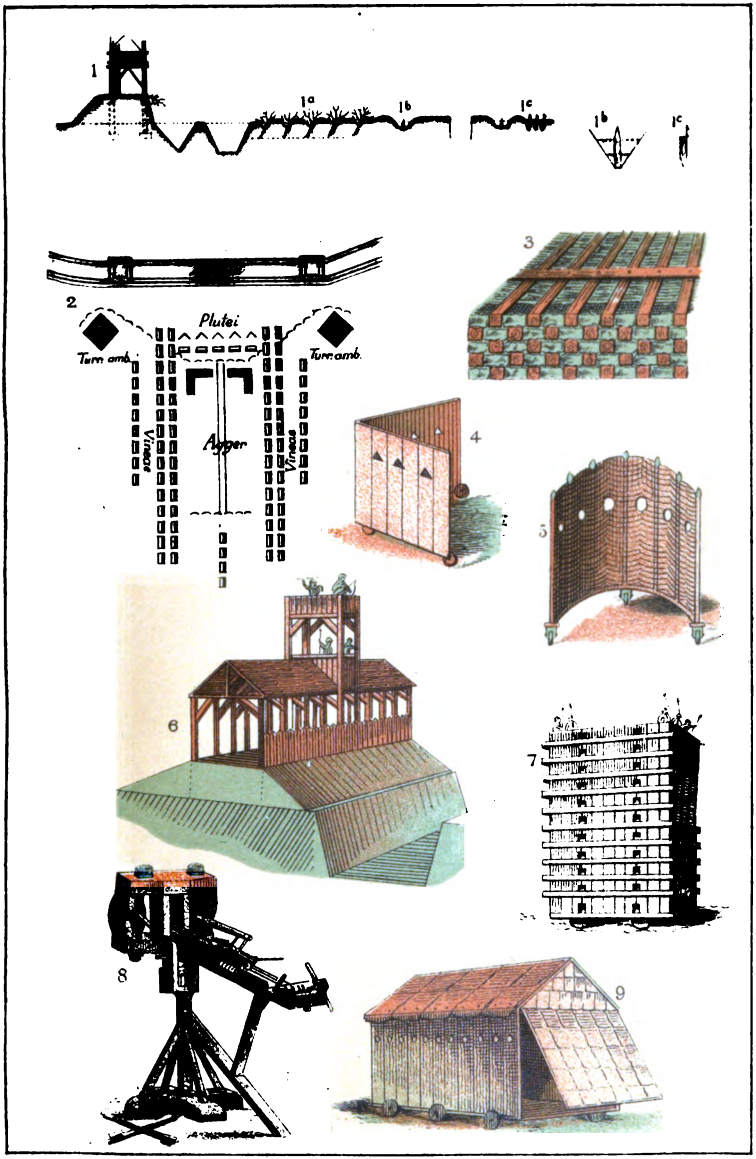


1. Clipeus. *2, 2. Eagle of the Legion.* *3. Scutum.* *4. Parma.*
5, 5. Cassis. *6. Pilum* *7. Arcus, Sagitta.* *8. Sacellum.*
9, 9. Gladius. *10. Roman Camp.* *11. Funda.*



1. Testudo arietaria. 2. Fire-signal Tower. 3. Tabernaculum.
4. Order of Battle. 5. Falx Muralis. 6. Testudo. 7. Onager. 8. Ballista.
9. Glans fusili ex Argilla. 10. Testudo fossaria.

Plate VI



1. Caesar's Intrenchments before Alesia (VII. 70): 1a, Cippi, 1b, Lilia, 1c, Stimuli. 2. Agger, etc. 3. Gallic City Wall. 4, 5. Plutei. 6. Vallum with Passage-ways and Towers. 7. Turris Ambulatoria. 8. Catapulta. 9. Vinea.

C. IULI CAESARIS

DE BELLO GALLICO LIBRI VII

CAESAR'S GALLIC WAR

WITH

An Introduction, Notes, and Vocabulary

BY

FRANCIS W. KELSEY, M.A.
LAKE FOREST UNIVERSITY

SECOND EDITION

Boston
JOHN ALLYN, PUBLISHER
1888

University Press:
John Wilson and Son, Cambridge.

CONTENTS.

ILLUSTRATIONS AND PLANS.

The top of the Plans lies toward the north.

NOTE TO TEACHERS.

THIS edition of Caesar's Gallic War aims not only to aid the pupil in gaining a practical mastery of the Latin, but also to bring before him such explanatory and illustrative matter as shall awaken his interest in what he reads, lead to an intelligent grasp of the subject-matter, and help him to form a right method of classical study. In college class-rooms the masterpieces of ancient literature are no longer read merely as exercises in parsing and translation; the same methods of broad and sympathetic, yet exact and thorough study which characterize college work may be also successfully applied in preparatory and high-school classes.

The Introduction to this edition contains a brief estimate of Caesar's life-work, viewed in its several aspects, a condensed discussion of the Roman Art of War in Caesar's time, an outline of the geography of the regions most frequently referred to in the Gallic War, and a general view of the contents of the seven books. The latter part of the Introduction may perhaps be taken up with profit in regular lessons, along with the reading of the text. There is always an advantage in the *systematic* study of a topic or group of topics.

In the Text consonant **i** has been printed instead of **j**. That **j** should be discarded from the texts of classical Latin writers is generally admitted; and most editions of all except Caesar have only **i**. It is far better for the pupil, however, to become accustomed to the correct orthography at the very beginning of his Latin reading, than to run the risk of being confused later on in his course by the change from **j** to **i**. The spelling of Gallic proper names has in several cases been altered, to accord with

the results of recent investigations; for the researches of Glück, Desjardins, and others have shown that many of the current spellings are wrong.

In reading Caesar with classes many teachers prefer to take up Book II. before Book I. With this in view the Notes to Book II. have been made both full and elementary, with numerous grammatical references. But for those who do not follow this plan, the Notes to Book I. also have been made full, especially on passages of indirect discourse. To guide the pupil, the editor has ventured to make some suggestions on the study of Caesar, which will be found on page 377. The importance of adopting a correct method of work at the outset cannot be overestimated. It is hoped that the table of Idioms and Phrases will be found helpful in training to both flexibility and accuracy of translation. The pupil should commit to memory the more common idioms. The Vocabulary has been prepared, as the Introduction and Notes, with the design of giving to the pupil such assistance as he needs and such knowledge as he can digest.

The teacher will find the interest and profit of the study of Caesar enhanced if, instead of reading the first four books in course, he make for his classes a series of selections, covering the best portions of the whole work. As such a course of reading, the following selections are suggested: —

BOOK I., the Title and Chapter 1.
II., entire.
I., Chap. 2–54, The Wars with the Helvetii and with Ariovistus.
III., Chap. 7–16, The Campaign against the Veneti.
IV., Chap. 1–36, The Expeditions to Germany and to Britain.
V., Chap. 1–23, The Second Expedition to Britain.
VI., Chap. 12–24, The Customs of the Gauls and Germans contrasted.
VII., Chap. 69–90, The Siege of Alesia.

The works to which the editor has been most indebted in the preparation of this book are the editions of Caesar by Nipperdey, Holder, Kraner, Doberenz (Dinter), Peskett, Moberly, and Long; Rüstow's Heerwesen und Kriegführung, Wagler's Hilfsbüchlein, Napoleon's Jules César, and the Géographie Historique of Desjardins. The Plates are after those of Rheinhard, with some modifications. The Plans are based upon those in Napoleon's

Atlas, with various changes introduced from Rüstow, von Goeler, von Kampen, and Rheinhard. Special mention of indebtedness is due to Eichert's Vollständiges Wörterbuch zu den Schriftwerken des C. J. Cäsar, and to Creak's Complete Dictionary of Caesar's Gallic War. A selected list of works useful for the special study of Caesar is given on page 379.

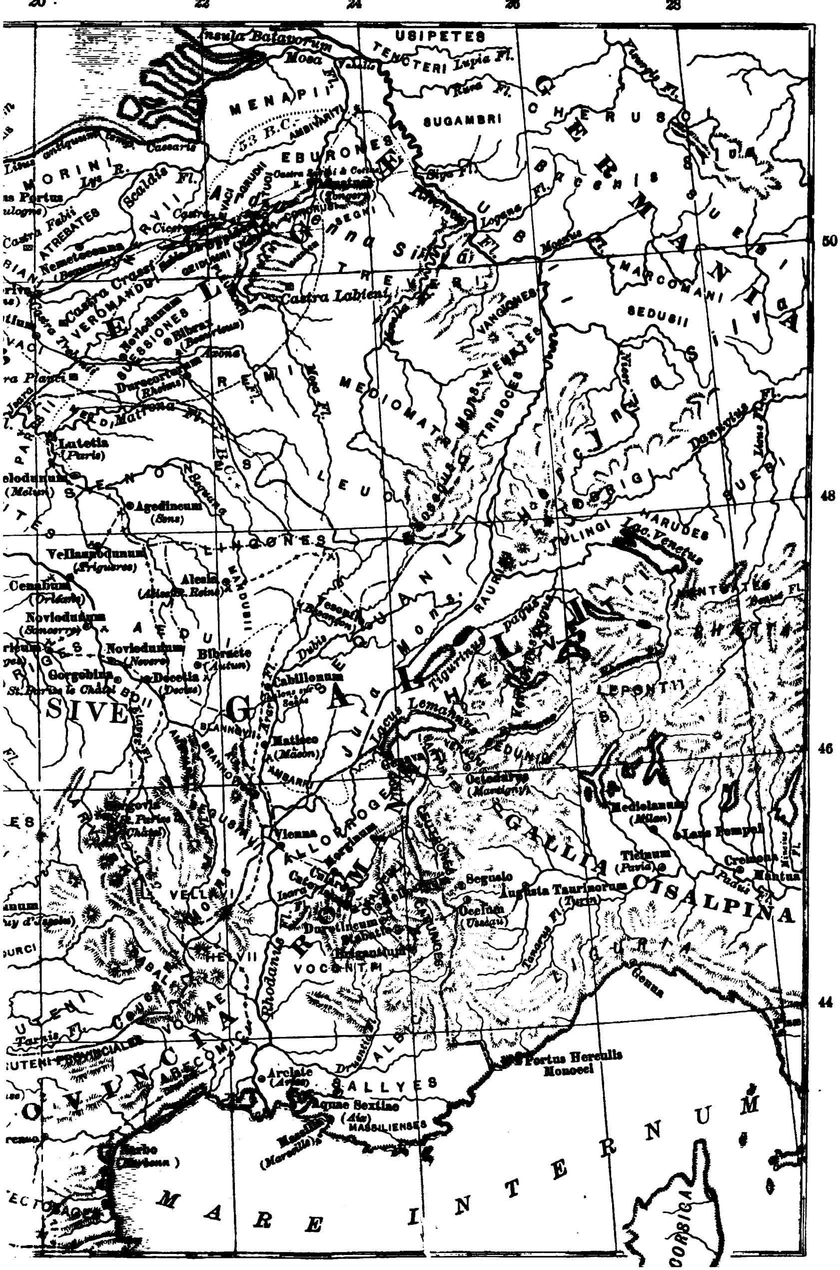
The editor takes pleasure in expressing his obligations to Prof. D. Y. Comstock, of Andover, Mass., who has carefully examined the MS. and proofs, and made many suggestions and additions; to Prof. A. G. Wilson, of Lake Forest, Ill., and other friends, for suggestions and criticisms.

FRANCIS W. KELSEY.

LAKE FOREST, ILL.,
June 24, 1886.



GALLIA
C. IULI CAESARIS
Tempore
Scale of Miles
0
50
100
Itinera Caesaris
58 B.C.
57 " "
56 " "
55 & 54 " "
54 " "
53 " "
52 " "
OCEANUS BRITANNICUS
OCEANUS ATLANTICUS
Mare Cantabricum
BRITANNIA
CASSI
ANCALITES
SEGONTIACI
BIBROCI
TRINOBANTES
VECTIS I.
CASSITERIDES IAE.
SANIA I.
CAESARIA I.
VENELLI
LEXOVII
CALETES
VELIOCASSES
Rotomagus (Rouen)
Sequana
ARMORICAE
OSISMI
CURIOSOLITES
REDONES
AMBIBARII
DIABLINTES
CENOMANI
AUL.
VENETI
VENETICAE IAE.
NAMNETES
ANDES
Liger Fl.
Lidericus Fl.
Cher R.
TURONES
AMBILIATI
LEMOVICES ARMORICANI
PICTONES
Lemonum (Poitiers)
SANTONES
LEMOVICES
PETROCORII
Duranius Fl.
ELEUTHERI
CADURCI
NITIOBRIGES
COCOSATES
VASATES SIVE VOCATES
SONTIATES
Oppidum
TARUSATES
ELUSATES
AUSCI
TOLOSATES
Tolosa
Garumna Fl.
Atur Fl.
CANTABRI
HISPANIA
Iberus Fl.
CELTAE
AQUITANI
0
48
46
44
10
12
14
16
18



20
22
24
26
28
50
48
46
44
Insula Batavorum
USIPETES
TENCTERI
Lupia Fl.
Mosa
MENAPII
SUGAMBRI
CHERUSCI
GERMANIA
53 B.C.
AMBIVARITI
EBURONES
Litus
MORINI
Lys R.
Scaldis Fl.
ATREBATES
Castra Fabii
NERVII
Nemetocenna
VEROMANDUI
Castra Crassi
Noviodunum
SUESSIONES
Bibrax
REMI
Durocortorum
(Rheims)
Axona
Matrona Fl.
TREVERI
Castra Labieni
MEDIOMATRICI
VANGIONES
NEMETES
TRIBOCES
UBII
Mosella
Mosa Fl.
MARCOMANI
SEDUSII
Danubius Fl.
Lutetia
(Paris)
SENONES
Agedincum
(Sens)
LEUCI
LINGONES
Vellaunodunum
Alesia
Cenabum
(Orléans)
Noviodunum
AEDUI
Bibracte
(Autun)
Noviodunum
(Nevers)
Decetia
(Decize)
Gorgobina
BOII
SIVE
GALLIA
SEQUANI
Vesontio
(Besançon)
Dubis Fl.
Arar Fl.
Cabillonum
Matisco
(Mâcon)
AMBARRI
Jura Mons
RAURACI
Tigurinus pagus
HELVETII
Lacus Lemannus
Lac. Venetus
HARUDES
LEPONTII
Genava
Octodurus
(Martigny)
SEDUNI
Vienna
ALLOBROGES
Cularo
Segusio
Augusta Taurinorum
(Turin)
Ocelum
GALLIA
CISALPINA
Mediolanum
(Milan)
Laus Pompei
Ticinum
(Pavia)
Cremona
Mantua
Padus Fl.
Genua
Portus Herculis
Monoeci
VELLAVI
HELVII
VOCONTII
Rhodanus Fl.
Druentia
ALBICI
Arelate
(Arles)
SALLYES
Aquae Sextiae
(Aix)
MASSILIENSES
Massilia
(Marseille)
Narbo
(Narbonne)
Tarnis Fl.
RUTENI
PROVINCIA
ROMANA
MARE INTERNUM
CORSICA

INTRODUCTION

I. GAIUS IULIUS CAESAR.

i. Life of Caesar.

Gaius Iulius Caesar was born July 12, in the year 100 before Christ.[1] He was thus six years younger than Cicero and Pompey. His family belonged to the old nobility of Rome, the patrician order. Several of his ancestors had won distinction in the service of the state; but his father had held no higher office than that of praetor. Of his early youth nothing is known except that he was taught Greek by Gnipho, a Gaul from North Italy, and dabbled in verse-making. As his parents were wealthy, we may suppose that he received under private teachers the usual training of the time in grammar, numbers, music, and physical exercises.

Caesar's life was cast in a period fraught with great changes for the Roman state. The former adjustment of authorities, the old-time balancing of the elements of power that had brought to Rome both strength and security, had given place to violent party strifes, which threatened the very existence of the government. The city was crowded with turbulent throngs of poor citizens, who most of the time received grain from the public treasury at a rate much below cost, and who were easily bribed by men desiring political elevation. With this needy populace all those of humbler station sympathized and voted; thus the bulk of the popular party was made up. Opposed to this was the old aristocracy, which jealously guarded its ancient

[1] Some authorities put the date two years earlier.

privileges. Its stronghold was the Senate. Besides these parties there were the capitalists who wielded vast influence and sided sometimes with the one, sometimes with the other, as self-interest directed. Amid intrigues for power, things had come to such a pass that any great and successful party leader had all his own way and might become virtually supreme. Notwithstanding the risk and uncertainty, politics were thought the only field of activity not beneath the dignity of a young Roman of standing.

When Caesar became old enough to take an active interest in public affairs, Marius, his uncle by marriage, was at the head of the popular party. With this, therefore, his lot was naturally cast. In 83 B.C. he married the daughter of L. Cinna, one of the bitterest opponents of the aristocracy. The following year Sulla returned from a series of victories in the East and restored the power of the Senate, wreaking vengeance upon all its political enemies. Caesar was bidden to put away his wife. He refused, and his life was endangered. He went into hiding, once indeed having purchased his life from a man coming to kill him. After a time, through influential friends, pardon was obtained from Sulla, who granted it with the remark that 'in that young Caesar there were many Mariuses.' Caesar at once left Italy, and served with the army in Asia till Sulla's death, in 78. At the siege of Mitylene he so distinguished himself that a civic crown, made of oak-leaves, was awarded him.

Returning to Rome, he accused first Cn. Dolabella, and afterwards C. Antonius, of extortion in provincial management. At that time the bringing of delinquent officials to justice was a common way of introducing one's self to public notice and winning favor. Though both Dolabella and Antonius were acquitted, Caesar showed great oratorical power, and in prosecuting them attracted much attention. Wishing to perfect himself in oratory, in 76 he set out for Rhodes, to study under Milo. Near Miletus his vessel was captured by pirates; he was kept a prisoner on the island of Pharmacusa until a ransom of fifty talents (over fifty thousand dollars) was paid. But as soon as he

was set free he manned some ships, took the pirate stronghold, and crucified his captors, — as he had jokingly told them, when with them, that he would do.

During the next sixteen years Caesar followed the regular course of political promotion, ignoring no means by which he might make himself popular. He bestowed gifts with a lavish hand, assumed the debts of bankrupt young nobles who had squandered their inheritance, gave largesses to the people. His own means were soon expended; he borrowed vast sums at exorbitant rates of interest, with the design of getting reimbursement from the spoils of office. He was first elected military tribune; then, in 68, quaestor, going with Antistius Vetus into Spain. Three years later he was curule aedile, with Bibulus as colleague. In this office, by most extravagant expenditures on public games and buildings, he raised the enthusiasm of the populace to the highest pitch. He even dared by night in the Capitol to set up the statues of Marius and some representations of victories in the Jugurthine and Cimbrian wars; and the people wept for joy at the revival of old memories. By some he is thought to have been connected with the Catilinian conspiracy; but of this evidence is lacking. In 62 he obtained the office of praetor, in the discharge of which, amid scenes of violence, he carried himself with firmness and dignity. The next year he was governor of Spain, where he won distinction by subduing several wild tribes. He returned to Rome in the summer of 60, having abundant means of satisfying his creditors, and was decreed a public thanksgiving for his victories. He was soon elected consul.

For some years Pompey had been the most prominent man in Rome. His successes in the campaign against the pirates and the war with Mithridates had made him the national hero. But in the qualities needful for a political leader he was utterly lacking; so that even from his own party, the aristocratic, he was unable to win either the recognition he desired or the privileges to which he was entitled. More than once the Senate snubbed

him outright. Here Caesar saw his chance. Relying on his own popularity, he proposed to Pompey that they work in harmony, and by uniting their influence accomplish what either might desire. Pompey agreed; and with these two Crassus, the wealthiest man of Rome, was joined, making a political coalition really supreme, which is known as the First Triumvirate. It had no official existence; it was simply a political ring, of only three members but of vast power. To cement the union further, Pompey married Caesar's daughter Julia. During his consulship, among other measures Caesar caused a law to be passed regarding the division of the public lands, which, though bitterly opposed by the Senate, pleased the people greatly. With his aid, too, Pompey gained the favors previously denied. At the close of his consulship Caesar easily obtained for five years the government of both Cisalpine and Transalpine Gaul and Illyricum, as it was the custom to give ex-consuls the charge of provinces.

Nine years were devoted to the subjugation of Transalpine Gaul. The first summer (B.C. 58) Caesar drove back to their homes the Helvetii, who had attempted to migrate to the west of Gaul, and annihilated the army of the German king, Ariovistus. The following year he subdued the Belgic tribes in the north. The third campaign (B.C. 56) was against the tribes of northwest Gaul, that had leagued together to resist him. During this year Caesar renewed his compact with Pompey and Crassus, who agreed to see to it that his command should be prolonged for five years longer. A part of every winter he spent in Cisalpine Gaul, so as to be near Rome and retain his influence in home politics: it was against the law that a provincial governor having an army should enter Italy while in office. In 55 Caesar chastised several German tribes, and crossed over to Britain. The campaign of the next summer was principally against the Britons, part of whom he reduced to nominal subjection. In the fall a division of his army in Gaul was cut off by a sudden uprising of the enemy. In 53 Caesar had to face a general rebellion of the subject tribes, which, however, he speedily

crushed. But the next year almost all Gaul rose against him, and under the leadership of Vercingetorix taxed his powers to the utmost. He finally prevailed; and after the fall of Alesia, B.C. 52, the strength of the Gauls was forever broken. In the eighth campaign, summer of 51, he reduced the tribes one by one to complete subjection. The following spring he left his army and came up into Cisalpine Gaul. Here he resolved to remain till the expiration of his command in 49, returning to Transalpine Gaul only for a short time during the summer to review the troops.

During Caesar's absence in Gaul Crassus had been defeated and killed in the East, thus putting an end to the Triumvirate, and with it to the harmony between Caesar and Pompey. The latter began to view Caesar's successes with distrust and alarm. He entered into alliance again with the aristocracy. The Senate in Pompey's interest passed a decree that both he and Caesar should give up a legion for service in the East. For some years Caesar had had one of Pompey's legions: this was now demanded back. Caesar let it go, and one of his own too, without a complaint, although the intent of the whole action was evidently to weaken his forces and annoy him. As it was not lawful for him to proceed in person to Rome, he stationed himself in Ravenna, the town of his province nearest the Italian boundary. He sent agents and friends to the City to negotiate for him, to try to offset the influence now openly brought to bear against him. Pompey and the Senate both hated and feared him. A decree was soon passed that Caesar should disband his army by a certain date, or be considered an outlaw. In the state of public affairs at that time this was simply to wrest from him the fruits of his hard-won successes, without leaving him even a guaranty of his personal safety. Caesar hesitated. The Senate voted, further, that "the consuls should provide that the state receive no hurt," which is like a proclamation of martial law in our day. This was virtually a declaration of war against Caesar, inspired by the jealousy of his opponent. Caesar at once

with one legion crossed the Rubicon, the boundary of his province. Soon all Italy was in his power, — Pompey, the Senate, and their followers having fled to Greece. After arranging matters at Rome to suit himself he went to Spain, where lieutenants devoted to Pompey had a strong army. They were soon crushed. On his return the siege of Massilia (Marseilles), which had closed its gates to him on the way out, was ended by the capture of the city.

Caesar now gathered his forces in Greece, to meet his enemies there. For some time the two armies faced each other at Dyrrhachium; but Caesar was soon obliged to withdraw into the interior. The decisive battle was fought August 9, B.C. 48, near the city of Pharsālus, in Thessaly. Caesar's forces numbered about twenty-two thousand men, of which one thousand were cavalry; Pompey had forty-seven thousand infantry and seven thousand cavalry. But superior generalship and the courage of desperation won the day against overwhelming odds. The Senatorial forces were entirely routed. Pompey fled to Egypt, where he was treacherously murdered. Caesar also went to Egypt, where he became involved in difficulties known as the Alexandrine War. Putting an end to these he proceeded to the neighborhood of Carthage, where Cato and Scipio had raised a force against him. He won a complete victory over them at the battle of Thapsus, B.C. 46.

Caesar was now everywhere master. In accordance with legal forms he promulgated several laws of great benefit to the people. He reformed the calendar; in memory of this, the name of the month in which he was born was changed to *Iulius*, our July. In the year 45 a large army was collected in Spain, and commanded by the two sons of Pompey. Caesar marched against it, and at the battle of Munda totally defeated it. On his return to Rome the Senate, whose members were mainly of his own choosing, loaded him with honors. By conferring upon him all the important offices it centred the whole authority in his hands. His tenure of power was marked by clemency

towards former opponents, and by the forming of vast projects for the public weal, few of which were ever realized. A league was formed to take his life. The conspirators were led to the crime by different motives, part by personal jealousy and hatred, part by a patriotic desire to restore the old republican constitution in full force, part by ambitious designs upon the spoils of state. So on March 15 B.C. 44, as Caesar had just entered the Senate house, he was set upon with daggers, and fell pierced by twenty-three wounds. But the plans of the murderers all miscarried. Not one of them died a natural death; and before many years Caesar's nephew and heir, Octavius, afterwards called Augustus, was Emperor of the Roman world.

Caesar was tall and of commanding presence. His features were angular and prominent. He had a fair complexion, with keen, expressive black eyes. In later years he was bald; at no time of life did he wear a beard. Though endowed with a constitution naturally by no means robust, he became inured to hardship, and exhibited astonishing powers of endurance. In matters of dress he was particular to the verge of effeminacy. His private life was not free from the vices of his time.

Of all the Romans Caesar was without doubt the greatest. In him the most varied talents were united with a restless ambition and tireless energy. While deliberate and far-seeing in the forming of his plans, in carrying them out he often acted with a haste that seemed like utter recklessness. He could command, could witness unmoved, scenes of the most shocking cruelty; yet none could be more forgiving, or more gracious in granting pardon. Believing with the Epicurean philosophy, that death ends all and life is worth living only for the pleasure to be gotten out of it, he mingled freely with the dissolute society of Rome; yet when it was time for action he spurned indulgences, gave himself to the severest toil, endured without a murmur the most trying privations. Denying the power of the gods, early in life he became a priest of Jupiter; later, high priest. But

in regard to all these things we may say that his faults were those he shared in common with his age; his genius belongs to all ages. Chateaubriand declares that Caesar was the most complete man of all history; for his genius was transcendent in three directions, in politics, in war, and in literature. Let us try to form some estimate of this threefold life-work by considering Caesar specially as a General, as a Politician, and as a Man of Letters.

ii. Caesar as a General.

Caesar was the greatest general Rome produced. His military genius did not display itself, as did that of Hannibal or Napoleon, in the masterly use of strategy and the introduction of new tactics; but taking the Roman art of war as he found it, he brought it to the highest perfection. The Romans, at all periods of their history, relied for victory not so much on brilliant feats in arms as on the rigid discipline, power of endurance, and persistent courage of their soldiers. In Caesar's ability to make his men do more and endure more for him than they would under any one else lies a chief secret of his success. He had the rare power of binding his army to him with a devotion that nothing could destroy. In almost every campaign he fought against vastly superior numbers and the most serious disadvantages. For his troops there were long marches, heavy burdens, the constant labor of fortifying, well-grounded fears of the enemy often increased tenfold by exaggeration; yet confidence in their leader inspired them with ever fresh zeal; and addresses from time to time, reminding them of what he expected of them, fired their courage to the utmost. To this unflagging faithfulness, this unswerving allegiance to him and his cause that he had the faculty of calling forth, fully as much as to skilful handling of forces on the field of battle, his victories were due.

On the other hand, the longer men served under him the more confidence he placed in them; and he did not hesitate to

tell them how much he relied on them. Instances of special courage on the part of legions, companies, or individuals, he made note of, and commended. He made his men think that he was personally interested in each one, — just as Napoleon used to go among the common soldiers and inquire into their welfare. He knew every centurion by name, and when the battle was hottest he would rush into the ranks and call out to them individually, urging to greater effort. In campaigns he was most careful of the lives of his men, never exposing them to unnecessary risks. Slight delinquencies of conduct he often overlooked; but his general system of discipline was most strict. Active warfare was confined almost entirely to the summer months. During the winter the troops were placed in stationary quarters, where they were kept from idleness by constant drilling. These winter camps, though often distributed about the enemy's country in order to inspire awe, were nevertheless located away from cities, that the soldiers might not become effeminate by being brought under corrupting influences, nor form attachments with those in whose region they were placed. In this way Caesar avoided one of the fatal mistakes of Hannibal, who in the winter allowed his army to revel in the luxuries of South Italy. No matter how well trained a force may be, in a campaign of hard fighting it becomes demoralized, partly by reason of the gaps in the ranks caused by losses, partly on account of irregular movements and constant effort toward adaptation to new circumstances. Caesar made his winter encampments a source of fresh strength. From them his soldiers went forth with recruited powers, confident from the experience of past campaigns, and hardened by training. Thus Caesar "made his army as it were a body, of which he was the soul." He did not command his men to advance, but to follow, and more than once exposed his life by fighting like a common soldier in the front ranks.

The military movements of Caesar, as of Napoleon, were characterized by an incredible swiftness. He often appeared

in the vicinity of the enemy, or gained possession of important points, before the news had spread that he was on the march. Thus he not infrequently caught his adversaries unawares, found them with scattered forces, and gained a victory before they could come together. As a consequence, in many cases a panic was excited that paralyzed the efforts of the foe and resulted in greater advantage to Caesar than the winning of several battles. When he felt himself too weak in numbers to assume the offensive with the force at hand, he would gain time by parleying, declaring that he must have opportunity for deliberation, while in reality he was awaiting reinforcements, or completing preparations for active measures. Like Grant, he had the power of keeping to himself his designs. His most trusted officers rarely knew his plans till called upon to execute them. He seems to have thought that the best way to assure the secrecy of a project was to carry it out as soon as formed. At any rate, his movements often appeared rash. In the end, however, results revealed his superior judgment and foresight.

But no matter how rapidly Caesar advanced, he was always careful to keep up connection with his base of supplies. For these he relied in the Gallic war partly on the Roman province, partly on friendly tribes, and partly on the hostile region through which he was marching. That there might be no failure in the regular transportation of supplies to the front he took every precaution. He left no points in possession of the foe behind him; he so secured the route by garrisons at strategic points that in case of defeat he could retreat in safety. Thus, instead of crossing the Rhine by boats, as he could easily have done, he built bridges each time, and left them strongly guarded while he went over into Germany. Once sufficiently near the enemy, his usual practice was to choose immediately a favorable location and fortify a camp. Then by sallies with cavalry he tried to cut off the supplies of the enemy and force them to attack him on his own ground. In this respect his tactics were defensive rather than offensive, and uniformly

successful. He never stopped to besiege a town if he could well avoid it, knowing that a crushing defeat in the field opens the gates of cities. Yet no one was more skilled in the conducting of operations against fortified places than he. The siege of Alesia was one of the most remarkable recorded in history. Sometimes by a feigned retreat, or by marching to one side of the direct route, he drew the enemy away from a point he wished to take, then by a reverse movement fell on it suddenly before they could come to the rescue.

None understood better than Caesar how to follow up a victory and turn it to the best advantage. In pursuit of the fleeing he sent detachments of cavalry, and on all sides struck heavy blows before the enemy could gather again or get new courage. Occasionally he authorized indiscriminate slaughter, or the general sale of captives into slavery; but he was not cruel by nature, and in making slaves of those spared by the sword he acted in accordance with the universal custom of antiquity. In the civil war he was more compassionate toward the vanquished than any of his contemporaries. In the Gallic war, on conquering a state he usually took under his protection one of the parties in it, placing it in charge of the government, bound thus by strong ties to himself. His organizing power displayed itself in the bringing of order out of chaos; while his firmness and moderation won the respect, if not the esteem, of those he made subject. When he left Gaul and engaged in the war with Pompey the country was not only once for all subdued, but even contained a strong party devoted to his interests.

The military successes of Caesar have been sometimes attributed to the lack of generalship on the part of his adversaries. This is not just. To say nothing of the fact that in the civil strifes the best warriors of Rome were pitted against him, two at least of his northern foes, Ariovistus and Vercingetorix, were men of great natural powers of organization and leadership, consummate masters of the tactics with which they were familiar. The numbers of the barbarian armies were almost beyond

compute, their courage well-nigh invincible. From traditions of Gallic invasions the Gauls had become the bugbear of the Roman soldiery; and even Caesar's men at first trembled before their great size and ferocious aspect. They were by no means the undisciplined savages that they are sometimes thought to have been. The Gauls used the Greek alphabet, and in civilization were far in advance of the early Britons and Germans. In the earlier campaigns they showed lack of military organization; but in the last years of the Gallic war their troops were organized, armed, and drilled after the Roman fashion, and proved almost a match for the invaders. Sometimes Caesar diminished the awe of his soldiers by trial skirmishes, that the mettle of the enemy might be tested, and the confidence of his army strengthened before the general engagement.

No, the reasons for Caesar's pre-eminence as a general must be sought, not in the weakness of his enemies, but in himself, in his singular power of controlling and organizing men, in his quick and comprehensive grasp of circumstances and ready adaptation to them, in his knowledge of human nature and his penetration as shown specially in his selection of officers, in his ability to make skilful use of the Roman tactics. But behind all these qualities there was another that defies analysis, that enabled him always to turn things to his own advantage: shall we not call it genius? Many generals have studied Caesar's Memoirs most carefully as a military manual; some have even taken copies with them on campaigns. As the greatest general of all the Romans, Caesar takes rank among the most famous military leaders of the world. He will not suffer by comparison with Alexander the Great, with Hannibal and Napoleon, Grant and Von Moltke; but the modern warrior whose qualities of leadership and generalship most resemble Caesar's is England's "Iron Duke," Wellington.

iii. Caesar as a Politician.

The political character of Caesar has long been a subject of controversy. According to some he was a monster of crime, with hardly a redeeming quality; deliberately sacrificing the liberties of his country to an inordinate ambition. Others portray him as a broad-minded statesman, who saw that in the anarchy arising from the strife of parties Rome's great need was a single controlling will; who, to give peace and order to his distracted land, made himself its master. Both these views are extreme and unjust. The one emphasizes the destructive side of Caesar's character, while the constructive side is ignored; the other projects upon him that profound knowledge of the tendencies of the Roman state which the philosophers of history have been eighteen centuries in acquiring. His character presents, indeed, many apparently conflicting elements. But upon careful study it is evident that in the main he acted in accordance with the spirit of his age; that though his motives may not always have been patriotic, he was in reality a benefactor of his country; and that the true significance of his career becomes apparent only when it is considered as the final outworking of a principle that in times past had been asserting itself more and more in Roman politics, — the principle of Imperialism.

In entering the arena of political life Caesar no doubt both followed his own inclinations and chose the course reckoned most proper for a Roman youth of fortune and high position. At that time, owing to the proscriptions of Sulla, there was in the popular party a dearth of leaders, which gave ample room for the exercise of his powers. The methods which he employed to make himself the people's favorite, judged by modern standards, were in the highest degree objectionable. Still, they were the usual methods of his time; while in restoring the statues of Marius to the Capitol he showed a deep insight into the real feelings of the masses as well as a knowledge of the ways of reaching the popular heart. Few of his contemporaries had

so great regard for the formalities of the law as he. Even at the trial of the Catilinian conspirators he argued on legal grounds that the accused should not be put to death improperly. The formation of the First Triumvirate was a shrewd move, fraught with momentous consequences. It reveals rare sagacity and foresight; but it had no more and no less significance than the forming of political rings to secure the rewards of office in our day. It proposed not to subvert but to direct the government, and at the same time to turn to private advantage the influence and emoluments of official positions.

The means by which Caesar was enabled finally to obtain the supreme power was the conquest of Gaul. From early times the Gauls, pressed by the tribes beyond, had occasionally made incursions into Italy; and now Roman colonists in southern Gaul were continually harassed. To protect these the rest of the country must be subdued. It is said that Caesar undertook the task of bringing Gaul into subjection in order to acquire a military power with which to overthrow the home government. Can this be the true explanation of his motives? How could he expect in the subduing of a wild northern country to develop a force able to cope with a government that had behind it Pompey, conqueror of rich provinces in the East? More likely he planned the Gallic campaigns as an important service to the state. If he should be successful in carrying them out, he would gain a still higher place in the affections of the people, and would add one more laurel to his political honors. Because his remarkable ability as a general soon won for him extraordinary successes, which he afterwards employed to further his own ends, we have no right to suppose that his aim from the beginning was to obtain the supreme power, and the conquest of Gaul the means he took to accomplish it.

The death of Crassus left Pompey and Caesar without rivals in political power. The latter, as master of Gaul, found himself much more nearly on a level with the "great man of Rome" than ever before. A mutual jealousy soon provoked a collision. Pompey undoubtedly had the advantage; for while he was

administering a powerful command in Spain through his lieutenants, he was in person at Rome, at the centre of affairs, acting as sole consul by the desire of the people; but Caesar was outside the limits of Italy. As a matter of fact, Rome was under Pompey's control. So it was at Pompey's bidding that the Senate ordered Caesar to disband his legions and resign his command. Caesar was placed in a difficult position. In obeying this decree he would give up everything to his opponent and make himself a political cipher, with but small prospect of ever regaining his former influence. His enemies had woven a net around him. In refusing to obey he would give to the Senate a chance to declare him a traitor, and to his adversary an opportunity of attacking him in the name of the state. Yet simple justice required that all which might be demanded of the one should be demanded of the other also. So at least Caesar thought; and he acted accordingly. If he had previously fought for fame and influence, he must now fight for self-preservation. An appeal to arms was his only means of defence. Delay was dangerous; he decided on immediate action. If an appeal to arms against the existing authority is ever justifiable in the case of an individual, the crossing of the Rubicon, that first aggressive step of the movement which resulted in Caesar's elevation to supreme power, was attended at least by palliating circumstances.

But in this contest there was a deeper significance than the elevation or overthrow of an individual. Whoever conquered would be king. There were certain tendencies in the Roman state that rendered a monarchy inevitable. Rome was at first a municipality; her government, a group of institutions developed by and adapted to a city population. When she extended her boundaries she conquered cities, and her government thus had to deal with a collection of municipal organizations similar to her own. The consequence was a constant tendency toward disintegration, — toward the separation of this combination of units into its original elements. Opposed to this localizing tendency there was necessarily developed a contrary drift toward centralization. It was found that a body composed of many

inharmonious members needed a single will. In times of extreme danger the state was obliged to put almost absolute power into the hands of a *dictator*. The people thus became familiar with the prerogatives of royalty under a different name. Meanwhile the influx of wealth after the period of conquest, the development of large landed estates which absorbed the small farms of the peasant class, and the excessive employment of slave labor which was reducing the free classes within ever narrower limits, gave prominence to individual aspirants to power who made the state a republic only in name. Gaius Gracchus for a time held virtual sovereignty. Marius was supreme for five years. Sulla was as really a king as if he had worn the purple. Matters at length had come to such straits, that the very existence of the state demanded a king. There was needed a strong, centralized government, capable of repressing anarchy at home and of enforcing respect abroad.

The murder of Pompey left Caesar without a rival; and under the forms of the old constitution he became in truth monarch of Rome. Thus had he who at first cherished no more ambitious aim than to become a political leader, risen by the force of circumstances to the absolute mastery of the Roman world. His short administration revealed in him statesmanship of a high order. Under him the state enjoyed a larger measure of prosperity than before for many decades; and his untimely end only renewed the political disturbances that he had sought to repress. Endowed with such deep insight into men and things, Caesar must have foreseen, faintly at first perhaps, but more and more distinctly as time passed on, what would be the end of the course he was pursuing, — as the traveller sees through the breaking mist the summit toward which the upward path is leading. We claim for him, however, that he did not definitely contemplate the subversion of the liberties of the Commonwealth; and that, guided by an overruling Providence, he accomplished an important work for the Roman state and for humanity. Certainly few men have left so strong an impress upon the history of the race as he. The calendar, as

reformed by him, is still in use in Greece and Russia. His name has become a designation of imperial authority, and remains to-day in the word *Kaiser*, the official title of the emperors of Germany and Austria; some think also in the Russian *Czar*. Political writers, too, use the word *Cæsarism*. What a life, able not simply to make for itself a place in the records of history, but even to hand down a name as synonymous with the highest power!

iv. Caesar as a Man of Letters.

Caesar had a natural taste for literature. He enjoyed the best educational advantages of his time in rhetoric and elocution; but the freshness, directness, and vigor of his style indicate not so much careful training as an inborn power over language. As an orator he was considered second only to Cicero. It is to be regretted that none of his orations have come down to us; from the fragments that survive, we know that his manner of speaking was terse, logical, earnest, and convincing. Even during the busiest periods of his life he kept up literary pursuits. He composed a treatise on grammar (*De Analogia*) while crossing the Alps. He wrote also a tract 'Against Cato,' and a work in sixteen books on 'Auspices.' All these, as well as his poems, have been lost. But his most important writings, which still survive, were the 'Commentaries on the Gallic War,' in seven books, describing the conquest of Gaul; and 'Commentaries on the Civil War,' in three books, giving an account of the struggle with Pompey. These works, as the name indicates (*Commentarii*, that is, notes or jottings, comments, 'Memoirs'), were not intended to be formal historical treatises, but were written in great haste in the midst of the campaigns described, and given to the world rather as rough first draughts, as a general's diary, than as complete and finished productions. An eighth book was afterwards added to the 'Gallic War' by Aulus Hirtius; other hands, too, extended the 'Civil War,' by adding narratives of Caesar's military operations in Egypt, Africa, and Spain.

The style of the 'Memoirs' has always been much admired. Cicero, although a political enemy of the author, did not hesitate to say of them: "They are worthy of all praise. They are unadorned, straightforward, and elegant, every embellishment being stripped off as a garment. Caesar desired, indeed, to furnish others who might wish to write history with material upon which they might draw; and perhaps men without good taste, who like to deck out facts in tawdry graces of expression, may think that in this he has done a kindness, but he has deterred men of sound sense from trying to improve on them in writing. For in history a pure and brilliant conciseness of style is the highest attainable beauty." The manner of expression, although so condensed, is most clear, and often vivid. It stands as a warning to those who think that a simple, direct, and forcible statement of facts can be made more effective by the use of many words and high-sounding phrases. The same unaffected directness of language is a noticeable characteristic of Grant's memoirs.

Although Caesar is everywhere, as a matter of course, the principal figure in the 'Memoirs,' he throws himself into the background, making prominent the deed rather than the doer. He speaks of himself usually in the third person, — a mode of expression as rare in personal narrative in his time as to-day. More surprising still is the fact that one finds no bitter aspersions upon his enemies, no extravagant commendations of friends, no professedly special pleas to justify his course. The reasons for important movements are always stated, but in such a way that they seem to have grown out of the attendant circumstances, and to have forced on action; so that no man of discretion could have done otherwise than he did. In all this there is the highest skill. While keeping himself free from all expressions alike of malice and of self-glorification, he draws the reader along with him, arouses sympathy, and wins to his own view; thus he justifies his course tenfold more effectively than if he were to excite the reader's opposition or suspicion by violent statements, or had adopted a more direct

way of pleading his course. Little doubt that behind both the 'Gallic' and the 'Civil War' there lay a political purpose, to set a favorable explanation of his career before the eyes of his fellow-countrymen and of posterity. But does this affect the truthfulness of his statements?

In writing his 'Memoirs' Caesar had to deal with several classes of facts. First, especially in the 'Gallic War,' there was a vast fund of information about the strange peoples with whom he came in contact. Most of these were previously unknown to the Romans. Caesar was a close and careful observer. He made minute inquiries not only into the numbers and military prowess of his foes, but also into their manner of life, their customs, and religious beliefs. In him, with the circumspection and foresight of the general was united the eager desire for knowledge of the man of science. His nature was averse to the marvellous. The pages of few ancient writers who present accounts of new peoples are so free from the improbable. Whenever possible he got his information directly, at first hand. In a few instances he seems to have become possessed of erroneous views; but as a whole his statements about lands and peoples are, no doubt, thoroughly trustworthy. Then, there were the accounts of his military operations, of the general conduct of his campaigns. The accuracy of these has hardly been called in question; while the surveys and excavations carried on under the direction of the Emperor Napoleon III. have furnished in many cases a remarkable confirmation. Finally, there remain the more particular descriptions of battles, sieges, and the like; of successes and defeats. These affect reputation; here if anywhere we should look for untruthfulness. Did Caesar, as some have thought, magnify his victories and cover up his defeats? There is no evidence that he did. The tone throughout his works is candid and fair. Besides, with these things most of his readers were familiar by means of reports brought from the field. Falsifying under such circumstances would have been downright folly, would have excited all manner of derision, and have entirely defeated the writer's

purposes. Possibly now and then Caesar colored his narrative a little, or purposely omitted something: his general reliability we have not the slightest reason to doubt. His statements of his motives of action in certain cases, bearing in mind the circumstances, we are at liberty to accept or reject as we choose; his veracity in regard to facts should not be impugned without good reason. From whatever standpoint viewed, his works are of great interest and value. The *De Bello Gallico* in particular deserves to be carefully studied, as a masterpiece of concise and spirited writing, as casting light upon the beginnings of the history of Northern Europe, and as revealing the modes of thought and action of one of the world's greatest men.

II. THE ROMAN ART OF WAR IN CAESAR'S TIME.

i. Organization of the Army.

The Roman army consisted of three parts, — the Infantry (*pedites*, or simply *milites*), the Cavalry (*equites* or *equitatus*), and the Commissariat, or Baggage-train (*impedimenta*).

1. The Infantry. — The main body of the infantry was divided into legions (*legiones*). The number of men in a legion varied according to circumstances; for the killed or disabled were not replaced by recruits enrolled in the same legion, but when an accession of strength was received new legions were formed. Generally the longer a legion remained in service the smaller it became. The average number of men in Caesar's legions was 3,600. The legion was divided into ten cohorts, or battalions (*cohortes*), of 360 men each. The cohort contained three maniples, or companies (*manipuli*), having each thus 120 men. Those belonging to the first, the second, and the third maniples respectively were sometimes designated as *hastati*, *principes*, and *triarii;* but in Caesar's time, the old distinctions in equipment and service formerly implied by these names no longer existed. The maniple was divided into two centuries (*ordines*), of sixty men each.

Outside the legions were, — *a.* The *evocati.* These were veterans who had served their full time, but had volunteered for further service. They were held in honor, and had several privileges, such as immunity from picket-duty and work on fortifications. They were not attached to any particular corps, but had a place near the commander, from whom directly or through a lieutenant they received their orders. *b.* The light-armed troops (*milites levis armaturæ*). These were slingers and bowmen, and were always drawn from foreign peoples. In the earlier times the legions were composed only of Romans; later, others were admitted.

Citizens entered the service not by volunteering, but by being summoned and chosen through levies (*delectus*) held usually at Rome. A Roman could be called out any time between the ages of seventeen and forty-six. The regular period of service was twenty years in the infantry and ten years in the cavalry.

The officers were of three classes, — centurions, military tribunes, and lieutenants. *a.* Centurions, or captains (*centuriones*). These led the centuries; there were consequently two in each maniple, six in each cohort, and sixty in the legion. The lowest in rank was the second centurion of the third maniple of the tenth cohort, the highest was the first centurion of the first cohort, called *primi pili centurio*, or *primipīlus*. The *primipilus* had a place in the war council. As a mark of authority the centurions carried a stick in the right hand. (See plate II. 3.) *b.* Military Tribunes (*tribuni militum*). These were six in number to each legion, stood in rank above the centurions, and commanded in turn. In Caesar's army they were of little importance, because most of their authority and duties were given over to the lieutenants. *c.* The Lieutenants, or legates (*legati*). These ranked next to the general. They carried a sceptre, and wore a purple robe with gold trimming. They held no particular division of the army as their permanent command, but were placed in charge now of this, now of that undertaking, sometimes over one legion, sometimes over several. They directed the movements of cavalry as well as infantry. The general (*imperator*), inasmuch as he held military authority (*imperium*) directly from the state, was on formal occasions accompanied by lictors (*lictores*), who bore an axe in a bundle of rods as symbolic of his power. (See plate II. 4, 2.)

2. The Cavalry. — Caesar's cavalry was drawn from allied and subject peoples, the officers only being Romans. It was distinct from the legion, and of secondary importance. It probably numbered on the average 3,300 to 4,000 men, separated into divisions (*alae*) of 330 to 400 men. The divisions were composed of squads (*turmae*) of thirty-three to forty horsemen, these last of decuries of ten or more. The higher officers

of the cavalry were the cavalry prefects (*praefecti equitum*); the under officers were the decurions (*decuriones*). (See plate III. 5.)

3. The Commissariat, or Baggage-Train. — This consisted of a great number of beasts of burden and wagons, with the drivers and other drudge-folk (*calones*). Thus the tents, hand-mills, bridge material, engines of war, extra weapons, and all other needful military stores were conveyed. Each legion had a separate baggage train. When accompanied by this on the march it was called (*legio*) *impedita*, "encumbered;" when without, *expedita*, "unencumbered." From *impedimenta*, or baggage of the legion, *sarcinae*, the private luggage of each soldier, which he himself carried, should be carefully distinguished. Besides the *calones*, and just above them in position, were the artisans (*fabri*), — carpenters, blacksmiths, and the like.

ii. The Weapons, Standards, and Musical Instruments.

The **weapons** of Caesar's army were of two kinds, offensive and defensive. The offensive weapons were the javelin and the sword; the defensive were the helmet, the shield, the greaves, and the cuirass, or coat of mail.

1. Offensive Weapons. — *a.* The javelin. Of this there were four varieties, —*pilum*, *iaculum*, *hasta*, *lancea*. The *pilum* was a strong and heavy pike, the principal weapon of the legion soldiers. It consisted of a square shaft of wood four feet long, to the end of which a sharp but strong iron point, like a bayonet, was securely fastened. The entire length of the *pilum* was six feet; its weight was ten to eleven pounds, — about that of the guns furnished by the United States Government and most European nations to their infantry. The *pila* were thrown only at short distances, and often the first hurling decided the battle. The *iaculum* was a lighter dart; the *hasta*, a long spear adapted specially for stabbing; the *lancea*, a light spear, a lance, often with a broad point like an arrow-head. These three weapons were used by the cavalry and the light-armed troops. Some of the latter also carried bows and arrows (*arcus*, *sagitta*) and even

slings (*funda*). (See pl. IV. 6, 7, 11, and pl. III. 1.) *b*. The Roman sword (*gladius*) was short (not over two and a half feet long), almost as wide as the hand, two-edged, and pointed. It was thus better adapted for stabbing than for slashing, though used for both purposes. (See pl. IV. 9.) It was kept in a light scabbard fastened to a belt (*balteus*), which was not passed around the waist as our soldiers have it, but over the left shoulder. (See the two right-hand figures in pl. III. 1, soldiers of the legion.) The cavalry men had a sword somewhat longer than that described above.

2. **Defensive Weapons.** — The legion-soldiers were protected by, — *a*. A brazen helmet (*cassis*) ornamented with a crest of red or white feathers (*crista*). (See pl. IV. 5.) *b*. A cuirass (*lorīca*), made of leather simply, or of leather with strips of metal fastened on about the waist and shoulders, or of scales of metal, or of a single brazen plate fourteen inches square over the breast. (See pl. II. 3; III. 3.) *c*. Greaves, reaching as high as the knee (*ocreae*), worn as a rule only on the right leg. *d*. An oblong shield, or buckler (*scutum*), almost a man's height, made of boards fitted together, covered with leather and having a broad rim of metal running around the edge. (See pl. IV. 3.) Another variety of shield sometimes used by the infantry was the *clipeus*, which was of bronze and oval in shape. (See pl. IV. 1.) Both *scutum* and *clipeus* were variously ornamented, with representations of thunderbolts, symbols of the legion, and the like. The light-armed troops carried a small shield almost round, or target (*parma*), and seven light spears, and wore upon the head a helmet of leather with or without metal framework (*galea*). (See pl. IV. 4, 5.) The cavalry also had the *galea* and the *parma*, with greaves of leather. (See pl. III. 5.) The soldier wore beneath his armor a thick woollen under-garment, reaching nearly to the knees (*tunica*). His shoes were much like sandals with heavy soles, held on by bands over the ankle. His cloak (*sagum*) was of heavy woollen stuff, usually a single piece of cloth, fastened across the shoulders by a clasp and open in front. It served him as a blanket

also; and in battle it was thrown off, so as not to hinder free movement. The cloak of the general or high officer (*paludamentum*) was of finer texture and ornamented. (See pl. II. 1, 2.)

The **standards** (*signa*) of the Roman army were many in number, and of a great variety of forms. The most important was the legion eagle (*aquila*), of gold, silver, or bronze, with expanded wings, and of the size of a dove. In times of peace it was kept in the temple of Saturn at Rome; on the march and in battle it was borne aloft on a strong pole in the maniple of the *primipilus;* in camp it was taken off the pole and placed in a little shrine, where it became an object of veneration. (See pl. IV. 2, 8.) The loss of the eagle was reckoned the deepest disgrace. The ancient Persians also had a golden eagle as the royal standard; and to-day the eagle holds an important place among the military emblems of Austria, Russia, Germany, France, and the United States. The cohort had several standards, at least one to each maniple; thus the *manipuli* are sometimes called *signa.* They were of many different shapes and designs, representing a wolf, a serpent, a dog, an outstretched hand, the goddess of victory, etc. Underneath frequently were placed as ornaments figures of victorious crowns, metallic disks having in relief the face of the commander, the number or name of the company, and the like. Sometimes the name and number of the legion, cohort, or maniple were indicated on a banner under or over the figure. (See pl. II. 5; pl. IV. 2.) It is probable that the standard of the first maniple of the cohort was also the standard of the cohort. The standard-bearers in general were called *signiferi;* but the bearer of the legion eagle was given the special name *aquilifer.* The chief standard-bearers often wore a bear or lion skin over the head to make them look ferocious. (See pl. II. 5.) The *vexillum* was a square or oblong banner used for many purposes. A large red *vexillum* was placed over the general's tent as a signal to break camp. A similar banner of red or white was carried by the cavalry squads, by the *evocati,* and on war-ships. (See pl. II. 8, pl. III. 5.)

By means of the standards the movements of troops were largely directed. Hence arose many peculiar expressions, unintelligible without a recognition of this fact. Thus *signa inferre* means "to advance;" *signa referre*, "to retreat;" *signa convertere*, "to face about;" *signa efferre*, or *signa castris vellere*, "to march out of camp;" *ad signa convenire*, "to assemble." Those who fought in the front ranks, before the standards, were called *antesignani*.

The **musical instruments** of Caesar's army were of three kinds, — the *tuba*, the *cornu*, and the *bucĭna*. The *tuba*, "trumpet," was straight, with funnel-shaped opening, and had a deep tone. It was used to give military signals, such as to form, to advance, to retreat. The *cornu* and *bucĭna* were curved, and had a shriller note. The *bucĭna*, "clarion," was sounded to mark the watches, — as at noon, sunset, midnight. The *cornu*, "horn" (made originally of buffalo horn), gave the *classicum*, a signal by which the army was called together to hear an address from the commander or a sentence of death pronounced. On the march signals were given by the *tuba;* in battle, by the *cornu* and *bucĭna*. The horn-blowers were called from the names of their instruments, *tubicĭnes*, *bucinatores* and *cornicĭnes*. (See pl. II. 6, 7.) In Caesar's day the *lituus*, a kind of horn curved at the larger end like the butt of a pistol, was sometimes used by cavalry. Its tone was harsh and high. It is not spoken of by Caesar. The Romans never had a regular system of music as we have, with different instruments playing different parts. They understood only intervals and melody, not harmony.

SUMMARY.

THE ROMAN ARMY

- *Infantry*
  - Legiones
    - 1 Legion =
    - 10 Cohorts =
    - 30 Maniples
  - Evocati
  - Milites levis armaturae
- *Cavalry*, divided into alae, turmae
- *Baggage-train*
- *Officers*
  - Imperator
  - Legati
  - Tribuni Militum
  - Centuriones
  - Praefecti equitum
  - Decuriones.
- *Weapons*
  - Offensive
    - Javelin
      - Pilum
      - Iaculum
      - Hasta
      - Lancea
    - Gladius
    - Arcus et sagitta
    - Funda
  - Defensive
    - Cassis, galea
    - Lorica
    - Ocreae
    - Scutum, parma
- *Standards*
  - Aquila
  - Signa manipulorum
  - Vexillum
- *Musical Instruments*
  - Tuba
  - Cornu
  - Bucina
  - Lituus

iii. Provisioning and Pay of the Soldiers.

Caesar took every precaution to have ample supplies always at hand. The care of the stores was in the hands of a quaestor, with his staff. Not bread, or even flour, but grain (*frumentum*), usually wheat, was served out to the soldiers for rations. This they themselves ground with handmills (*molae manuales*) and prepared for food, by boiling into a paste or by making into bread without yeast. The grain was portioned out every fifteen days, and on the march each soldier carried his share in a sack. The amount furnished does not seem large when we reflect that the men lived almost exclusively on a vegetable diet. The allowance for the fifteen days was two Roman pecks (*modii*), about half a bushel by our measure. As the weight of this was not far from thirty pounds, the soldier had about two pounds per day. On difficult or forced marches extra rations were served out. If the soldier desired to do so he could trade off his grain for bread, or buy other articles of food from the numerous traders (*mercatores*), who accompanied the army and had a flourishing business. When wheat was scarce, barley (*hordeum*) was substituted. Rations of barley were also frequently served out as punishment for slight offences. In traversing an enemy's country fresh meat was often obtained in abundance. The horses of the cavalry-men and the beasts of burden were fed on barley; but on expeditions green fodder was usually found.

Previous to Caesar's time the pay (*merces*) of the legion-soldier was about 6¼ cents per day. Caesar doubled this; so that in his army the soldier received 12½ cents per day, the centurion 25 cents, — about $46 and $92 per year respectively. But in successful campaigns the soldiers had a share of the booty (*praeda*), consisting largely of captives, who were sold as slaves. These were bought up on the spot by the traders, and thus readily turned into cash. Sometimes Caesar gave money realized from the sale of booty (*praemium*); thus after the conquest of the Bituriges he promised the common soldiers

200 sesterces (about $8.00) apiece, the centurions 2,000 sesterces (about $80.00). As other rewards (*praemia*), the commander could grant to those not Romans the right of citizenship, and to Romans of low degree the right of wearing a gold ring. He could also make special gifts (*dona*), such as military decorations of metal for the breast (*phalerae*), corresponding to our medallions; chains (*torques*); rings for the arms (*armillae*); little silver or gold spears (*hastae purae*) or shields (*parmae purae*); sacrificial bowls (*paterae sacrificiales*); grain and wine; several kinds of crowns of oak-leaves, or even wrought with gold (*coronae*). The crown of laurel leaves was bestowed on the victorious commander. At the close of his period of service (twenty years for the infantry, ten years for cavalry), or on reaching his fiftieth year, the soldier who had served well was entitled to an honorable discharge (*missio honesta*). When released on account of health or disablement he received an invalid's discharge (*missio causaria*). The general sometimes granted a discharge by favor (*missio gratiosa*). On account of cowardly or disgraceful conduct the soldier was deprived of his weapons and driven from the camp (*exaucto ratio ignominiosa*), or in extreme cases put to death.

iv. The Army on the March.

On the march the army usually advanced in three divisions, — the van (*agmen primum*), the main force (*exercitus, agmen legionum*), and the rear (*agmen novissimum*).

The **van** was made up of light-armed infantry and cavalry, and had three special functions, — *a.* To spy out the country through scouts (*exploratores*); to report the presence of the enemy and any other important information or discoveries; and when in the vicinity of the foe to ascertain his strength, disposition, and the like. The desired knowledge was frequently obtained by capturing in sudden sallies peasants and stragglers, and obliging these to reveal the facts, even by means of tortures. *b.* To hold an attacking force at bay until the legions

could form in battle-order, and to guard the crossings of rivers. *c.* To hinder the escape of a fleeing enemy till the main force could come up and complete the victory.

The **main force** marched sometimes in a single column, each legion followed by its own baggage-train; sometimes in a column with the baggage-trains of all the legions together; sometimes in battle array with the baggage under strong guard at some distance, either on one side or behind. The last order of march was observed only when in the neighborhood of a threatening foe.

The **rear** was made up either of cavalry and light-armed troops or of legion-soldiers, detached from the main force to repel any attack from behind. In dangerous regions, where the nature of the country allowed, a hollow square was formed. In such cases a part of the main force drawn up in battle-order in three ranks took the front; a like detachment held the rear; two other detachments, generally of the cavalry and light-armed troops, closed in the sides. In the middle of the figure thus formed the baggage-trains were placed.

The regular day's march (*iter iustum*) was from six to seven hours long. The start was usually made at sunrise; but in special emergencies the army got under way at midnight, or two or three o'clock in the morning. The distance ordinarily traversed was thirty thousand paces (*passus*), between 15 and 20 miles; the Roman military pace was shorter than the common *passus* (cf. N. to p. 48, 16). But on forced marches (*itinera magna*) of eight to twelve hours much greater distances were made, — as fifty thousand paces. Rivers were crossed by means of bridges, either permanent or hastily constructed, and by fording.

On the march the soldier carried, besides his food-supply, his cooking utensils (*vasa*), his arms, blanket, and two rampart stakes (*valli*). The luggage was done up in a tight bundle (*sarcinae;* see pl. III. 4), which was fastened to a forked pole, and thus raised over the shoulder. This arrangement was introduced by Marius, in memory of whom soldiers so equipped were called "mules of Marius" (*muli Mariani*). The helmet

was hung by a cord from the neck, the other weapons disposed of in the most convenient way. When it rained, the oblong shields (*scuta*) were put over the head like a roof. The entire weight of each legion soldier's burden must have been from fifty to sixty pounds, — and much more than this when, on special service, rations were served out for twenty or twenty-five days. The infantry of our day are not expected to carry more than forty-five pounds apiece. When preparing for battle the legion soldiers cast off their luggage, either leaving it in camp or depositing it in heaps in a guarded place.

v. The Army in Camp.

The Roman camp was laid out, fortified, and guarded with great care. Even when the army was to remain in a place but a single night the same precautions were taken as if a stay of weeks was intended. When the army was on the march, men were sent forward to choose a suitable location for a camp and measure it off (*castra metari*; the surveyors were called *castrorum metatores* or *mensores*). Whenever possible, a site was selected on a slight elevation (*locus superior*), with abundance of water and of wood for fuel near at hand. The proximity of a dense forest or overhanging mountain was avoided, that a favorable opportunity of attack might not be given to the enemy. When possible, the rear or one side was placed facing a river.

The camp was usually square or oblong; in a few cases we read of camps of other shapes adapted to the nature of the ground. First an embankment was thrown up on all sides. Outside of this was a ditch, from which the earth for it was taken. On the outer edge of the embankment a row of strong stakes or palisades (*valli*) was driven firmly in. The rampart thus made (*vallum*) was several feet high and wide enough for the soldiers to stand on behind the palisades. The ditch (*fossa*) was from nine to twelve feet wide, and from seven to nine feet deep. When the army expected to remain in the same place for a long time (*castra statīva*), sometimes watch-towers were

added at certain intervals, and the intervening spaces further protected by a roof. (See pl. VI. 6.) The labor of fortifying a camp was prodigious; the ease and quickness with which the work was done are a testimony to the endurance of the Roman soldiers. The system was in every way productive of the best results. It lessened greatly the chances of successful night attacks by the enemy; and it made the army more independent, ready to stand wholly on the defensive if need be. Modern generals are returning in this respect to the Roman tactics, and while in the enemy's country they rarely pass a night without throwing up breastworks and making use of whatever means of fortifying may be at hand. In our recent War for the Union not infrequently barrels or hogsheads filled with earth took the place of the Roman rampart.

The camp had four gates (see pl. IV. 10). That in the direction of the advance, toward the enemy, was called the *porta praetoria;* the one opposite to this, at the rear, *porta decumana;* those on the right and left side respectively, as one faced the front, *porta principalis dextra* and *porta principalis sinistra.* The last two were connected by the chief street (*via principalis*), from the middle point of which another street (*via praetoria*) ran to the *porta praetoria.* Parallel with the *via principalis* on the side towards the rear ran another important street, the *via quintana.* In the middle of the camp a large oblong space was set off for the general's tent, the headquarters (*praetorium*). Behind this was the quaestor's place (*quaestorium*). Just inside the *porta decumana* were the booths of the traders. Inside the rampart, between it and the tents, a vacant space two hundred feet wide was left for wagons and animals. The remaining room in the inclosure was systematically divided, so that every maniple knew its place and could find its quarters at once. The tents were of leather, of the shape of huts (see pl. V. 3). Each was calculated to hold ten men; but a centurion seems generally to have had one to himself. In a hostile region a strong guard was always kept before the gates; and the entrances were made more easily defensible by a winding

approach. The night, from sunset to sunrise, was divided into four watches (*vigilia*), called *prima nox*, *nox concubia* (ending at midnight), *nox media*, and *gallicinium*. The password of the sentinels, different each night, was written on slips of wood, given by the commander to the military tribunes, and passed by these to the men on duty.

The winter quarters (*hiberna*, or *castra hiberna*) were made more comfortable than the ordinary encampments, by the substitution of rude huts for tents. Many Roman camps became the nucleus of permanent settlements, which exist still in cities of to-day. In several towns which originated thus the plan of the Roman camp can be clearly seen in the arrangement of streets and the surrounding wall. The most marked instance of this is in the city of Chester, England, the name of which also is derived from *castra* (so too Rochester, from *Rodolphi castra*, "Rudolph's Camp," and all names of cities ending in *-chester;* compare Lincoln, from *Lindi colonia*). An idea of the size of a Roman camp may be gained from the fact that Chester contains about thirty-five thousand inhabitants, most of whom live within the limits of the wall that replaced the ancient rampart. The four gates remain, doubtless, in the places designated by the Roman surveyors. The two main streets were levelled by the Romans, and where they cross at right angles the rock was cut down four to ten feet. Many relics of antiquity have been dug up in and about the town.

vi. The Army in Battle Array.

The usual battle order of the legion-soldiers was a threefold line (*acies triplex*) made by arranging the maniples in three rows or ranks. Between the maniples of each row there was left space about equal in width to the face of the maniple; and the maniples of each row stood opposite the vacant spaces of the other row nearest to it, like the squares on a checker-board (see pl. V. 4). If the front rank was hard pressed, either it retreated into the spaces of the second, or the maniples of the

second advanced into the spaces of the first and bore the brunt. The third rank took up its position a little farther behind the second than the second behind the first, so that it could be readily ordered to any point where help might be most needed. The soldiers of this rank waited on one knee with their shields in front of them until bidden by the commander to rise (*consurgite, triarii!*) and charge. If the enemy threatened from different quarters at the same time, the form of the front was varied to suit the circumstances. Thus at times the line of battle presented the shape of a hollow square, a circle, a half moon, etc. The place of the light-armed troops and cavalry was on the wings; that is, on the right and the left of the front presented by the legion-soldiers. They opened the engagement by skirmishing, prevented flank movements of the enemy, drew on themselves the brunt of the attack if the legions wished to take another position, and were employed in various other ways as occasion demanded. The cavalry in particular followed up the victory.

vii. Operations against Fortified Places.

The taking of walled towns was accomplished either by sudden storming without long preparation (*oppugnatio repentina*), or by regular siege (*obsidio*, or *obsessio*). The former was not attempted unless there was good prospect of success. In such cases the forces rushed forward, tried to batter down the gates, fill up the moat (*fossas complere*), mount the walls with ladders (*scalae*), — in short, endeavored in every way to get into the place. The siege was a work of months. It aimed to hedge in the enemy and bring him to terms through starvation, or to destroy his defences or make them useless by means of counter-works. After the enemy had been so weakened that an attack would probably reduce him, and after the preparations were completed, a final assault was made.

The siege was begun by extending a line of works (*circumvallatio*), in case the nature of the site allowed, entirely around the place to be reduced. Then a high and wide mound

of earth and timber (*agger*) was begun just outside the reach of the enemy's weapons, and gradually prolonged directly toward the city wall, and raised until the top was on a level with this, or even higher. In the *agger* there were passage-ways through which the materials for the structure could be safely carried. The workmen at the front were protected by movable breast-works (*plutei;* see pl. VI. 4, 5), or by sheds resting on wheels (*vineae;* see plate VI. 9), made of timber or of raw-hides stretched over thick wickerwork. Rows of *vineae* were placed along the sides of the *agger* to afford passage-ways to the front (see pl. VI. 2). High movable towers (*turres ambulatoriae*) were filled with soldiers and brought up near the walls (see pl. VI. 7; pl. I). In the lowest storey of the movable tower, or under a separate roof, was the battering ram (*aries*), an enormous beam with a metallic head swung against the walls with terrific force (see pl. V. 1). There were also several kinds of machines (*tormenta*) for hurling great missiles against the wall or over into the city. Of these the most important were: *a.* the catapult (*catapulta;* see pl. VI. 8) for shooting immense arrows; *b.* the ballista (*ballista;* see pl. V. 8), which was constructed on the same principle as the catapult, but cast stones instead of arrows; its missiles often weighed a hundred pounds or more, and could be thrown any distance up to half a mile; *c.* the wild ass (*onager;* see pl. V. 7) which hurled stones and masses often to immense distances.

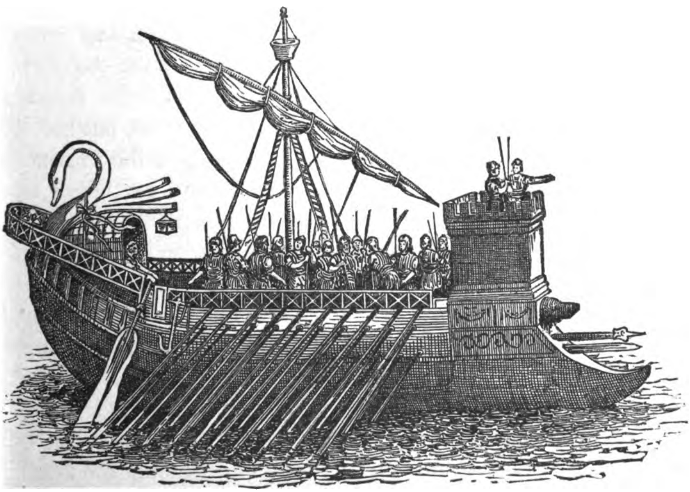
The other operations of the siege varied according to circumstances. Where the ground allowed, the walls were undermined and tunnels run under the town. Meanwhile, of course, the besieged were not idle. Mines they met by counter-mines. With great hooks they tried to catch the head of the battering ram and hold it, or let down masses of wood or wickerwork along the side of the wall to deaden the force of the blow. By frequent sallies (*eruptiones*) they endeavored to destroy the works of the besiegers, drove the workmen from their posts, hurled fire-brands into the sheds, towers, and even into the *agger*. Sometimes the work of weeks or months was thus in a short time destroyed.

Owing to the amount of wood used the danger from fire was ever great. Not infrequently even parts of the *agger* were burned. When a breach had been made in the wall, or a gate battered down, an attack was begun on all sides where it was thought possible to force an entrance. Effort was made to connect the *agger* or towers with the top of the wall by means of planks and beams thrown across (see pl. I). Whole maniples, by holding their oblong shields close together above their heads, formed a *testudo,* under cover of which they marched up to the walls and tried to scale them, or entered the breach (see pl. V. 6). The shields were so firmly held that a second detachment sometimes mounted over the heads of the first, and in a few instances even war-chariots were driven over the *testudo.* The name *testudo* was also employed to designate a peculiar form of the *vinea* used by the besiegers (see pl. V. 10). So carefully planned were their works, so powerful their military engines, and so irresistible their onset, that the Romans rarely failed in reducing a city which they had determined to take.

viii. The Roman War-ships.

The war-ships (*naves longae*) of Caesar's time rarely had more than a single sail, and were propelled mainly by means of oars. There were usually three rows or banks of oars one above the other (*triremes*); but we read of vessels with one, two, four, and even five banks of oars. The rowers kept time to the sound of a horn or click of a hammer. The rudder (*gubernaculum*) was not like those of to-day, but consisted of a wide blade like a large paddle thrust down into the sea on one or both sides of the stern. The anchor was much like those of our time. At the prow, just above the water, was the ship's beak (*rostra*), consisting of one or more sharp metal-pointed beams thrust out some distance, the aim of which was to pierce the side of the enemy's vessel. On the fore part of the ship there were usually a tower from which missiles could be hurled over into a vessel near at hand, a lot of grappling hooks by which the opposing

ship might be seized, and a movable bridge that could be thrown across in boarding. The stern was often ornamented with a swan's head and other devices. The ships had particular names, as Aquila, Apollo, Spes, and the like. The flag was square or oblong (*vexillum*); that of the admiral's vessel was distinguished by a purple color. The size of the war-ships varied greatly; the average length of the *triremes* was perhaps a hundred and fifty feet, — breadth, twenty feet. Ships built for quick movement, for inspecting the enemy's strongholds and harbors, and similar undertakings (*naves actuariae*), were smaller and lighter. The despatch vessels (*naves tabellariae*) were very narrow and carried many sails, being provided generally with but one bank of oars. The Roman naval tactics consisted mainly in either propelling a vessel with great force against a rival and crushing the side, or in catching hold of the hostile craft with hooks, pulling alongside, springing over on it, and settling the conflict with a hand-to-hand fight. The admiral was called *praefectus classis*.



III. THE THEATRE OF THE GALLIC WAR.

i. Gaul.

1. *The Land and the Peoples of Gaul.*

The word *Gallia* was used by the Romans in three different ways. *a.* In its broadest sense it included *Gallia Cisalpīna*, north Italy, and *Gallia Transalpīna*, a vast region which comprised all of France, the greater part of Switzerland, and the western portion of Germany, with Holland and Belgium. *b.* In a narrower sense *Gallia* embraced only *Gallia Transalpina;* with this meaning we use the word "Gaul." *c.* In its most restricted use *Gallia* was applied to the land of the *Galli*, the middle part of Gaul. In Caesar, *Gallia* alone usually refers to *Gallia Transalpina*, "Gaul." According to him it falls into three parts: *a.* The land of the Belgae, in the northeast, between the Seine, the Marne, and the Rhine. *b.* The land of the Celtae, or Galli, in the central part between the Seine, the Marne, and the Garonne. *c.* The land of the Aquitani, in the south, between the Garonne and the Pyrenees. Besides these divisions, however, properly belonging to Gaul, but before Caesar's time already subject to the Romans, was the Province (*provincia*) lying along the southeast coast, and extending for some distance back into the interior. (See map).

The chief mountains of Gaul were: *a. Alpes*, the Alps, of which the western and southern part (the French and the Swiss Alps) were known to Caesar. *b. Mons Cevenna*, the Cévennes, west of the Rhone. *c. Montes Pyrenaei*, the Pyrenees, on the border towards Spain (*Hispania*). *d. Mons Iura*, the Jura, between the headwaters of the Rhone and the Rhine. *e. Mons Vosĕgus*, the Vosges, north of the Jura, and west of the Rhine. *f. Mons* (and *Silva*) *Arduenna*, Ardennes, on both sides of the Meuse.

The most important rivers of Gaul were: *a. Rhodănus*, the Rhone, which flows through the Lake of Geneva (*Lacus Lemannus*), and empties into the Mediterranean near Marseilles (*Massilia*): tributaries, *Arar*, Saône; and *Isăra*, Isère. *b. Garumna*, Garonne, on which was situated the city *Tolosa*, Toulouse. *c. Liger*, Loire, with the town *Cenăbum* (Orléans). *d. Sequăna*, Seine, on which was *Lutetia Parisiorum*, Paris; tributary, *Matrŏna*, Marne. *e. Scaldis*, Schelde. *f. Mosa*, Meuse, or Maas; tributary, *Sabis*, Sambre. *g. Rhenus*, Rhine; tributary, *Mosella*, Mosel.

In Caesar's time all Gaul except the Province was occupied by tribes more or less barbarous, which were divided into three great groups. The most powerful were,—

(1). In the land of the Belgae: *a.* The Trevĕri, along the Mosel. *b.* The Remi, between the Meuse and the Seine (hence the name of the city Rheims). *c.* The Bellovăci, north of the Seine (Beauvais). *d.* The Ambiāni, north of the Bellovăci (Amiens). *e.* The Nervii, along the Schelde. *f.* The Aduatŭci, along the Sambre; these were of German origin. *g.* The Eburones, along the Meuse. *h.* The Morĭni, in the neighborhood of Calais. *i.* The Menapii, on the plain between the lower part of the Meuse and the Schelde.

(2). In the land of the Celtae, or Galli: *a.* The Helvetii, in Switzerland. *b.* The Sequăni, along the Arar; chief city, *Vesontio*, to-day Besançon. *c.* The Aedui, between the Saône and the Loire; chief city, *Bibracte*, Mont Beuvray. *d.* The Senŏnes, about the upper part of the Seine; city, *Agedincum*. *e.* The Carnūtes, on both sides of the Loire; city, *Cenăbum*, Orléans. *f.* The Arverni (compare the modern name Auvergne), in and about the Cévennes Mountains; city, *Gergovia*. *g.* The Bitŭriges, in the most central part of Gaul; city, *Avarĭcum*, Bourges. *h.* The Lingŏnes, about the sources of the Meuse and the Seine; city, *Alesia*, Alise. *i.* The Parisii, in the region of Paris. *j.* The Venĕti, along the west coast, in Brittany.

(3). In the land of the Aquitani there were many small tribes, of which only a few are worthy of special mention:

a. The Sontiates, along the Garonne. *b*. The Vocates, northwest of the Sontiates. *c*. The Tarusates, southwest of the Sontiates. *d*. The Tarbelli, along the west coast near the Pyrenees.

The Belgae and the Celtae belonged mainly to the great Keltic (or Celtic) stock of peoples, which is a branch of the Indo-European family. Hence these had at least a remote kinship with the Greeks and the Romans. The Aquitanian tribes were of different origin, and connected with the Iberians of Spain. Their descendants still survive in the Basques of the Pyrenees.

These many peoples, or states (*civitates*), of Gaul were constantly at war with one another, the stronger striving to extend their sway, the weaker to regain or maintain their independence. In each tribe usually there were two factions, each contending for the mastery. Changes of rulers were very frequent. The power was everywhere in the hands of the nobles and the Druid priests. The common folk were in a condition little better than slavery. This unsettled state of society enabled Caesar not infrequently to further his own ends, by setting one people or one party against the other.

The Druids had great influence. Above the individual, above the state, as endowed with authority from the unseen world they awed into submission the fierce spirit of a people that acknowledged no other control. They alone had knowledge; from generation to generation they handed down by word of mouth a body of doctrines about the universe and life. Believing in the transmigration of souls they exhorted men not to fear death, since immortality must follow. To the Druids was entrusted the administration of justice. Whoso obeyed not their decrees was ever after treated as an outcast. Once a year Druids from all parts of Gaul met in the land of the Carnutes, and settled difficulties between tribes as well as individuals. In Caesar's time the great stronghold of Druidism, however, was not Gaul but Britain. The Gauls were then degenerating. The growth of towns and the increase of wealth had made the distinctions of classes very marked, while the decline of society was hastened

by corrupting contact with the Greeks. The masses were in absolute dependence upon the nobles, in a kind of feudal relation.

2. *History of Gaul.*

FROM a very early period Gauls in great numbers had occasionally invaded or threatened Italy and the countries of the East. Rome itself was sacked by a horde of them under Brennus in B.C. 390; and for nearly three hundred years after that, only the most strenuous efforts kept them at bay. In the third century before Christ a great multitude of Gauls pressed on to Asia Minor and settled there; their descendants were the Galatians, to whom Paul wrote. Yet about 600 B.C. a company of Phocaean Greeks from Asia Minor founded Massilia, and held in subjection a considerable district around it. In 122 B.C. the Romans secured a firm foothold in Gaul by founding the colony of *Aquae Sextiae*, now Aix, near the south coast. Soon Marseilles, by a nominal alliance, became tributary to Rome, and the surrounding region was organized into a province. This now became the seat of war with invading Gauls and Teutons, till the great victory won by Marius at Aix B.C. 102.

The first opportunity Caesar had for interfering in the affairs of Gaul outside the Province was afforded by the attempt of the Helvetii to leave their country and seek a new home to the westward. Soon after, he was asked by several tribes to aid them against the German king Ariovistus. Thus becoming involved in the matters of Gaul, on one pretext or another he pushed his claims and conquests until all the land was in his power. The most formidable foes he met were, besides Ariovistus, the Aeduan Dumnŏrix; Indutiomărus, the leader of the Trevĕri; Ambiŏrix, prince of the Eburones; and greatest of all, Vercingetŏrix.

After the conquest many Roman colonies were settled in Gaul. The country was rapidly Romanized. It was divided by Augustus into four provinces: *a. Narbonensis*, which in territory was the same as the former Provincia; capital, *Narbo*, now

Narbonne. *b. Lugdunensis,* which included most of the central and the eastern parts of Gaul; capital, *Lugdūnum,* now Lyons. *c. Aquitania,* covering not merely the old land of the Aquitani, but the country north as far as the Loire. *d. Belgica,* comprising the rest of Gaul not belonging to the other provinces. The original speech was replaced by the Latin. Roman institutions became everywhere established. The remains of the Roman structures, — amphitheatres, theatres, aqueducts, and the like, — in South France particularly, are most imposing. In Paris one is still shown the now crumbling arches of a Roman bath.

With the downfall of the Roman Empire in the fifth century of our era Gaul was overrun by German tribes, who settled in it as conquerors, not destroying the inhabitants, but holding these as a subject population. The Franks were among the most powerful of the invaders, and gave their name, first, to a district in the northern part; later, to the whole country. From the imposing of new authorities upon an old firmly-established political and social organization arose the Feudal system, with its many gradations of rank and subdivisions of territory, with its restless, turbulent spirit and tendencies to disorder. In the ninth century Gaul formed a part of the empire of Karl the Great (Charlemagne). When this fell to pieces the land was rent with turmoils for several hundred years, until out of the various discordant elements the French monarchy was developed. This became a republic in the latter part of the last century, and has vacillated between monarchy and democracy ever since.

But amid all these changes, from the Roman period till now, there has been a continuity of life, language, and institutions. The Latin gradually became transformed into the French. The origin of many a local custom to-day is to be sought in remote antiquity. Many a town of France has in its municipal organization peculiarities that point back to the laws of the Roman Empire. It is said that not a few of the territorial divisions of the French Republic are on the old boundary lines of Gallic tribes; that down to 1789, indeed, the local limits of Gaul remained substantially unchanged. Physically, politically, and

socially the French show the traits, tendencies, and spirit of their Gallic ancestors. Other race elements have been infused, yet the Gauls form the basis of the French nation. On the heights of Alise (ancient *Alesia*), where the bravest and noblest of the Gauls made the last struggle for freedom, there is a monument, the inscription on which translated reads, "Napoleon III., Emperor of the French, to the memory of Vercingetorix." This is not misplaced sentiment; the French have still the same love of glory and love of freedom that urged on Vercingetorix.

ii. Germany.

Before Caesar's time Germany (*Germania*) was to the Romans an unknown land. Caesar himself has left but little information about it. According to him its boundaries were the Rhine and the Danube. Through the whole country stretched a vast forest (*Silva Hercynia*), sixty days' journey long and nine days' journey wide. Of the peoples the most important were: *a.* The Suebi, Swabians, in the middle of the country, powerful and much feared on all sides. *b.* The Ubii, dwelling next to the Rhine, friendly to Caesar. *c.* The Sugambri, north of the Ubii. *d.* The Usipĕtes, north of the Sugambri. *e.* The Cherusci, between the Elbe and the Weser. The Sugambri and the Usipĕtes, being driven out by the Suebi, came over into Gaul, whence they were forced back by Caesar. Some victories over the German tribes were gained under Augustus and others of the early Emperors, but the country was never subdued by the Romans, except the borders along the Rhine and the Danube. There are remains of an old Roman tower and aqueduct at Mainz (French, Mayence). A Roman colony was founded where Vienna now stands, and Trajan built a road along the Danube.

iii. Britain.

The British Isles (Lat. *Britannia*, *Britannicae Insulae*) were early known to the Greeks through the Phoenician traders, but Caesar is the first ancient writer who gives any account of them

from personal observation. In neither of his expeditions to England did he penetrate far into the country, and not a few of the statements he makes about it are inaccurate or erroneous. He thought the land stretched much farther than it does to the southwest, and lay towards Spain. The principal tribe in his time was the Trinobantes, who lived north of the Thames (*Tamesis*). Of Ireland he knew nothing further than the name (*Hibernia*), and that it was about half the size of Britain proper. England was thoroughly subdued by the Romans in the latter part of the first century A. D. Many traces of Roman towns, roads, and other evidences of occupation are still to be seen. From the Latin *strata* our word "street" directly comes. In the fifth century England was overrun by Low-German tribes, among them the Angles and Saxons, who form the basis of the English people.

IV. CONTENTS OF THE 'DE BELLO GALLICO.'

THE seven books of the Gallic War cover each the history of a year; the eighth book, added by Hirtius, extends over two years. Thus:—

Book	B.C.	A.U.C.	Consuls.
I.	58	696	L. Calpurnius Piso, A. Gabinius.
II.	57	697	P. Cornelius Lentulus Spinther, Q. Caecilius Metellus Nepos.
III.	56	698	Cn. Cornelius Lentulus Marcellinus, L. Marcius Philippus.
IV.	55	699	Cn. Pompeius Magnus, M. Licinius Crassus.
V.	54	700	L. Domitius Ahenobarbus, Appius Claudius Pulcher.
VI.	53	701	Cn. Domitius Calvinus, M. Valerius Messala.
VII.	52	702	Cn. Pompeius Magnus, Q. Metellus Scipio.
VIII.	51–50	703–4	Ser. Sulpicius Rufus, M. Claudius Marcellus. L. Aemilius Paullus, C. Claudius Marcellus.

Only the general contents of the separate books are here given. For fuller outline consult the running summary in the text.

BOOK I. 58 B.C.

Introductory: Gaul in Caesar's time. Chapter 1.

i. The War with the Helvetii. 2–29.

ii. The War with Ariovistus. 30–54.

BOOK II. 57 B.C.

i. Conspiracy of the Belgae. The War. 1–33.

ii. Expedition of P. Crassus to the Western Coast. 34.

iii. Events after the Reduction of the Belgae. 35.

Book III. 56 B.C.

i. The War in the Alps. 1-6.
ii. The War with the Venĕti. 7-16.
iii. The War with the Venelli. 17-19.
iv. The Operations of P. Crassus in Aquitania. 20-27.
v. The Expedition of Caesar against the Morĭni and the Menapii. 28-29.

Book IV. 55 B.C.

i. The War with the Usipetes and the Tencteri. 1-15.
ii. Caesar's Expedition against the Germans. 16-19.
iii. Caesar's first crossing over to Britain. 20-36.
iv. The Uprising of the Morĭni and Menapii. 37-38.

Book V. 54 B.C.

i. Caesar's Second Expedition to Britain. 1-23.
ii. The War with Ambiŏrix. 24-54.
iii. The Revolt of the Trevĕri. 55-58.

Book VI. 53 B.C.

i. General Uprising in Gaul. 1-8.
ii. Expedition against the Suebi. 9-28.
iii. Punishment of Ambiŏrix and the Eburones. 29-44.

Book VII. 52 B.C.

The League of all Gaul, under the leadership of Vercingetorix, against Caesar; the final supremacy of Caesar. 1-90.

C. IULI CAESARIS

DE BELLO GALLICO

COMMENTARIUS PRIMUS.

Gaul and its peoples.

I. Gallia est omnis divisa in partes tres, quarum unam incolunt Belgae, aliam Aquitani, tertiam, qui ipsorum lingua Celtae, nostra Galli appellantur. Hi omnes lingua, institutis, legibus inter se differunt. Gallos ab Aquitanis Garumna flumen, a Belgis Matrŏna et Sequăna dividit. Horum omnium fortissimi sunt Belgae, propterea quod a cultu atque humanitate provinciae longissime absunt, minimeque ad eos mercatores saepe commeant, atque ea quae ad effeminandos animos pertinent, important; proximique sunt Germanis, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, quibuscum continenter bellum gerunt. Qua de causa Helvetii quoque reliquos Gallos virtute praecedunt, quod fere cotidianis proeliis cum Germanis contendunt, cum aut suis finibus eos prohibent, aut ipsi in eorum finibus bellum gerunt. Eorum una pars, quam Gallos obtinere dictum est, initium capit a flumine Rhodăno; continetur Garumna flumine, Oceăno, finibus Belgarum; attingit etiam ab Sequănis et Helvetiis flumen Rhenum; vergit ad septentriones. Belgae ab extremis Galliae finibus oriuntur; pertinent ad inferiorem partem fluminis Rheni; spectant in septentrionem et orientem solem. Aquitania a Garumna flumine ad Pyrenaeos montes et eam partem Oceani, quae est ad Hispaniam, pertinet; spectat inter occasum solis et septentriones.

Orgetorix, a Helvetian, persuades his countrymen to migrate.

II. Apud Helvetios longe nobilissimus fuit et ditissimus Orgetŏrix. Is, M. Messāla et M. Pisōne consulibus, regni cupiditate inductus coniurationem nobilitatis fecit, et civitati persuasit, ut de finibus suis cum omnibus copiis exirent: perfacile esse, cum virtute omnibus praestarent, totius Galliae imperio potiri. Id hoc facilius eis persuasit, quod undique loci natura Helvetii continentur: una ex parte flumine Rheno, latissimo atque altissimo, qui agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit; altera ex parte monte Iura altissimo, qui est inter Sequanos et Helvetios; tertia lacu Lemanno et flumine Rhodano, qui provinciam nostram ab Helvetiis dividit. His rebus fiebat, ut et minus late vagarentur et minus facile finitimis bellum inferre possent; qua ex parte homines bellandi cupidi magno dolore afficiebantur. Pro multitudine autem hominum et pro gloria belli atque fortitudinis angustos se finis habere arbitrabantur, qui in longitudinem milia passuum CCXL, in latitudinem CLXXX patebant.

They make preparations; Orgetorix plots, is caught, dies.

III. His rebus adducti et auctoritate Orgetorigis permoti constituerunt, ea, quae ad proficiscendum pertinerent, comparare, iumentorum et carrorum quam maximum numerum coëmere, sementes quam maximas facere, ut in itinere copia frumenti suppeteret, cum proximis civitatibus pacem et amicitiam confirmare. Ad eas res conficiendas biennium sibi satis esse duxerunt: in tertium annum profectionem lege confirmant. Ad eas res conficiendas Orgetorix deligitur. Is sibi legationem ad civitates suscepit. In eo itinere persuadet Castĭco, Catamantaloedis filio, Sequano, cuius pater regnum in Sequanis multos annos obtinuerat et a senatu populi Romani amicus appellatus erat, ut regnum in civitate sua occuparet, quod pater ante habuerat; itemque Dumnorĭgi Aeduo, fratri Divitiăci, qui eo tempore principatum in civitate obtinebat ac maxime plebi acceptus erat, ut idem conaretur, persuadet, eique filiam suam in matrimonium dat. Perfacile factu esse illis probat conata perficere, propterea quod ipse

suae civitatis imperium obtenturus esset; non esse dubium, quin totius Galliae plurimum Helvetii possent; se suis copiis suoque exercitu illis regna conciliaturum confirmat. Hac oratione adducti inter se fidem et iusiurandum dant, et regno occupato per tres potentissimos ac firmissimos populos totius Galliae sese potiri posse sperant.

IV. Ea res est Helvetiis per indicium enuntiata. Moribus suis Orgetorigem ex vinclis causam dicere coëgerunt. Damnatum poenam sequi oportebat, ut igni cremaretur. Die constituta causae dictionis Orgetorix ad iudicium omnem suam familiam, ad hominum milia decem, undique coëgit, et omnes clientes obaeratosque suos, quorum magnum numerum habebat, eodem conduxit; per eos, ne causam diceret, se eripuit. Cum civitas ob eam rem incitata armis ius suum exsequi conaretur, multitudinemque hominum ex agris magistratus cogerent, Orgetorix mortuus est; neque abest suspicio, ut Helvetii arbitrantur, quin ipse sibi mortem consciverit.

The Helvetii get ready; they plan to go through the Province.

V. Post eius mortem nihilo minus Helvetii id, quod constituerant, facere conantur, ut e finibus suis exeant. Ubi iam se ad eam rem paratos esse arbitrati sunt, oppida sua omnia, numero ad duodecim, vicos ad quadringentos, reliqua privata aedificia incendunt, frumentum omne, praeterquam quod secum portaturi erant, comburunt, ut domum reditionis spe sublata paratiores ad omnia pericula subeunda essent; trium mensum molita cibaria sibi quemque domo efferre iubent. Persuadent Rauricis et Tulingis et Latobrigis finitimis, uti eodem usi consilio oppidis suis vicisque exustis una cum eis proficiscantur; Boiosque, qui trans Rhenum incoluerant et in agrum Noricum transierant Noreiamque oppugnarant, receptos ad se socios sibi adsciscunt.

VI. Erant omnino itinera duo, quibus itineribus domo exire possent: unum per Sequanos, angustum et difficile, inter montem Iuram et flumen Rhodanum, vix qua singuli carri ducerentur; mons autem altissimus impendebat, ut facile perpauci prohibere possent; alterum per provinciam nostram, multo facilius atque expeditius, propterea quod inter fines

Helvetiorum et Allobrŏgum, qui nuper pacati erant, Rhodanus fluit isque nonnullis locis vado transitur. Extremum oppidum Allobrogum est proximumque Helvetiorum finibus Genāva. Ex eo oppido pons ad Helvetios pertinet. Allobrogibus sese vel persuasuros, quod nondum bono animo in populum Romanum viderentur, existimabant, vel vi coacturos, ut per suos fines eos ire paterentur. Omnibus rebus ad profectionem comparatis diem dicunt, qua die ad ripam Rhodani omnes conveniant. Is dies erat a. d. v. Kal. Apr. L. Pisone, A. Gabinio consulibus.

Caesar hastens to Geneva; he keeps the Helvetii out of the Province.

VII. Caesari cum id nuntiatum esset, eos per provinciam nostram iter facere conari, maturat ab urbe proficisci et, quam maximis potest itineribus, in Galliam ulteriorem contendit et ad Genavam pervenit. Provinciae toti quam maximum potest militum numerum imperat (erat omnino in Gallia ulteriore legio una), pontem, qui erat ad Genavam, iubet rescindi. Ubi de eius adventu Helvetii certiores facti sunt, legatos ad eum mittunt nobilissimos civitatis, cuius legationis Nammeius et Verucloetius principem locum obtinebant, qui dicerent, sibi esse in animo sine ullo maleficio iter per provinciam facere, propterea quod aliud iter haberent nullum; rogare, ut eius voluntate id sibi facere liceat. Caesar, quod memŏria tenebat, L. Cassium consulem occisum exercitumque eius ab Helvetiis pulsum et sub iugum missum, concedendum non putabat; neque homines inimico animo, data facultate per provinciam itineris faciundi, temperaturos ab iniuria et maleficio existimabat. Tamen, ut spatium intercedere posset, dum milites, quos imperaverat, convenirent, legatis respondit, diem se ad deliberandum sumpturum; si quid vellent, ad Id. April. reverterentur.

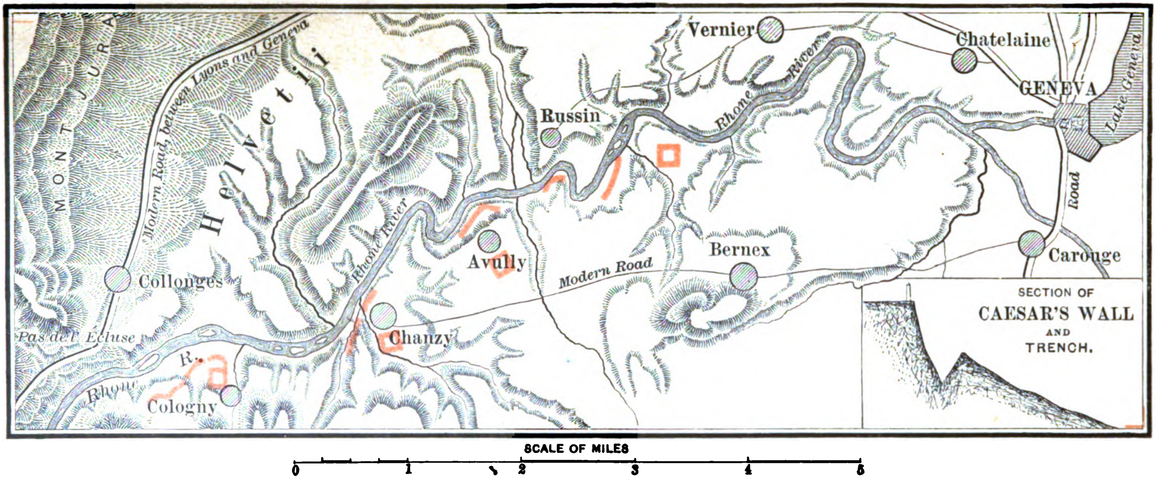
VIII. Interea ea legione, quam secum habebat, militibusque, qui ex provincia convenerant, a lacu Lemanno, qui in flumen Rhodanum influit, ad montem Iuram, qui fines Sequanorum ab Helvetiis dividit, milia passuum decem novem murum in altitudinem pedum sedecim fossamque perducit.

CAESAR'S LINE OF WORKS ALONG THE RHONE FROM GENEVA TO PAS DE L'ÉCLUSE.

To face p. 50.

Lib. I. c. 8.sqq.

PLAN I.



EXPLANATION. Caesar's Intrenchment, *murus fossaque.* Redoubts, *castella.*
The Rhone is represented as widened in certain parts, as it is supposed to have been in the time of Caesar.

Eo opere perfecto praesidia disponit, castella communit, quo facilius, si se invito transire conarentur, prohibere possit. Ubi ea dies, quam constituerat cum legatis, venit, et legati ad eum reverterunt, negat, se more et exemplo populi Romani posse iter ulli per provinciam dare; et, si vim facere conentur, prohibiturum ostendit. Helvetii, ea spe deiecti, navibus iunctis ratibusque compluribus factis, alii vadis Rhodani, qua minima altitudo fluminis erat, nonnumquam interdiu, saepius noctu, si perrumpere possent, conati, operis munitione et militum concursu et telis repulsi hoc conatu destiterunt.

They get leave to go through the land of the Sequani.

IX. Relinquebatur una per Sequanos via, qua Sequanis invitis propter angustias ire non poterant. His cum sua sponte persuadere non possent, legatos ad Dumnorigem Aeduum mittunt, ut eo deprecatore a Sequanis impetrarent. Dumnorix gratia et largitione apud Sequanos plurimum poterat, et Helvetiis erat amicus, quod ex ea civitate Orgetorigis filiam in matrimonium duxerat, et cupiditate regni adductus novis rebus studebat, et quam plurimas civitates suo beneficio habere obstrictas volebat. Itaque rem suscipit, et a Sequanis impetrat, ut per fines suos Helvetios ire patiantur, obsidesque uti inter sese dent perficit: Sequani, ne itinere Helvetios prohibeant; Helvetii, ut sine maleficio et iniuria transeant.

Caesar fetches five legions from Italy; the Aedui and others entreat his aid against the Helvetii.

X. Caesari renuntiatur, Helvetiis esse in animo per agrum Sequanorum et Aeduorum iter in Santŏnum fines facere, qui non longe a Tolosatium finibus absunt, quae civitas est in provincia. Id si fieret, intellegebat, magno cum periculo provinciae futurum, ut homines bellicosos, populi Romani inimicos, locis patentibus maximeque frumentariis finitimos haberet. Ob eas causas ei munitioni, quam fecerat, T. Labienum legatum praefecit; ipse in Italiam magnis itineribus contendit duasque ibi legiones conscribit, et tres, quae circum Aquileiam hiemabant, ex hibernis educit, et qua proximum

iter in ulteriorem Galliam per Alpes erat, cum his quinque legionibus ire contendit. Ibi Ceutrōnes et Graiocēli et Catu-rĭges locis superioribus occupatis itinere exercitum prohibere conantur. Compluribus his proeliis pulsis, ab Ocēlo, quod est citerioris provinciae extremum, in fines Vocontiorum ulterioris provinciae die septimo pervenit; inde in Allobrŏgum fines, ab Allobrogibus in Segusiāvos exercitum ducit. Hi sunt extra provinciam trans Rhodanum primi.

XI. Helvetii iam per angustias et fines Sequanorum suas copias traduxerant, et in Aeduorum fines pervenerant eorumque agros populabantur. Aedui, cum se suaque ab eis defendere non possent, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt rogatum auxilium: Ita se omni tempore de populo Romano meritos esse, ut paene in conspectu exercitus nostri agri vastari, liberi eorum in servitutem abduci, oppida expugnari non debuerint. Eodem tempore Aedui Ambarri, necessarii et consanguinei Aeduorum, Caesarem certiorem faciunt, sese depopulatis agris non facile ab oppidis vim hostium prohibere. Item Allobrŏges, qui trans Rhodanum vicos possessionesque habebant, fuga se ad Caesarem recipiunt, et demonstrant, sibi praeter agri solum nihil esse reliqui. Quibus rebus adductus Caesar non exspectandum sibi statuit, dum omnibus fortunis sociorum consumptis in Santonos Helvetii pervenirent.

Caesar cuts to pieces one division of the Helvetii by the Arar. The rest send deputies to treat with him.

XII. Flumen est Arar, quod per fines Aeduorum et Sequanorum in Rhodanum influit, incredibili lenitate, ita ut oculis, in utram partem fluat, iudicari non possit. Id Helvetii ratibus ac lintribus iunctis transibant. Ubi per exploratores Caesar certior factus est, tres iam partes copiarum Helvetios id flumen traduxisse, quartam fere partem citra flumen Arărim reliquam esse, de tertia vigilia cum legionibus tribus e castris profectus ad eam partem pervenit, quae nondum flumen transierat. Eos impeditos et inopinantes aggressus magnam partem eorum concidit; reliqui sese fugae mandarunt atque in proximas silvas abdiderunt. Is pagus appella-

batur Tigurinus: nam omnis civitas Helvetia in quattuor pagos divisa est. Hic pagus unus, cum domo exisset patrum nostrorum memoria, L. Cassium consulem interfecerat et eius exercitum sub iugum miserat. Ita sive casu sive consilio deorum immortalium, quae pars civitatis Helvetiae insignem calamitatem populo Romano intulerat, ea princeps poenas persolvit. Qua in re Caesar non solum publicas, sed etiam privatas iniurias ultus est, quod eius soceri L. Pisonis avum, L. Pisonem legatum, Tigurini eodem proelio, quo Cassium, interfecerant.

XIII. Hoc proelio facto reliquas copias Helvetiorum ut consequi posset, pontem in Arare faciendum curat, atque ita exercitum traducit. Helvetii repentino eius adventu commoti, cum id, quod ipsi diebus xx aegerrime confecerant, ut flumen transirent, illum uno die fecisse intellegerent, legatos ad eum mittunt; cuius legationis Divico princeps fuit, qui bello Cassiano dux Helvetiorum fuerat. Is ita cum Caesare egit: Si pacem populus Romanus cum Helvetiis faceret, in eam partem ituros atque ibi futuros Helvetios, ubi eos Caesar constituisset atque esse voluisset; sin bello persequi perseveraret, reminisceretur et veteris incommodi populi Romani et pristinae virtutis Helvetiorum. Quod improviso unum pagum adortus esset, cum ei, qui flumen transissent, suis auxilium ferre non possent, ne ob eam rem aut suae magnopere virtuti tribueret aut ipsos despiceret; se ita a patribus maioribusque suis didicisse, ut magis virtute quam dolo contenderent aut insidiis niterentur. Quare ne committeret, ut is locus, ubi constitissent, ex calamitate populi Romani et internicione exercitus nomen caperet aut memoriam proderet.

They reject Caesar's conditions, and march on; Caesar follows.

XIV. His Caesar ita respondit: Eo sibi minus dubitationis dari, quod eas res, quas legati Helvetii commemorassent, memoria teneret, atque eo gravius ferre, quo minus merito populi Romani accidissent; qui si alicuius iniuriae sibi conscius fuisset, non fuisse difficile cavere; sed eo deceptum, quod neque commissum a se intellegeret, quare timeret, neque sine causa timendum putaret. Quod si veteris contu-

meliae oblivisci vellet, num etiam recentium iniuriarum, quod eo invito iter per provinciam per vim temptassent, quod Aeduos, quod Ambarros, quod Allobrogas vexassent, memoriam deponere posse? Quod sua victoria tam insolenter gloriarentur, quodque tam diu se impune iniurias tulisse admirarentur, eodem pertinere. Consuesse enim deos immortales, quo gravius homines ex commutatione rerum doleant, quos pro scelere eorum ulcisci velint, his secundiores interdum res et diuturniorem impunitatem concedere. Cum ea ita sint, tamen, si obsides ab eis sibi dentur, uti ea, quae polliceantur, facturos intellegat, et si Aeduis de iniuriis, quas ipsis sociisque eorum intulerint, item si Allobrogibus satisfaciant, sese cum eis pacem esse facturum. Divico respondit: Ita Helvetios a maioribus suis institutos esse, uti obsides accipere, non dare, consuerint: eius rei populum Romanum esse testem. Hoc responso dato discessit.

XV. Postero die castra ex eo loco movent. Idem facit Caesar equitatumque omnem, ad numerum quattuor milium, quem ex omni provincia et Aeduis atque eorum sociis coactum habebat, praemittit, qui videant, quas in partes hostes iter faciant. Qui cupidius novissimum agmen insecuti alieno loco cum equitatu Helvetiorum proelium committunt; et pauci de nostris cadunt. Quo proelio sublati Helvetii, quod quingentis equitibus tantam multitudinem equitum propulerant, audacius subsistere nonnumquam et novissimo agmine proelio nostros lacessere coeperunt. Caesar suos a proelio continebat, ac satis habebat in praesentia hostem rapinis, pabulationibus populationibusque prohibere. Ita dies circiter quindecim iter fecerunt, uti inter novissimum hostium agmen et nostrum primum non amplius quinis aut senis milibus passuum interesset.

The Aedui neglect to bring grain; Caesar learns of disloyalty.

XVI. Interim cotidie Caesar Aeduos frumentum, quod essent publice polliciti, flagitare. Nam propter frigora, quod Gallia sub septentrionibus, ut ante dictum est, posita est, non modo frumenta in agris matura non erant, sed ne pabuli quidem satis magna copia suppetebat; eo autem frumento, quod

flumine Arare navibus subvexerat, propterea minus uti poterat, quod iter ab Arare Helvetii averterant, a quibus discedere nolebat. Diem ex die ducere Aedui: conferri, comportari, adesse dicere. Ubi se diutius duci intellexit et diem instare, quo die frumentum militibus metiri oporteret, convocatis eorum principibus, quorum magnam copiam in castris habebat, in his Divitiăco et Lisco, qui summo magistratui praeerat, quem 'vergobretum' appellant Aedui, qui creatur annuus et vitae necisque in suos habet potestatem, graviter eos accusat, quod, cum neque emi neque ex agris sumi posset, tam necessario tempore, tam propinquis hostibus, ab eis non sublevetur, praesertim cum magna ex parte eorum precibus adductus bellum susceperit; multo etiam gravius, quod sit destitutus, queritur.

XVII. Tum demum Liscus oratione Caesaris adductus, quod antea tacuerat, proponit: Esse nonnullos, quorum auctoritas apud plebem plurimum valeat, qui privatim plus possint quam ipsi magistratus. Hos seditiosa atque improba oratione multitudinem deterrere, ne frumentum conferant, quod praestare debeant; si iam principatum Galliae obtinere non possint, Gallorum quam Romanorum imperia praeferre, neque dubitare quin, si Helvetios superaverint Romani, una cum reliqua Gallia Aeduis libertatem sint erepturi. Ab eisdem nostra consilia, quaeque in castris gerantur, hostibus enuntiari: hos a se coerceri non posse. Quin etiam, quod necessariam rem coactus Caesari enuntiarit, intellegere sese, quanto id cum periculo fecerit, et ob eam causam, quam diu potuerit, tacuisse.

The treachery of Dumnorix is proved.

XVIII. Caesar hac oratione Lisci Dumnorĭgem, Divitiăci fratrem, designari sentiebat; sed, quod pluribus praesentibus eas res iactari nolebat, celeriter concilium dimittit, Liscum retinet. Quaerit ex solo ea, quae in conventu dixerat. Dicit liberius atque audacius. Eadem secreto ab aliis quaerit; reperit esse vera: Ipsum esse Dumnorigem, summa audacia, magna apud plebem propter liberalitatem gratia, cupidum rerum novarum. Compluris annos portoria reliquaque omnia

Aeduorum vectigalia parvo pretio redempta habere, propterea quod illo licente contra liceri audeat nemo. His rebus et suam rem familiarem auxisse et facultates ad largiendum magnas comparasse; magnum numerum equitatus suo sumptu semper alere et circum se habere, neque solum domi, sed etiam apud finitimas civitates largiter posse, atque huius potentiae causa matrem in Biturigibus homini illic nobilissimo ac potentissimo collocasse; ipsum ex Helvetiis uxorem habere, sororem ex matre et propinquas suas nuptum in alias civitates collocasse. Favere et cupere Helvetiis propter eam affinitatem, odisse etiam suo nomine Caesarem et Romanos, quod eorum adventu potentia eius deminuta et Divitiacus frater in antiquum locum gratiae atque honoris sit restitutus. Si quid accidat Romanis, summam in spem per Helvetios regni obtinendi venire; imperio populi Romani non modo de regno, sed etiam de ea, quam habeat, gratia desperare. Reperiebat etiam in quaerendo Caesar, quod proelium equestre adversum paucis ante diebus esset factum, initium eius fugae factum a Dumnorige atque eius equitibus (nam equitatui, quem auxilio Caesari Aedui miserant, Dumnorix praeerat): eorum fuga reliquum esse equitatum perterritum.

Caesar consults Divitiacus, for whose sake Dumnorix is pardoned.

XIX. Quibus rebus cognitis, cum ad has suspiciones certissimae res accederent, quod per fines Sequanorum Helvetios traduxisset, quod obsides inter eos dandos curasset, quod ea omnia non modo iniussu suo et civitatis sed etiam inscientibus ipsis fecisset, quod a magistratu Aeduorum accusaretur, satis esse causae arbitrabatur, quare in eum aut ipse animadverteret, aut civitatem animadvertere iuberet. His omnibus rebus unum repugnabat, quod Divitiaci fratris summum in populum Romanum studium, summam in se voluntatem, egregiam fidem, iustitiam, temperantiam cognoverat: nam, ne eius supplicio Divitiaci animum offenderet, verebatur. Itaque prius, quam quicquam conaretur, Divitiacum ad se vocari iubet et, cotidianis interpretibus remotis, per C. Valerium Procillum, principem Galliae provinciae, familiarem

suum, cui summam omnium rerum fidem habebat, cum eo colloquitur; simul commonefacit, quae ipso praesente in concilio Gallorum de Dumnorige sint dicta, et ostendit, quae separatim quisque de eo apud se dixerit. Petit atque hortatur, ut sine eius offensione animi vel ipse de eo causa cognita statuat vel civitatem statuere iubeat.

XX. Divitiacus multis cum lacrimis Caesarem complexus obsecrare coepit, ne quid gravius in fratrem statueret: Scire se, illa esse vera, nec quemquam ex eo plus quam se doloris capere, propterea quod, cum ipse gratia plurimum domi atque in reliqua Gallia, ille minimum propter adulescentiam posset, per se crevisset; quibus opibus ac nervis non solum ad minuendam gratiam, sed paene ad perniciem suam uteretur. Sese tamen et amore fraterno et existimatione vulgi commoveri. Quod si quid ei a Caesare gravius accidisset, cum ipse eum locum amicitiae apud eum teneret, neminem existimaturum, non sua voluntate factum; qua ex re futurum, uti totius Galliae animi a se averterentur. Haec cum pluribus verbis flens a Caesare peteret, Caesar eius dextram prendit; consolatus rogat, finem orandi faciat; tanti eius apud se gratiam esse ostendit, uti et reipublicae iniuriam et suum dolorem eius voluntati ac precibus condonet. Dumnorigem ad se vocat, fratrem adhibet; quae in eo reprehendat, ostendit; quae ipse intellegat, quae civitas queratur, proponit; monet, ut in reliquum tempus omnes suspiciones vitet; praeterita se Divitiaco fratri condonare dicit. Dumnorigi custodes ponit, ut, quae agat, quibuscum loquatur, scire possit.

Caesar plans an attack on the Helvetii. He is misled by a false report.

XXI. Eodem die ab exploratoribus certior factus, hostes sub monte consedisse milia passuum ab ipsius castris octo, qualis esset natura montis et qualis in circuitu ascensus, qui cognoscerent, misit. Renuntiatum est, facilem esse. De tertia vigilia Titum Labienum, legatum pro praetore, cum duabus legionibus et eis ducibus, qui iter cognoverant, summum iugum montis ascendere iubet; quid sui consilii sit, ostendit. Ipse de quarta vigilia eodem itinere, quo hostes

ierant, ad eos contendit equitatumque omnem ante se mittit. P. Considius, qui rei militaris peritissimus habebatur et in exercitu L. Sullae et postea in M. Crassi fuerat, cum exploratoribus praemittitur.

XXII. Prima luce, cum summus mons a Labieno teneretur, ipse ab hostium castris non longius mille et quingentis passibus abesset, neque, ut postea ex captivis comperit, aut ipsius adventus aut Labieni cognitus esset, Considius equo admisso ad eum accurrit, dicit, montem, quem a Labieno occupari voluerit, ab hostibus teneri; id se a Gallicis armis atque insignibus cognovisse. Caesar suas copias in proximum collem subducit, aciem instruit. Labienus, ut erat ei praeceptum a Caesare, ne proelium committeret, nisi ipsius copiae prope hostium castra visae essent, ut undique uno tempore in hostes impetus fieret, monte occupato nostros exspectabat proelioque abstinebat. Multo denique die per exploratores Caesar cognovit, et montem a suis teneri et Helvetios castra movisse et Considium timore perterritum, quod non vidisset, pro viso sibi renuntiasse. Eo die, quo consuerat intervallo, hostes sequitur et milia passuum tria ab eorum castris castra ponit.

Caesar turns to go to Bibracte; the Helvetii follow.

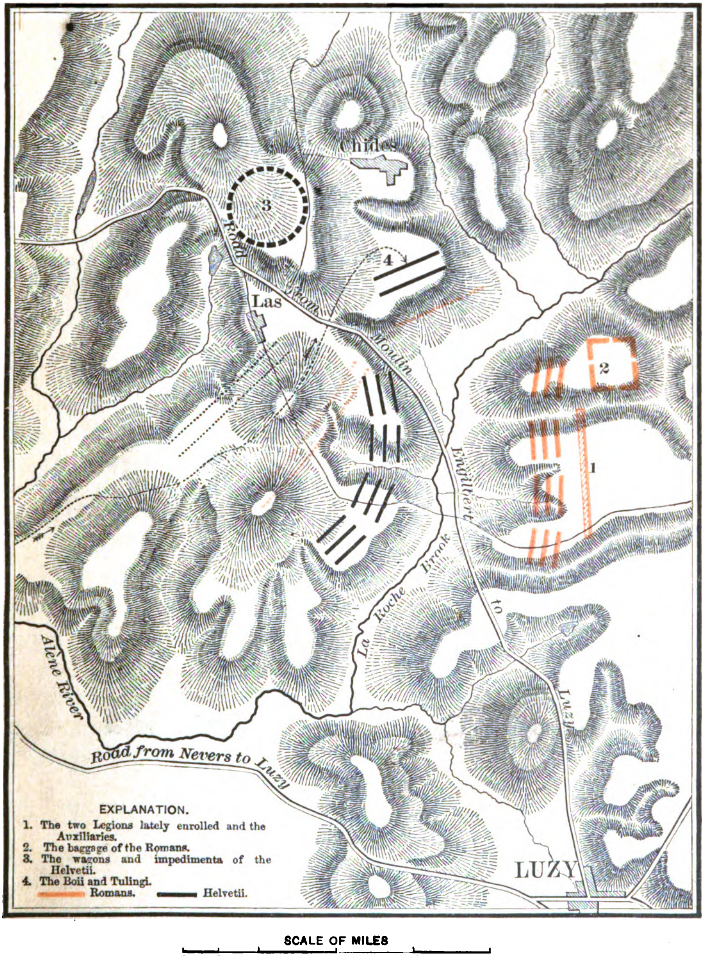
XXIII. Postridie eius diei, quod omnino biduum supererat, cum exercitui frumentum metiri oporteret, et quod a Bibracte, oppido Aeduorum longe maximo et copiosissimo, non amplius milibus passuum XVIII aberat, rei frumentariae prospiciendum existimavit: iter ab Helvetiis avertit ac Bibracte ire contendit. Ea res per fugitivos L. Aemilii, decurionis equitum Gallorum, hostibus nuntiatur. Helvetii, seu quod timore perterritos Romanos discedere a se existimarent, eo magis, quod pridie superioribus locis occupatis proelium non commisissent, sive eo, quod re frumentaria intercludi posse confiderent, commutato consilio atque itinere converso nostros a novissimo agmine insequi ac lacessere coeperunt.

Both prepare for battle. There is sharp fighting.

XXIV. Postquam id animum advertit, copias suas Caesar in proximum collem subducit equitatumque, qui sustineret

BATTLE BETWEEN CAESAR AND THE HELVETII.

To face p. 58. Lib. I. c. 24. sqq. PLAN II.



hostium impetum, misit. Ipse interim in colle medio triplicem aciem instruxit legionum quattuor veteranarum atque supra se in summo iugo duas legiones, quas in Gallia citeriore proxime conscripserat, et omnia auxilia collocavit, ac totum montem hominibus complevit; interea sarcinas in unum locum conferri, et eum ab his, qui in superiore acie constiterant, muniri iussit. Helvetii cum omnibus suis carris secuti impedimenta in unum locum contulerunt; ipsi, confertissima acie reiecto nostro equitatu, phalange facta sub primam nostram aciem successerunt.

XXV. Caesar, primum suo, deinde omnium ex conspectu remotis equis, ut aequato omnium periculo spem fugae tolleret, cohortatus suos proelium commisit. Milites e loco superiore pilis missis facile hostium phalangem perfregerunt. Ea disiecta gladiis destrictis in eos impetum fecerunt. Gallis magno ad pugnam erat impedimento, quod pluribus eorum scutis uno ictu pilorum transfixis et colligatis, cum ferrum se inflexisset, neque evellere neque sinistra impedita satis commode pugnare poterant, multi ut diu iactato brachio praeoptarent scutum manu emittere et nudo corpore pugnare. Tandem vulneribus defessi et pedem referre et, quod mons suberat circiter mille passuum, eo se recipere coeperunt. Capto monte et succedentibus nostris, Boii et Tulingi, qui hominum milibus circiter xv agmen hostium claudebant et novissimis praesidio erant, ex itinere nostros latere aperto aggressi circumvenire, et id conspicati Helvetii, qui in montem sese receperant, rursus instare et proelium redintegrare coeperunt. Romani conversa signa bipertito intulerunt: prima et secunda acies, ut victis ac summotis resisteret, tertia, ut venientes sustineret.

The Helvetii are totally defeated. They surrender.

XXVI. Ita ancipiti proelio diu atque acriter pugnatum est. Diutius cum sustinere nostrorum impetus non possent, alteri se, ut coeperant, in montem receperunt, alteri ad impedimenta et carros suos se contulerunt. Nam hoc toto proelio, cum ab hora septima ad vesperum pugnatum sit, aversum hostem videre nemo potuit. Ad multam noctem etiam ad

impedimenta pugnatum est, propterea quod pro vallo carros obiecerant et e loco superiore in nostros venientes tela coniciebant, et nonnulli inter carros rotasque mataras ac tragulas subiciebant nostrosque vulnerabant. Diu cum esset pugnatum, impedimentis castrisque nostri potiti sunt. Ibi Orgetorigis filia atque unus e filiis captus est. Ex eo proelio circiter hominum milia CXXX superfuerunt eaque tota nocte continenter ierunt; nullam partem noctis itinere intermisso in fines Lingonum die quarto pervenerunt, cum et propter vulnera militum et propter sepulturam occisorum nostri triduum morati eos sequi non potuissent. Caesar ad Lingŏnas litteras nuntiosque misit, ne eos frumento neve alia re iuvarent: qui si iuvissent, se eodem loco, quo Helvetios, habiturum. Ipse triduo intermisso cum omnibus copiis eos sequi coepit.

XXVII. Helvetii omnium rerum inopia adducti legatos de deditione ad eum miserunt. Qui cum eum in itinere convenissent seque ad pedes proiecissent suppliciterque locuti flentes pacem petissent, atque eos in eo loco, quo tum essent, suum adventum exspectare iussisset, paruerunt. Eo postquam Caesar pervenit, obsides, arma, servos, qui ad eos perfugissent, poposcit. Dum ea conquiruntur et conferuntur, nocte intermissa, circiter hominum milia VI eius pagi, qui Verbigenus appellatur, sive timore perterriti, ne armis traditis supplicio afficerentur, sive spe salutis inducti, quod in tanta multitudine dediticiorum suam fugam aut occultari aut omnino ignorari posse existimarent, prima nocte e castris Helvetiorum egressi ad Rhenum finesque Germanorum contenderunt.

Caesar states the terms of submission. The number of the Helvetii.

XXVIII. Quod ubi Caesar resciit, quorum per fines ierant, his, uti conquirerent et reducerent, si sibi purgati esse vellent, imperavit; reductos in hostium numero habuit; reliquos omnes obsidibus, armis, perfugis traditis in deditionem accepit. Helvetios, Tulingos, Latobrigos in fines suos, unde erant profecti, reverti iussit; et, quod omnibus fructibus amissis domi nihil erat, quo famem tolerarent, Allobrogibus imperavit, ut eis frumenti copiam facerent: ipsos oppida

vicosque, quos incenderant, restituere iussit. Id ea maxime ratione fecit, quod noluit, eum locum, unde Helvetii discesserant, vacare, ne propter bonitatem agrorum Germani, qui trans Rhenum incolunt, e suis finibus in Helvetiorum fines transirent et finitimi Galliae provinciae Allobrogibusque essent. Boios, petentibus Aeduis, quod egregia virtute erant cogniti, ut in finibus suis collocarent, concessit; quibus illi agros dederunt quosque postea in parem iuris libertatisque condicionem atque ipsi erant, receperunt.

XXIX. In castris Helvetiorum tabulae repertae sunt litteris Graecis confectae et ad Caesarem relatae, quibus in tabulis nominatim ratio confecta erat, qui numerus domo exisset eorum, qui arma ferre possent, et item separatim pueri, senes mulieresque. Quarum omnium rerum summa erat capitum Helvetiorum milia CCLXIII, Tulingorum milia XXXVI, Latobrigorum XIV, Rauricorum XXIII, Boiorum XXXII; ex his, qui arma ferre possent, ad milia nonaginta duo. Summa omnium fuerunt ad milia CCCLXVIII. Eorum, qui domum redierunt, censu habito, ut Caesar imperaverat, repertus est numerus milium C et X.

The chiefs of Gaul gather to congratulate Caesar.

XXX. Bello Helvetiorum confecto totius fere Galliae legati, principes civitatum, ad Caesarem gratulatum convenerunt: Intellegere sese, tametsi pro veteribus Helvetiorum iniuriis populi Romani ab his poenas bello repetisset, tamen eam rem non minus ex usu terrae Galliae quam populi Romani accidisse, propterea quod eo consilio florentissimis rebus domos suas Helvetii reliquissent, uti toti Galliae bellum inferrent imperioque potirentur locumque domicilio ex magna copia deligerent, quem ex omni Gallia opportunissimum ac fructuosissimum iudicassent, reliquasque civitates stipendiarias haberent. Petierunt, uti sibi concilium totius Galliae in diem certam indicere idque Caesaris voluntate facere liceret: sese habere quasdam res quas ex communi consensu ab eo petere vellent. Ea re permissa diem concilio constituerunt et iureiurando, ne quis enuntiaret, nisi quibus communi consilio mandatum esset, inter se sanxerunt.

He is asked to defend Gaul against Ariovistus.

XXXI. Eo concilio dimisso idem principes civitatum, qui ante fuerant, ad Caesarem reverterunt petieruntque, ut sibi secreto in occulto de sua omniumque salute cum eo agere liceret. Ea re impetrata sese omnes flentes Caesari ad pedes proiecerunt: Non minus se id contendere et laborare, ne ea, quae dixissent, enuntiarentur, quam uti ea, quae vellent, impetrarent, propterea quod, si enuntiatum esset, summum in cruciatum se venturos viderent. Locutus est pro his Divitiacus Aeduus: Galliae totius factiones esse duas: harum alterius principatum tenere Aeduos, alterius Arvernos. Hi cum tantopere de potentatu inter se multos annos contenderent, factum esse, uti ab Arvernis Sequanisque Germani mercede arcesserentur. Horum primo circiter milia xv Rhenum transisse; posteaquam agros et cultum et copias Gallorum homines feri ac barbari adamassent, traductos plures; nunc esse in Gallia ad centum et xx milium numerum. Cum his Aeduos eorumque clientes semel atque iterum armis contendisse; magnam calamitatem pulsos accepisse, omnem nobilitatem, omnem senatum, omnem equitatum amisisse. Quibus proeliis calamitatibusque fractos, qui et sua virtute et populi Romani hospitio atque amicitia plurimum ante in Gallia potuissent, coactos esse Sequanis obsides dare nobilissimos civitatis et iureiurando civitatem obstringere, sese neque obsides repetituros neque auxilium a populo Romano imploraturos, neque recusaturos, quo minus perpetuo sub illorum dicione atque imperio essent. Unum se esse ex omni civitate Aeduorum, qui adduci non potuerit, ut iuraret aut liberos suos obsides daret. Ob eam rem se ex civitate profugisse et Romam ad senatum venisse auxilium postulatum, quod solus neque iureiurando neque obsidibus teneretur. Sed peius victoribus Sequanis quam Aeduis victis accidisse, propterea quod Ariovistus, rex Germanorum, in eorum finibus consedisset tertiamque partem agri Sequani, qui esset optimus totius Galliae, occupavisset, et nunc de altera parte tertia Sequanos decedere iuberet, propterea quod paucis mensibus ante Harudum milia hominum xxiv ad eum venissent, quibus locus ac sedes

pararentur. Futurum esse paucis annis, uti omnes ex Galliae finibus pellerentur atque omnes Germani Rhenum transirent: neque enim conferendum esse Gallicum cum Germanorum agro, neque hanc consuetudinem victus cum illa comparandam. Ariovistum autem, ut semel Gallorum copias proelio vicerit, quod proelium factum sit Admagetobrigae, superbe et crudeliter imperare, obsides nobilissimi cuiusque liberos poscere et in eos omnia exempla cruciatusque edere, si qua res non ad nutum aut ad voluntatem eius facta sit. Hominem esse barbarum, iracundum, temerarium: non posse eius imperia diutius sustinere. Nisi quid in Caesare populoque Romano sit auxilii, omnibus Gallis idem esse faciendum, quod Helvetii fecerint, ut domo emigrent, aliud domicilium, alias sedes, remotas a Germanis, petant fortunamque, quaecumque accidat, experiantur. Haec si enuntiata Ariovisto sint, non dubitare, quin de omnibus obsidibus, qui apud eum sint, gravissimum supplicium sumat. Caesarem vel auctoritate sua atque exercitus vel recenti victoria vel nomine populi Romani deterrere posse, ne maior multitudo Germanorum Rhenum traducatur, Galliamque omnem ab Ariovisti iniuria posse defendere.

Being much entreated, he espouses the cause of the Gauls.

XXXII. Hac oratione ab Divitiaco habita, omnes, qui aderant, magno fletu auxilium a Caesare petere coeperunt. Animadvertit Caesar, unos ex omnibus Sequanos nihil earum rerum facere, quas ceteri facerent, sed tristes capite demisso terram intueri. Eius rei quae causa esset, miratus ex ipsis quaesiit. Nihil Sequani respondere, sed in eadem tristitia taciti permanere. Cum ab his saepius quaereret neque ullam omnino vocem exprimere posset, idem Divitiacus Aeduus respondit: Hoc esse miseriorem et graviorem fortunam Sequanorum quam reliquorum, quod soli ne in occulto quidem queri neque auxilium implorare auderent absentisque Ariovisti crudelitatem, velut si coram adesset, horrerent, propterea quod reliquis tamen fugae facultas daretur, Sequanis vero, qui intra fines suos Ariovistum recepissent, quorum

oppida omnia in potestate eius essent, omnes cruciatus essent perferendi.

XXXIII. His rebus cognitis Caesar Gallorum animos verbis confirmavit pollicitusque est, sibi eam rem curae futuram: magnam se habere spem, et beneficio suo et auctoritate adductum Ariovistum finem iniuriis facturum. Hac oratione habita concilium dimisit. Et secundum ea multae res eum hortabantur, quare sibi eam rem cogitandam et suscipiendam putaret, imprimis, quod Aeduos, fratres consanguineosque saepenumero a senatu appellatos, in servitute atque in dicione videbat Germanorum teneri, eorumque obsides esse apud Ariovistum ac Sequanos intellegebat; quod in tanto imperio populi Romani turpissimum sibi et reipublicae esse arbitrabatur. Paulatim autem Germanos consuescere Rhenum transire, et in Galliam magnam eorum multitudinem venire, populo Romano periculosum videbat, neque sibi homines feros ac barbaros temperaturos existimabat, quin, cum omnem Galliam occupavissent, ut ante Cimbri Teutonique fecissent, in provinciam exirent atque inde in Italiam contenderent, praesertim cum Sequanos a provincia nostra Rhodanus divideret; quibus rebus quam maturrime occurrendum putabat. Ipse autem Ariovistus tantos sibi spiritus, tantam arrogantiam sumpserat, ut ferendus non videretur.

He invites Ariovistus to a conference; Ariovistus declines, and to Caesar's demands sends back a haughty reply.

XXXIV. Quamobrem placuit ei, ut ad Ariovistum legatos mitteret, qui ab eo postularent, uti aliquem locum medium utriusque colloquio deligeret: velle sese de re publica et summis utriusque rebus cum eo agere. Ei legationi Ariovistus respondit: Si quid ipsi a Caesare opus esset, sese ad eum venturum fuisse; si quid ille se velit, illum ad se venire oportere. Praeterea se neque sine exercitu in eas partes Galliae venire audere, quas Caesar possideret, neque exercitum sine magno commeatu atque molimento in unum locum contrahere posse. Sibi autem mirum videri, quid in sua Gallia, quam bello vicisset, aut Caesari aut omnino populo Romano negotii esset.

XXXV. His responsis ad Caesarem relatis, iterum ad eum Caesar legatos cum his mandatis mittit: Quoniam tanto suo populique Romani beneficio affectus, cum in consulatu suo rex atque amicus a senatu appellatus esset, hanc sibi populoque Romano gratiam referret, ut in colloquium venire invitatus gravaretur neque de communi re dicendum sibi et cognoscendum putaret, haec esse, quae ab eo postularet: primum, ne quam multitudinem hominum amplius trans Rhenum in Galliam traduceret; deinde, obsides, quos haberet ab Aeduis, redderet, Sequanisque permitteret, ut, quos illi haberent, voluntate eius reddere illis liceret; neve Aeduos iniuria lacesseret, neve his sociisque eorum bellum inferret. Si id ita fecisset, sibi populoque Romano perpetuam gratiam atque amicitiam cum eo futuram: si non impetraret, sese, quoniam M. Messala, M. Pisone consulibus senatus censuisset, uti, quicunque Galliam provinciam obtineret, quod commodo reipublicae facere posset, Aeduos ceterosque amicos populi Romani defenderet, se Aeduorum iniurias non neglecturum.

XXXVI. Ad haec Ariovistus respondit: Ius esse belli, ut, qui vicissent, eis, quos vicissent, quemadmodum vellent, imperarent: item populum Romanum victis non ad alterius praescriptum, sed ad suum arbitrium imperare consuesse. Si ipse populo Romano non praescriberet, quemadmodum suo iure uteretur, non oportere sese a populo Romano in suo iure impediri. Aeduos sibi, quoniam belli fortunam temptassent et armis congressi ac superati essent, stipendiarios esse factos. Magnam Caesarem iniuriam facere, qui suo adventu vectigalia sibi deteriora faceret. Aeduis se obsides redditurum non esse, neque eis neque eorum sociis iniuria bellum illaturum, si in eo manerent, quod convenisset, stipendiumque quotannis penderent; si id non fecissent, longe eis fraternum nomen populi Romani afuturum. Quod sibi Caesar denuntiaret, se Aeduorum iniurias non neglecturum, neminem secum sine sua pernicie contendisse. Cum vellet, congrederetur: intellecturum, quid invicti Germani, exercitatissimi in armis, qui inter annos XIV tectum non subissent, virtute possent.

Caesar hastens. He reaches Vesontio before Ariovistus.

XXXVII. Haec eodem tempore Caesari mandata referebantur, et legati ab Aeduis et a Treveris veniebant: Aedui questum, quod Harudes, qui nuper in Galliam transportati essent, fines eorum popularentur; sese ne obsidibus quidem datis pacem Ariovisti redimere potuisse: Treveri autem, pagos centum Sueborum ad ripam Rheni consedisse, qui Rhenum transire conarentur; his praeesse Nasuam et Cimberium fratres. Quibus rebus Caesar vehementer commotus maturandum sibi existimavit, ne, si nova manus Sueborum cum veteribus copiis Ariovisti sese coniunxisset, minus facile resisti posset. Itaque re frumentaria, quam celerrime potuit, comparata, magnis itineribus ad Ariovistum contendit.

XXXVIII. Cum tridui viam processisset, nuntiatum est ei, Ariovistum cum suis omnibus copiis ad occupandum Vesontionem, quod est oppidum maximum Sequanorum, contendere triduique viam a suis finibus profecisse. Id ne accideret, magnopere sibi praecavendum Caesar existimabat. Namque omnium rerum, quae ad bellum usui erant, summa erat in eo oppido facultas, idque natura loci sic muniebatur, ut magnam ad ducendum bellum daret facultatem, propterea quod flumen Dubis ut circino circumductum paene totum oppidum cingit; reliquum spatium, quod est non amplius pedum sexcentorum, qua flumen intermittit, mons continet magna altitudine, ita, ut radices montis ex utraque parte ripae fluminis contingant. Hunc murus circumdatus arcem efficit et cum oppido coniungit. Huc Caesar magnis nocturnis diurnisque itineribus contendit occupatoque oppido ibi praesidium collocat.

His soldiers fear the Germans. He addresses them.

XXXIX. Dum paucos dies ad Vesontionem rei frumentariae commeatusque causa moratur, ex percontatione nostrorum vocibusque Gallorum ac mercatorum, qui ingenti magnitudine corporum Germanos, incredibili virtute atque exercitatione in armis esse praedicabant (saepenumero sese cum his con-

gressos ne vultum quidem atque aciem oculorum dicebant ferre potuisse), tantus subito timor omnem exercitum occupavit, ut non mediocriter omnium mentes animosque perturbaret. Hic primum ortus est a tribunis militum, praefectis reliquisque, qui ex urbe amicitiae causa Caesarem secuti non magnum in re militari usum habebant: quorum alius alia causa illata, quam sibi ad proficiscendum necessariam esse diceret, petebat, ut eius voluntate discedere liceret; nonnulli pudore adducti, ut timoris suspicionem vitarent, remanebant. Hi neque vultum fingere neque interdum lacrimas tenere poterant: abditi in tabernaculis aut suum fatum querebantur aut cum familiaribus suis commune periculum miserabantur. Vulgo totis castris testamenta obsignabantur. Horum vocibus ac timore paulatim etiam ei, qui magnum in castris usum habebant, milites centurionesque, quique equitatui praeerant, perturbabantur. Qui se ex his minus timidos existimari volebant, non se hostem vereri, sed angustias itineris et magnitudinem silvarum, quae intercederent inter ipsos atque Ariovistum, aut rem frumentariam, ut satis commode supportari posset, timere dicebant. Nonnulli etiam Caesari nuntiarant, cum castra moveri ac signa ferri iussisset, non fore dicto audientes milites neque propter timorem signa laturos.

XL. Haec cum animadvertisset, convocato consilio omniumque ordinum ad id consilium adhibitis centurionibus, vehementer eos incusavit: primum quod, aut quam in partem aut quo consilio ducerentur, sibi quaerendum aut cogitandum putarent. Ariovistum se consule cupidissime populi Romani amicitiam appetisse: cur hunc tam temere quisquam ab officio discessurum iudicaret? Sibi quidem persuaderi, cognitis suis postulatis atque aequitate condicionum perspecta eum neque suam neque populi Romani gratiam repudiaturum. Quod si furore atque amentia impulsus bellum intulisset, quid tandem vererentur? aut cur de sua virtute aut de ipsius diligentia desperarent? Factum eius hostis periculum patrum nostrorum memoria, cum Cimbris et Teutonis a Gaio Mario pulsis non minorem laudem exercitus quam ipse imperator meritus videbatur; factum etiam nuper

in Italia servili tumultu, quos tamen aliquid usus ac disciplina, quae a nobis accepissent, sublevarent. Ex quo iudicari posse, quantum haberet in se boni constantia, propterea quod, quos aliquamdiu inermos sine causa timuissent, hos postea armatos ac victores superassent. Denique hos esse eosdem, quibuscum saepenumero Helvetii congressi non solum in suis, sed etiam in illorum finibus, plerumque superarint, qui tamen pares esse nostro exercitui non potuerint. Si quos adversum proelium et fuga Gallorum commoveret, hos, si quaererent, reperire posse, diuturnitate belli defetigatis Gallis, Ariovistum, cum multos menses castris se ac paludibus tenuisset neque sui potestatem fecisset, desperantes iam de pugna et dispersos subito adortum, magis ratione et consilio quam virtute vicisse. Cui rationi contra homines barbaros atque imperitos locus fuisset, hac ne ipsum quidem sperare nostros exercitus capi posse. Qui suum timorem in rei frumentariae simulationem angustiasque itineris conferrent, facere arroganter, cum aut de officio imperatoris desperare aut praescribere viderentur. Haec sibi esse curae, frumentum Sequanos, Leucos, Lingŏnes subministrare, iamque esse in agris frumenta matura; de itinere ipsos brevi tempore iudicaturos. Quod non fore dicto audientes neque signa laturi dicantur, nihil se ea re commoveri: scire enim, quibuscumque exercitus dicto audiens non fuerit, aut male re gesta fortunam defuisse, aut aliquo facinore comperto avaritiam esse convictam: suam innocentiam perpetua vita, felicitatem Helvetiorum bello esse perspectam. Itaque se, quod in longiorem diem collaturus fuisset, repraesentaturum et proxima nocte de quarta vigilia castra moturum, ut quam primum intellegere posset, utrum apud eos pudor atque officium an timor valeret. Quod si praeterea nemo sequatur, tamen se cum sola decima legione iturum, de qua non dubitaret, sibique eam praetoriam cohortem futuram. Huic legioni Caesar et indulserat praecipue et propter virtutem confidebat maxime.

Caesar marches after Ariovistus, who requests an interview.

XLI. Hac oratione habita mirum in modum conversae sunt omnium mentes summaque alacritas et cupiditas belli gerendi innata est, princepsque decima legio per tribunos militum ei gratias egit, quod de se optimum iudicium fecisset, seque esse ad bellum gerendum paratissimam confirmavit. Deinde reliquae legiones cum tribunis militum et primorum ordinum centurionibus egerunt, uti Caesari satisfacerent: se neque umquam dubitasse neque timuisse, neque de summa belli suum iudicium, sed imperatoris esse existimavisse. Eorum satisfactione accepta et itinere exquisito per Divitiacum, quod ex aliis ei maximam fidem habebat, ut milium amplius quinquaginta circuitu locis apertis exercitum duceret, de quarta vigilia, ut dixerat, profectus est. Septimo die, cum iter non intermitteret, ab exploratoribus certior factus est, Ariovisti copias a nostris milibus passuum quattuor et xx abesse.

XLII. Cognito Caesaris adventu Ariovistus legatos ad eum mittit: quod antea de colloquio postulasset, id per se fieri licere, quoniam propius accessisset, seque id sine periculo facere posse existimare. Non respuit condicionem Caesar, iamque eum ad sanitatem reverti arbitrabatur, cum id, quod antea petenti denegasset, ultro polliceretur, magnamque in spem veniebat, pro suis tantis populique Romani in eum beneficiis, cognitis suis postulatis, fore, uti pertinacia desisteret. Dies colloquio dictus est ex eo die quintus. Interim saepe ultro citroque cum legati inter eos mitterentur, Ariovistus postulavit, ne quem peditem ad colloquium Caesar adduceret: vereri se, ne per insidias ab eo circumveniretur; uterque cum equitatu veniret: alia ratione sese non esse venturum. Caesar, quod neque colloquium interposita causa tolli volebat neque salutem suam Gallorum equitatui committere audebat, commodissimum esse statuit, omnibus equis Gallis equitibus detractis, eo legionarios milites legionis decimae, cui quam maxime confidebat, imponere, ut praesidium quam amicissimum, si quid opus facto esset, haberet. Quod cum fieret, non irridicule quidam ex militibus decimae legi-

onis dixit: plus, quam pollicitus esset, Caesarem facere: pollicitum, se in cohortis praetoriae loco decimam legionem habiturum, ad equum rescribere.

They meet; Caesar speaks. Ariovistus replies.

XLIII. Planities erat magna et in ea tumulus terrenus satis grandis. Hic locus aequo fere spatio ab castris Ariovisti et Caesaris aberat. Eo, ut erat dictum, ad colloquium venerunt. Legionem Caesar, quam equis devexerat, passibus ducentis ab eo tumulo constituit. Item equites Ariovisti pari intervallo constiterunt. Ariovistus, ex equis ut colloquerentur et praeter se denos ut ad colloquium adducerent, postulavit. Ubi eo ventum est, Caesar initio orationis sua senatusque in eum beneficia commemoravit, quod rex appellatus esset a senatu, quod amicus, quod munera amplissime missa; quam rem et paucis contigisse et pro magnis hominum officiis consuesse tribui docebat; illum, cum neque aditum neque causam postulandi iustam haberet, beneficio ac liberalitate sua ac senatus ea praemia consecutum. Docebat etiam, quam veteres quamque iustae causae necessitudinis ipsis cum Aeduis intercederent, quae senatusconsulta quotiens quamque honorifica in eos facta essent, ut omni tempore totius Galliae principatum Aedui tenuissent, prius etiam, quam nostram amicitiam appetissent. Populi Romani hanc esse consuetudinem, ut socios atque amicos non modo sui nihil deperdere, sed gratia, dignitate, honore auctiores velit esse; quod vero ad amicitiam populi Romani attulissent, id eis eripi quis pati posset? Postulavit deinde eadem, quae legatis in mandatis dederat: ne aut Aeduis aut eorum sociis bellum inferret; obsides redderet; si nullam partem Germanorum domum remittere posset, at ne quos amplius Rhenum transire pateretur.

XLIV. Ariovistus ad postulata Caesaris pauca respondit, de suis virtutibus multa praedicavit: Transisse Rhenum sese non sua sponte, sed rogatum et arcessitum a Gallis; non sine magna spe magnisque praemiis domum propinquosque reliquisse; sedes habere in Gallia ab ipsis concessas, obsides ipsorum voluntate datos; stipendium capere iure belli, quod

victores victis imponere consuerint. Non sese Gallis, sed Gallos sibi bellum intulisse: omnes Galliae civitates ad se oppugnandum venisse ac contra se castra habuisse; eas omnes copias a se uno proelio pulsas ac superatas esse. Si iterum experiri velint, se iterum paratum esse decertare; si pace uti velint, iniquum esse de stipendio recusare, quod sua voluntate ad id tempus pependerint. Amicitiam populi Romani sibi ornamento et praesidio, non detrimento esse oportere, idque se ea spe petisse. Si per populum Romanum stipendium remittatur et dediticii subtrahantur, non minus libenter sese recusaturum populi Romani amicitiam, quam appetierit. Quod multitudinem Germanorum in Galliam traducat, id se sui muniendi, non Galliae impugnandae causa facere: eius rei testimonium esse, quod nisi rogatus non venerit, et quod bellum non intulerit, sed defenderit. Se prius in Galliam venisse quam populum Romanum. Numquam ante hoc tempus exercitum populi Romani Galliae provinciae finibus egressum. Quid sibi vellet? Cur in suas possessiones veniret? Provinciam suam hanc esse Galliam, sicut illam nostram. Ut ipsi concedi non oporteret, si in nostros fines impetum faceret, sic item nos esse iniquos, quod in suo iure se interpellaremus. Quod fratres Aeduos appellatos diceret, non se tam barbarum neque tam imperitum esse rerum, ut non sciret, neque bello Allobrogum proximo Aeduos Romanis auxilium tulisse, neque ipsos in his contentionibus, quas Aedui secum et cum Sequanis habuissent, auxilio populi Romani usos esse. Debere se suspicari, simulata Caesarem amicitia, quod exercitum in Gallia habeat, sui opprimendi causa habere. Qui nisi decedat atque exercitum deducat ex his regionibus, sese illum non pro amico, sed hoste habiturum. Quod si eum interfecerit, multis sese nobilibus principibusque populi Romani gratum esse facturum: id se ab ipsis per eorum nuntios compertum habere, quorum omnium gratiam atque amicitiam eius morte redimere posset. Quod si discessisset et liberam possessionem Galliae sibi tradidisset, magno se illum praemio remuneraturum et, quaecumque bella geri vellet, sine ullo eius labore et periculo confecturum.

Caesar remains firm; and escapes from the snares set by Ariovistus.

XLV. Multa ab Caesare in eam sententiam dicta sunt, quare negotio desistere non posset; neque suam neque populi Romani consuetudinem pati, uti optime merentes socios desereret, neque se iudicare, Galliam potius esse Ariovisti quam populi Romani. Bello superatos esse Arvernos et Rutenos ab Quinto Fabio Maximo, quibus populus Romanus ignovisset neque in provinciam redegisset neque stipendium imposuisset. Quod si antiquissimum quodque tempus spectari oporteret, populi Romani iustissimum esse in Gallia imperium; si iudicium senatus observari oporteret, liberam debere esse Galliam, quam bello victam suis legibus uti voluisset.

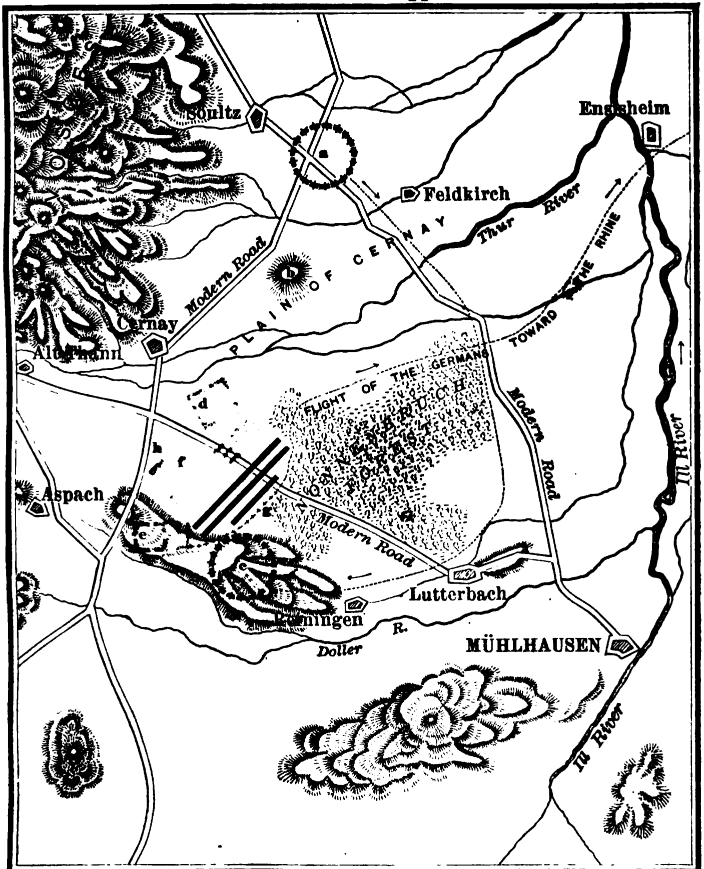
XLVI. Dum haec in colloquio geruntur, Caesari nuntiatum est, equites Ariovisti propius tumulum accedere et ad nostros adequitare, lapides telaque in nostros conicere. Caesar loquendi finem facit seque ad suos recepit suisque imperavit, ne quod omnino telum in hostes reicerent. Nam etsi sine ullo periculo legionis delectae cum equitatu proelium fore videbat, tamen committendum non putabat, ut pulsis hostibus dici posset, eos ab se per fidem in colloquio circumventos. Posteaquam in vulgus militum elatum est, qua arrogantia in colloquio Ariovistus usus omni Gallia Romanis interdixisset, impetumque in nostros eius equites fecissent, eaque res colloquium ut diremisset, multo maior alacritas studiumque pugnandi maius exercitui iniectum est.

Ariovistus throws into chains two legates of Caesar, but avoids battle.

XLVII. Biduo post Ariovistus ad Caesarem legatos mittit: Velle se de his rebus, quae inter eos agi coeptae neque perfectae essent, agere cum eo: uti aut iterum colloquio diem constitueret aut, si id minus vellet, e suis legatis aliquem ad se mitteret. Colloquendi Caesari causa visa non est, et eo magis, quod pridie eius diei Germani retineri non potuerant, quin in nostros tela conicerent. Legatum e suis sese magno

BATTLE BETWEEN CAESAR AND ARIOVISTUS.

To face p. 72. Lib. I. c. 42. sqq. PLAN III.



SCALE OF MILES

0 1 2 3 4 5

EXPLANATION.

a. First camp of Ariovistus.
b. Hill upon which the interview between Caesar and Ariovistus took place.
c. Second camp of Ariovistus.
d. Caesar's large camp.
e. Caesar's small camp.
f. Line of battle of the Romans.
g. Line of battle of the Germans.
h. Publius Crassus with the Cavalry.
Romans .... Germans ━━━━

cum periculo ad eum missurum et hominibus feris obiecturum existimabat. Commodissimum visum est Gaium Valerium Procillum, C. Valeri Caburi filium, summa virtute et humanitate adulescentem, cuius pater a Gaio Valerio Flacco civitate donatus erat, et propter fidem et propter linguae Gallicae scientiam, qua multa iam Ariovistus longinqua consuetudine utebatur, et quod in eo peccandi Germanis causa non esset, ad eum mittere, et Marcum Metium, qui hospitio Ariovisti utebatur. His mandavit, ut, quae diceret Ariovistus, cognoscerent et ad se referrent. Quos cum apud se in castris Ariovistus conspexisset, exercitu suo praesente conclamavit: Quid ad se venirent? an speculandi causa? Conantis dicere prohibuit et in catenas coniecit.

XLVIII. Eodem die castra promovit et milibus passuum sex a Caesaris castris sub monte consedit. Postridie eius diei praeter castra Caesaris suas copias traduxit et milibus passuum duobus ultra eum castra fecit eo consilio, uti frumento commeatuque, qui ex Sequanis et Aeduis supportaretur, Caesarem intercluderet. Ex eo die dies continuos quinque Caesar pro castris suas copias produxit et aciem instructam habuit, ut, si vellet Ariovistus proelio contendere, ei potestas non deesset. Ariovistus his omnibus diebus exercitum castris continuit, equestri proelio cotidie contendit. Genus hoc erat pugnae, quo se Germani exercuerant. Equitum milia erant sex, totidem numero pedites velocissimi ac fortissimi, quos ex omni copia singuli singulos suae salutis causa delegerant: cum his in proeliis versabantur. Ad eos se equites recipiebant: hi, si quid erat durius, concurrebant, si qui graviore vulnere accepto equo deciderat, circumsistebant; si quo erat longius prodeundum aut celerius recipiendum, tanta erat horum exercitatione celeritas, ut iubis equorum sublevati cursum adaequarent.

Caesar fortifies another camp beyond Ariovistus.

XLIX. Ubi eum castris se tenere Caesar intellexit, ne diutius commeatu prohiberetur, ultra eum locum, quo in loco Germani consederant, circiter passus sexcentos ab eis, castris idoneum locum delegit acieque triplici instructa ad eum

locum venit. Primam et secundam aciem in armis esse, tertiam castra munire iussit. Hic locus ab hoste circiter passus sexcentos, uti dictum est, aberat. Eo circiter hominum numero sedecim milia expedita cum omni equitatu Ariovistus misit, quae copiae nostros perterrerent et munitione prohiberent. Nihilo secius Caesar, ut ante constituerat, duas acies hostem propulsare, tertiam opus perficere iussit. Munitis castris duas ibi legiones reliquit et partem auxiliorum, quattuor reliquas in castra maiora reduxit.

The Germans are afraid to fight before the full moon. Caesar forces on an engagement.

L. Proximo die instituto suo Caesar e castris utrisque copias suas eduxit paulumque a maioribus castris progressus aciem instruxit, hostibus pugnandi potestatem fecit. Ubi ne tum quidem eos prodire intellexit, circiter meridiem exercitum in castra reduxit. Tum demum Ariovistus partem suarum copiarum, quae castra minora oppugnaret, misit. Acriter utrimque usque ad vesperum pugnatum est. Solis occasu suas copias Ariovistus multis et illatis et acceptis vulneribus in castra reduxit. Cum ex captivis quaereret Caesar, quamobrem Ariovistus proelio non decertaret, hanc reperiebat causam, quod apud Germanos ea consuetudo esset, ut matresfamiliae eorum sortibus et vaticinationibus declararent, utrum proelium committi ex usu esset necne; eas ita dicere: non esse fas Germanos superare, si ante novam lunam proelio contendissent.

LI. Postridie eius diei Caesar praesidium utrisque castris, quod satis esse visum est, reliquit, omnis alarios in conspectu hostium pro castris minoribus constituit, quod minus multitudine militum legionariorum pro hostium numero valebat, ut ad speciem alariis uteretur; ipse triplici instructa acie usque ad castra hostium accessit. Tum demum necessario Germani suas copias castris eduxerunt generatimque constituerunt paribus intervallis, Harūdes, Marcomănos, Tribōces, Vangiŏnes, Nemētes, Sedusios, Suebos, omnemque aciem suam redis et carris circumdederunt, ne qua spes in fuga relinqueretur. Eo mulieres imposuerunt, quae in proe-

lium proficiscentes passis manibus flentes implorabant, ne se in servitutem Romanis traderent.

There is a desperate battle; the Germans are routed.

LII. Caesar singulis legionibus singulos legatos et quaestorem praefecit, uti eos testes suae quisque virtutis haberet; ipse a dextro cornu, quod eam partem minime firmam hostium esse animadverterat, proelium commisit. Ita nostri acriter in hostes signo dato impetum fecerunt, itaque hostes repente celeriterque procurrerunt, ut spatium pila in hostes coniciendi non daretur. Reiectis pilis comminus gladiis pugnatum est. At Germani celeriter ex consuetudine sua phalange facta impetus gladiorum exceperunt. Reperti sunt complures nostri milites, qui in phalangas insilirent et scuta manibus revellerent et desuper vulnerarent. Cum hostium acies a sinistro cornu pulsa atque in fugam conversa esset, a dextro cornu vehementer multitudine suorum nostram aciem premebant. Id cum animadvertisset Publius Crassus adulescens, qui equitatui praeerat, quod expeditior erat quam ei, qui inter aciem versabantur, tertiam aciem laborantibus nostris subsidio misit.

LIII. Ita proelium restitutum est, atque omnes hostes terga verterunt neque prius fugere destiterunt, quam ad flumen Rhenum milia passuum ex eo loco circiter quinque pervenerunt. Ibi perpauci aut viribus confisi tranare contenderunt aut lintribus inventis sibi salutem reppererunt. In his fuit Ariovistus, qui naviculam deligatam ad ripam nactus ea profugit; reliquos omnes equitatu consecuti nostri interfecerunt. Duae fuerunt Ariovisti uxores, una Sueba natione, quam domo secum duxerat, altera Norica, regis Voccionis soror, quam in Gallia duxerat a fratre missam: utraeque in ea fuga perierunt. Duae filiae harum altera occisa, altera capta est. Gaius Valerius Procillus, cum a custodibus in fuga trinis catenis vinctus traheretur, in ipsum Caesarem hostis equitatu persequentem incidit. Quae quidem res Caesari non minorem quam ipsa victoria voluptatem attulit, quod hominem honestissimum provinciae Galliae, suum familiarem et hospitem, ereptum e manibus hostium, sibi restitutum videbat, neque

eius calamitate de tanta voluptate et gratulatione quicquam fortuna deminuerat. Is se praesente de se ter sortibus consultum dicebat, utrum igni statim necaretur an in aliud tempus reservaretur: sortium beneficio se esse incolumem. Item Marcus Metius repertus et ad eum reductus est.

Caesar leads his army into winter quarters; he himself goes to North Italy.

LIV. Hoc proelio trans Rhenum nuntiato Suebi, qui ad ripas Rheni venerant, domum reverti coeperunt; quos Ubii, qui proximi Rhenum incolunt, perterritos insecuti, magnum ex his numerum occiderunt. Caesar, una aestate duobus maximis bellis confectis, maturius paulo, quam tempus anni postulabat, in hiberna in Sequanos exercitum deduxit; hibernis Labienum praeposuit; ipse in citeriorem Galliam ad conventus agendos profectus est.

COMMENTARIUS SECUNDUS.

All the Belgae rise against Caesar.

I. Cum esset Caesar in citeriore Gallia in hibernis, ita uti supra demonstravimus, crebri ad eum rumores afferebantur, litterisque item Labieni certior fiebat, omnes Belgas, quam tertiam esse Galliae partem dixeramus, contra populum Romanum coniurare obsidesque inter se dare. Coniurandi has esse causas: primum, quod vererentur, ne omni pacata Gallia ad eos exercitus noster adduceretur; deinde, quod ab nonnullis Gallis sollicitarentur, partim qui, ut Germanos diutius in Gallia versari noluerant, ita populi Romani exercitum hiemare atque inveterascere in Gallia moleste ferebant, partim qui mobilitate et levitate animi novis imperiis studebant; ab nonnullis etiam, quod in Gallia a potentioribus atque eis, qui ad conducendos homines facultates habebant, vulgo regna occupabantur, qui minus facile eam rem imperio nostro consequi poterant.

He marches quickly to their territory; the Remi surrender.

II. His nuntiis litterisque commotus Caesar duas legiones in citeriore Gallia novas conscripsit et inita aestate, in interiorem Galliam qui deduceret, Quintum Pedium legatum misit. Ipse, cum primum pabuli copia esse inciperet, ad exercitum venit. Dat negotium Senonibus reliquisque Gallis, qui finitimi Belgis erant, uti ea, quae apud eos gerantur, cognoscant seque de his rebus certiorem faciant. Hi constanter omnes nuntiaverunt, manus cogi, exercitum in unum locum conduci. Tum vero dubitandum non existimavit, quin ad eos proficisceretur. Re frumentaria comparata castra movet diebusque circiter quindecim ad fines Belgarum pervenit.

III. Eo cum de improviso celeriusque omni opinione venisset, Remi, qui proximi Galliae ex Belgis sunt, ad eum legatos Iccium et Andecumborium, primos civitatis, miserunt, qui dicerent, se suaque omnia in fidem atque in potestatem populi Romani permittere, neque se cum Belgis reliquis consensisse neque contra populum Romanum coniurasse, paratosque esse et obsides dare et imperata facere et oppidis recipere et frumento ceterisque rebus iuvare; reliquos omnes Belgas in armis esse, Germanosque, qui cis Rhenum incolant, sese cum his coniunxisse, tantumque esse eorum omnium furorem, ut ne Suessiones quidem, fratres consanguineosque suos, qui eodem iure et isdem legibus utantur, unum imperium unumque magistratum cum ipsis habeant, deterrere potuerint, quin cum his consentirent.

The origin and forces of the Belgae.

IV. Cum ab his quaereret, quae civitates quantaeque in armis essent et quid in bello possent, sic reperiebat: plerosque Belgas esse ortos ab Germanis Rhenumque antiquitus traductos propter loci fertilitatem ibi consedisse Gallosque, qui ea loca incolerent, expulisse solosque esse qui patrum nostrorum memoria omni Gallia vexata Teutonos Cimbrosque intra fines suos ingredi prohibuerint; qua ex re fieri, uti earum rerum memoria magnam sibi auctoritatem magnosque spiritus in re militari sumerent. De numero eorum omnia se habere explorata Remi dicebant, propterea quod, propinquitatibus affinitatibusque coniuncti, quantam quisque multitudinem in communi Belgarum concilio ad id bellum pollicitus sit, cognoverint. Plurimum inter eos Bellovăcos et virtute et auctoritate et hominum numero valere; hos posse conficere armata milia centum, pollicitos ex eo numero electa sexaginta, totiusque belli imperium sibi postulare. Suessiones suos esse finitimos; fines latissimos feracissimosque agros possidere. Apud eos fuisse regem nostra etiam memoria Divitiăcum, totius Galliae potentissimum, qui cum magnae partis harum regionum, tum etiam Britanniae imperium obtinuerit; nunc esse regem Galbam: ad hunc propter iustitiam prudentiamque suam summam totius belli

omnium voluntate deferri; oppida habere numero XII, polliceri milia armata quinquaginta; totidem Nervios, qui maxime feri inter ipsos habeantur longissimeque absint; quindecim milia Atrebătes, Ambianos decem milia, Morĭnos XXV milia, Menapios VII milia, Caletos X milia, Veliocasses et Viromanduos totidem, Aduatŭcos decem et novem milia; Condrusos, Eburones, Caeroesos, Paemanos, qui uno nomine Germani appellantur, arbitrari ad XL milia.

Caesar marches to the Axona; the Belgae attack Bibrax.

V. Caesar Remos cohortatus liberaliterque oratione prosecutus omnem senatum ad se convenire principumque liberos obsides ad se adduci iussit. Quae omnia ab his diligenter ad diem facta sunt. Ipse Divitiacum Aeduum magnopere cohortatus docet, quanto opere rei publicae communisque salutis intersit, manus hostium distineri, ne cum tanta multitudine uno tempore confligendum sit. Id fieri posse, si suas copias Aedui in fines Bellovacorum introduxerint et eorum agros populari coeperint. His mandatis eum ab se dimittit. Postquam omnes Belgarum copias in unum locum coactas ad se venire vidit, neque iam longe abesse, ab eis, quos miserat, exploratoribus et ab Remis cognovit, flumen Axonam, quod est in extremis Remorum finibus, exercitum traducere maturavit atque ibi castra posuit. Quae res et latus unum castrorum ripis fluminis muniebat et, post eum quae essent, tuta ab hostibus reddebat et, commeatus ab Remis reliquisque civitatibus ut sine periculo ad eum portari possent, efficiebat. In eo flumine pons erat. Ibi praesidium ponit et in altera parte fluminis Quintum Titurium Sabinum legatum cum sex cohortibus relinquit; castra in altitudinem pedum duodecim vallo fossaque duodeviginti pedum munire iubet.

VI. Ab his castris oppidum Remorum nomine Bibrax aberat milia passuum octo. Id ex itinere magno impetu Belgae oppugnare coeperunt. Aegre eo die sustentatum est. Gallorum eadem atque Belgarum oppugnatio est haec. Ubi circumiecta multitudine hominum totis moenibus undique in murum lapides iaci coepti sunt, murusque defensoribus nudatus est, testudine facta portas succendunt murumque

subruunt. Quod tum facile fiebat. Nam cum tanta multitudo lapides ac tela conicerent, in muro consistendi potestas erat nulli. Cum finem oppugnandi nox fecisset, Iccius Remus, summa nobilitate et gratia inter suos, qui tum oppido praefuerat, unus ex eis, qui legati de pace ad Caesarem venerant, nuntium ad eum mittit, nisi subsidium sibi submittatur, sese diutius sustinere non posse.

Caesar relieves the town, and strongly fortifies a camp.

VII. Eo de media nocte Caesar isdem ducibus usus, qui nuntii ab Iccio venerant, Numidas et Cretas sagittarios et funditores Baleares subsidio oppidanis mittit; quorum adventu et Remis cum spe defensionis studium propugnandi accessit, et hostibus eadem de causa spes potiundi oppidi discessit. Itaque paulisper apud oppidum morati agrosque Remorum depopulati, omnibus vicis aedificiisque, quos adire potuerant, incensis ad castra Caesaris omnibus copiis contenderunt et ab milibus passuum minus duobus castra posuerunt; quae castra, ut fumo atque ignibus significabatur, amplius milibus passuum octo in latitudinem patebant.

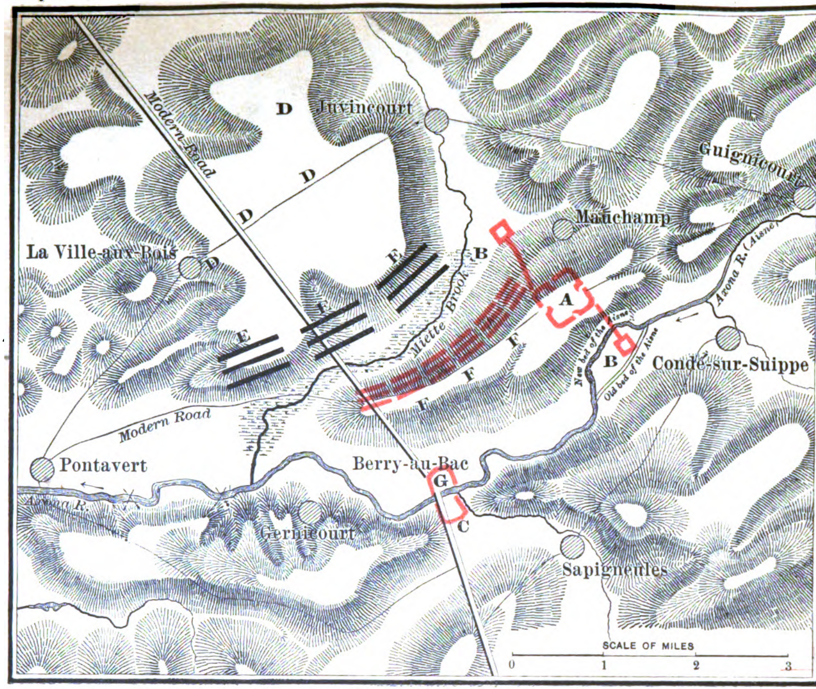
VIII. Caesar primo et propter multitudinem hostium et propter eximiam opinionem virtutis proelio supersedere statuit, cotidie tamen equestribus proeliis, quid hostis virtute posset et quid nostri auderent, periclitabatur. Ubi nostros non esse inferiores intellexit, loco pro castris ad aciem instruendam natura opportuno atque idoneo, quod is collis, ubi castra posita erant, paululum ex planitie editus tantum adversus in latitudinem patebat, quantum loci acies instructa occupare poterat, atque ex utraque parte lateris deiectus habebat et in frontem leniter fastigatus paulatim ad planitiem redibat, ab utroque latere eius collis transversam fossam obduxit circiter passuum quadringentorum et ad extremas fossas castella constituit ibique tormenta collocavit, ne, cum aciem instruxisset, hostes, quod tantum multitudine poterant, ab lateribus pugnantes suos circumvenire possent. Hoc facto duabus legionibus, quas proxime conscripserat, in castris relictis, ut, si quo opus esset, subsidio duci possent, reliquas sex legiones pro castris in acie constituit. Hostes item suas copias ex castris eductas instruxerant.

THE BATTLE AT THE AISNE, (AXONA.)

To face p. 80.

Lib. II. c. 8. sqq.

PLAN IV.



EXPLANATION.

A. Roman Camp.

B, B. Redoubts, *castella.*

C. Redoubt at the bridge, held by Q. Titurius Sabinus; *castellum.*

D, D, D. Camp of the Belgians.

E, E, E. Line of battle of the Belgians.

F, F, F. Line of battle of the Romans.

G. Garrison at the bridge, *praesidium.*

The Belgae attack the position of Titurius, are repulsed, and disperse.

IX. Palus erat non magna inter nostrum atque hostium exercitum. Hanc si nostri transirent, hostes exspectabant; nostri autem, si ab illis initium transeundi fieret, ut impeditos aggrederentur, parati in armis erant. Interim proelio equestri inter duas acies contendebatur. Ubi neutri transeundi initium faciunt, secundiore equitum proelio nostris, Caesar suos in castra reduxit. Hostes protinus ex eo loco ad flumen Axonam contenderunt, quod esse post nostra castra demonstratum est. Ibi vadis repertis partem suarum copiarum traducere conati sunt, eo consilio, ut, si possent, castellum, cui praeerat Quintus Titurius legatus, expugnarent pontemque interscinderent; si minus potuissent, agros Remorum popularentur, qui magno nobis usui ad bellum gerendum erant, commeatuque nostros prohiberent.

X. Caesar certior factus ab Titurio omnem equitatum et levis armaturae Numidas, funditores sagittariosque pontem traducit atque ad eos contendit. Acriter in eo loco pugnatum est. Hostes impeditos nostri in flumine aggressi magnum eorum numerum occiderunt; per eorum corpora reliquos audacissime transire conantes multitudine telorum reppulerunt; primos, qui transierant, equitatu circumventos interfecerunt. Hostes, ubi et de expugnando oppido et de flumine transeundo spem se fefellisse intellexerunt neque nostros in locum iniquiorem progredi pugnandi causa viderunt, atque ipsos res frumentaria deficere coepit, consilio convocato constituerunt, optimum esse, domum suam quemque reverti, et, quorum in fines primum Romani exercitum introduxissent, ad eos defendendos undique convenirent, ut potius in suis quam in alienis finibus decertarent et domesticis copiis rei frumentariae uterentur. Ad eam sententiam cum reliquis causis haec quoque ratio eos deduxit, quod Divitiacum atque Aeduos finibus Bellovacorum appropinquare cognoverant. His persuaderi, ut diutius morarentur neque suis auxilium ferrent, non poterat.

XI. Ea re constituta, secunda vigilia magno cum strepitu ac tumultu castris egressi nullo certo ordine neque imperio,

cum sibi quisque primum itineris locum peteret et domum pervenire properaret, fecerunt, ut consimilis fugae profectio videretur. Hac re statim Caesar per speculatores cognita insidias veritus, quod, qua de causa discederent, nondum perspexerat, exercitum equitatumque castris continuit. Prima luce confirmata re ab exploratoribus, omnem equitatum, qui novissimum agmen moraretur, praemisit. His Quintum Pedium et Lucium Aurunculeium Cottam legatos praefecit; Titum Labienum legatum cum legionibus tribus subsequi iussit. Hi novissimos adorti et multa milia passuum prosecuti magnam multitudinem eorum fugientium conciderunt, cum ab extremo agmine, ad quos ventum erat, consisterent fortiterque impetum nostrorum militum sustinerent, priores, quod abesse a periculo viderentur neque ulla necessitate neque imperio continerentur, exaudito clamore perturbatis ordinibus omnes in fuga sibi praesidium ponerent. Ita sine ullo periculo tantam eorum multitudinem nostri interfecerunt, quantum fuit diei spatium, sub occasumque solis destiterunt seque in castra, ut erat imperatum, receperunt.

The Suessiones, Bellovaci, and Ambiani submit to Caesar. He learns about the Nervii.

XII. Postridie eius diei Caesar, priusquam se hostes ex terrore ac fuga reciperent, in fines Suessionum, qui proximi Remis erant, exercitum duxit et magno itinere confecto ad oppidum Noviodunum contendit. Id ex itinere oppugnare conatus, quod vacuum ab defensoribus esse audiebat, propter latitudinem fossae murique altitudinem paucis defendentibus expugnare non potuit. Castris munitis vineas agere, quaeque ad oppugnandum usui erant, comparare coepit. Interim omnis ex fuga Suessionum multitudo in oppidum proxima nocte convenit. Celeriter vineis ad oppidum actis, aggere iacto turribusque constitutis, magnitudine operum, quae neque viderant ante Galli neque audierant, et celeritate Romanorum permoti legatos ad Caesarem de deditione mittunt et, petentibus Remis, ut conservarentur, impetrant.

XIII. Caesar obsidibus acceptis primis civitatis atque ipsius Galbae regis duobus filiis, armisque omnibus ex oppido tra-

ditis, in deditionem Suessiones accepit exercitumque in Bellovacos ducit. Qui cum se suaque omnia in oppidum Bratuspantium contulissent, atque ab eo oppido Caesar cum exercitu circiter milia passuum quinque abesset, omnes maiores natu ex oppido egressi manus ad Caesarem tendere et voce significare coeperunt, sese in eius fidem ac potestatem venire neque contra populum Romanum armis contendere. Item, cum ad oppidum accessisset castraque ibi poneret, pueri mulieresque ex muro passis manibus suo more pacem ab Romanis petierunt.

XIV. Pro his Divitiacus (nam post discessum Belgarum dimissis Aeduorum copiis ad eum reverterat) facit verba: Bellovacos omni tempore in fide atque amicitia civitatis Aeduae fuisse; impulsos ab suis principibus, qui dicerent, Aeduos ab Caesare in servitutem redactos omnes indignitates contumeliasque perferre, et ab Aeduis defecisse et populo Romano bellum intulisse. Qui eius consilii principes fuissent, quod intellegerent, quantam calamitatem civitati intulissent, in Britanniam profugisse. Petere non solum Bellovacos, sed etiam pro his Aeduos, ut sua clementia ac mansuetudine in eos utatur. Quod si fecerit, Aeduorum auctoritatem apud omnes Belgas amplificaturum, quorum auxiliis atque opibus, si qua bella inciderint, sustentare consuerint.

XV. Caesar honoris Divitiaci atque Aeduorum causa sese eos in fidem recepturum et conservaturum dixit; quod erat civitas magna inter Belgas auctoritate atque hominum multitudine praestabat, sexcentos obsides poposcit. His traditis omnibusque armis ex oppido collatis, ab eo loco in fines Ambianorum pervenit, qui se suaque omnia sine mora dediderunt. Eorum fines Nervii attingebant; quorum de natura moribusque Caesar cum quaereret, sic reperiebat: Nullum aditum esse ad eos mercatoribus; nihil pati vini reliquarumque rerum ad luxuriam pertinentium inferri, quod eis rebus relanguescere animos eorum et remitti virtutem existimarent; esse homines feros magnaeque virtutis, increpitare atque incusare reliquos Belgas, qui se populo Romano dedidissent patriamque virtutem proiecissent; confirmare, sese neque legatos missuros neque ullam condicionem pacis accepturos.

He marches against the Nervii, who attack him while encamping.

XVI. Cum per eorum fines triduum iter fecisset, inveniebat ex captivis, Sabim flumen ab castris suis non amplius milia passuum x abesse: trans id flumen omnes Nervios consedisse adventumque ibi Romanorum exspectare una cum Atrebătis et Viromanduis, finitimis suis (nam his utrisque persuaserant, uti eandem belli fortunam experirentur); exspectari etiam ab his Aduatucorum copias atque esse in itinere: mulieres, quique per aetatem ad pugnam inutiles viderentur, in eum locum coniecisse, quo propter paludes exercitui aditus non esset.

XVII. His rebus cognitis exploratores centurionesque praemittit, qui locum idoneum castris deligant. Cum ex dediticiis Belgis reliquisque Gallis complures Caesarem secuti una iter facerent, quidam ex his, ut postea ex captivis cognitum est, eorum dierum consuetudine itineris nostri exercitus perspecta, nocte ad Nervios pervenerunt atque his demonstrarunt, inter singulas legiones impedimentorum magnum numerum intercedere, neque esse quicquam negotii, cum prima legio in castra venisset reliquaeque legiones magnum spatium abessent, hanc sub sarcinis adoriri; qua pulsa impedimentisque direptis futurum ut reliquae contra consistere non auderent. Adiuvabat etiam eorum consilium, qui rem deferebant, quod Nervii antiquitus, cum equitatu nihil possent (neque enim ad hoc tempus ei rei student, sed, quicquid possunt, pedestribus valent copiis), quo facilius finitimorum equitatum, si praedandi causa ad eos venissent, impedirent, teneris arboribus incisis atque inflexis crebrisque in latitudinem ramis enatis et rubis sentibusque interiectis effecerant, ut instar muri hae sepes munimentum praeberent, quo non modo non intrari, sed ne perspici quidem posset. His rebus cum iter agminis nostri impediretur, non omittendum sibi consilium Nervii existimaverunt.

XVIII. Loci natura erat haec, quem locum nostri castris delegerant. Collis ab summo aequaliter declivis ad flumen Sabim, quod supra nominavimus, vergebat. Ab eo flumine pari acclivitate collis nascebatur adversus huic et contrarius,

passus circiter ducentos infimus apertus, ab superiore parte silvestris, ut non facile introrsus perspici posset. Intra eas silvas hostes in occulto sese continebant; in aperto loco secundum flumen paucae stationes equitum videbantur. Fluminis erat altitudo circiter pedum trium.

XIX. Caesar equitatu praemisso subsequebatur omnibus copiis; sed ratio ordoque agminis aliter se habebat ac Belgae ad Nervios detulerant. Nam quod ad hostis appropinquabat, consuetudine sua Caesar sex legiones expeditas ducebat; post eas totius exercitus impedimenta collocarat; inde duae legiones, quae proxume conscriptae erant, totum agmen claudebant praesidioque impedimentis erant. Equites nostri cum funditoribus sagittariisque flumen transgressi cum hostium equitatu proelium commiserunt. Cum se illi identidem in silvas ad suos reciperent ac rursus ex silva in nostros impetum facerent neque nostri longius, quam quem ad finem porrecta loca aperta pertinebant, cedentes insequi auderent, interim legiones sex, quae primae venerant, opere dimenso castra munire coeperunt. Ubi prima impedimenta nostri exercitus ab eis, qui in silvis abditi latebant, visa sunt, quod tempus inter eos committendi proelii convenerat, ut intra silvas aciem ordinesque constituerant atque ipsi sese confirmaverant, subito omnibus copiis provolaverunt impetumque in nostros equites fecerunt. His facile pulsis ac proturbatis incredibili celeritate ad flumen decucurrerunt, ut paene uno tempore et ad silvas et in flumine et iam in manibus nostris hostes viderentur. Eadem autem celeritate adverso colle ad nostra castra atque eos, qui in opere occupati erant, contenderunt.

His troops, taken unawares, are on one side victorious, on the other routed.

XX. Caesari omnia uno tempore erant agenda: vexillum proponendum, quod erat insigne, cum ad arma concurri oporteret, signum tuba dandum, ab opere revocandi milites, qui paulo longius aggeris petendi causa processerant, arcessendi, acies instruenda, milites cohortandi, signum dandum. Quarum rerum magnam partem temporis brevitas et suc-

cessus hostium impediebat. His difficultatibus duae res erant subsidio, scientia atque usus militum, quod superioribus proeliis exercitati, quid fieri oporteret, non minus commode ipsi sibi praescribere quam ab aliis doceri poterant, et quod ab opere singulisque legionibus singulos legatos Caesar discedere nisi munitis castris vetuerat. Hi propter propinquitatem et celeritatem hostium nihil iam Caesaris imperium exspectabant, sed per se, quae videbantur, administrabant.

XXI. Caesar necessariis rebus imperatis ad cohortandos milites, quam in partem fors obtulit, decucurrit et ad legionem decimam devenit. Milites non longiore oratione cohortatus, quam uti suae pristinae virtutis memoriam retinerent neu perturbarentur animo, hostiumque impetum fortiter sustinerent, quod non longius hostes aberant, quam quo telum adigi posset, proelii committendi signum dedit. Atque in alteram partem item cohortandi causa profectus pugnantibus occurrit. Temporis tanta fuit exiguitas hostiumque tam paratus ad dimicandum animus, ut non modo ad insignia accommodanda, sed etiam ad galeas induendas scutisque tegimenta detrudenda tempus defuerit. Quam quisque ab opere in partem casu devenit quaeque prima signa conspexit, ad haec constitit, ne in quaerendis suis pugnandi tempus dimitteret.

XXII. Instructo exercitu, magis ut loci natura deiectusque collis et necessitas temporis, quam ut rei militaris ratio atque ordo postulabat, cum diversis legionibus aliae alia in parte hostibus resisterent, sepibusque densissimis, ut ante demonstravimus, interiectis prospectus impediretur, neque certa subsidia collocari neque, quid in quaque parte opus esset, provideri, neque ab uno omnia imperia administrari poterant. Itaque in tanta rerum iniquitate fortunae quoque eventus varii sequebantur.

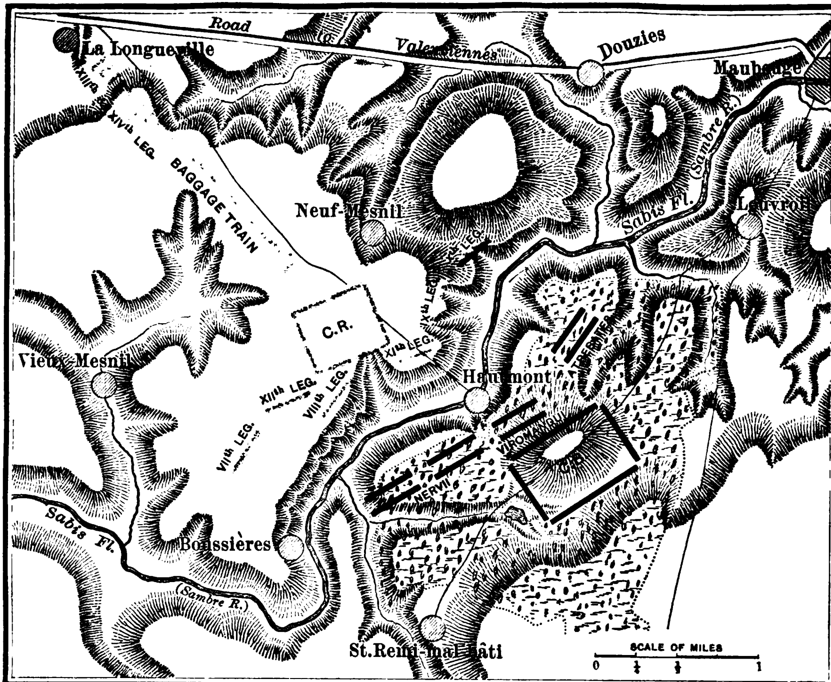
XXIII. Legionis nonae et decimae milites, ut in sinistra parte acie constiterant, pilis emissis cursu ac lassitudine exanimatos vulneribusque confectos Atrebates (nam his ea pars obvenerat) celeriter ex loco superiore in flumen compulerunt et transire conantes insecuti gladiis magnam partem eorum impeditam interfecerunt. Ipsi transire flumen non dubi-

BATTLE AT THE SAMBRE, (SABIS).

To face p. 86.

Lib. II. c. 19. sqq.

PLAN V.



EXPLANATION.

C. R. Roman Camp.

Leg. The Roman Legions, arrayed as indicated in the text.

C. B. Camp of the Belgians. The dotted lines around it on all sides indicate the extent of the forest that covered the ground at the time of the battle.

Opposite the left of the Roman line stood the Atrebates, opposite the centre the Viromandui, and opposite the right the Nervii.

taverunt et in locum iniquum progressi rursus resistentes hostes redintegrato proelio in fugam coniecerunt. Item alia in parte diversae duae legiones, undecima et octava, profligatis Viromanduis, quibuscum erant congressi, ex loco superiore in ipsis fluminis ripis proeliabantur. At totis fere a fronte et ab sinistra parte nudatis castris, cum in dextro cornu legio duodecima et non magno ab ea intervallo septima constitisset, omnes Nervii confertissimo agmine duce Boduognato, qui summam imperii tenebat, ad eum locum contenderunt; quorum pars aperto latere legiones circumvenire, pars summum castrorum locum petere coepit.

XXIV. Eodem tempore equites nostri levisque armaturae pedites, qui cum eis una fuerant, quos primo hostium impetu pulsos dixeram, cum se in castra reciperent, adversis hostibus occurrebant ac rursus aliam in partem fugam petebant, et calones, qui ab decumana porta ac summo iugo collis nostros victores flumen transisse conspexerant, praedandi causa egressi, cum respexissent et hostes in nostris castris versari vidissent, praecipites fugae sese mandabant. Simul eorum, qui cum impedimentis veniebant, clamor fremitusque oriebatur, aliique aliam in partem perterriti ferebantur. Quibus omnibus rebus permoti equites Treveri, quorum inter Gallos virtutis opinio est singularis, qui auxilii causa ab civitate ad Caesarem missi venerant, cum multitudine hostium castra compleri nostra, legiones premi et paene circumventas teneri, calones, equites, funditores, Numidas diversos dissipatosque in omnes partes fugere vidissent, desperatis nostris rebus domum contenderunt; Romanos pulsos superatosque, castris impedimentisque eorum hostes potitos civitati renuntiaverunt.

But at length the Nervii are totally defeated; the few not slain surrender.

XXV. Caesar ab decimae legionis cohortatione ad dextrum cornu profectus, ubi suos urgeri signisque in unum locum collatis duodecimae legionis confertos milites sibi ipsos ad pugnam esse impedimento vidit, quartae cohortis omnibus centurionibus occisis signiferoque interfecto, signo amisso, reliquarum cohortium omnibus fere centurionibus aut

vulneratis aut occisis, in his primipilo P. Sextio Baculo, fortissimo viro, multis gravibusque vulneribus confecto, ut iam se sustinere non posset, reliquos esse tardiores et nonnullos ab novissimis deserto proelio excedere ac tela vitare, hostis neque a fronte ex inferiore loco subeuntes intermittere et ab utroque latere instare et rem esse in angusto vidit, neque ullum esse subsidium, quod summitti posset: scuto ab novissimis uni militi detracto, quod ipse eo sine scuto venerat, in primam aciem processit centurionibusque nominatim appellatis reliquos cohortatus milites signa inferre et manipulos laxare iussit, quo facilius gladiis uti possent. Cuius adventu spe illata militibus ac redintegrato animo, cum pro se quisque in conspectu imperatoris etiam in extremis suis rebus operam navare cuperet, paulum hostium impetus tardatus est.

XXVI. Caesar cum septimam legionem, quae iuxta constiterat, item urgeri ab hoste vidisset, tribunos militum monuit, ut paulatim sese legiones coniungerent et conversa signa in hostes inferrent. Quo facto cum alius alii subsidium ferret, neque timerent, ne aversi ab hoste circumvenirentur, audacius resistere ac fortius pugnare coeperunt. Interim milites legionum duarum, quae in novissimo agmine praesidio impedimentis fuerant, proelio nuntiato cursu incitato in summo colle ab hostibus conspiciebantur, et Titus Labienus castris hostium potitus et ex loco superiore, quae res in nostris castris gererentur, conspicatus decimam legionem subsidio nostris misit. Qui cum ex equitum et calonum fuga, quo in loco res esset, quantoque in periculo et castra et legiones et imperator versaretur, cognovissent, nihil ad celeritatem sibi reliqui fecerunt.

XXVII. Horum adventu tanta rerum commutatio est facta, ut nostri, etiam qui vulneribus confecti procubuissent, scutis innixi proelium redintegrarent. Tum calones perterritos hostes conspicati etiam inermes armatis occurrerunt, equites vero, ut turpitudinem fugae virtute delerent, omnibus in locis pugnarunt, quo se legionariis militibus praeferrent. At hostes etiam in extrema spe salutis tantam virtutem praestiterunt, ut, cum primi eorum cecidissent, proximi iacentibus insiste-

rent atque ex eorum corporibus pugnarent; his deiectis et coacervatis cadaveribus, qui superessent, ut ex tumulo tela in nostros conicerent et pila intercepta remitterent: ut non nequiquam tantae virtutis homines iudicari deberet ausos esse transire latissimum flumen, ascendere altissimas ripas, subire iniquissimum locum, quae facilia ex difficillimis animi magnitudo redegerat.

XXVIII. Hoc proelio facto et prope ad internicionem gente ac nomine Nerviorum redacto, maiores natu, quos una cum pueris mulieribusque in aestuaria ac paludes coniectos dixeramus, hac pugna nuntiata, cum victoribus nihil impeditum, victis nihil tutum arbitrarentur, omnium, qui supererant, consensu legatos ad Caesarem miserunt seque ei dediderunt, et in commemoranda civitatis calamitate ex sexcentis ad tres senatores, ex hominum milibus LX vix ad quingentos, qui arma ferre possent, sese redactos esse dixerunt. Quos Caesar, ut in miseros ac supplices usus misericordia videretur, diligentissime conservavit suisque finibus atque oppidis uti iussit et finitimis imperavit, ut ab iniuria et maleficio se suosque prohiberent.

The Aduatŭci gather in one stronghold, which Caesar besieges.

XXIX. Aduatuci, de quibus supra scripsimus, cum omnibus copiis auxilio Nerviis venirent, hac pugna nuntiata ex itinere domum reverterunt; cunctis oppidis castellisque desertis sua omnia in unum oppidum egregie natura munitum contulerunt. Quod cum ex omnibus in circuitu partibus altissimas rupes despectusque haberet, una ex parte leniter acclivis aditus in latitudinem non amplius ducentorum pedum relinquebatur; quem locum duplici altissimo muro munierant: tum magni ponderis saxa et praeacutas trabes in muro collocabant. Ipsi erant ex Cimbris Teutonisque prognati, qui, cum iter in provinciam nostram atque Italiam facerent, eis impedimentis, quae secum agere ac portare non poterant, citra flumen Rhenum depositis custodiam ex suis ac praesidium sex milia hominum una reliquerunt. Hi post eor[um] obitum multos annos a finitimis exagitati, cu[m]

inferrent, alias illatum defenderent, consensu eorum omnium pace facta hunc sibi domicilio locum delegerunt.

XXX. Ac primo adventu exercitus nostri crebras ex oppido excursiones faciebant parvulisque proeliis cum nostris contendebant; postea vallo passuum in circuitu xv milium crebrisque castellis circummuniti oppido sese continebant. Ubi vineis actis aggere exstructo turrim procul constitui viderunt, primum irridere ex muro atque increpitare vocibus, quod tanta machinatio ab tanto spatio instrueretur: quibusnam manibus aut quibus viribus praesertim homines tantulae staturae (nam plerumque omnibus Gallis prae magnitudine corporum suorum brevitas nostra contemptui est) tanti oneris turrim moturos sese confiderent?

They surrender, attempt treachery, are sold into slavery.

XXXI. Ubi vero moveri et appropinquare moenibus viderunt, nova atque inusitata specie commoti legatos ad Caesarem de pace miserunt, qui, ad hunc modum locuti: non existimare, Romanos sine ope divina bellum gerere, qui tantae altitudinis machinationes tanta celeritate promovere possent, se suaque omnia eorum potestati permittere dixerunt. Unum petere ac deprecari: si forte pro sua clementia ac mansuetudine, quam ipsi ab aliis audirent, statuisset, Aduatucos esse conservandos, ne se armis despoliaret. Sibi omnes fere finitimos esse inimicos ac suae virtuti invidere; a quibus se defendere traditis armis non possent. Sibi praestare, si in eum casum deducerentur, quamvis fortunam a populo Romano pati, quam ab his per cruciatum interfici, inter quos dominari consuessent.

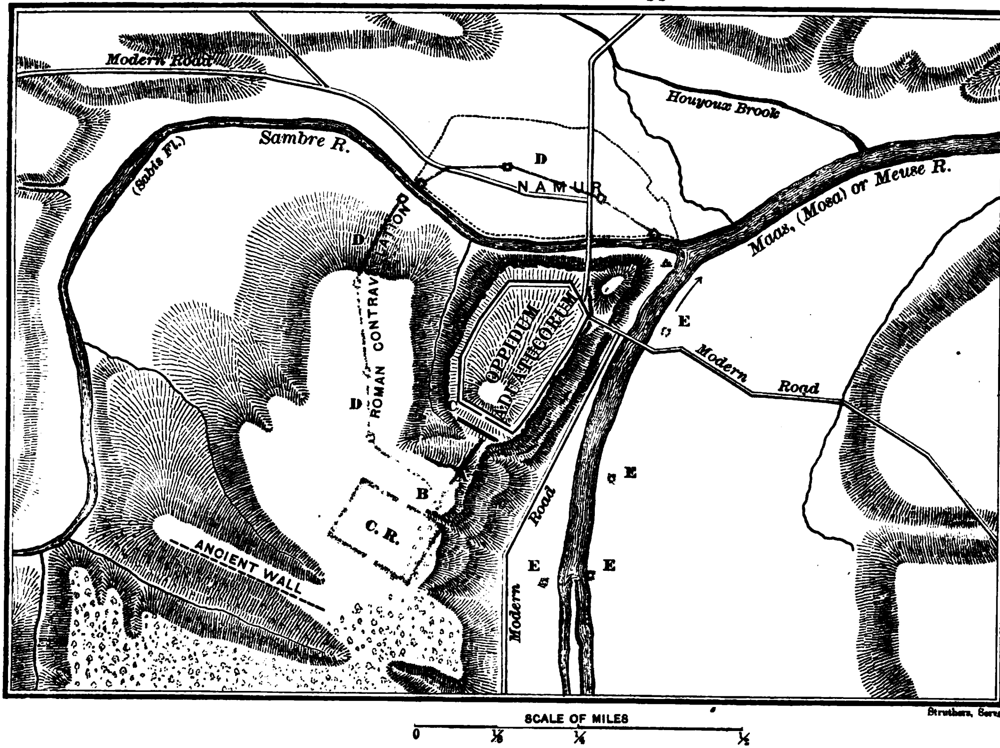
XXXII. Ad haec Caesar respondit: Se magis consuetudine sua quam merito eorum civitatem conservaturum, si prius, quam murum aries attigisset, se dedidissent; sed deditionis nullam esse condicionem nisi armis traditis. Se id, quod in Nerviis fecisset, facturum finitimisque imperaturum, ne quam dediticiis populi Romani iniuriam inferrent. Re nuntiata ad suos, quae imperarentur, facere dixerunt. Armorum magna [illegible]itudine de muro in fossam, quae erat ante oppidum, iacta, [illegible]mmam muri aggerisque altitudinem acervi

SIEGE OF THE TOWN OF THE ADUATUCI.

To face p. 90.

Lib. II. c. 29. sqq.

PLAN VI.



EXPLANATION.

C. R. Roman Camp.
A. The Agger, prolonged by the Romans up to the wall.
B. Movable Tower of the Romans.
C. Double Wall, with moat.
D, D, D. Roman line of contravallation, with numerous redoubts.
E, E, E, E. Redoubts, castella.

Struthers, Sorgus & Co., Engr's and Pr's, N.Y.

armorum adaequarent, et tamen circiter parte tertia, ut postea perspectum est, celata atque in oppido retenta, portis patefactis eo die pace sunt usi.

XXXIII. Sub vesperum Caesar portas claudi militesque ex oppido exire iussit, ne quam noctu oppidani ab militibus iniuriam acciperent. Illi, ante inito, ut intellectum est, consilio, quod deditione facta nostros praesidia deducturos aut denique indiligentius servaturos crediderant, partim cum his, quae retinuerant et celaverant, armis, partim scutis ex cortice factis aut viminibus intextis, quae subito, ut temporis exiguitas postulabat, pellibus induxerant, tertia vigilia, qua minime arduus ad nostras munitiones ascensus videbatur, omnibus copiis repentino ex oppido eruptionem fecerunt. Celeriter, ut ante Caesar imperarat, ignibus significatione facta, ex proximis castellis eo concursum est, pugnatumque ab hostibus ita acriter est, ut a viris fortibus in extrema spe salutis iniquo loco contra eos, qui ex vallo turribusque tela iacerent, pugnari debuit, cum in una virtute omnis spes salutis consisteret. Occisis ad hominum milibus quattuor, reliqui in oppidum reiecti sunt. Postridie eius diei refractis portis, cum iam defenderet nemo, atque intromissis militibus nostris sectionem eius oppidi universam Caesar vendidit. Ab eis, qui emerant, capitum numerus ad eum relatus est milium quinquaginta trium.

Several states along the coast are subdued by P. Crassus.

XXXIV. Eodem tempore a Publio Crasso, quem cum legione una miserat ad Venetos, Venellos, Osismos, Curiosolitas, Esubios, Aulercos, Redones, quae sunt maritimae civitates Oceanumque attingunt, certior factus est, omnes eas civitates in dicionem potestatemque populi Romani esse redactas.

The German tribes are impressed by Caesar's victories; the army goes into winter quarters; a thanksgiving is decreed at Rome.

XXXV. His rebus gestis omni Gallia pacata, tanta huius belli ad barbaros opinio perlata est, uti ab eis nationibus, quae trans Rhenum incolerent, mitterentur legati ad Caesarem,

qui se obsides daturas, imperata facturas pollicerentur. Quas legationes Caesar, quod in Italiam Illyricumque properabat, inita proxima aestate ad se reverti iussit. Ipse, in Carnutes, Andes Turonesque, quae civitates propinquae his locis erant, ubi bellum gesserat, legionibus in hibernacula deductis, in Italiam profectus est. Ob easque res ex litteris Caesaris in dies quindecim supplicatio decreta est, quod ante id tempus accidit nulli.

COMMENTARIUS TERTIUS.

Caesar stations Galba with a small force in the Alps.

I. Cum in Italiam proficisceretur Caesar, Servium Galbam cum legione duodecima et parte equitatus in Nantuatis, Veragros Sedunosque misit, qui ab finibus Allobrogum et lacu Lemanno et flumine Rhodano ad summas Alpes pertinent. Causa mittendi fuit, quod iter per Alpes, quo magno cum periculo magnisque cum portoriis mercatores ire consuerant, patefieri volebat. Huic permisit, si opus esse arbitraretur, uti in his locis legionem hiemandi causa collocaret. Galba, secundis aliquot proeliis factis castellisque compluribus eorum expugnatis, missis ad eum undique legatis obsidibusque datis et pace facta, constituit cohortes duas in Nantuatibus collocare et ipse cum reliquis eius legionis cohortibus in vico Veragrorum, qui appellatur Octodurus, hiemare; qui vicus positus in valle, non magna adiecta planitie, altissimis montibus undique continetur. Cum hunc in duas partes flumen divideret, alteram partem eius vici Gallis ad hiemandum concessit, alteram vacuam ab his relictam cohortibus attribuit. Eum locum vallo fossaque munivit.

There is a sudden uprising of the mountain tribes.

II. Cum dies hibernorum complures transissent, frumentumque eo comportari iussisset, subito per exploratores certior factus est, ex ea parte vici, quam Gallis concesserat, omnes noctu discessisse, montesque, qui impenderent, a maxima multitudine Sedunorum et Veragrorum teneri. Id aliquot de causis acciderat, ut subito Galli belli renovandi legionisque opprimendae consilium caperent: primum, quod legionem, neque eam plenissimam detractis cohortibus duabus et compluribus singillatim, qui commeatus petendi causa missi erant, propter paucitatem despiciebant; tum etiam, quod propter

iniquitatem loci, cum ipsi ex montibus in vallem decurrerent et tela conicerent, ne primum quidem posse impetum suum sustineri existimabant. Accedebat, quod suos ab se liberos abstractos obsidum nomine dolebant, et Romanos non solum itinerum causa, sed etiam perpetuae possessionis culmina Alpium occupare conari et ea loca finitimae provinciae adiungere sibi persuasum habebant.

III. His nuntiis acceptis Galba, cum neque opus hibernorum munitionesque plene essent perfectae, neque de frumento reliquoque commeatu satis esset provisum, quod deditione facta obsidibusque acceptis nihil de bello timendum existimaverat, consilio celeriter convocato sententias exquirere coepit. Quo in consilio, cum tantum repentini periculi praeter opinionem accidisset ac iam omnia fere superiora loca multitudine armatorum completa conspicerentur, neque subsidio veniri neque commeatus supportari interclusis itineribus possent, prope iam desperata salute nonnullae huiusmodi sententiae dicebantur, ut impedimentis relictis eruptione facta isdem itineribus, quibus eo pervenissent, ad salutem contenderent. Maiori tamen parti placuit, hoc reservato ad extremum consilio interim rei eventum experiri et castra defendere.

They are repulsed by Galba, who withdraws to the Province.

IV. Brevi spatio interiecto, vix ut eis rebus, quas constituissent, collocandis atque administrandis tempus daretur, hostes ex omnibus partibus signo dato decurrere, lapides gaesaque in vallum conicere. Nostri primo integris viribus fortiter repugnare neque ullum frustra telum ex loco superiore mittere, ut quaeque pars castrorum nudata defensoribus premi videbatur, eo occurrere et auxilium ferre, sed hoc superari, quod diuturnitate pugnae hostes defessi proelio excedebant, alii integris viribus succedebant; quarum rerum a nostris propter paucitatem fieri nihil poterat, ac non modo defesso ex pugna excedendi, sed ne saucio quidem eius loci, ubi constiterat, relinquendi ac sui recipiendi facultas dabatur.

V. Cum iam amplius horis sex continenter pugnaretur ac non solum vires, sed etiam tela nostros deficerent, atque

hostes acrius instarent languidioribusque nostris vallum scindere et fossas complere coepissent, resque esset iam ad extremum perducta casum, Publius Sextius Baculus, primi pili centurio, quem Nervico proelio compluribus confectum vulneribus diximus, et item Gaius Volusenus, tribunus militum, vir et consilii magni et virtutis, ad Galbam accurrunt atque unam esse spem salutis docent, si eruptione facta extremum auxilium experirentur. Itaque convocatis centurionibus celeriter milites certiores facit paulisper intermitterent proelium ac tantummodo tela missa exciperent seque ex labore reficerent, post dato signo ex castris erumperent atque omnem spem salutis in virtute ponerent.

VI. Quod iussi sunt, faciunt ac subito omnibus portis eruptione facta neque cognoscendi, quid fieret, neque sui colligendi hostibus facultatem relinquunt. Ita commutata fortuna eos, qui in spem potiundorum castrorum venerant, undique circumventos interficiunt et ex hominum milibus amplius xxx, quem numerum barbarorum ad castra venisse constabat, plus tertia parte interfecta reliquos perterritos in fugam coniciunt ac ne in locis quidem superioribus consistere patiuntur. Sic omnibus hostium copiis fusis armisque exutis se in castra munitionesque suas recipiunt. Quo proelio facto, quod saepius fortunam temptare Galba nolebat atque alio se in hiberna consilio venisse meminerat, aliis occurrisse rebus viderat, maxime frumenti commeatusque inopia permotus postero die omnibus eius vici aedificiis incensis in provinciam reverti contendit, ac nullo hoste prohibente aut iter demorante incolumem legionem in Nantuatis, inde in Allobroges perduxit ibique hiemavit.

The Veneti incite the Armorican states to revolt.

VII. His rebus gestis cum omnibus de causis Caesar pacatam Galliam existimaret, superatis Belgis, expulsis Germanis, victis in Alpibus Sedunis, atque ita inita hieme in Illyricum profectus esset, quod eas quoque nationes adire et regiones cognoscere volebat, subitum bellum in Gallia coortum est. Eius belli haec fuit causa. P. Crassus adulescens cum legione septima proximus mare Oceanum in Andibus hiemarat.

Is, quod in his locis inopia frumenti erat, praefectos tribunosque militum complures in finitimas civitates frumenti causa dimisit; quo in numero est Titus Terrasidius missus in Esubios, Marcus Trebius Gallus in Curiosolĭtas, Quintus Velanius cum Tito Silio in Venĕtos.

VIII. Huius est civitatis longe amplissima auctoritas omnis orae maritimae regionum earum, quod et naves habent Veneti plurimas, quibus in Britanniam navigare consuerunt, et scientia atque usu nauticarum rerum reliquos antecedunt et in magno impetu maris atque aperto, paucis portibus interiectis, quos tenent ipsi, omnes fere, qui eo mari uti consuerunt, habent vectigales. Ab his fit initium retinendi Silii atque Velanii, quod per eos suos se obsides, quos Crasso dedissent, reciperaturos existimabant. Horum auctoritate finitimi adducti, ut sunt Gallorum subita et repentina consilia, eadem de causa Trebium Terrasidiumque retinent, et celeriter missis legatis per suos principes inter se coniurant, nihil nisi communi consilio acturos eundemque omnis fortunae exitum esse laturos, reliquasque civitates sollicitant, ut in ea libertate, quam a maioribus acceperant, permanere quam Romanorum servitutem perferre mallent. Omni ora maritima celeriter ad suam sententiam perducta communem legationem ad Publium Crassum mittunt, si velit suos recipere, obsides sibi remittat.

Caesar prepares to wage aggressive war against them.

IX. Quibus de rebus Caesar ab Crasso certior factus, quod ipse aberat longius, naves interim longas aedificari in flumine Ligere, quod influit in Oceanum, remiges ex provincia institui, nautas gubernatoresque comparari iubet. His rebus celeriter administratis, ipse, cum primum per anni tempus potuit, ad exercitum contendit. Veneti reliquaeque item civitates cognito Caesaris adventu, simul quod, quantum in se facinus admisissent, intellegebant, legatos, quod nomen ad omnes nationes sanctum inviolatumque semper fuisset, retentos ab se et in vincula coniectos, pro magnitudine periculi bellum parare et maxime ea, quae ad usum navium pertinent, providere instituunt, hoc maiore spe, quod multum natura loci confidebant. Pedestria esse itinera concisa aestuariis,

navigationem impeditam propter inscientiam locorum paucitatemque portuum sciebant, neque nostros exercitus propter frumenti inopiam diutius apud se morari posse confidebant; ac iam ut omnia contra opinionem acciderent, tamen se plurimum navibus posse, Romanos neque ullam facultatem habere navium neque eorum locorum, ubi bellum gesturi essent, vada, portus, insulas novisse; ac longe aliam esse navigationem in concluso mari atque in vastissimo atque apertissimo Oceano perspiciebant. His initis consiliis oppida muniunt, frumenta ex agris in oppida comportant, naves in Venetiam, ubi Caesarem primum esse bellum gesturum constabat, quam plurimas possunt, cogunt. Socios sibi ad id bellum Osismos, Lexovios, Namnetes, Ambiliātos, Morinos, Diablintres, Menapios adsciscunt; auxilia ex Britannia, quae contra eas regiones posita est, arcessunt.

X. Erant hae difficultates belli gerendi, quas supra ostendimus, sed multa Caesarem tamen ad id bellum incitabant: iniuriae retentorum equitum Romanorum, rebellio facta post deditionem, defectio datis obsidibus, tot civitatum coniuratio, imprimis ne, hac parte neglecta, reliquae nationes sibi idem licere arbitrarentur. Itaque cum intellegeret, omnes fere Gallos novis rebus studere et ad bellum mobiliter celeriterque excitari, omnes autem homines natura libertati studere et condicionem servitutis odisse, priusquam plures civitates conspirarent, partiendum sibi ac latius distribuendum exercitum putavit.

XI. Itaque Titum Labienum legatum in Treveros, qui proximi flumini Rheno sunt, cum equitatu mittit. Huic mandat, Remos reliquosque Belgas adeat atque in officio contineat Germanosque, qui auxilio ab Belgis arcessiti dicebantur, si per vim navibus flumen transire conentur, prohibeat. Publium Crassum cum cohortibus legionariis XII et magno numero equitatus in Aquitaniam proficisci iubet, ne ex his nationibus auxilia in Galliam mittantur ac tantae nationes coniungantur. Quintum Titurium Sabinum legatum cum legionibus tribus in Venellos, Curiosolites Lexoviosque mittit, qui eam manum distinendam curet. Decimum Brutum adulescentem classi Gallicisque navibus, quas ex Pic-

tonibus et Santonis reliquisque pacatis regionibus convenire iusserat, praeficit et, cum primum posset, in Venetos proficisci iubet. Ipse eo pedestribus copiis contendit.

The strongholds and ships of the Veneti.

XII. Erant eiusmodi fere situs oppidorum, ut posita in extremis lingulis promunturiisque neque pedibus aditum haberent, cum ex alto se aestus incitavisset, quod is accedit semper horarum XII spatio, neque navibus, quod rursus minuente aestu naves in vadis afflictarentur. Ita utraque re oppidorum oppugnatio impediebatur; ac si quando, magnitudine operis forte superati, extruso mari aggere ac molibus atque his oppidi moenibus adaequatis, suis fortunis desperare coeperant, magno numero navium appulso, cuius rei summam facultatem habebant, sua deportabant omnia seque in proxima oppida recipiebant; ibi se rursus isdem opportunitatibus loci defendebant. Haec eo facilius magnam partem aestatis faciebant, quod nostrae naves tempestatibus detinebantur, summaque erat vasto atque aperto mari, magnis aestibus, raris ac prope nullis portibus, difficultas navigandi.

XIII. Namque ipsorum naves ad hunc modum factae armataeque erant: carinae aliquanto planiores quam nostrarum navium, quo facilius vada ac decessum aestus excipere possent; prorae admodum erectae, atque item puppes ad magnitudinem fluctuum tempestatumque accommodatae; naves totae factae ex robore ad quamvis vim et contumeliam perferendam; transtra pedalibus in altitudinem trabibus confixa clavis ferreis digiti pollicis crassitudine; ancorae pro funibus ferreis catenis revinctae; pelles pro velis alutaeque tenuiter confectae, hae sive propter lini inopiam atque eius usus inscientiam, sive eo, quod est magis verisimile, quod tantas tempestates Oceani tantosque impetus ventorum sustineri ac tanta onera navium regi velis non satis commode posse arbitrabantur. Cum his navibus nostrae classi eiusmodi congressus erat, ut una celeritate et pulsu remorum praestaret, reliqua pro loci natura, pro vi tempestatum illis essent aptiora et accommodatiora. Neque enim his nostrae rostro nocere poterant (tanta in eis erat firmitudo), neque propter altitudi-

PLAN VII.

CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE VENETI.

Lib. III. c. 12. sqq.

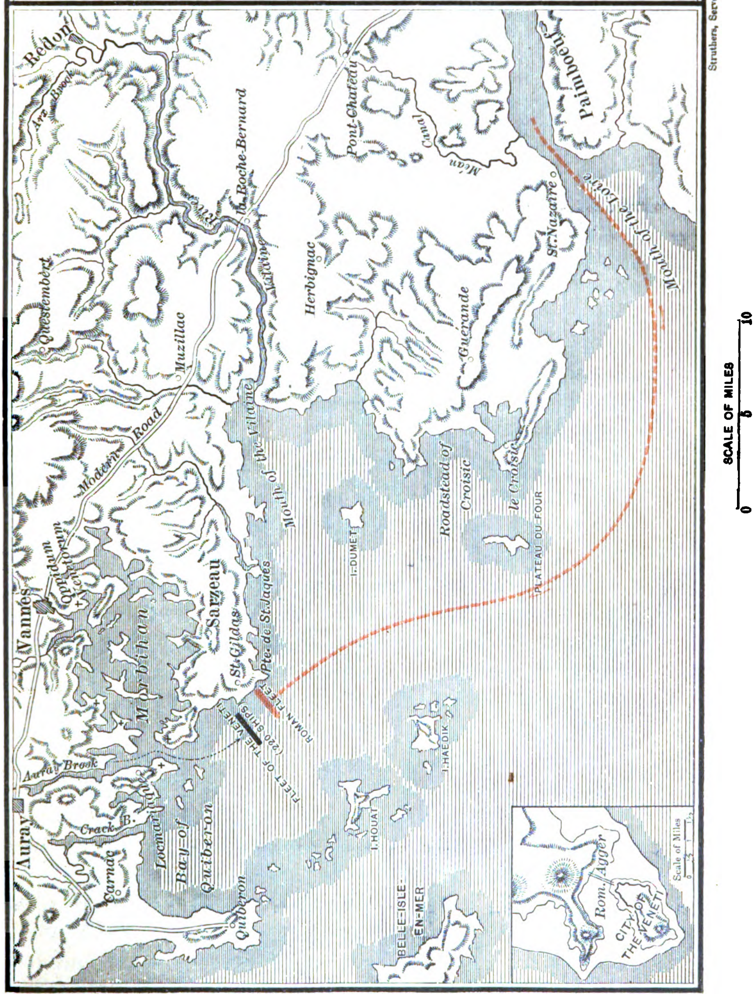
To face p. 98.

EXPLANATION.

The dotted red line represents the course of Caesar's fleet from the mouth of the Loire to the scene of the naval battle, in which the Veneti were totally defeated.

The small plan on the left represents the manner of besieging a town of the Veneti.

Struthers, Servoss & Co., Engr's and Pr's, N.Y.



nem facile telum adigebatur, et eadem de causa minus commode copulis continebantur. Accedebat, ut, cum saevire ventus coepisset et se vento dedissent, et tempestatem ferrent facilius et in vadis consisterent tutius et ab aestu relictae nihil saxa et cautes timerent; quarum rerum omnium nostris navibus casus erat extimescendus.

Caesar, victorious in a naval battle, wreaks vengeance on the Veneti.

XIV. Compluribus expugnatis oppidis Caesar, ubi intellexit, frustra tantum laborem sumi, neque hostium fugam captis oppidis reprimi neque eis noceri posse, statuit exspectandam classem. Quae ubi convenit ac primum ab hostibus visa est, circiter CCXX naves eorum paratissimae atque omni genere armorum ornatissimae profectae ex portu nostris adversae constiterunt; neque satis Bruto, qui classi praeerat, vel tribunis militum centurionibusque, quibus singulae naves erant attributae, constabat, quid agerent aut quam rationem pugnae insisterent. Rostro enim noceri non posse cognoverant; turribus autem excitatis, tamen has altitudo puppium ex barbaris navibus superabat, ut neque ex inferiore loco satis commode tela adigi possent et missa ab Gallis gravius acciderent. Una erat magno usui res praeparata a nostris, falces praeacutae insertae affixaeque longuriis, non absimili forma muralium falcium. His cum funes, qui antemnas ad malos destinabant, comprehensi adductique erant, navigio remis incitato praerumpebantur. Quibus abscisis antemnae necessario concidebant, ut, cum omnis Gallicis navibus spes in velis armamentisque consisteret, his ereptis omnis usus navium uno tempore eriperetur. Reliquum erat certamen positum in virtute, qua nostri milites facile superabant, atque eo magis, quod in conspectu Caesaris atque omnis exercitus res gerebatur, ut nullum paulo fortius factum latere posset: omnes enim colles ac loca superiora, unde erat propinquus despectus in mare, ab exercitu tenebantur.

XV. Disiectis, ut diximus, antemnis, cum singulas binae ac ternae naves circumsteterant, milites summa vi transcendere in hostium naves contendebant. Quod postquam bar-

bari fieri animadverterunt, expugnatis compluribus navibus, cum ei rei nullum reperiretur auxilium, fuga salutem petere contenderunt. Ac iam conversis in eam partem navibus, quo ventus ferebat, tanta subito malacia ac tranquillitas exstitit, ut se ex loco commovere non possent. Quae quidem res ad negotium conficiendum maxime fuit opportuna: nam singulas nostri consectati expugnaverunt, ut perpaucae ex omni numero noctis interventu ad terram pervenerint, cum ab hora fere quarta usque ad solis occasum pugnaretur.

XVI. Quo proelio bellum Venetorum totiusque orae maritimae confectum est. Nam cum omnis iuventus, omnes etiam gravioris aetatis, in quibus aliquid consilii aut dignitatis fuit, eo convenerant, tum, navium quod ubique fuerat, unum in locum coëgerant; quibus amissis reliqui neque quo se reciperent, neque quemadmodum oppida defenderent, habebant. Itaque se suaque omnia Caesari dediderunt. In quos eo gravius Caesar vindicandum statuit, quo diligentius in reliquum tempus a barbaris ius legatorum conservaretur. Itaque omni senatu necato reliquos sub corona vendidit.

Meanwhile Titurius subdues the Venelli.

XVII. Dum haec in Venetis geruntur, Quintus Titurius Sabinus cum eis copiis, quas a Caesare acceperat, in fines Venellorum pervenit. His praeerat Viridŏvix ac summam imperii tenebat earum omnium civitatum, quae defecerant, ex quibus exercitum magnasque copias coëgerat, atque his paucis diebus Aulerci Eburovīces Lexoviique senatu suo interfecto, quod auctores belli esse nolebant, portas clauserunt seque cum Viridovīce coniunxerunt: magnaque praeterea multitudo ex Gallia perditorum hominum latronumque convenerat, quos spes praedandi studiumque bellandi ab agricultura et cotidiano labore revocabat. Sabinus idoneo omnibus rebus loco castris sese tenebat, cum Viridovix contra eum duum milium spatio consedisset cotidieque productis copiis pugnandi potestātem faceret, ut iam non solum hostibus in contemptionem Sabinus veniret, sed etiam nostrorum militum vocibus nonnihil carperetur; tantamque opinionem timoris praebuit, ut iam ad vallum castrorum hostes accedere

auderent. Id ea de causa faciebat, quod cum tanta multitudine hostium, praesertim eo absente, qui summam imperii teneret, nisi aequo loco aut opportunitate aliqua data legato dimicandum non existimabat.

XVIII. Hac confirmata opinione timoris idoneum quendam hominem et callidum delegit, Gallum, ex eis, quos auxilii causa secum habebat. Huic magnis praemiis pollicitationibusque persuadet, uti ad hostes transeat, et, quid fieri velit, edocet. Qui ubi pro perfuga ad eos venit, timorem Romanorum proponit, quibus angustiis ipse Caesar a Venetis prematur, docet, neque longius abesse, quin proxima nocte Sabinus clam ex castris exercitum educat et ad Caesarem auxilii ferendi causa proficiscatur. Quod ubi auditum est, conclamant omnes, occasionem negotii bene gerendi amittendam non esse, ad castra iri oportere. Multae res ad hoc consilium Gallos hortabantur; superiorum dierum Sabini cunctatio, perfugae confirmatio, inopia cibariorum, cui rei parum diligenter ab eis erat provisum, spes Venetici belli, et quod fere libenter homines id, quod volunt, credunt. His rebus adducti non prius Viridovicem reliquosque duces ex concilio dimittunt, quam ab his sit concessum, arma uti capiant et ad castra contendant. Qua re concessa laeti, ut explorata victoria, sarmentis virgultisque collectis, quibus fossas Romanorum compleant, ad castra pergunt.

XIX. Locus erat castrorum editus et paulatim ab imo acclivis circiter passus mille. Huc magno cursu contenderunt, ut quam minimum spatii ad se colligendos armandosque Romanis daretur, exanimatique pervenerunt. Sabinus suos hortatus cupientibus signum dat. Impeditis hostibus propter ea, quae ferebant, onera, subito duabus portis eruptionem fieri iubet. Factum est opportunitate loci, hostium inscientia ac defetigatione, virtute militum et superiorum pugnarum exercitatione, ut ne unum quidem nostrorum impetum ferrent ac statim terga verterent. Quos impeditos integris viribus milites nostri consecuti magnum numerum eorum occiderunt; reliquos equites consectati paucos, qui ex fuga evaserant, reliquerunt. Sic uno tempore et de navali pugna Sabinus et de Sabini victoria Caesar certior factus est, civitatesque

omnes se statim Titurio dediderunt. Nam ut ad bella suscipienda Gallorum alacer ac promptus est animus, sic mollis ac minime resistens ad calamitates perferendas mens eorum est.

Crassus, entering Aquitania, conquers the Sontiates. The Soldurii.

XX. Eodem fere tempore Publius Crassus, cum in Aquitaniam pervenisset, quae pars, ut ante dictum est, et regionum latitudine et multitudine hominum ex tertia parte Galliae est existimanda, cum intellegeret, in eis locis sibi bellum gerendum, ubi paucis ante annis Lucius Valerius Praeconīnus legatus exercitu pulso interfectus esset, atque unde Lucius Mallius proconsul impedimentis amissis profugisset, non mediocrem sibi diligentiam adhibendam intellegebat. Itaque re frumentaria provisa, auxiliis equitatuque comparato, multis praeterea viris fortibus Tolosa et Narbone, quae sunt civitates Galliae provinciae finitimae his regionibus, nominatim evocatis in Sontiatum fines exercitum introduxit. Cuius adventu cognito Sontiates magnis copiis coactis equitatuque, quo plurimum valebant, in itinere agmen nostrum adorti primum equestre proelium commiserunt, deinde, equitatu suo pulso atque insequentibus nostris, subito pedestres copias, quas in convalle in insidiis collocaverant, ostenderunt. Hi nostros disiectos adorti proelium renovarunt.

XXI. Pugnatum est diu atque acriter, cum Sontiates superioribus victoriis freti in sua virtute totius Aquitaniae salutem positam putarent, nostri autem, quid sine imperatore et sine reliquis legionibus adulescentulo duce efficere possent, perspici cuperent: tandem confecti vulneribus hostes terga vertere. Quorum magno numero interfecto Crassus ex itinere oppidum Sontiatum oppugnare coepit. Quibus fortiter resistentibus, vineas turresque egit. Illi alias eruptione temptata, alias cuniculis ad aggerem vineasque actis (cuius rei sunt longe peritissimi Aquitani, propterea quod multis locis apud eos aerariae secturaeque sunt), ubi diligentia nostrorum nihil his rebus profici posse intellexerunt, legatos ad Crassum mittunt, seque in deditionem ut recipiat, petunt. Qua re impetrata arma tradere iussi faciunt.

XXII. Atque in ea re omnium nostrorum intentis animis, alia ex parte oppidi Adiatunnus, qui summam imperii tenebat, cum DC devotis, quos illi soldurios appellant, quorum haec est condicio, uti omnibus in vita commodis una cum eis fruantur, quorum se amicitiae dediderint, si quid his per vim accidat, aut eundem casum una ferant aut sibi mortem consciscant: neque adhuc hominum memoria repertus est quisquam, qui eo interfecto, cuius se amicitiae devovisset, mori recusaret; cum his Adiatunnus eruptionem facere conatus, clamore ab ea parte munitionis sublato, cum ad arma milites concurrissent vehementerque ibi pugnatum esset, repulsus in oppidum tamen, uti eadem deditionis condicione uteretur, ab Crasso impetravit.

Crassus reduces nearly all the rest of Aquitania to subjection.

XXIII. Armis obsidibusque acceptis Crassus in fines Vocatium et Tarusatium profectus est. Tum vero barbari commoti, quod oppidum et natura loci et manu munitum paucis diebus, quibus eo ventum erat, expugnatum cognoverant, legatos quoque versum dimittere, coniurare, obsides inter se dare, copias parare coeperunt. Mittuntur etiam ad eas civitates legati, quae sunt citerioris Hispaniae finitimae Aquitaniae: inde auxilia ducesque arcessuntur. Quorum adventu magna cum auctoritate et magna cum hominum multitudine bellum gerere conantur. Duces vero ii deliguntur, qui una cum Quinto Sertorio omnes annos fuerant summamque scientiam rei militaris habere existimabantur. Hi consuetudine populi Romani loca capere, castra munire, commeatibus nostros intercludere instituunt. Quod ubi Crassus animadvertit, suas copias propter exiguitatem non facile diduci, hostem et vagari et vias obsidere et castris satis praesidii relinquere, ob eam causam minus commode frumentum commeatumque sibi supportari, in dies hostium numerum augeri, non cunctandum existimavit, quin pugna decertaret. Hac re ad consilium delata, ubi omnes idem sentire intellexit, posterum diem pugnae constituit.

XXIV. Prima luce productis omnibus copiis duplici acie instituta, auxiliis in mediam aciem coniectis, quid hostes consilii caperent, exspectabat. Illi, etsi propter multitudinem

et veterem belli gloriam paucitatemque nostrorum se tuto dimicaturos existimabant, tamen tutius esse arbitrabantur, obsessis viis commeatu intercluso sine ullo vulnere victoria potiri, et, si propter inopiam rei frumentariae Romani sese recipere coepissent, impeditos in agmine et sub sarcinis infirmiore animo adoriri cogitabant. Hoc consilio probato ab ducibus, productis Romanorum copiis, sese castris tenebant. Hac re perspecta Crassus, cum sua cunctatione atque opinione timoris hostes nostros milites alacriores ad pugnandum effecissent, atque omnium voces audirentur, exspectari diutius non oportere, quin ad castra iretur, cohortatus suos, omnibus cupientibus ad hostium castra contendit.

XXV. Ibi cum alii fossas complerent, alii multis telis coniectis defensores vallo munitionibusque depellerent, auxiliaresque, quibus ad pugnam non multum Crassus confidebat, lapidibus telisque subministrandis et ad aggerem cespitibus comportandis speciem atque opinionem pugnantium praeberent, cum item ab hostibus constanter ac non timide pugnaretur telaque ex loco superiore missa non frustra acciderent, equites circumitis hostium castris Crasso renuntiaverunt, non eadem esse diligentia ab decumana porta castra munita facilemque aditum habere.

XXVI. Crassus equitum praefectos cohortatus, ut magnis praemiis pollicitationibusque suos excitarent, quid fieri velit, ostendit. Illi, ut erat imperatum, eductis eis cohortibus, quae praesidio castris relictae intritae ab labore erant, et longiore itinere circumductis, ne ex hostium castris conspici possent, omnium oculis mentibusque ad pugnam intentis, celeriter ad eas, quas diximus, munitiones pervenerunt atque his prorutis prius in hostium castris constiterunt, quam plane ab his videri aut, quid rei gereretur, cognosci posset. Tum vero clamore ab ea parte audito nostri redintegratis viribus, quod plerumque in spe victoriae accidere consuevit, acrius impugnare coeperunt. Hostes undique circumventi desperatis omnibus rebus se per munitiones deicere et fuga salutem petere intenderunt. Quos equitatus apertissimis campis consectatus, ex milium L numero, quae ex Aquitania Cantabrisque convenisse constabat, vix quarta parte relicta, multa nocte se in castra recepit.

XXVII. Hac audita pugna maxima pars Aquitaniae sese Crasso dedidit obsidesque ultro misit; quo in numero fuerunt Tarbelli, Bigerriones, Ptianii, Vocates, Tarusates, Elusates, Gates, Ausci, Garumni, Sibuzates, Cocosates; paucae ultimae nationes anni tempore confisae, quod hiems suberat, hoc facere neglexerunt.

Caesar proceeds against the Morini and the Menapii, who take refuge in forests. He places his army in winter quarters.

XXVIII. Eodem fere tempore Caesar, etsi prope exacta iam aestas erat, tamen, quod omni Gallia pacata Morini Menapiique supererant, qui in armis essent neque ad eum umquam legatos de pace misissent, arbitratus, id bellum celeriter confici posse, eo exercitum adduxit; qui longe alia ratione ac reliqui Galli bellum gerere coeperunt. Nam quod intellegebant, maximas nationes, quae proelio contendissent, pulsas superatasque esse, continentesque silvas ac paludes habebant, eo se suaque omnia contulerunt. Ad quarum initium silvarum cum Caesar pervenisset castraque munire instituisset, neque hostis interim visus esset, dispersis in opere nostris, subito ex omnibus partibus silvae evolaverunt et in nostros impetum fecerunt. Nostri celeriter arma ceperunt eosque in silvas reppulerunt et compluribus interfectis longius impeditioribus locis secuti paucos ex suis deperdiderunt.

XXIX. Reliquis deinceps diebus Caesar silvas caedere instituit et, ne quis inermibus imprudentibusque militibus ab latere impetus fieri posset, omnem eam materiam, quae erat caesa, conversam ad hostem collocabat et pro vallo ad utrumque latus exstruebat. Incredibili celeritate magno spatio paucis diebus confecto, cum iam pecus atque extrema impedimenta ab nostris tenerentur, ipsi densiores silvas peterent, eiusmodi sunt tempestates consecutae, uti opus necessario intermitteretur et continuatione imbrium diutius sub pellibus milites contineri non possent. Itaque vastatis omnibus eorum agris, vicis aedificiisque incensis Caesar exercitum reduxit et in Aulercis Lexoviisque, reliquis item civitatibus, quae proxime bellum fecerant, in hibernis collocavit.

COMMENTARIUS QUARTUS.

The Usipetes and Tencteri enter Gaul; the Suebi.

I. Ea, quae secuta est, hieme, qui fuit annus Gneo Pompeio, Marco Crasso consulibus, Usipetes Germani et item Tencteri magna cum multitudine hominum flumen Rhenum transierunt non longe a mari, quo Rhenus influit. Causa transeundi fuit, quod ab Suebis complures annos exagitati bello premebantur et agricultura prohibebantur. Sueborum gens est longe maxima et bellicosissima Germanorum omnium. Hi centum pagos habere dicuntur, ex quibus quotannis singula milia armatorum bellandi causa ex finibus educunt. Reliqui, qui domi manserunt, se atque illos alunt; hi rursus in vicem anno post in armis sunt, illi domi remanent. Sic neque agricultura nec ratio atque usus belli intermittitur. Sed privati ac separati agri apud eos nihil est, neque longius anno remanere uno in loco incolendi causa licet. Neque multum frumento, sed maximam partem lacte atque pecore vivunt, multumque sunt in venationibus; quae res et cibi genere et cotidiana exercitatione et libertate vitae, quod, a pueris nullo officio aut disciplina assuefacti, nihil omnino contra voluntatem faciant, et vires alit et immani corporum magnitudine homines efficit. Atque in eam se consuetudinem adduxerunt, ut locis frigidissimis neque vestitus praeter pellis haberent quicquam, quarum propter exiguitatem magna est corporis pars aperta, et lavarentur in fluminibus.

II. Mercatoribus est aditus magis eo, ut, quae bello ceperint, quibus vendant, habeant, quam quo ullam rem ad se importari desiderent. Quin etiam iumentis, quibus maxime Galli delectantur quaeque impenso parant pretio, Germani importatis non utuntur, sed quae sunt apud eos nata, prava

atque deformia, haec cotidiana exercitatione, summi ut sint laboris, efficiunt. Equestribus proeliis saepe ex equis desiliunt ac pedibus proeliantur, equosque eodem remanere vestigio assuefecerunt, ad quos se celeriter, cum usus est, recipiunt; neque eorum moribus turpius quicquam aut inertius habetur quam ephippiis uti. Itaque ad quemvis numerum ephippiatorum equitum quamvis pauci adire audent. Vinum ad se omnino importari non sinunt, quod ea re ad laborem ferendum remollescere homines atque effeminari arbitrantur.

III. Publice maximam putant esse laudem, quam latissime a suis finibus vacare agros: hac re significari, magnum numerum civitatium suam vim sustinere non posse. Itaque una ex parte a Suebis circiter milia passuum sexcenta agri vacare dicuntur. Ad alteram partem succedunt Ubii, quorum fuit civitas ampla atque florens, ut est captus Germanorum, et paulo sunt eiusdem generis ceteris humaniores, propterea quod Rhenum attingunt multumque ad eos mercatores ventitant et ipsi propter propinquitatem Gallicis sunt moribus assuefacti. Hos cum Suebi, multis saepe bellis experti, propter amplitudinem gravitatemque civitatis finibus expellere non potuissent, tamen vectigales sibi fecerunt ac multo humiliores infirmioresque redegerunt.

The Germans overcome the Menapii; the fickleness of the Gauls.

IV. In eadem causa fuerunt Usipetes et Tencteri, quos supra diximus, qui complures annos Sueborum vim sustinuerunt; ad extremum tamen agris expulsi et multis locis Germaniae triennium vagati ad Rhenum pervenerunt. Quas regiones Menapii incolebant et ad utramque ripam fluminis agros, aedificia vicosque habebant; sed tantae multitudinis aditu perterriti ex iis aedificiis, quae trans flumen habuerant, demigraverunt et cis Rhenum dispositis praesidiis Germanos transire prohibebant. Illi omnia experti, cum neque vi contendere propter inopiam navium neque clam transire propter custodias Menapiorum possent, reverti se in suas sedes regionesque simulaverunt et tridui viam progressi rursus reverterunt atque omni hoc itinere una nocte equitatu confecto

inscios inopinantesque Menapios oppresserunt, qui de Germanorum discessu per exploratores certiores facti sine metu trans Rhenum in suos vicos remigraverant. His interfectis navibusque eorum occupatis, priusquam ea pars Menapiorum, quae citra Rhenum erat, certior fieret, flumen transierunt atque omnibus eorum aedificiis occupatis reliquam partem hiemis se eorum copiis aluerunt.

V. His de rebus Caesar certior factus et infirmitatem Gallorum veritus, quod sunt in consiliis capiendis mobiles et novis plerumque rebus student, nihil his committendum existimavit. Est enim hoc Gallicae consuetudinis, uti et viatores etiam invitos consistere cogant et, quid quisque eorum de quaque re audierit aut cognoverit, quaerant, et mercatores in oppidis vulgus circumsistat quibusque ex regionibus veniant quasque ibi res cognoverint, pronuntiare cogant. His rebus atque auditionibus permoti de summis saepe rebus consilia ineunt, quorum eos in vestigio paenitere necesse est, cum incertis rumoribus serviant et plerique ad voluntatem eorum ficta respondeant.

Caesar marches against the Germans; they negotiate with him.

VI. Qua consuetudine cognita Caesar, ne graviori bello occurreret, maturius, quam consuerat, ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, ea, quae fore suspicatus erat, facta cognovit: missas legationes ab nonnullis civitatibus ad Germanos invitatosque eos, uti ab Rheno discederent, omniaque, quae postulassent, ab se fore parata. Qua spe adducti Germani latius vagabantur et in fines Eburonum et Condrusorum, qui sunt Treverorum clientes, pervenerant. Principibus Galliae evocatis Caesar ea, quae cognoverat, dissimulanda sibi existimavit eorumque animis permulsis et confirmatis equitatuque imperato bellum cum Germanis gerere constituit.

VII. Re frumentaria comparata equitibusque delectis iter in ea loca facere coepit, quibus in locis esse Germanos audiebat. A quibus cum paucorum dierum iter abesset, legati ab his venerunt, quorum haec fuit oratio: Germanos neque priores populo Romano bellum inferre, neque tamen

recusare, si lacessantur, quin armis contendant, quod Germanorum consuetudo haec sit a maioribus tradita, quicumque bellum inferant, resistere neque deprecari. Haec tamen dicere, venisse invitos, eiectos domo; si suam gratiam Romani velint, posse iis utiles esse amicos; vel sibi agros attribuant vel patiantur eos tenere, quos armis possederint: sese unis Suebis concedere, quibus ne dii quidem immortales pares esse possent; reliquum quidem in terris esse neminem, quem non superare possint.

VIII. Ad haec, quae visum est, Caesar respondit; sed exitus fuit orationis: Sibi nullam cum his amicitiam esse posse, si in Gallia remanerent; neque verum esse, qui suos fines tueri non potuerint, alienos occupare; neque ullos in Gallia vacare agros, qui dari tantae praesertim multitudini sine iniuria possint; sed licere, si velint, in Ubiorum finibus considere, quorum sint legati apud se et de Sueborum iniuriis querantur et a se auxilium petant: hoc se Ubiis imperaturum.

IX. Legati haec se ad suos relaturos dixerunt et re deliberata post diem tertium ad Caesarem reversuros: interea ne propius se castra moveret, petierunt. Ne id quidem Caesar ab se impetrari posse dixit. Cognoverat enim, magnam partem equitatus ab iis aliquot diebus ante praedandi frumentandique causa ad Ambivarītos trans Mosam missam: hos exspectari equites atque eius rei causa moram interponi arbitrabatur.

Description of the Rhine region. The Germans act treacherously.

X. Mosa profluit ex monte Vosĕgo, qui est in finibus Lingŏnum, et parte quadam ex Rheno recepta, quae appellatur Vacălus, insulam efficit Batavorum neque longius ab Oceano milibus passuum LXXX in Rhenum influit. Rhenus autem oritur ex Lepontiis, qui Alpes incolunt, et longo spatio per fines Nantuatium, Helvetiorum, Sequanorum, Mediomatrĭcum, Tribocorum, Treverorum citatus fertur et, ubi Oceano appropinquavit, in plures defluit partes multis ingentibusque insulis effectis, quarum pars magna a feris barbarisque nationibus incolitur, ex quibus sunt, qui piscibus

atque ovis avium vivere existimantur, multisque capitibus in Oceanum influit.

XI. Caesar cum ab hoste non amplius passuum XII milibus abesset, ut erat constitutum, ad eum legati revertuntur; qui in itinere congressi magnopere, ne longius progrederetur, orabant. Cum id non impetrassent, petebant, uti ad eos equites, qui agmen antecessissent, praemitteret eosque pugna prohiberet, sibique ut potestatem faceret in Ubios legatos mittendi; quorum si principes ac senatus sibi iureiurando fidem fecisset, ea condicione, quae a Caesare ferretur, se usuros ostendebant: ad has res conficiendas sibi tridui spatium daret. Haec omnia Caesar eodem illo pertinere arbitrabatur, ut tridui mora interposita equites eorum, qui abessent, reverterentur; tamen sese non longius milibus passuum quattuor aquationis causa processurum eo die dixit: huc postero die quam frequentissimi convenirent, ut de eorum postulatis cognosceret. Interim ad praefectos, qui cum omni equitatu antecesserant, mittit, qui nuntiarent, ne hostes proelio lacesserent et, si ipsi lacesserentur, sustinerent, quoad ipse cum exercitu propius accessisset.

XII. At hostes, ubi primum nostros equites conspexerunt, quorum erat quinque milium numerus, cum ipsi non amplius octingentos equites haberent, quod ii, qui frumentandi causa ierant trans Mosam, nondum redierant, nihil timentibus nostris, quod legati eorum paulo ante a Caesare discesserant atque is dies indutiis erat ab his petitus, impetu facto celeriter nostros perturbaverunt; rursus resistentibus, consuetudine sua ad pedes desiluerunt, subfossis equis compluribusque nostris deiectis reliquos in fugam coniecerunt atque ita perterritos egerunt, ut non prius fuga desisterent, quam in conspectum agminis nostri venissent. In eo proelio ex equitibus nostris interficiuntur quattuor et septuaginta, in his vir fortissimus Piso Aquitanus, amplissimo genere natus, cuius avus in civitate sua regnum obtinuerat, amicus ab senatu nostro appellatus. Hic cum fratri intercluso ab hostibus auxilium ferret, illum ex periculo eripuit, ipse equo vulnerato deiectus, quoad potuit, fortissime restitit; cum circumventus multis vulneribus acceptis cecidisset atque id frater, qui iam proelio excesserat,

procul animadvertisset, incitato equo se hostibus obtulit atque interfectus est.

Caesar, suddenly attacking, routs them with great slaughter.

XIII. Hoc facto proelio Caesar neque iam sibi legatos audiendos neque condiciones accipiendas arbitrabatur ab iis, qui per dolum atque insidias, petita pace, ultro bellum intulissent; exspectare vero, dum hostium copiae augerentur equitatusque reverteretur, summae dementiae esse iudicabat, et cognita Gallorum infirmitate, quantum iam apud eos hostes uno proelio auctoritatis essent consecuti, sentiebat; quibus ad consilia capienda nihil spatii dandum existimabat. His constitutis rebus et consilio cum legatis et quaestore communicato, ne quem diem pugnae praetermitteret, opportunissima res accidit, quod postridie eius diei mane eadem et perfidia et simulatione usi Germani frequentes omnibus principibus maioribusque natu adhibitis ad eum in castra venerunt, simul, ut dicebatur, sui purgandi causa, quod contra, atque esset dictum et ipsi petissent, proelium pridie commisissent, simul ut, si quid possent, de indutiis fallendo impetrarent. Quos sibi Caesar oblatos gavisus, illos retineri iussit; ipse omnes copias castris eduxit equitatumque, quod recenti proelio perterritum esse existimabat, agmen subsequi iussit.

XIV. Acie triplici instituta et celeriter octo milium itinere confecto prius ad hostium castra pervenit, quam, quid ageretur, Germani sentire possent. Qui omnibus rebus subito perterriti et celeritate adventus nostri et discessu suorum, neque consilii habendi neque arma capiendi spatio dato, perturbantur, copiasne adversus hostem ducere, an castra defendere, an fuga salutem petere praestaret. Quorum timor cum fremitu et concursu significaretur, milites nostri pristini diei perfidia incitati in castra irruperunt. Quo loco, qui celeriter arma capere potuerunt, paulisper nostris restiterunt atque inter carros impedimentaque proelium commiserunt; at reliqua multitudo puerorum mulierumque — nam cum omnibus suis domo excesserant Rhenumque transierant — passim fugere coepit; ad quos consectandos Caesar equitatum misit.

XV. Germani, post tergum clamore audito, cum suos interfici viderent, armis abiectis signisque militaribus relictis se ex castris eiecerunt, et cum ad confluentem Mosae et Rheni pervenissent, reliqua fuga desperata, magno numero interfecto, reliqui se in flumen praecipitaverunt atque ibi timore, lassitudine, vi fluminis oppressi perierunt. Nostri ad unum omnes incolumes, perpaucis vulneratis, ex tanti belli timore, cum hostium numerus capitum CCCCXXX milium fuisset, se in castra receperunt. Caesar iis, quos in castris retinuerat, discedendi potestatem fecit. Illi supplicia cruciatusque Gallorum veriti, quorum agros vexaverant, remanere se apud eum velle dixerunt. His Caesar libertatem concessit.

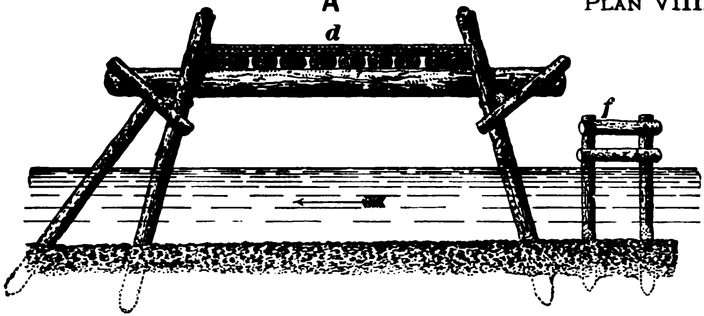
Caesar bridges the Rhine, enters Germany, returns to Gaul.

XVI. Germanico bello confecto multis de causis Caesar statuit sibi Rhenum esse transeundum; quarum illa fuit iustissima, quod, cum videret Germanos tam facile impelli, ut in Galliam venirent, suis quoque rebus eos timere voluit, cum intellegerent, et posse et audere populi Romani exercitum Rhenum transire. Accessit etiam, quod illa pars equitatus Usipetum et Tencterorum, quam supra commemoravi praedandi frumentandique causa Mosam transisse neque proelio interfuisse, post fugam suorum se trans Rhenum in fines Sugambrorum receperat seque cum iis coniunxerat. Ad quos cum Caesar nuntios misisset, qui postularent, eos, qui sibi Galliaeque bellum intulissent, sibi dederent, responderunt: Populi Romani imperium Rhenum finire: si se invito Germanos in Galliam transire non aequum existimaret, cur sui quicquam esse imperii aut potestatis trans Rhenum postularet? Ubii autem, qui uni ex Transrhenanis ad Caesarem legatos miserant, amicitiam fecerant, obsides dederant, magnopere orabant, ut sibi auxilium ferret, quod graviter ab Suebis premerentur; vel, si id facere occupationibus reipublicae prohiberetur, exercitum modo Rhenum transportaret: id sibi ad auxilium spemque reliqui temporis satis futurum. Tantum esse nomen atque opinionem eius exercitus Ariovisto pulso et hoc novissimo proelio facto etiam ad ultimas Germanorum nationes, uti opinione et amicitia populi Romani tuti esse

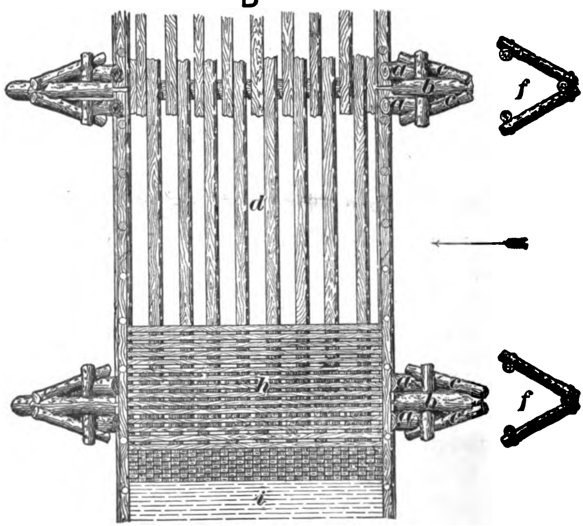
CAESAR'S BRIDGE ACROSS THE RHINE.

PLAN VIII.

A

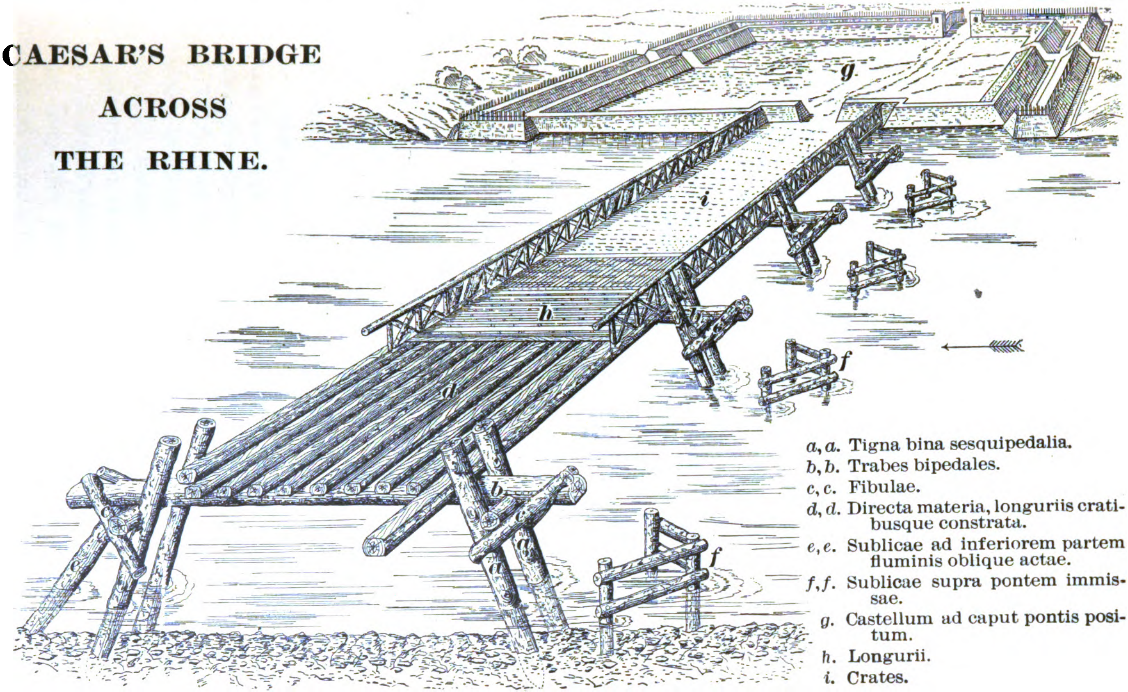


B



A. Cross-section.
B. The Bridge seen from above.

CAESAR'S BRIDGE ACROSS THE RHINE.



a, a. Tigna bina sesquipedalia.
b, b. Trabes bipedales.
c, c. Fibulae.
d, d. Directa materia, longuriis cratibusque constrata.
e, e. Sublicae ad inferiorem partem fluminis oblique actae.
f, f. Sublicae supra pontem immissae.
g. Castellum ad caput pontis positum.
h. Longurii.
i. Crates.

possint. Navium magnam copiam ad transportandum exercitum pollicebantur.

XVII. Caesar his de causis, quas commemoravi, Rhenum transire decreverat; sed navibus transire neque satis tutum esse arbitrabatur, neque suae neque populi Romani dignitatis esse statuebat. Itaque, etsi summa difficultas faciendi pontis proponebatur propter latitudinem, rapiditatem altitudinemque fluminis, tamen id sibi contendendum aut aliter non traducendum exercitum existimabat. Rationem pontis hanc instituit. Tigna bina sesquipedalia paulum ab imo praeacuta dimensa ad altitudinem fluminis intervallo pedum duorum inter se iungebat. Haec cum machinationibus immissa in flumen defixerat fistucisque adegerat, non sublicae modo directe ad perpendiculum, sed prone ac fastigate, ut secundum naturam fluminis procumberent, his item contraria duo ad eundem modum iuncta intervallo pedum quadragenum ab inferiore parte contra vim atque impetum fluminis conversa statuebat. Haec utraque insuper bipedalibus trabibus immissis, quantum eorum tignorum iunctura distabat, binis utrimque fibulis ab extrema parte distinebantur; quibus disclusis atque in contrariam partem revinctis tanta erat operis firmitudo atque ea rerum natura, ut, quo maior vis aquae se incitavisset, hoc artius illigata tenerentur. Haec directa materia iniecta contexebantur ac longuriis cratibusque consternebantur; ac nihilo secius sublicae et ad inferiorem partem fluminis oblique agebantur, quae pro ariete subiectae et cum omni opere coniunctae vim fluminis exciperent, et aliae item supra pontem mediocri spatio, ut, si arborum trunci sive naves deiciendi operis essent a barbaris missae, his defensoribus earum rerum vis minueretur, neu ponti nocerent.

XVIII. Diebus decem, quibus materia coepta erat comportari, omni opere effecto, exercitus traducitur. Caesar ad utramque partem pontis firmo praesidio relicto in fines Sugambrorum contendit. Interim a compluribus civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt; quibus pacem atque amicitiam petentibus liberaliter respondit obsidesque ad se adduci iubet. Sugambri ex eo tempore, quo pons institui coeptus est, fuga comparata hortantibus iis, quos ex Tencteris atque Usipetibus

apud se habebant, finibus suis excesserant suaque omnia exportaverant seque in solitudinem ac silvas abdiderant.

XIX. Caesar paucos dies in eorum finibus moratus omnibus vicis aedificiisque incensis frumentisque succisis se in fines Ubiorum recepit atque iis auxilium suum pollicitus, si ab Suebis premerentur, haec ab iis cognovit: Suebos, posteaquam per exploratores pontem fieri comperissent, more suo concilio habito nuntios in omnes partes dimisisse, uti de oppidis demigrarent, liberos, uxores suaque omnia in silvis deponerent, atque omnes, qui arma ferre possent, unum in locum convenirent: hunc esse delectum medium fere regionum earum, quas Suebi obtinerent; hic Romanorum adventum exspectare atque ibi decertare constituisse. Quod ubi Caesar comperit, omnibus rebus iis confectis, quarum rerum causa traducere exercitum constituerat, ut Germanis metum iniceret, ut Sugambros ulcisceretur, ut Ubios obsidione liberaret, diebus omnino decem et octo trans Rhenum consumptis, satis et ad laudem et ad utilitatem profectum arbitratus, se in Galliam recepit pontemque rescidit.

Caesar prepares to invade Britain; the Morini submit.

XX. Exigua parte aestatis reliqua Caesar, etsi in his locis, quod omnis Gallia ad septentriones vergit, maturae sunt hiemes, tamen in Britanniam proficisci contendit, quod omnibus fere Gallicis bellis hostibus nostris inde subministrata auxilia intellegebat et, si tempus anni ad bellum gerendum deficeret, tamen magno sibi usui fore arbitrabatur, si modo insulam adisset, genus hominum perspexisset, loca, portus, aditus cognovisset; quae omnia fere Gallis erant incognita. Neque enim temere praeter mercatores illo adit quisquam, neque iis ipsis quicquam praeter oram maritimam atque eas regiones, quae sunt contra Gallias, notum est. Itaque vocatis ad se undique mercatoribus, neque quanta esset insulae magnitudo, neque quae aut quantae nationes incolerent, neque quem usum belli haberent aut quibus institutis uterentur, neque qui essent ad maiorum navium multitudinem idonei portus, reperire poterat.

XXI. Ad haec cognoscenda, priusquam periculum faceret,

idoneum esse arbitratus Gaium Volusenum cum navi longa praemittit. Huic mandat, ut exploratis omnibus rebus ad se quam primum revertatur. Ipse cum omnibus copiis in Morinos proficiscitur, quod inde erat brevissimus in Britanniam traiectus. Huc naves undique ex finitimis regionibus et, quam superiore aestate ad Veneticum bellum effecerat classem, iubet convenire. Interim consilio eius cognito et per mercatores perlato ad Britannos, a compluribus insulae civitatibus ad eum legati veniunt, qui polliceantur obsides dare atque imperio populi Romani obtemperare. Quibus auditis, liberaliter pollicitus hortatusque, ut in ea sententia permanerent, eos domum remittit et cum iis una Commium, quem ipse Atrebatibus superatis regem ibi constituerat, cuius et virtutem et consilium probabat et quem sibi fidelem esse arbitrabatur, cuiusque auctoritas in his regionibus magni habebatur, mittit. Huic imperat, quas possit, adeat civitates horteturque, ut populi Romani fidem sequantur, seque celeriter eo venturum nuntiet. Volusenus perspectis regionibus omnibus, quantum ei facultatis dari potuit, qui navi egredi ac se barbaris committere non auderet, quinto die ad Caesarem revertitur, quaeque ibi perspexisset, renuntiat.

XXII. Dum in his locis Caesar navium parandarum causa moratur, ex magna parte Morinorum ad eum legati venerunt, qui se de superioris temporis consilio excusarent, quod homines barbari et nostrae consuetudinis imperiti bellum populo Romano fecissent, seque ea, quae imperasset, facturos pollicerentur. Hoc sibi Caesar satis opportune accidisse arbitratus, quod neque post tergum hostem relinquere volebat neque belli gerendi propter anni tempus facultatem habebat neque has tantularum rerum occupationes Britanniae anteponendas iudicabat, magnum iis numerum obsidum imperat. Quibus adductis eos in fidem recepit. Navibus circiter LXXX onerariis coactis contractisque, quod satis esse ad duas transportandas legiones existimabat, quod praeterea navium longarum habebat, quaestori, legatis praefectisque distribuit. Huc accedebant XVIII onerariae naves, quae ex eo loco ab milibus passuum VIII vento tenebantur, quo minus in eundem portum venire possent: has equitibus distribuit. Reliquum exerci-

tum Quinto Titurio Sabino et Lucio Aurunculeio Cottae legatis in Menapios atque in eos pagos Morinorum, ab quibus ad eum legati non venerant, ducendum dedit; Publium Sulpicium Rufum legatum cum eo praesidio, quod satis esse arbitrabatur, portum tenere iussit.

He proceeds to Britain. The natives resist bravely, are defeated, sue for peace.

XXIII. His constitutis rebus nactus idoneam ad navigandum tempestatem tertia fere vigilia solvit equitesque in ulteriorem portum progredi et naves conscendere et se sequi iussit. A quibus cum paulo tardius esset administratum, ipse hora circiter diei quarta cum primis navibus Britanniam attigit atque ibi in omnibus collibus expositas hostium copias armatas conspexit. Cuius loci haec erat natura, atque ita montibus angustis mare continebatur, uti ex locis superioribus in litus telum adigi posset. Hunc ad egrediendum nequaquam idoneum locum arbitratus, dum reliquae naves eo convenirent, ad horam nonam in ancoris exspectavit. Interim legatis tribunisque militum convocatis, et quae ex Voluseno cognosset et quae fieri vellet, ostendit monuitque, ut rei militaris ratio, maxime ut maritimae res postularent, ut quae celerem atque instabilem motum haberent, ad nutum et ad tempus omnes res ab iis administrarentur. His dimissis et ventum et aestum uno tempore nactus secundum, dato signo et sublatis ancoris circiter millia passuum septem ab eo loco progressus, aperto ac plano litore naves constituit.

XXIV. At barbari, consilio Romanorum cognito, praemisso equitatu et essedariis, quo plerumque genere in proeliis uti consuerunt, reliquis copiis subsecuti nostros navibus egredi prohibebant. Erat ob has causas summa difficultas, quod naves propter magnitudinem nisi in alto constitui non poterant, militibus autem ignotis locis, impeditis manibus, magno et gravi onere armorum oppressis simul et de navibus desiliendum et in fluctibus consistendum et cum hostibus erat pugnandum, cum illi aut ex arido aut paulum in aquam progressi omnibus membris expeditis, notissimis locis audacter tela conicerent et equos insuefactos incitarent. Quibus re-

bus nostri perterriti atque huius omnino generis pugnae imperiti non eadem alacritate ac studio, quo in pedestribus uti proeliis consuerant, utebantur.

XXV. Quod ubi Caesar animadvertit, naves longas, quarum et species erat barbaris inusitatior et motus ad usum expeditior, paulum removeri ab onerariis navibus et remis incitari et ad latus apertum hostium constitui atque inde fundis, sagittis, tormentis hostes propelli ac summoveri iussit; quae res magno usui nostris fuit. Nam et navium figura et remorum motu et inusitato genere tormentorum permoti barbari constiterunt ac paulum modo pedem retulerunt. Atque nostris militibus cunctantibus, maxime propter altitudinem maris, qui decimae legionis aquilam ferebat, contestatus deos, ut ea res legioni feliciter eveniret, 'Desilite,' inquit, 'milites, nisi vultis aquilam hostibus prodere: ego certe meum reipublicae atque imperatori officium praestitero.' Hoc cum voce magna dixisset, se ex navi proiecit atque in hostes aquilam ferre coepit. Tum nostri cohortati inter se, ne tantum dedecus admitteretur, universi ex navi desiluerunt. Hos item ex proximis navibus cum conspexissent, subsecuti hostibus appropinquarunt.

XXVI. Pugnatum est ab utrisque acriter. Nostri tamen, quod neque ordines servare neque firmiter insistere neque signa subsequi poterant, atque alius alia ex navi, quibuscumque signis occurrerat, se aggregabat, magnopere perturbabantur; hostes vero, notis omnibus vadis, ubi ex litore aliquos singulares ex navi egredientes conspexerant, incitatis equis impeditos adoriebantur, plures paucos circumsistebant, alii ab latere aperto in universos tela coniciebant. Quod cum animadvertisset Caesar, scaphas longarum navium, item speculatoria navigia militibus compleri iussit et, quos laborantes conspexerat, his subsidia submittebat. Nostri, simul in arido constiterunt, suis omnibus consecutis in hostes impetum fecerunt atque eos in fugam dederunt, neque longius prosequi potuerunt, quod equites cursum tenere atque insulam capere non potuerant. Hoc unum ad pristinam fortunam Caesari defuit.

XXVII. Hostes proelio superati, simul atque se ex fuga

receperunt, statim ad Caesarem legatos de pace miserunt; obsides daturos, quaeque imperasset, facturos esse polliciti sunt. Una cum his legatis Commius Atrebas venit, quem supra demonstraveram a Caesare in Britanniam praemissum. Hunc illi e navi egressum, cum ad eos oratoris modo Caesaris mandata deferret, comprehenderant atque in vincula coniecerant; tum proelio facto remiserunt. In petenda pace eius rei culpam in multitudinem coniecerunt et, propter imprudentiam ut ignosceretur, petiverunt. Caesar questus, quod, cum ultro in continentem legatis missis pacem ab se petissent, bellum sine causa intulissent, ignoscere imprudentiae dixit obsidesque imperavit; quorum illi partem statim dederunt, partem ex longinquioribus locis arcessitam paucis diebus sese daturos dixerunt. Interea suos remigrare in agros iusserunt, principesque undique convenire et se civitatesque suas Caesari commendare coeperunt.

Caesar's fleet is damaged by storm and tide.

XXVIII. His rebus pace confirmata, post diem quartum, quam est in Britanniam ventum, naves XVIII, de quibus supra demonstratum est, quae equites sustulerant, ex superiore portu leni vento solverunt. Quae cum appropinquarent Britanniae et ex castris viderentur, tanta tempestas subito coorta est, ut nulla earum cursum tenere posset, sed aliae eodem, unde erant profectae, referrentur, aliae ad inferiorem partem insulae, quae est propius solis occasum, magno sui cum periculo deicerentur; quae tamen ancoris iactis cum fluctibus complerentur, necessario adversa nocte in altum provectae continentem petierunt.

XXIX. Eadem nocte accidit, ut esset luna plena, qui dies maritimos aestus maximos in Oceano efficere consuevit, nostrisque id erat incognitum. Ita uno tempore et longas naves, quibus Caesar exercitum transportandum curaverat quasque in aridum subduxerat, aestus compleverat, et onerarias, quae ad ancoras erant deligatae, tempestas afflictabat, neque ulla nostris facultas aut administrandi aut auxiliandi dabatur. Compluribus navibus fractis reliquae cum essent, funibus, ancoris reliquisque armamentis amissis, ad navigandum in-

utiles, magna, id quod necesse erat accidere, totius exercitus perturbatio facta est. Neque enim naves erant aliae, quibus reportari possent, et omnia deerant, quae ad reficiendas naves erant usui, et, quod omnibus constabat, hiemari in Gallia oportere, frumentum his in locis in hiemem provisum non erat.

The Britons treacherously attack Caesar; their war-chariots.

XXX. Quibus rebus cognitis principes Britanniae, qui post proelium ad Caesarem convenerant, inter se collocuti, cum equites et naves et frumentum Romanis deesse intellegerent et paucitatem militum ex castrorum exiguitate cognoscerent, quae hoc erant etiam angustiora, quod sine impedimentis Caesar legiones transportaverat, optimum factu esse duxerunt, rebellione facta frumento commeatuque nostros prohibere et rem in hiemem producere, quod his superatis aut reditu interclusis neminem postea belli inferendi causa in Britanniam transiturum confidebant. Itaque rursus coniuratione facta paulatim ex castris discedere ac suos clam ex agris deducere coeperunt.

XXXI. At Caesar, etsi nondum eorum consilia cognoverat, tamen et ex eventu navium suarum et ex eo, quod obsides dare intermiserant, fore id, quod accidit, suspicabatur. Itaque ad omnes casus subsidia comparabat. Nam et frumentum ex agris cotidie in castra conferebat et, quae gravissime afflictae erant naves, earum materia atque aere ad reliquas reficiendas utebatur et, quae ad eas res erant usui, ex continenti comportari iubebat. Itaque cum summo studio a militibus administraretur, XII navibus amissis, reliquis ut navigari commode posset, effecit.

XXXII. Dum ea geruntur, legione ex consuetudine una frumentatum missa, quae appellabatur septima, neque ulla ad id tempus belli suspicione interposita, cum pars hominum in agris remaneret, pars etiam in castra ventitaret, ii, qui pro portis castrorum in statione erant, Caesari nuntiaverunt, pulverem maiorem, quam consuetudo ferret, in ea parte videri, quam in partem legio iter fecisset. Caesar id, quod erat, suspicatus, aliquid novi a barbaris initum consilii, co-

hortes, quae in stationibus erant, secum in eam partem proficisci, ex reliquis duas in stationem cohortes succedere, reliquas armari et confestim sese subsequi iussit. Cum paulo longius a castris processisset, suos ab hostibus premi atque aegre sustinere et conferta legione ex omnibus partibus tela conici animadvertit. Nam quod omni ex reliquis partibus demesso frumento pars una erat reliqua, suspicati hostes, huc nostros esse venturos, noctu in silvis delituerant; tum dispersos depositis armis in metendo occupatos subito adorti, paucis interfectis reliquos incertis ordinibus perturbaverant, simul equitatu atque essedis circumdederant.

XXXIII. Genus hoc est ex essedis pugnae. Primo per omnes partes perequitant et tela coniciunt atque ipso terrore equorum et strepitu rotarum ordines plerumque perturbant, et cum se inter equitum turmas insinuaverunt, ex essedis desiliunt et pedibus proeliantur. Aurigae interim paulatim ex proelio excedunt atque ita currus collocant, ut, si illi a multitudine hostium premantur, expeditum ad suos receptum habeant. Ita mobilitatem equitum, stabilitatem peditum in proeliis praestant, ac tantum usu cotidiano et exercitatione efficiunt, uti in declivi ac praecipiti loco incitatos equos sustinere et brevi moderari ac flectere et per temonem percurrere et in iugo insistere et se inde in currus citissime recipere consuerint.

They are routed and give hostages; Caesar returns to Gaul.

XXXIV. Quibus rebus perturbatis nostris novitate pugnae tempore opportunissimo Caesar auxilium tulit: namque eius adventu hostes constiterunt, nostri se ex timore receperunt. Quo facto ad lacessendum et ad committendum proelium alienum esse tempus arbitratus suo se loco continuit et brevi tempore intermisso in castra legiones reduxit. Dum haec geruntur, nostris omnibus occupatis, qui erant in agris reliqui, discesserunt. Secutae sunt continuos complures dies tempestates, quae et nostros in castris continerent et hostem a pugna prohiberent. Interim barbari nuntios in omnes partes dimiserunt paucitatemque nostrorum militum suis praedicaverunt et, quanta praedae faciendae atque in perpetuum

sui liberandi facultas daretur, si Romanos castris expulissent, demonstraverunt. His rebus celeriter magna multitudine peditatus equitatusque coacta ad castra venerunt.

XXXV. Caesar etsi idem, quod superioribus diebus acciderat, fore videbat, ut, si essent hostes pulsi, celeritate periculum effugerent, tamen nactus equites circiter xxx, quos Commius Atrebas, de quo ante dictum est, secum transportaverat, legiones in acie pro castris constituit. Commisso proelio diutius nostrorum militum impetum hostes ferre non potuerunt ac terga verterunt. Quos tanto spatio secuti, quantum cursu et viribus efficere potuerunt, complures ex iis occiderunt, deinde omnibus longe lateque aedificiis incensis se in castra receperunt.

XXXVI. Eodem die legati ab hostibus missi ad Caesarem de pace venerunt. His Caesar numerum obsidum, quem ante imperaverat, duplicavit eosque in continentem adduci iussit, quod propinqua die aequinoctii infirmis navibus hiemi navigationem subiciendam non existimabat. Ipse idoneam tempestatem nanctus paulo post mediam noctem naves solvit; quae omnes incolumes ad continentem pervenerunt; sed ex iis onerariae duae eosdem, quos reliqui, portus capere non potuerunt et paulo infra delatae sunt.

The Morini rebel, and are terribly punished. A thanksgiving is decreed at Rome for Caesar's victories.

XXXVII. Quibus ex navibus cum essent expositi milites circiter trecenti atque in castra contenderent, Morini, quos Caesar in Britanniam proficiscens pacatos reliquerat, spe praedae adducti primo non ita magno suorum numero circumsteterunt ac, si sese interfici nollent, arma ponere iusserunt. Cum illi orbe facto sese defenderent, celeriter ad clamorem hominum circiter milia sex convenerunt. Qua re nuntiata Caesar omnem ex castris equitatum suis auxilio misit. Interim nostri milites impetum hostium sustinuerunt atque amplius horis quattuor fortissime pugnaverunt et paucis vulneribus acceptis complures ex his occiderunt. Postea vero quam equitatus noster in conspectum venit, hostes abiectis armis terga verterunt magnusque eorum numerus est occisus.

XXXVIII. Caesar postero die Titum Labienum legatum cum iis legionibus, quas ex Britannia reduxerat, in Morinos, qui rebellionem fecerant, misit. Qui cum propter siccitates paludum, quo se reciperent, non haberent, quo superiore anno perfugio fuerant usi, omnes fere in potestatem Labieni pervenerunt. At Q. Titurius et L. Cotta legati, qui in Menapiorum fines legiones duxerant, omnibus eorum agris vastatis, frumentis succisis, aedificiis incensis, quod Menapii se omnes in densissimas silvas abdiderant, se ad Caesarem receperunt. Caesar in Belgis omnium legionum hiberna constituit. Eo duae omnino civitates ex Britannia obsides miserunt, reliquae neglexerunt. His rebus gestis ex litteris Caesaris dierum viginti supplicatio a senatu decreta est.

COMMENTARIUS QUINTUS.

Caesar orders ships built; quiets disturbances in Illyricum; settles a dispute between two chiefs of the Treveri.

I. L. Domitio, Ap. Claudio consulibus discedens ab hibernis Caesar in Italiam, ut quotannis facere consuerat, legatis imperat, quos legionibus praefecerat, uti, quam plurimas possent, hieme naves aedificandas veteresque reficiendas curarent. Earum modum formamque demonstrat. Ad celeritatem onerandi subductionesque paulo facit humiliores, quam quibus in nostro mari uti consuevimus, atque id eo magis, quod propter crebras commutationes aestuum minus magnos ibi fluctus fieri cognoverat; ad onera ac multitudinem iumentorum transportandam paulo latiores, quam quibus in reliquis utimur maribus. Has omnes actuarias imperat fieri, quam ad rem humilitas multum adiuvat. Ea, quae sunt usui ad armandas naves, ex Hispania apportari iubet. Ipse conventibus Galliae citerioris peractis in Illyricum proficiscitur, quod a Pirustis finitimam partem provinciae incursionibus vastari audiebat. Eo cum venisset, civitatibus milites imperat certumque in locum convenire iubet. Qua re nuntiata Pirustae legatos ad eum mittunt, qui doceant, nihil earum rerum publico factum consilio, seseque paratos esse demonstrant omnibus rationibus de iniuriis satisfacere. Percepta oratione eorum Caesar obsides imperat eosque ad certam diem adduci iubet; nisi ita fecerint, sese bello civitatem persecuturum demonstrat. Iis ad diem adductis, ut imperaverat, arbitros inter civitates dat, qui litem aestiment poenamque constituant.

II. His confectis rebus conventibusque peractis in citeriorem Galliam revertitur atque inde ad exercitum proficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, circuitis omnibus hibernis singulari militum

studio in summa omnium rerum inopia circiter sexcentas eius generis, cuius supra demonstravimus, naves et longas XXVIII invenit instructas, neque multum abesse ab eo, quin paucis diebus deduci possint. Collaudatis militibus atque iis, qui negotio praefuerant, quid fieri velit, ostendit atque omnes ad portum Itium convenire iubet, quo ex portu commodissimum in Britanniam traiectum esse cognoverat, circiter milium passuum XXX a continenti: huic rei, quod satis esse visum est militum, reliquit. Ipse cum legionibus expeditis IV et equitibus DCCC in fines Treverorum proficiscitur, quod hi neque ad concilia veniebant neque imperio parebant Germanosque Transrhenanos sollicitare dicebantur.

III. Haec civitas longe plurimum totius Galliae equitatu valet magnasque habet copias peditum, Rhenumque, ut supra demonstravimus, tangit. In ea civitate duo de principatu inter se contendebant, Indutiomărus et Cingetŏrix; e quibus alter, simulatque de Caesaris legionumque adventu cognitum est, ad eum venit, se suosque omnes in officio futuros neque ab amicitia populi Romani defecturos confirmavit quaeque in Trevĕris gererentur, ostendit. At Indutiomarus equitatum peditatumque cogere iisque, qui per aetatem in armis esse non poterant, in silvam Arduennam abditis, quae ingenti magnitudine per medios fines Treverorum a flumine Rheno ad initium Remorum pertinet, bellum parare instituit. Sed posteaquam nonnulli principes ex ea civitate et familiaritate Cingetorigis adducti et adventu nostri exercitus perterriti ad Caesarem venerunt et de suis privatim rebus ab eo petere coeperunt, quoniam civitati consulere non possent, veritus, ne ab omnibus desereretur, Indutiomarus legatos ad Caesarem mittit: Sese idcirco ab suis discedere atque ad eum venire noluisse, quo facilius civitatem in officio contineret, ne omnis nobilitatis discessu plebs propter imprudentiam laberetur: itaque esse civitatem in sua potestate, seseque, si Caesar permitteret, ad eum in castra venturum, suas civitatisque fortunas eius fidei permissurum.

IV. Caesar, etsi intellegebat, qua de causa ea dicerentur quaeque eum res ab instituto concilio deterreret, tamen, ne aestatem in Treveris consumere cogeretur omnibus ad Bri-

tannicum bellum rebus comparatis, Indutiomarum ad se cum CC obsidibus venire iussit. His adductis, in iis filio propinquisque eius omnibus, quos nominatim evocaverat, consolatus Indutiomarum hortatusque est, uti in officio maneret; nihilo tamen secius principibus Treverorum ad se convocatis hos singillatim Cingetorigi conciliavit, quod cum merito eius a se fieri intellegebat, tum magni interesse arbitrabatur, eius auctoritatem inter suos quam plurimum valere, cuius tam egregiam in se voluntatem perspexisset. Id tulit factum graviter Indutiomarus, suam gratiam inter suos minui, et, qui iam ante inimico in nos animo fuisset, multo gravius hoc dolore exarsit.

Caesar gathers his forces at portus Itius; his troops pursue and slay the faithless Dumnorix.

V. His rebus constitutis Caesar ad portum Itium cum legionibus pervenit. Ibi cognoscit, LX naves, quae in Meldis factae erant, tempestate reiectas cursum tenere non potuisse atque eodem, unde erant profectae, revertisse; reliquas paratas ad navigandum atque omnibus rebus instructas invenit. Eodem equitatus totius Galliae convenit numero milium quattuor principesque ex omnibus civitatibus; ex quibus perpaucos, quorum in se fidem perspexerat, relinquere in Gallia, reliquos obsidum loco secum ducere decreverat, quod, cum ipse abesset, motum Galliae verebatur.

VI. Erat una cum ceteris Dumnŏrix Aeduus, de quo ante ab nobis dictum est. Hunc secum habere in primis constituerat, quod eum cupidum rerum novarum, cupidum imperii, magni animi, magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis cognoverat. Accedebat huc, quod in concilio Aeduorum Dumnorix dixerat, sibi a Caesare regnum civitatis deferri; quod dictum Aedui graviter ferebant, neque recusandi aut deprecandi causa legatos ad Caesarem mittere audebant. Id factum ex suis hospitibus Caesar cognoverat. Ille omnibus primo precibus petere contendit, ut in Gallia relinqueretur, partim quod insuetus navigandi mare timeret, partim quod religionibus impediri sese diceret. Posteaquam id obstinate sibi negari vidit, omni spe impetrandi adempta, principes Galliae

sollicitare, sevocare singulos hortarique coepit, uti in continenti remanerent; metu territare: non sine causa fieri, ut Gallia omni nobilitate spoliaretur; id esse consilium Caesaris, ut, quos in conspectu Galliae interficere vereretur, hos omnes in Britanniam traductos necaret; fidem reliquis interponere, iusiurandum poscere, ut, quod esse ex usu Galliae intellexissent, communi consilio administrarent. Haec a compluribus ad Caesarem deferebantur.

VII. Qua re cognita Caesar, quod tantum civitati Aeduae dignitatis tribuebat, coercendum atque deterrendum, quibuscumque rebus posset, Dumnorigem statuebat; quod longius eius amentiam progredi videbat, prospiciendum, ne quid sibi ac reipublicae nocere posset. Itaque dies circiter xxv in eo loco commoratus, quod Corus ventus navigationem impediebat, qui magnam partem omnis temporis in his locis flare consuevit, dabat operam, ut in officio Dumnorigem contineret, nihilo tamen secius omnia eius consilia cognosceret; tandem idoneam nactus tempestatem milites equitesque conscendere in naves iubet. At omnium impeditis animis Dumnorix cum equitibus Aeduorum a castris insciente Caesare domum discedere coepit. Qua re nuntiata, Caesar intermissa profectione atque omnibus rebus postpositis magnam partem equitatus ad eum insequendum mittit retrahique imperat; si vim faciat neque pareat, interfici iubet, nihil hunc se absente pro sano facturum arbitratus, qui praesentis imperium neglexisset. Ille enim revocatus resistere ac se manu defendere suorumque fidem implorare coepit, saepe clamitans, liberum se liberaeque esse civitatis. Illi, ut erat imperatum, circumsistunt hominem atque interficiunt; at equites Aedui ad Caesarem omnes revertuntur.

Caesar sails to Britain, and puts the natives to flight.

VIII. His rebus gestis, Labieno in continente cum tribus legionibus et equitum milibus duobus relicto, ut portus tueretur et rem frumentariam provideret, quaeque in Gallia gererentur, cognosceret consiliumque pro tempore et pro re caperet, ipse cum quinque legionibus et pari numero equitum, quem in continenti reliquerat, ad solis occasum naves solvit

et leni Africo provectus, media circiter nocte vento intermisso, cursum non tenuit et longius delatus aestu orta luce sub sinistra Britanniam relictam conspexit. Tum rursus aestus commutationem secutus remis contendit, ut eam partem insulae caperet, qua optimum esse egressum superiore aestate cognoverat. Qua in re admodum fuit militum virtus laudanda, qui vectoriis gravibusque navigiis non intermisso remigandi labore longarum navium cursum adaequarunt. Accessum est ad Britanniam omnibus navibus meridiano fere tempore, neque in eo loco hostis est visus; sed, ut postea Caesar ex captivis cognovit, cum magnae manus eo convenissent, multitudine navium perterritae, quae cum annotinis privatisque, quas sui quisque commodi fecerat, amplius octingentae uno erant visae tempore, a litore discesserant ac se in superiora loca abdiderant.

IX. Caesar exposito exercitu et loco castris idoneo capto, ubi ex captivis cognovit, quo in loco hostium copiae consedissent, cohortibus decem ad mare relictis et equitibus trecentis, qui praesidio navibus essent, de tertia vigilia ad hostes contendit, eo minus veritus navibus, quod in litore molli atque aperto deligatas ad ancoram relinquebat, et praesidio navibus Quintum Atrium praefecit. Ipse noctu progressus milia passuum circiter XII hostium copias conspicatus est. Illi equitatu atque essedis ad flumen progressi ex loco superiore nostros prohibere et proelium committere coeperunt. Repulsi ab equitatu se in silvas abdiderunt, locum nancti egregie et natura et opere munitum, quem domestici belli, ut videbantur, causa iam ante praeparaverant; nam crebris arboribus succisis omnes introitus erant praeclusi. Ipsi ex silvis rari propugnabant nostrosque intra munitiones ingredi prohibebant. At milites legionis septimae testudine facta et aggere ad munitiones adiecto locum ceperunt eosque ex silvis expulerunt paucis vulneribus acceptis. Sed eos fugientes longius Caesar prosequi vetuit, et quod loci naturam ignorabat, et quod, magna parte diei consumpta, munitioni castrorum tempus relinqui volebat.

His fleet is shattered by a storm; he repairs it.

X. Postridie eius diei mane tripertito milites equitesque in expeditionem misit, ut eos, qui fugerant, persequerentur. His aliquantum itineris progressis, cum iam extremi essent in prospectu, equites a Quinto Atrio ad Caesarem venerunt, qui nuntiarent, superiore nocte maxima coorta tempestate prope omnes naves afflictas atque in litore eiectas esse, quod neque ancorae funesque subsisterent neque nautae gubernatoresque vim pati tempestatis possent: itaque ex eo concursu navium magnum esse incommodum acceptum.

XI. His rebus cognitis Caesar legiones equitatumque revocari atque in itinere resistere iubet, ipse ad naves revertitur; eadem fere, quae ex nuntiis litterisque cognoverat, coram perspicit, sic ut amissis circiter XL navibus reliquae tamen refici posse magno negotio viderentur. Itaque ex legionibus fabros deligit et ex continenti alios arcessi iubet; Labieno scribit, ut, quam plurimas posset, iis legionibus, quae sunt apud eum, naves instituat. Ipse, etsi res erat multae operae ac laboris, tamen commodissimum esse statuit, omnes naves subduci et cum castris una munitione coniungi. In his rebus circiter dies X consumit, ne nocturnis quidem temporibus ad laborem militum intermissis. Subductis navibus castrisque egregie munitis easdem copias, quas ante, praesidio navibus reliquit, ipse eodem, unde redierat, proficiscitur. Eo cum venisset, maiores iam undique in eum locum copiae Britannorum convenerant summa imperii bellique administrandi communi consilio permissa Cassivellauno; cuius fines a maritimis civitatibus flumen dividit, quod appellatur Tamesis, a mari circiter milia passuum LXXX. Huic superiore tempore cum reliquis civitatibus continentia bella intercesserant; sed nostro adventu permoti Britanni hunc toti bello imperioque praefecerant.

Britain and its inhabitants.

XII. Britanniae pars interior ab iis incolitur, quos natos in insula ipsi memoria proditum dicunt, maritima pars ab iis, qui praedae ac belli inferendi causa ex Belgio transierant (qui

omnes fere iis nominibus civitatum appellantur, quibus orti ex civitatibus eo pervenerunt), et bello illato ibi permanserunt atque agros colere coeperunt. Hominum est infinita multitudo creberrimaque aedificia fere Gallicis consimilia, pecorum magnus numerus. Utuntur aut aere aut nummo aureo aut taleis ferreis ad certum pondus examinatis pro nummo. Nascitur ibi plumbum album in mediterraneis regionibus, in maritimis ferrum, sed eius exigua est copia; aere utuntur importato. Materia cuiusque generis ut in Gallia est praeter fagum atque abietem. Leporem et gallinam et anserem gustare fas non putant; haec tamen alunt animi voluptatisque causa. Loca sunt temperatiora quam in Gallia, remissioribus frigoribus.

XIII. Insula natura triquetra, cuius unum latus est contra Galliam. Huius lateris alter angulus, qui est ad Cantium, quo fere omnes ex Gallia naves appelluntur, ad orientem solem, inferior ad meridiem spectat. Hoc pertinet circiter milia passuum quingenta. Alterum vergit ad Hispaniam atque occidentem solem; qua ex parte est Hibernia dimidio minor, ut existimatur, quam Britannia, sed pari spatio transmissus, atque ex Gallia est in Britanniam. In hoc medio cursu est insula, quae appellatur Mona; complures praeterea minores subiectae insulae existimantur; de quibus insulis nonnulli scripserunt, dies continuos triginta sub bruma esse noctem. Nos nihil de eo percontationibus reperiebamus, nisi certis ex aqua mensuris breviores esse quam in continenti noctes videbamus. Huius est longitudo lateris, ut fert illorum opinio, septingentorum milium. Tertium est contra septentriones; cui parti nulla est obiecta terra, sed eius angulus lateris maxime ad Germaniam spectat. Hoc milia passuum octingenta in longitudinem esse existimatur. Ita omnis insula est in circuitu vicies centum milium passuum.

XIV. Ex his omnibus longe sunt humanissimi, qui Cantium incolunt, quae regio est maritima omnis, neque multum a Gallica differunt consuetudine. Interiores plerique frumenta non serunt, sed lacte et carne vivunt pellibusque sunt vestiti. Omnes vero se Britanni vitro inficiunt, quod caeruleum efficit colorem, atque hoc horridiores sunt in pugna aspectu; capil-

loque sunt promisso atque omni parte corporis rasa praeter caput et labrum superius. Uxores habent deni duodenique inter se communes, et maxime fratres cum fratribus parentesque cum liberis; sed si qui sunt ex his nati, eorum habentur liberi, quo primum virgo quaeque deducta est.

Though the Britons resist bravely, Caesar marches inland.

XV. Equites hostium essedariique acriter proelio cum equitatu nostro in itinere conflixerunt, tamen ut nostri omnibus partibus superiores fuerint atque eos in silvas collesque compulerint; sed compluribus interfectis cupidius insecuti nonnullos ex suis amiserunt. At illi intermisso spatio, imprudentibus nostris atque occupatis in munitione castrorum, subito se ex silvis eiecerunt impetuque in eos facto, qui erant in statione pro castris collocati, acriter pugnaverunt, duabusque missis subsidio cohortibus a Caesare, atque his primis legionum duarum, cum hae perexiguo intermisso loci spatio inter se constitissent, novo genere pugnae perterritis nostris per medios audacissime perruperunt seque inde incolumes receperunt. Eo die Quintus Laberius Durus, tribunus militum, interficitur. Illi pluribus submissis cohortibus repelluntur.

XVI. Toto hoc in genere pugnae, cum sub oculis omnium ac pro castris dimicaretur, intellectum est, nostros propter gravitatem armorum, quod neque insequi cedentes possent neque ab signis discedere auderent, minus aptos esse ad huius generis hostem, equites autem magno cum periculo proelio dimicare, propterea quod illi etiam consulto plerumque cederent et, cum paulum ab legionibus nostros removissent, ex essedis desilirent et pedibus dispari proelio contenderent. Equestris autem proelii ratio et cedentibus et insequentibus par atque idem periculum inferebat. Accedebat huc, ut numquam conferti, sed rari magnisque intervallis proeliarentur stationesque dispositas haberent, atque alios alii deinceps exciperent, integrique et recentes defetigatis succederent.

XVII. Postero die procul a castris hostes in collibus constiterunt rarique se ostendere et lenius quam pridie nostros equites proelio lacessere coeperunt. Sed meridie, cum Caesar

pabulandi causa tres legiones atque omnem equitatum cum Gaio Trebonio legato misisset, repente ex omnibus partibus ad pabulatores advolaverunt, sic uti ab signis legionibusque non absisterent. Nostri acriter in eos impetu facto reppulerunt neque finem sequendi fecerunt, quoad subsidio confisi equites, cum post se legiones viderent, praecipites hostes egerunt, magnoque eorum numero interfecto neque sui colligendi neque consistendi aut ex essedis desiliendi facultatem dederunt. Ex hac fuga protinus, quae undique convenerant, auxilia discesserunt, neque post id tempus umquam summis nobiscum copiis hostes contenderunt.

XVIII. Caesar cognito consilio eorum ad flumen Tamesim in fines Cassivellauni exercitum duxit; quod flumen uno omnino loco pedibus, atque hoc aegre, transiri potest. Eo cum venisset, animum advertit, ad alteram fluminis ripam magnas esse copias hostium instructas. Ripa autem erat acutis sudibus praefixis munita, eiusdemque generis sub aqua defixae sudes flumine tegebantur. His rebus cognitis a captivis perfugisque Caesar praemisso equitatu confestim legiones subsequi iussit. Sed ea celeritate atque eo impetu milites ierunt, cum capite solo ex aqua exstarent, ut hostes impetum legionum atque equitum sustinere non possent ripasque dimitterent ac se fugae mandarent.

XIX. Cassivellaunus, ut supra demonstravimus, omni deposita spe contentionis, dimissis amplioribus copiis, milibus circiter quattuor essedariorum relictis, itinera nostra servabat paulumque ex via excedebat locisque impeditis ac silvestribus sese occultabat atque iis regionibus, quibus nos iter facturos cognoverat, pecora atque homines ex agris in silvas compellebat et, cum equitatus noster liberius praedandi vastandique causa se in agros eiecerat, omnibus viis semitisque essedarios ex silvis emittebat et magno cum periculo nostrorum equitum cum iis confligebat atque hoc metu latius vagari prohibebat. Relinquebatur, ut neque longius ab agmine legionum discedi Caesar pateretur, et tantum in agris vastandis incendiisque faciendis hostibus noceretur, quantum labore atque itinere legionarii milites efficere poterant.

Many tribes submit to Caesar; he returns to Gaul.

XX. Interim Trinobantes, prope firmissima earum regionum civitas, ex qua Mandubracius adulescens Caesaris fidem secutus ad eum in continentem Galliam venerat, cuius pater in ea civitate regnum obtinuerat interfectusque erat a Cassivellauno, ipse fuga mortem vitaverat, legatos ad Caesarem mittunt pollicenturque, sese ei dedituros atque imperata facturos; petunt, ut Mandubracium ab iniuria Cassivellauni defendat atque in civitatem mittat, qui praesit imperiumque obtineat. His Caesar imperat obsides quadraginta frumentumque exercitui Mandubraciumque ad eos mittit. Illi imperata celeriter fecerunt, obsides ad numerum frumentumque miserunt.

XXI. Trinobantibus defensis atque ab omni militum iniuria prohibitis, Cenimagni, Segontiăci, Ancalites, Bibrŏci, Cassi legationibus missis sese Caesari dedunt. Ab his cognoscit, non longe ex eo loco oppidum Cassivellauni abesse silvis paludibusque munitum, quo satis magnus hominum pecorisque numerus convenerit. Oppidum autem Britanni vocant, cum silvas impeditas vallo atque fossa munierunt, quo incursionis hostium vitandae causa convenire consuerunt. Eo proficiscitur cum legionibus: locum reperit egregie natura atque opere munitum; tamen hunc duabus ex partibus oppugnare contendit. Hostes paulisper morati militum nostrorum impetum non tulerunt seseque alia ex parte oppidi eiecerunt. Magnus ibi numerus pecoris repertus, multique in fuga sunt comprehensi atque interfecti.

XXII. Dum haec in his locis geruntur, Cassivellaunus ad Cantium, quod esse ad mare supra demonstravimus, quibus regionibus quattuor reges praeerant, Cingetorix, Carvilius, Taximagŭlus, Segŏvax, nuntios mittit atque his imperat, uti coactis omnibus copiis castra navalia de improviso adoriantur atque oppugnent. Ii cum ad castra venissent, nostri eruptione facta multis eorum interfectis, capto etiam nobili duce Lugotorige suos incolumes reduxerunt. Cassivellaunus hoc proelio nuntiato tot detrimentis acceptis, vastatis finibus, maxime etiam permotus defectione civitatum, legatos per

Atrebatem Commium de deditione ad Caesarem mittit. Caesar, cum constituisset hiemare in continenti propter repentinos Galliae motus, neque multum aestatis superesset, atque id facile extrahi posse intellegeret, obsides imperat et quid in annos singulos vectigalis populo Romano Britannia penderet, constituit; interdicit atque imperat Cassivellauno, ne Mandubracio neu Trinobantibus noceat.

XXIII. Obsidibus acceptis exercitum reducit ad mare, naves invenit refectas. His deductis, quod et captivorum magnum numerum habebat et nonnullae tempestate deperierant naves, duobus commeatibus exercitum reportare instituit. Ac sic accidit, uti ex tanto navium numero tot navigationibus neque hoc neque superiore anno ulla omnino navis, quae milites portaret, desideraretur, at ex iis, quae inanes ex continenti ad eum remitterentur, et prioris commeatus expositis militibus et quas postea Labienus faciendas curaverat numero LX, perpaucae locum caperent, reliquae fere omnes reicerentur. Quas cum aliquamdiu Caesar frustra exspectasset, ne anni tempore a navigatione excluderetur, quod aequinoctium suberat, necessario angustius milites collocavit ac, summa tranquillitate consecuta, secunda inita cum solvisset vigilia, prima luce terram attigit omnesque incolumes naves perduxit.

Grain being scarce, Caesar for the winter divides up his army. His friend Tasgetius is slain.

XXIV. Subductis navibus concilioque Gallorum Samarobrivae peracto, quod eo anno frumentum in Gallia propter siccitates angustius provenerat, coactus est aliter ac superioribus annis exercitum in hibernis collocare legionesque in plures civitates distribuere. Ex quibus unam in Morinos ducendam Gaio Fabio legato dedit, alteram in Nervios Quinto Ciceroni, tertiam in Esubios Lucio Roscio; quartam in Remis cum Tito Labieno in confinio Treverorum hiemare iussit; tres in Belgis collocavit; his Marcum Crassum quaestorem et Lucium Munatium Plancum et Gaium Trebonium legatos praefecit. Unam legionem, quam proxime trans Padum conscripserat, et cohortes V in Eburones, quorum

pars maxima est inter Mosam ac Rhenum, qui sub imperio Ambiorigis et Catuvolci erant, misit. His militibus Quintum Titurium Sabinum et Lucium Aurunculeium Cottam legatos praeesse iussit. Ad hunc modum distributis legionibus facillime inopiae frumentariae sese mederi posse existimavit. Atque harum tamen omnium legionum hiberna praeter eam, quam Lucio Roscio in pacatissimam et quietissimam partem ducendam dederat, milibus passuum centum continebantur. Ipse interea, quoad legiones collocatas munitaque hiberna cognovisset, in Gallia morari constituit.

XXV. Erat in Carnutibus summo loco natus Tasgetius, cuius maiores in sua civitate regnum obtinuerant. Huic Caesar pro eius virtute atque in se benevolentia, quod in omnibus bellis singulari eius opera fuerat usus, maiorum locum restituerat. Tertium iam hunc annum regnantem, inimicis multis palam ex civitate et iis auctoribus, eum interfecerunt. Defertur ea res ad Caesarem. Ille veritus, quod ad plures pertinebat, ne civitas eorum impulsu deficeret, Lucium Plancum cum legione ex Belgio celeriter in Carnutes proficisci iubet ibique hiemare, quorumque opera cognoverat Tasgetium interfectum, hos comprehensos ad se mittere. Interim ab omnibus legatis quaestoreque, quibus legiones tradiderat, certior factus est, in hiberna perventum locumque hibernis esse munitum.

The winter camp of Sabinus and Cotta is attacked. The officers parley with the foe, but disagree with each other.

XXVI. Diebus circiter xv, quibus in hiberna ventum est, initium repentini tumultus ac defectionis ortum est ab Ambiorige et Catuvolco; qui, cum ad fines regni sui Sabino Cottaeque praesto fuissent frumentumque in hiberna comportavissent, Indutiomari Treveri nuntiis impulsi suos concitaverunt subitoque oppressis lignatoribus magna manu ad castra oppugnatum venerunt. Cum celeriter nostri arma cepissent vallumque ascendissent atque una ex parte Hispanis equitibus emissis equestri proelio superiores fuissent, desperata re hostes suos ab oppugnatione reduxerunt. Tum suo more conclamaverunt, uti aliqui ex nostris ad colloquium

prodiret: habere sese, quae de re communi dicere vellent, quibus rebus controversias minui posse sperarent.

XXVII. Mittitur ad eos colloquendi causa Gaius Arpineius eques Romanus, familiaris Quinti Titurii, et Quintus Iunius ex Hispania quidam, qui iam ante missu Caesaris ad Ambiorigem ventitare consuerat; apud quos Ambiorix ad hunc modum locutus est: Sese pro Caesaris in se beneficiis plurimum ei confiteri debere, quod eius opera stipendio liberatus esset, quod Aduatucis, finitimis suis, pendere consuesset, quodque ei et filius et fratris filius ab Caesare remissi essent, quos Aduatuci obsidum numero missos apud se in servitute et catenis tenuissent; neque id, quod fecerit de oppugnatione castrorum, aut iudicio aut voluntate sua fecisse, sed coactu civitatis, suaque esse eiusmodi imperia, ut non minus haberet iuris in se multitudo, quam ipse in multitudinem. Civitati porro hanc fuisse belli causam, quod repentinae Gallorum coniurationi resistere non potuerit. Id se facile ex humilitate sua probare posse, quod non adeo sit imperitus rerum, ut suis copiis populum Romanum superari posse confidat. Sed esse Galliae commune consilium: omnibus hibernis Caesaris oppugnandis hunc esse dictum diem, ne qua legio alterae legioni subsidio venire posset. Non facile Gallos Gallis negare potuisse, praesertim cum de recuperanda communi libertate consilium initum videretur. Quibus quoniam pro pietate satisfecerit, habere nunc se rationem officii pro beneficiis Caesaris: monere, orare Titurium pro hospitio, ut suae ac militum saluti consulat. Magnam manum Germanorum conductam Rhenum transisse; hanc affore biduo. Ipsorum esse consilium, velintne prius, quam finitimi sentiant, eductos ex hibernis milites aut ad Ciceronem aut ad Labienum deducere, quorum alter milia passuum circiter quinquaginta, alter paulo amplius ab iis absit. Illud se polliceri et iureiurando confirmare, tutum iter per fines daturum. Quod cum faciat, et civitati sese consulere, quod hibernis levetur, et Caesari pro eius meritis gratiam referre. Hac oratione habita discedit Ambiorix.

XXVIII. Arpineius et Iunius, quae audierunt, ad legatos deferunt. Illi repentina re perturbati, etsi ab hoste ea dice-

bantur, tamen non neglegenda existimabant, maximeque hac re permovebantur, quod civitatem ignobilem atque humilem Eburonum sua sponte populo Romano bellum facere ausam vix erat credendum. Itaque ad consilium rem deferunt, magnaque inter eos exsistit controversia. Lucius Aurunculeius compluresque tribuni militum et primorum ordinum centuriones nihil temere agendum neque ex hibernis iniussu Caesaris discedendum existimabant; quantasvis copias etiam Germanorum sustineri posse munitis hibernis docebant: rem esse testimonio, quod primum hostium impetum multis ultro vulneribus illatis fortissime sustinuerint; re frumentaria non premi; interea et ex proximis hibernis et a Caesare conventura subsidia; postremo quid esse levius aut turpius, quam auctore hoste de summis rebus capere consilium?

XXIX. Contra ea Titurius sero facturos clamitabat, cum maiores manus hostium adiunctis Germanis convenissent, aut cum aliquid calamitatis in proximis hibernis esset acceptum. Brevem consulendi esse occasionem. Caesarem arbitrari profectum in Italiam; neque aliter Carnutes interficiendi Tasgetii consilium fuisse capturos, neque Eburones, si ille adesset, tanta contemptione nostri ad castra venturos esse. Non hostem auctorem, sed rem spectare: subesse Rhenum; magno esse Germanis dolori Ariovisti mortem et superiores nostras victorias; ardere Galliam tot contumeliis acceptis sub populi Romani imperium redactam, superiore gloria rei militaris exstincta. Postremo quis hoc sibi persuaderet, sine certa re Ambiorigem ad eiusmodi consilium descendisse? Suam sententiam in utramque partem esse tutam: si nihil esset durius, nullo cum periculo ad proximam legionem perventuros; si Gallia omnis cum Germanis consentiret, unam esse in celeritate positam salutem. Cottae quidem atque eorum, qui dissentirent, consilium quem habere exitum? in quo si non praesens periculum, at certe longinqua obsidione fames esset timenda.

XXX. Hac in utramque partem disputatione habita, cum a Cotta primisque ordinibus acriter resisteretur, 'Vincite,' inquit, 'si ita vultis,' Sabinus, et id clariore voce, ut magna pars militum exaudiret; 'neque is sum,' inquit, 'qui gra-

vissime ex vobis mortis periculo terrear: hi sapient; si gravius quid acciderit, abs te rationem reposcent; qui si per te liceat, perendino die cum proximis hibernis coniuncti communem cum reliquis belli casum sustineant, non reiecti et relegati longe ab ceteris aut ferro aut fame intereant.'

XXXI. Consurgitur ex consilio; comprehendunt utrumque et orant, ne sua dissensione et pertinacia rem in summum periculum deducant: facilem esse rem, seu maneant, seu proficiscantur, si modo unum omnes sentiant ac probent; contra in dissensione nullam se salutem perspicere. Res disputatione ad mediam noctem perducitur. Tandem dat Cotta permotus manus: superat sententia Sabini. Pronuntiatur, prima luce ituros. Consumitur vigiliis reliqua pars noctis, cum sua quisque miles circumspiceret, quid secum portare posset, quid ex instrumento hibernorum relinquere cogeretur. Omnia excogitantur, quare nec sine periculo maneatur et languore militum et vigiliis periculum augeatur. Prima luce sic ex castris proficiscuntur, ut quibus esset persuasum, non ab hoste, sed ab homine amicissimo Ambiorige consilium datum, longissimo agmine maximisque impedimentis.

The Roman force leaves the camp and is destroyed.

XXXII. At hostes, posteaquam ex nocturno fremitu vigiliisque de profectione eorum senserunt, collocatis insidiis bipertito in silvis opportuno atque occulto loco a milibus passuum circiter duobus Romanorum adventum exspectabant, et cum se maior pars agminis in magnam convallem demisisset, ex utraque parte eius vallis subito se ostenderunt novissimosque premere et primos prohibere ascensu atque iniquissimo nostris loco proelium committere coeperunt.

XXXIII. Tum demum Titurius, qui nihil ante providisset, trepidare et concursare cohortesque disponere, haec tamen ipsa timide atque ut eum omnia deficere viderentur; quod plerumque iis accidere consuevit, qui in ipso negotio consilium capere coguntur. At Cotta, qui cogitasset, haec posse in itinere accidere, atque ob eam causam profectionis auctor non fuisset, nulla in re communi saluti deerat: et in appellandis cohortandisque militibus imperatoris et in pugna mili-

tis officia praestabat. Cum propter longitudinem agminis minus facile omnia per se obire et, quid quoque loco faciendum esset, providere possent, iusserunt pronuntiare, ut impedimenta relinquerent atque in orbem consisterent. Quod consilium etsi in eiusmodi casu reprehendendum non est, tamen incommode accidit: nam et nostris militibus spem minuit et hostes ad pugnandum alacriores effecit, quod non sine summo timore et desperatione id factum videbatur. Praeterea accidit, quod fieri necesse erat, ut vulgo milites ab signis discederent, quaeque quisque eorum carissima haberet, ab impedimentis petere atque arripere properaret, clamore et fletu omnia complerentur.

XXXIV. At barbaris consilium non defuit. Nam duces eorum tota acie pronuntiare iusserunt, ne quis ab loco discederet: illorum esse praedam atque illis reservari, quaecumque Romani reliquissent: proinde omnia in victoria posita existimarent. Erant et virtute et numero pugnandi pares nostri; tametsi ab duce et a fortuna deserebantur, tamen omnem spem salutis in virtute ponebant, et quotiens quaeque cohors procurrerat, ab ea parte magnus numerus hostium cadebat. Qua re animadversa Ambiorix pronuntiari iubet, ut procul tela coniciant neu propius accedant et, quam in partem Romani impetum fecerint, cedant (levitate armorum et cotidiana exercitatione nihil iis noceri posse), rursus se ad signa recipientes insequantur.

XXXV. Quo praecepto ab iis diligentissime observato, cum quaepiam cohors ex orbe excesserat atque impetum fecerat, hostes velocissime refugiebant. Interim eam partem nudari necesse erat et ab latere aperto tela recipi. Rursus, cum in eum locum, unde erant egressi, reverti coeperant, et ab iis, qui cesserant, et ab iis, qui proximi steterant, circumveniebantur; sin autem locum tenere vellent, nec virtuti locus relinquebatur, neque ab tanta multitudine coniecta tela conferti vitare poterant. Tamen tot incommodis conflictati, multis vulneribus acceptis resistebant et magna parte diei consumpta, cum a prima luce ad horam octavam pugnaretur, nihil, quod ipsis esset indignum, committebant. Tum Tito Balventio, qui superiore anno primum

pilum duxerat, viro forti et magnae auctoritatis, utrumque femur tragula traicitur: Quintus Lucanius, eiusdem ordinis, fortissime pugnans, dum circumvento filio subvenit, interficitur; Lucius Cotta legatus omnes cohortes ordinesque adhortans in adversum os funda vulneratur.

XXXVI. His rebus permotus Quintus Titurius, cum procul Ambiorigem suos cohortantem conspexisset, interpretem suum Gneum Pompeium ad eum mittit rogatum, ut sibi militibusque parcat. Ille appellatus respondit: Si velit secum colloqui, licere; sperare, a multitudine impetrari posse, quod ad militum salutem pertineat; ipsi vero nihil nocitum iri, inque eam rem se suam fidem interponere. Ille cum Cotta saucio communicat, si videatur, pugna ut excedant et cum Ambiorige una colloquantur: sperare, ab eo de sua ac militum salute impetrari posse. Cotta se ad armatum hostem iturum negat atque in eo perseverat.

XXXVII. Sabinus, quos in praesentia tribunos militum circum se habebat, et primorum ordinum centuriones se sequi iubet et, cum propius Ambiorigem accessisset, iussus arma abicere imperatum facit suisque, ut idem faciant, imperat. Interim, dum de condicionibus inter se agunt longiorque consulto ab Ambiorige instituitur sermo, paulatim circumventus interficitur. Tum vero suo more victoriam conclamant atque ululatum tollunt impetuque in nostros facto ordines perturbant. Ibi Lucius Cotta pugnans interficitur cum maxima parte militum. Reliqui se in castra recipiunt, unde erant egressi. Ex quibus Lucius Petrosidius aquilifer, cum magna multitudine hostium premeretur, aquilam intra vallum proiecit, ipse pro castris fortissime pugnans occiditur. Illi aegre ad noctem oppugnationem sustinent; noctu ad unum omnes desperata salute se ipsi interficiunt. Pauci ex proelio elapsi incertis itineribus per silvas ad Titum Labienum legatum in hiberna perveniunt atque eum de rebus gestis certiorem faciunt.

The winter camp of Cicero is attacked, and bravely defended.

XXXVIII. Hac victoria sublatus Ambiorix statim cum equitatu in Aduatucos, qui erant eius regno finitimi, profi-

ciscitur; neque noctem neque diem intermittit peditatumque sese subsequi iubet. Re demonstrata Aduatucisque concitatis, postero die in Nervios pervenit hortaturque, ne sui in perpetuum liberandi atque ulciscendi Romanos pro iis, quas acceperint, iniuriis occasionem dimittant: interfectos esse legatos duos magnamque partem exercitus interisse demonstrat; nihil esse negotii, subito oppressam legionem, quae cum Cicerone hiemet, interfici; se ad eam rem profitetur adiutorem. Facile hac oratione Nerviis persuadet.

XXXIX. Itaque confestim dimissis nuntiis ad Ceutrones, Grudios, Levăcos, Pleumoxios, Geidumnos, qui omnes sub eorum imperio sunt, quam maximas manus possunt, cogunt, et de improviso ad Ciceronis hiberna advolant, nondum ad eum fama de Titurii morte perlata. Huic quoque accidit, quod fuit necesse, ut nonnulli milites, qui lignationis munitionisque causa in silvas discessissent, repentino equitum adventu interciperentur. His circumventis, magna manu Eburones, Nervii, Aduatuci atque horum omnium socii et clientes legionem oppugnare incipiunt. Nostri celeriter ad arma concurrunt, vallum conscendunt. Aegre is dies sustentatur, quod omnem spem hostes in celeritate ponebant atque hanc adepti victoriam in perpetuum se fore victores confidebant.

XL. Mittuntur ad Caesarem confestim ab Cicerone litterae, magnis propositis praemiis, si pertulissent; obsessis omnibus viis missi intercipiuntur. Noctu ex materia, quam munitionis causa comportaverant, turres admodum cxx excitantur incredibili celeritate; quae deesse operi videbantur, perficiuntur. Hostes postero die multo maioribus coactis copiis castra oppugnant, fossam complent. Eadem ratione, qua pridie, ab nostris resistitur. Hoc idem reliquis deinceps fit diebus. Nulla pars nocturni temporis ad laborem intermittitur; non aegris, non vulneratis facultas quietis datur. Quaecumque ad proximi diei oppugnationem opus sunt, noctu comparantur; multae praeustae sudes, magnus muralium pilorum numerus instituitur; turres contabulantur, pinnae loricaeque ex cratibus attexuntur. Ipse Cicero, cum tenuissima valetudine esset, ne nocturnum quidem sibi

tempus ad quietem relinquebat, ut ultro militum concursu ac vocibus sibi parcere cogeretur.

XLI. Tunc duces principesque Nerviorum, qui aliquem sermonis aditum causamque amicitiae cum Cicerone habebant, colloqui sese velle dicunt. Facta potestate, eadem, quae Ambiorix cum Titurio egerat, cômmemorant: omnem esse in armis Galliam; Germanos Rhenum transisse; Caesaris reliquorumque hiberna oppugnari. Addunt etiam de Sabini morte; Ambiorigem ostentant fidei faciundae causa. Errare eos dicunt, si quicquam ab his praesidii sperent, qui suis rebus diffidant; sese tamen hoc esse in Ciceronem populumque Romanum animo, ut nihil nisi hiberna recusent atque hanc inveterascere consuetudinem nolint; licere illis incolumibus per se ex hibernis discedere et, quascumque in partes velint, sine metu proficisci. Cicero ad haec unum modo respondit: non esse consuetudinem populi Romani, accipere ab hoste armato condicionem: si ab armis discedere velint, se adiutore utantur legatosque ad Caesarem mittant; sperare pro eius iustitia, quae petierint, impetraturos.

XLII. Ab hac spe repulsi Nervii vallo pedum IX et fossa pedum XV hiberna cingunt. Haec et superiorum annorum consuetudine ab nobis cognoverant et, quosdam de exercitu habebant captivos, ab his docebantur; sed nulla ferramentorum copia, quae esset ad hunc usum idonea, gladiis cespites circumcidere, manibus sagulisque terram exhaurire nitebantur. Qua quidem ex re hominum multitudo cognosci potuit: nam minus horis tribus milium passuum XV in circuitu munitionem perfecerunt, reliquisque diebus turres ad altitudinem valli, falces testudinesque, quas eidem captivi docuerant, parare ac facere coeperunt.

XLIII. Septimo oppugnationis die maximo coorto vento ferventes fusili ex argilla glandes fundis et fervefacta iacula in casas, quae more Gallico stramentis erant tectae, iacere coeperunt. Hae celeriter ignem comprehenderunt et venti magnitudine in omnem locum castrorum distulerunt. Hostes maximo clamore, sicuti parta iam atque explorata victoria, turres testudinesque agere et scalis vallum ascendere coeperunt. At tanta militum virtus atque ea praesentia animi fuit

ut, cum undique flamma torrerentur maximaque telorum multitudine premerentur suaque omnia impedimenta atque omnes fortunas conflagrare intellegerent, non modo demigrandi causa de vallo decederet nemo, sed paene ne respiceret quidem quisquam, ac tum omnes acerrime fortissimeque pugnarent. Hic dies nostris longe gravissimus fuit; sed tamen hunc habuit eventum, ut eo die maximus numerus hostium vulneraretur atque interficeretur, ut se sub ipso vallo constipaverant recessumque primis ultimi non dabant. Paulum quidem intermissa flamma et quodam loco turri adacta et contingente vallum, tertiae cohortis centuriones ex eo, quo stabant, loco recesserunt suosque omnes removerunt, nutu vocibusque hostes, si introire vellent, vocare coeperunt; quorum progredi ausus est nemo. Tum ex omni parte lapidibus coniectis deturbati, turrisque succensa est.

XLIV. Erant in ea legione fortissimi viri, centuriones, qui primis ordinibus appropinquarent, Titus Pulio et Lucius Vorenus. Hi perpetuas inter se controversias habebant, quinam anteferretur, omnibusque annis de locis summis simultatibus contendebant. Ex his Pulio, cum acerrime ad munitiones pugnaretur, 'Quid dubitas,' inquit, 'Vorene? aut quem locum tuae probandae virtutis exspectas? hic dies de nostris controversiis iudicabit.' Haec cum dixisset, procedit extra munitiones, quaeque pars hostium confertissima est visa, irrumpit. Ne Vorenus quidem sese vallo continet, sed omnium veritus existimationem subsequitur. Mediocri spatio relicto Pulio pilum in hostes immittit atque unum ex multitudine procurrentem traicit; quo percusso et exanimato, hunc scutis protegunt, in hostem tela universi coniciunt neque dant regrediendi facultatem. Transfigitur scutum Pulioni et verutum in balteo defigitur. Avertit hic casus vaginam et gladium educere conanti dextram moratur manum, impeditumque hostes circumsistunt. Succurrit inimicus illi Vorenus et laboranti subvenit. Ad hunc se confestim a Pulione omnis multitudo convertit; illum veruto arbitrantur occisum. Gladio comminus rem gerit Vorenus atque uno interfecto reliquos paulum propellit; dum cupidius instat, in locum deiectus inferiorem concidit. Huic rursus circum-

vento fert subsidium Pulio, atque ambo incolumes compluribus interfectis summa cum laude sese intra munitiones recipiunt. Sic fortuna in contentione et certamine utrumque versavit, ut alter alteri inimicus auxilio salutique esset, neque diiudicari posset, uter utri virtute anteferendus videretur.

XLV. Quanto erat in dies gravior atque asperior oppugnatio, et maxime quod magna parte militum confecta vulneribus res ad paucitatem defensorum pervenerat, tanto crebriores litterae nuntiique ad Caesarem mittebantur; quorum pars deprehensa in conspectu nostrorum militum cum cruciatu necabatur. Erat unus intus Nervius nomine Vertico, loco natus honesto, qui a prima obsidione ad Ciceronem perfugerat suamque ei fidem praestiterat. Hic servo spe libertatis magnisque persuadet praemiis, ut litteras ad Caesarem deferat. Has ille in iaculo illigatas effert et Gallus inter Gallos sine ulla suspicione versatus ad Caesarem pervenit. Ab eo de periculis Ciceronis legionisque cognoscitur.

XLVI. Caesar acceptis litteris hora circiter undecima diei statim nuntium in Bellovacos ad M. Crassum quaestorem mittit, cuius hiberna aberant ab eo milia passuum xxv; iubet media nocte legionem proficisci celeriterque ad se venire. Exit cum nuntio Crassus. Alterum ad Gaium Fabium legatum mittit, ut in Atrebatum fines legionem adducat, qua sibi scit iter faciendum. Scribit Labieno, si reipublicae commodo facere posset, cum legione ad fines Nerviorum veniat. Reliquam partem exercitus, quod paulo aberat longius, non putat exspectandam; equites circiter quadringentos ex proximis hibernis colligit.

XLVII. Hora circiter tertia ab antecursoribus de Crassi adventu certior factus, eo die milia passuum xx procedit. Crassum Samarobrivae praeficit legionemque attribuit, quod ibi impedimenta exercitus, obsides civitatum, litteras publicas frumentumque omne, quod eo tolerandae hiemis causa devexerat, relinquebat. Fabius, ut imperatum erat, non ita multum moratus, in itinere cum legione occurrit. Labienus, interitu Sabini et caede cohortium cognita, cum omnes ad eum Treverorum copiae venissent, veritus, si ex hibernis fugae similem profectionem fecisset, ut hostium impetum

sustinere posset, praesertim quos recenti victoria efferri sciret, litteras Caesari remittit, quanto cum periculo legionem ex hibernis educturus esset, rem gestam in Eburonibus perscribit, docet, omnes peditatus equitatusque copias Treverorum tria milia passuum longe ab suis castris consedisse.

XLVIII. Caesar consilio eius probato, etsi opinione trium legionum deiectus ad duas redierat, tamen unum communis salutis auxilium in celeritate ponebat. Venit magnis itineribus in Nerviorum fines. Ibi ex captivis cognoscit, quae apud Ciceronem gerantur quantoque in periculo res sit. Tum cuidam ex equitibus Gallis magnis praemiis persuadet, uti ad Ciceronem epistolam deferat. Hanc Graecis conscriptam litteris mittit, ne intercepta epistola nostra ab hostibus consilia cognoscantur. Si adire non possit, monet, ut tragulam cum epistola ad amentum deligata intra munitionem castrorum abiciat. In litteris scribit, se cum legionibus profectum celeriter affore; hortatur, ut pristinam virtutem retineat. Gallus periculum veritus, ut erat praeceptum, tragulam mittit. Haec casu ad turrim adhaesit neque ab nostris biduo animadversa tertio die a quodam milite conspicitur, dempta ad Ciceronem defertur. Ille perlectam in conventu militum recitat maximaque omnes laetitia afficit. Tum fumi incendiorum procul videbantur, quae res omnem dubitationem adventus legionum expulit.

XLIX. Galli re cognita per exploratores obsidionem relinquunt, ad Caesarem omnibus copiis contendunt. Haec erant armata circiter milia LX. Cicero data facultate Gallum ab eodem Verticone, quem supra demonstravimus, repetit, qui litteras ad Caesarem deferat; hunc admonet, iter caute diligenterque faciat; perscribit in litteris, hostes ab se discessisse omnemque ad eum multitudinem convertisse. Quibus litteris circiter media nocte Caesar allatis suos facit certiores eosque ad dimicandum animo confirmat. Postero die luce prima movet castra et circiter milia passuum quattuor progressus trans vallem et rivum multitudinem hostium conspicatur. Erat magni periculi res, tantulis copiis iniquo loco dimicare; tum, quoniam obsidione liberatum Ciceronem sciebat, aequo animo remittendum de celeritate existimabat.

Consedit et, quam aequissimo loco potest, castra communit atque haec, etsi erant exigua per se, vix hominum milium septem, praesertim nullis cum impedimentis, tamen angustiis viarum, quam maxime potest, contrahit eo consilio, ut in summam contemptionem hostibus veniat. Interim speculatoribus in omnes partes dimissis explorat, quo commodissime itinere valles transiri possit.

L. Eo die parvulis equestribus proeliis ad aquam factis utrique sese suo loco continent; Galli, quod ampliores copias, quae nondum convenerant, exspectabant; Caesar, si forte timoris simulatione hostes in suum locum elicere posset, ut citra vallem pro castris proelio contenderet; si id efficere non posset, ut exploratis itineribus minore cum periculo vallem rivumque transiret. Prima luce hostium equitatus ad castra accedit proeliumque cum nostris equitibus committit. Caesar consulto equites cedere seque in castra recipere iubet; simul ex omnibus partibus castra altiore vallo muniri portasque obstrui atque in his administrandis rebus quam maxime concursari et cum simulatione agi timoris iubet.

LI. Quibus omnibus rebus hostes invitati copias traducunt aciemque iniquo loco constituunt, nostris vero etiam de vallo deductis, propius accedunt et tela intra munitionem ex omnibus partibus coniciunt praeconibusque circummissis pronuntiari iubent, seu quis Gallus seu Romanus velit ante horam tertiam ad se transire, sine periculo licere; post id tempus non fore potestatem; ac sic nostros contempserunt, ut, obstructis in speciem portis, singulis ordinibus cespitum, quod ea non posse introrumpere videbantur, alii vallum manu scindere, alii fossas complere inciperent. Tum Caesar omnibus portis eruptione facta equitatuque emisso celeriter hostes in fugam dat, sic uti omnino pugnandi causa resisteret nemo, magnumque ex eis numerum occidit atque omnes armis exuit.

LII. Longius prosequi veritus, quod silvae paludesque intercedebant neque etiam parvulo detrimento illorum locum relinqui videbat, omnibus suis incolumibus copiis eodem die ad Ciceronem pervenit. Institutas turres, testudines munitionesque hostium admiratur; legione producta cognoscit,

non decimum quemque esse reliquum militem sine vulnere: ex his omnibus iudicat rebus, quanto cum periculo et quanta cum virtute res sint administratae. Ciceronem pro eius merito legionemque collaudat; centuriones singillatim tribunosque militum appellat, quorum egregiam fuisse virtutem testimonio Ciceronis cognoverat. De casu Sabini et Cottae certius ex captivis cognoscit. Postero die contione habita rem gestam proponit, milites consolatur et confirmat: quod detrimentum culpa et temeritate legati sit acceptum, hoc aequiore animo ferundum docet, quod, beneficio deorum immortalium et virtute eorum expiato incommodo, neque hostibus diutina laetatio neque ipsis longior dolor relinquatur.

A proposed attack on Labienus is abandoned; but almost all Gaul is stirred up.

LIII. Interim ad Labienum per Remos incredibili celeritate de victoria Caesaris fama perfertur, ut, cum ab hibernis Ciceronis milia passuum abesset circiter LX, eoque post horam nonam diei Caesar pervenisset, ante mediam noctem ad portas castrorum clamor oreretur, quo clamore significatio victoriae gratulatioque ab Remis Labieno fieret. Hac fama ad Treveros perlata, Indutiomarus, qui postero die castra Labieni oppugnare decreverat, noctu profugit copiasque omnes in Treveros reducit. Caesar Fabium cum sua legione remittit in hiberna, ipse cum tribus legionibus circum Samarobrivam trinis hibernis hiemare constituit et, quod tanti motus Galliae exstiterant, totam hiemem ipse ad exercitum manere decrevit. Nam illo incommodo de Sabini morte perlato omnes fere Galliae civitates de bello consultabant, nuntios legationesque in omnes partes dimittebant et, quid reliqui consilii caperent atque unde initium belli fieret, explorabant nocturnaque in locis desertis concilia habebant. Neque ullum fere totius hiemis tempus sine sollicitudine Caesaris intercessit, quin aliquem de consiliis ac motu Gallorum nuntium acciperet. In his ab Lucio Roscio, quem legioni tertiaedecimae praefecerat, certior factus est, magnas Gallorum copias earum civitatum, quae Aremoricae appellantur, oppugnandi sui causa convenisse neque longius milia passuum octo ab hibernis suis

afuisse, sed nuntio allato de victoria Caesaris discessisse, adeo ut fugae similis discessus videretur.

LIV. At Caesar principibus cuiusque civitatis ad se evocatis alias territando, cum se scire, quae fierent, denuntiaret, alias cohortando magnam partem Galliae in officio tenuit. Tamen Senones, quae est civitas imprimis firma et magnae inter Gallos auctoritatis, Cavarinum, quem Caesar apud eos regem constituerat, cuius frater Moritasgus adventu in Galliam Caesaris, cuiusque maiores regnum obtinuerant, interficere publico consilio conati, cum ille praesensisset ac profugisset, usque ad fines insecuti regno domoque expulerunt et, missis ad Caesarem satisfaciundi causa legatis, cum is omnem ad se senatum venire iussisset, dicto audientes non fuerunt. Tantum apud homines barbaros valuit, esse aliquos repertos principes inferendi belli, tantamque omnibus voluntatum commutationem attulit, ut praeter Aeduos et Remos, quos praecipuo semper honore Caesar habuit, alteros pro vetere ac perpetua erga populum Romanum fide, alteros pro recentibus Gallici belli officiis, nulla fere civitas fuerit non suspecta nobis. Idque adeo haud scio mirandumne sit, cum compluribus aliis de causis, tum maxime, quod ei, qui virtute belli omnibus gentibus praeferebantur, tantum se eius opinionis deperdidisse, ut a populo Romano imperia perferrent, gravissime dolebant.

LV. Treveri vero atque Indutiomarus totius hiemis nullum tempus intermiserunt, quin trans Rhenum legatos mitterent, civitates sollicitarent, pecunias pollicerentur, magna parte exercitus nostri interfecta multo minorem superesse dicerent partem. Neque tamen ulli civitati Germanorum persuaderi potuit, ut Rhenum transiret, cum se bis expertos dicerent, Ariovisti bello et Tencterorum transitu: non esse amplius fortunam temptaturos. Hac spe lapsus Indutiomarus nihilo minus copias cogere, exercere, a finitimis equos parare, exules damnatosque tota Gallia magnis praemiis ad se allicere coepit. Ac tantam sibi iam his rebus in Gallia auctoritatem comparaverat, ut undique ad eum legationes concurrerent, gratiam atque amicitiam publice privatimque peterent.

The Gauls attack the camp of Labienus, and are repulsed.

LVI. Ubi intellexit, ultro ad se veniri, altera ex parte Senones Carnutesque conscientia facinoris instigari, altera Nervios Aduatucosque bellum Romanis parare, neque sibi voluntariorum copias defore, si ex finibus suis progredi coepisset, armatum concilium indicit. Hoc more Gallorum est initium belli: quo lege communi omnes puberes armati convenire consuerunt; qui ex iis novissimus convenit, in conspectu multitudinis omnibus cruciatibus affectus necatur. In eo concilio Cingetorigem, alterius principem factionis generum suum, quem supra demonstravimus Caesaris secutum fidem ab eo non discessisse, hostem iudicat bonaque eius publicat. His rebus confectis in concilio pronuntiat, arcessitum se a Senonibus et Carnutibus aliisque compluribus Galliae civitatibus; huc iturum per fines Remorum eorumque agros populaturum ac, priusquam id faciat, castra Labieni oppugnaturum. Quae fieri velit, praecipit.

LVII. Labienus, cum et loci natura et manu munitissimis castris sese teneret, de suo ac legionis periculo nihil timebat, ne quam occasionem rei bene gerendae dimitteret, cogitabat. Itaque a Cingetorige atque eius propinquis oratione Indutiomari cognita, quam in concilio habuerat, nuntios mittit ad finitimas civitates equitesque undique evocat: his certum diem conveniendi dicit. Interim prope cotidie cum omni equitatu Indutiomarus sub castris eius vagabatur, alias ut situm castrorum cognosceret, alias colloquendi aut territandi causa; equites plerumque omnes tela intra vallum coniciebant. Labienus suos intra munitionem continebat timorisque opinionem, quibuscumque poterat rebus, augebat.

LVIII. Cum maiore in dies contemptione Indutiomarus ad castra accederet, nocte una intromissis equitibus omnium finitimarum civitatum, quos arcessendos curaverat, tanta diligentia omnes suos custodiis intra castra continuit, ut nulla ratione ea res enuntiari aut ad Treveros perferri posset. Interim ex consuetudine cotidiana Indutiomarus ad castra accedit atque ibi magnam partem diei consumit; equites tela coniciunt et magna cum contumelia verborum nostros ad pugnam evocant. Nullo ab nostris dato responso, ubi visum est, sub vespe-

rum dispersi ac dissipati discedunt. Subito Labienus duabus portis omnem equitatum emittit: praecipit atque interdicit, proterritis hostibus atque in fugam coniectis (quod fore, sicut accidit, videbat) unum omnes peterent Indutiomarum, neu quis quem prius vulneret, quam illum interfectum viderit, quod mora reliquorum spatium nactum illum effugere nolebat; magna proponit iis, qui occiderint, praemia; submittit cohortes equitibus subsidio. Comprobat hominis consilium fortuna, et cum unum omnes peterent, in ipso fluminis vado deprehensus Indutiomarus interficitur caputque eius refertur in castra; redeuntes equites, quos possunt, consectantur atque occidunt. Hac re cognita omnes Eburonum et Nerviorum, quae convenerant, copiae discedunt, pauloque habuit post id factum Caesar quietiorem Galliam.

COMMENTARIUS SEXTUS.

Caesar, increasing his forces, subdues several rebellious tribes.

I. Multis de causis Caesar maiorem Galliae motum exspectans per Marcum Silanum, Gaium Antistium Reginum, Titum Sextium legatos delectum habere instituit; simul ab Gneo Pompeio proconsule petit, quoniam ipse ad urbem cum imperio reipublicae causa remaneret, quos ex Cisalpina Gallia consulis sacramento rogavisset, ad signa convenire et ad se proficisci iuberet, magni interesse etiam in reliquum tempus ad opinionem Galliae existimans, tantas videri Italiae facultates, ut, si quid esset in bello detrimenti acceptum, non modo id brevi tempore resarciri, sed etiam maioribus augeri copiis posset. Quod cum Pompeius et reipublicae et amicitiae tribuisset, celeriter confecto per suos delectu tribus ante exactam hiemem et constitutis et adductis legionibus duplicatoque earum cohortium numero, quas cum Q. Titurio amiserat, et celeritate et copiis docuit, quid populi Romani disciplina atque opes possent.

II. Interfecto Indutiomaro, ut docuimus, ad eius propinquos a Treveris imperium defertur. Illi finitimos Germanos sollicitare et pecuniam polliceri non desistunt. Cum ab proximis impetrare non possent, ulteriores temptant. Inventis nonnullis civitatibus iureiurando inter se confirmant obsidibusque de pecunia cavent; Ambiorigem sibi societate et foedere adiungunt. Quibus rebus cognitis Caesar, cum undique bellum parari videret, Nervios, Aduatucos, Menapios adiunctis Cisrhenanis omnibus Germanis esse in armis, Senones ad imperatum non venire et cum Carnutibus finitimisque civitatibus consilia communicare, a Treveris Germanos crebris legationibus sollicitari, maturius sibi de bello cogitandum putavit.

III. Itaque nondum hieme confecta proximis quattuor coactis legionibus de improviso in fines Nerviorum contendit et, priusquam illi aut convenire aut profugere possent, magno pecoris atque hominum numero capto atque ea praeda militibus concessa vastatisque agris in deditionem venire atque obsides sibi dare coegit. Eo celeriter confecto negotio rursus in hiberna legiones reduxit. Concilio Galliae primo vere, ut instituerat, indicto, cum reliqui praeter Senones, Carnutes Treverosque venissent, initium belli ac defectionis hoc esse arbitratus, ut omnia postponere videretur, concilium Lutetiam Parisiorum transfert. Confines erant hi Senonibus civitatemque patrum memoria coniunxerant, sed ab hoc consilio afuisse existimabantur. Hac re pro suggestu pronuntiata eodem die cum legionibus in Senones proficiscitur magnisque itineribus eo pervenit.

IV. Cognito eius adventu Acco, qui princeps eius consilii fuerat, iubet in oppida multitudinem convenire. Conantibus, priusquam id effici posset, adesse Romanos nuntiatur. Necessario sententia desistunt legatosque deprecandi causa ad Caesarem mittunt; adeunt per Aeduos, quorum antiquitus erat in fide civitas. Libenter Caesar petentibus Aeduis dat veniam excusationemque accipit, quod aestivum tempus instantis belli, non quaestionis esse arbitratur. Obsidibus imperatis centum, hos Aeduis custodiendos tradit. Eodem Carnutes legatos obsidesque mittunt, usi deprecatoribus Remis, quorum erant in clientela: eadem ferunt responsa. Peragit concilium Caesar equitesque imperat civitatibus.

V. Hac parte Galliae pacata totus et mente et animo in bellum Treverorum et Ambiorigis insistit. Cavarinum cum equitatu Senonum secum proficisci iubet, ne quis aut ex huius iracundia aut ex eo, quod meruerat, odio civitatis motus exsistat. His rebus constitutis, quod pro explorato habebat, Ambiorigem proelio non esse concertaturum, reliqua eius consilia animo circumspiciebat. Erant Menapii propinqui Eburonum finibus, perpetuis paludibus silvisque muniti, qui uni ex Gallia de pace ad Caesarem legatos numquam miserant. Cum his esse hospitium Ambiorigi sciebat; item per Treveros venisse Germanis in amicitiam cognoverat. Haec

prius illi detrahenda auxilia existimabat, quam ipsum bello lacesseret, ne desperata salute aut se in Menapios abderet aut cum Transrhenanis congredi cogeretur. Hoc inito consilio totius exercitus impedimenta ad Labienum in Treveros mittit duasque legiones ad eum proficisci iubet; ipse cum legionibus expeditis quinque in Menapios proficiscitur. Illi nulla coacta manu loci praesidio freti in silvas paludesque confugiunt suaque eodem conferunt.

VI. Caesar partitis copiis cum Gaio Fabio legato et Marco Crasso quaestore celeriterque effectis pontibus adit tripertito, aedificia vicosque incendit, magno pecoris atque hominum numero potitur. Quibus rebus coacti Menapii legatos ad eum pacis petendae causa mittunt. Ille obsidibus acceptis hostium se habiturum numero confirmat, si aut Ambiorigem aut eius legatos finibus suis recepissent. His confirmatis rebus Commium Atrebatem cum equitatu custodis loco in Menapiis relinquit, ipse in Treveros proficiscitur.

Labienus conquers the Treveri.

VII. Dum haec a Caesare geruntur, Treveri magnis coactis peditatus equitatusque copiis Labienum cum una legione, quae in eorum finibus hiemaverat, adoriri parabant, iamque ab eo non longius bidui via aberant, cum duas venisse legiones missu Caesaris cognoscunt. Positis castris a milibus passuum xv auxilia Germanorum exspectare constituunt. Labienus hostium cognito consilio, sperans, temeritate eorum fore aliquam dimicandi facultatem, praesidio quinque cohortium impedimentis relicto cum viginti quinque cohortibus magnoque equitatu contra hostem proficiscitur et mille passuum intermisso spatio castra communit. Erat inter Labienum atque hostem difficili transitu flumen ripisque praeruptis. Hoc neque ipse transire habebat in animo neque hostes transituros existimabat. Augebatur auxiliorum cotidie spes. Loquitur in consilio palam, quoniam Germani appropinquare dicantur, sese suas exercitusque fortunas in dubium non devocaturum et postero die prima luce castra moturum. Celeriter haec ad hostes deferuntur, ut ex magno Gallorum equitum numero nonnullos Gallicis rebus favere natura coge-

bat. Labienus noctu tribunis militum primisque ordinibus convocatis, quid sui sit consilii, proponit et, quo facilius hostibus timoris det suspicionem, maiore strepitu et tumultu, quam populi Romani fert consuetudo, castra moveri iubet. His rebus fugae similem profectionem effecit. Haec quoque per exploratores ante lucem in tanta propinquitate castrorum ad hostes deferuntur.

VIII. Vix agmen novissimum extra munitiones processerat, cum Galli, cohortati inter se, ne speratam praedam ex manibus dimitterent; longum esse, perterritis Romanis Germanorum auxilium exspectare, neque suam pati dignitatem, ut tantis copiis tam exiguam manum, praesertim fugientem atque impeditam, adoriri non audeant, flumen transire et iniquo loco committere proelium non dubitant. Quae fore suspicatus Labienus, ut omnes citra flumen eliceret, eadem usus simulatione itineris placide progrediebatur. Tum praemissis paulum impedimentis atque in tumulo quodam collocatis, 'Habetis,' inquit, 'milites, quam petistis, facultatem: hostem impedito atque iniquo loco tenetis: praestate eandem nobis ducibus virtutem, quam saepenumero imperatori praestitistis, atque illum adesse et haec coram cernere existimate.' Simul signa ad hostem converti aciemque dirigi iubet et paucis turmis praesidio ad impedimenta dimissis reliquos equites ad latera disponit. Celeriter nostri clamore sublato pila in hostes immittunt. Illi, ubi praeter spem, quos fugere credebant, infestis signis ad se ire viderunt, impetum modo ferre non potuerunt ac primo concursu in fugam coniecti proximas silvas petierunt. Quos Labienus equitatu consectatus magno numero interfecto, compluribus captis paucis post diebus civitatem recepit. Nam Germani, qui auxilio veniebant, percepta Treverorum fuga sese domum receperunt. Cum his propinqui Indutiomari, qui defectionis auctores fuerant, comitati eos ex civitate excesserunt. Cingetorigi, quem ab initio permansisse in officio demonstravimus, principatus atque imperium est traditum.

Caesar makes a second expedition into Germany.

IX. Caesar, postquam ex Menapiis in Treveros venit, duabus de causis Rhenum transire constituit; quarum una erat,

quod auxilia contra se Treveris miserant, altera, ne ad eos Ambiorix receptum haberet. His constitutis rebus paulum supra eum locum, quo ante exercitum traduxerat, facere pontem instituit. Nota atque instituta ratione magno militum studio paucis diebus opus efficitur. Firmo in Treveris ad pontem praesidio relicto, ne quis ab his subito motus oreretur, reliquas copias equitatumque traducit. Ubii, qui ante obsides dederant atque in deditionem venerant, purgandi sui causa ad eum legatos mittunt, qui doceant, neque auxilia ex sua civitate in Treveros missa neque ab se fidem laesam; petunt atque orant, ut sibi parcat, ne communi odio Germanorum innocentes pro nocentibus poenas pendant; si amplius obsidum velit, dare pollicentur. Cognita Caesar causa reperit, ab Suebis auxilia missa esse; Ubiorum satisfactionem accipit, aditus viasque in Suebos perquirit.

X. Interim paucis post diebus fit ab Ubiis certior, Suebos omnes in unum locum copias cogere atque iis nationibus, quae sub eorum sint imperio, denuntiare, ut auxilia peditatus equitatusque mittant. His cognitis rebus rem frumentariam providet, castris idoneum locum deligit; Ubiis imperat, ut pecora deducant suaque omnia ex agris in oppida conferant, sperans, barbaros atque imperitos homines inopia cibariorum adductos ad iniquam pugnandi condicionem posse deduci; mandat, ut crebros exploratores in Suebos mittant, quaeque apud eos gerantur, cognoscant. Illi imperata faciunt et paucis diebus intermissis referunt: Suebos omnes, posteaquam certiores nuntii de exercitu Romanorum venerint, cum omnibus suis sociorumque copiis, quas coegissent, penitus ad extremos fines se recepisse: silvam esse ibi infinita magnitudine, quae appellatur Bacenis; hanc longe introrsus pertinere et pro nativo muro obiectam Cheruscos ab Suebis Suebosque ab Cheruscis iniuriis incursionibusque prohibere: ad eius initium silvae Suebos adventum Romanorum exspectare constituisse.

The customs of the Gauls and Germans contrasted.

XI. Quoniam ad hunc locum perventum est, non alienum esse videtur, de Galliae Germaniaeque moribus et, quo differant hae nationes inter sese, proponere.

In Gallia non solum in omnibus civitatibus atque in omnibus pagis partibusque, sed paene etiam in singulis domibus factiones sunt, earumque factionum principes sunt, qui summam auctoritatem eorum iudicio habere existimantur, quorum ad arbitrium iudiciumque summa omnium rerum consiliorumque redeat. Itaque eius rei causa antiquitus institutum videtur, ne quis ex plebe contra potentiorem auxilii egeret: suos enim quisque opprimi et circumveniri non patitur, neque, aliter si faciat, ullam inter suos habet auctoritatem. Haec eadem ratio est in summa totius Galliae: namque omnes civitates in partes divisae sunt duas.

XII. Cum Caesar in Galliam venit, alterius factionis principes erant Aedui, alterius Sequani. Hi cum per se minus valerent, quod summa auctoritas antiquitus erat in Aeduis magnaeque eorum erant clientelae, Germanos atque Ariovistum sibi adiunxerant eosque ad se magnis iacturis pollicitationibusque perduxerant. Proeliis vero compluribus factis secundis atque omni nobilitate Aeduorum interfecta tantum potentia antecesserant, ut magnam partem clientium ab Aeduis ad se transducerent obsidesque ab iis principum filios acciperent et publice iurare cogerent, nihil se contra Sequanos consilii inituros, et partem finitimi agri per vim occupatam possiderent Galliaeque totius principatum obtinerent. Qua necessitate adductus Divitiacus auxilii petendi causa Romam ad senatum profectus imperfecta re redierat. Adventu Caesaris facta commutatione rerum, obsidibus Aeduis redditis, veteribus clientelis restitutis, novis per Caesarem comparatis, quod hi, qui se ad eorum amicitiam aggregaverant, meliore condicione atque aequiore imperio se uti videbant, reliquis rebus eorum gratia dignitateque amplificata, Sequani principatum dimiserant. In eorum locum Remi successerant; quos quod adaequare apud Caesarem gratia intellegebatur, ii, qui propter veteres inimicitias nullo modo cum Aeduis coniungi poterant, se Remis in clientelam dicabant. Hos illi diligenter tuebantur: ita et novam et repente collectam auctoritatem tenebant. Eo tum statu res erat, ut longe principes haberentur Aedui, secundum locum dignitatis Remi obtinerent.

XIII. In omni Gallia eorum hominum, qui aliquo sunt numero atque honore, genera sunt duo. Nam plebes paene servorum habetur loco, quae nihil audet per se, nullo adhibetur consilio. Plerique, cum aut aere alieno aut magnitudine tributorum aut iniuria potentiorum premuntur, sese in servitutem dicant nobilibus; in hos eadem omnia sunt iura, quae dominis in servos. Sed de his duobus generibus alterum est druidum, alterum equitum. Illi rebus divinis intersunt, sacrificia publica ac privata procurant, religiones interpretantur; ad eos magnus adulescentium numerus disciplinae causa concurrit, magnoque hi sunt apud eos honore. Nam fere de omnibus controversiis publicis privatisque constituunt, et si quod est admissum facinus, si caedes facta, si de hereditate, si de finibus controversia est, idem decernunt, praemia poenasque constituunt; si qui aut privatus aut populus eorum decreto non stetit, sacrificiis interdicunt. Haec poena apud eos est gravissima. Quibus ita est interdictum, hi numero impiorum ac sceleratorum habentur, his omnes decedunt, aditum sermonemque defugiunt, ne quid ex contagione incommodi accipiant, neque his petentibus ius redditur neque honos ullus communicatur. His autem omnibus druidibus praeest unus, qui summam inter eos habet auctoritatem. Hoc mortuo aut, si qui ex reliquis excellit dignitate, succedit, aut, si sunt plures pares, suffragio druidum, nonnumquam etiam armis de principatu contendunt. Hi certo anni tempore in finibus Carnutum, quae regio totius Galliae media habetur, considunt in loco consecrato. Huc omnes undique, qui controversias habent, conveniunt eorumque decretis iudiciisque parent. Disciplina in Britannia reperta atque inde in Galliam translata esse existimatur, et nunc, qui diligentius eam rem cognoscere volunt, plerumque illo discendi causa proficiscuntur.

XIV. Druides a bello abesse consuerunt neque tributa una cum reliquis pendunt, militiae vacationem omniumque rerum habent immunitatem. Tantis excitati praemiis et sua sponte multi in disciplinam conveniunt et a parentibus propinquisque mittuntur. Magnum ibi numerum versuum ediscere dicuntur. Itaque annos nonnulli vicenos in disciplina permanent. Ne-

que fas esse existimant ea litteris mandare, cum in reliquis fere rebus, publicis privatisque rationibus, Graecis litteris utantur. Id mihi duabus de causis instituisse videntur, quod neque in vulgum disciplinam efferri velint neque eos, qui discunt, litteris confisos minus memoriae studere; quod fere plerisque accidit, ut praesidio litterarum diligentiam in perdiscendo ac memoriam remittant. Imprimis hoc volunt persuadere, non interire animas, sed ab aliis post mortem transire ad alios, atque hoc maxime ad virtutem excitari putant, metu mortis neglecto. Multa praeterea de sideribus atque eorum motu, de mundi ac terrarum magnitudine, de rerum natura, de deorum immortalium vi ac potestate disputant et iuventuti tradunt.

XV. Alterum genus est equitum. Hi, cum est usus atque aliquod bellum incidit (quod fere ante Caesaris adventum quotannis accidere solebat, uti aut ipsi iniurias inferrent aut illatas propulsarent), omnes in bello versantur, atque eorum ut quisque est genere copiisque amplissimus, ita plurimos circum se ambactos clientesque habet. Hanc unam gratiam potentiamque noverunt.

XVI. Natio est omnium Gallorum admodum dedita religionibus, atque ob eam causam, qui sunt affecti gravioribus morbis quique in proeliis periculisque versantur, aut pro victimis homines immolant aut se immolaturos vovent administrisque ad ea sacrificia druidibus utuntur, quod, pro vita hominis nisi hominis vita reddatur, non posse deorum immortalium numen placari arbitrantur, publiceque eiusdem generis habent instituta sacrificia. Alii immani magnitudine simulacra habent, quorum contexta viminibus membra vivis hominibus complent; quibus succensis circumventi flamma exanimantur homines. Supplicia eorum, qui in furto aut in latrocinio aut aliqua noxa sint comprehensi, gratiora dis immortalibus esse arbitrantur; sed cum eius generis copia defecit, etiam ad innocentium supplicia descendunt.

XVII. Deum maxime Mercurium colunt. Huius sunt plurima simulacra, hunc omnium inventorem artium ferunt, hunc viarum atque itinerum ducem, hunc ad quaestus pecuniae mercaturasque habere vim maximam arbitrantur. Post

hunc Apollinem et Martem et Iovem et Minervam. De his eandem fere, quam reliquae gentes, habent opinionem: Apollinem morbos depellere, Minervam operum atque artificiorum initia tradere, Iovem imperium caelestium tenere, Martem bella regere. Huic, cum proelio dimicare constituerunt, ea, quae bello ceperint, plerumque devovent; cum superaverunt, animalia capta immolant reliquasque res in unum locum conferunt. Multis in civitatibus harum rerum exstructos tumulos locis consecratis conspicari licet; neque saepe accidit, ut neglecta quispiam religione aut capta apud se occultare aut posita tollere auderet, gravissimumque ei rei supplicium cum cruciatu constitutum est.

XVIII. Galli se omnes ab Dite patre prognatos praedicant idque ab druidibus proditum dicunt. Ob eam causam spatia omnis temporis non numero dierum, sed noctium finiunt; dies natales et mensium et annorum initia sic observant, ut noctem dies subsequatur. In reliquis vitae institutis hoc fere ab reliquis differunt, quod suos liberos, nisi cum adoleverunt, ut munus militiae sustinere possint palam ad se adire non patiuntur filiumque puerili aetate in publico in conspectu patris assistere turpe ducunt.

XIX. Viri, quantas pecunias ab uxoribus dotis nomine acceperunt, tantas ex suis bonis aestimatione facta cum dotibus communicant. Huius omnis pecuniae coniunctim ratio habetur fructusque servantur; uter eorum vita superavit, ad eum pars utriusque cum fructibus superiorum temporum pervenit. Viri in uxores, sicuti in liberos, vitae necisque habent potestatem; et cum paterfamiliae illustriore loco natus decessit, eius propinqui conveniunt et, de morte si res in suspicionem venit, de uxoribus in servilem modum quaestionem habent et, si compertum est, igni atque omnibus tormentis excruciatas interficiunt. Funera sunt pro cultu Gallorum magnifica et sumptuosa; omniaque, quae vivis cordi fuisse arbitrantur, in ignem inferunt, etiam animalia, ac paulo supra hanc memoriam servi et clientes, quos ab iis dilectos esse constabat, iustis funeribus confectis una cremabantur.

XX. Quae civitates commodius suam rempublicam administrare existimantur, habent legibus sanctum, si quis quid de

republica a finitimis rumore aut fama acceperit, uti ad magistratum deferat neve cum quo alio communicet, quod saepe homines temerarios atque imperitos falsis rumoribus terreri et ad facinus impelli et de summis rebus consilium capere cognitum est. Magistratus, quae visa sunt, occultant, quaeque esse ex usu iudicaverunt, multitudini produnt. De re publica nisi per concilium loqui non conceditur.

XXI. Germani multum ab hac consuetudine differunt. Nam neque druides habent, qui rebus divinis praesint, neque sacrificiis student. Deorum numero eos solos ducunt, quos cernunt et quorum aperte opibus iuvantur, Solem et Vulcanum et Lunam, reliquos ne fama quidem acceperunt. Vita omnis in venationibus atque in studiis rei militaris consistit; ab parvulis labori ac duritiae student. Qui diutissime impuberes permanserunt, maximam inter suos ferunt laudem: hoc ali staturam, ali vires nervosque confirmari putant. Intra annum vero vicesimum feminae notitiam habuisse in turpissimis habent rebus; cuius rei nulla est occultatio, quod et promiscue in fluminibus perluuntur et pellibus aut parvis renonum tegimentis utuntur, magna corporis parte nuda.

XXII. Agriculturae non student, maiorque pars eorum victus in lacte, caseo, carne consistit. Neque quisquam agri modum certum aut fines habet proprios, sed magistratus ac principes in annos singulos gentibus cognationibusque hominum, qui tum una coierunt, quantum et quo loco visum est agri, attribuunt atque anno post alio transire cogunt. Eius rei multas afferunt causas: ne assidua consuetudine capti studium belli gerendi agricultura commutent; ne latos fines parare studeant potentioresque humiliores possessionibus expellant; ne accuratius ad frigora atque aestus vitandos aedificent; ne qua oriatur pecuniae cupiditas, qua ex re factiones dissensionesque nascuntur; ut animi aequitate plebem contineant, cum suas quisque opes cum potentissimis aequari videat.

XXIII. Civitatibus maxima laus est quam latissime circum se vastatis finibus solitudines habere. Hoc proprium virtutis existimant, expulsos agris finitimos cedere neque quemquam prope audere consistere; simul hoc se fore tutiores arbi-

trantur, repentinae incursionis timore sublato. Cum bellum civitas aut illatum defendit aut infert, magistratus, qui ei bello praesint, ut vitae necisque habeant potestatem, deliguntur. In pace nullus est communis magistratus, sed principes regionum atque pagorum inter suos ius dicunt controversiasque minuunt. Latrocinia nullam habent infamiam, quae extra fines cuiusque civitatis fiunt, atque ea iuventutis exercendae ac desidiae minuendae causa fieri praedicant. Atque ubi quis ex principibus in concilio dixit, se ducem fore, qui sequi velint, profiteantur, consurgunt ii, qui et causam et hominem probant, suumque auxilium pollicentur atque ab multitudine collaudantur; qui ex his secuti non sunt, in desertorum ac proditorum numero ducuntur, omniumque his rerum postea fides derogatur. Hospitem violare fas non putant; qui quacumque de causa ad eos venerunt, ab iniuria prohibent, sanctos habent, hisque omnium domus patent victusque communicatur.

XXIV. Ac fuit antea tempus, cum Germanos Galli virtute superarent, ultro bella inferrent, propter hominum multitudinem agrique inopiam trans Rhenum colonias mitterent. Itaque ea, quae fertilissima Germaniae sunt, loca circum Hercyniam silvam, quam Eratostheni et quibusdam Graecis fama notam esse video, quam illi Orcyniam appellant, Volcae Tectosages occupaverunt atque ibi consederunt; quae gens ad hoc tempus his sedibus sese continet summamque habet iustitiae et bellicae laudis opinionem. Nunc quod in eadem inopia, egestate, patientia, qua ante, Germani permanent, eodem victu et cultu corporis utuntur, Gallis autem provinciarum propinquitas et transmarinarum rerum notitia multa ad copiam atque usus largitur, paulatim assuefacti superari multisque victi proeliis, ne se quidem ipsi cum illis virtute comparant.

The Hercynian forest, and the animals inhabiting it.

XXV. Huius Hercyniae silvae, quae supra demonstrata est, latitudo novem dierum iter expedito patet; non enim aliter finiri potest, neque mensuras itinerum noverunt. Oritur ab Helvetiorum et Nemetum et Rauricorum finibus recta-

que fluminis Danuvii regione pertinet ad fines Dacorum et Anartium; hinc se flectit sinistrorsus diversis ab flumine regionibus multarumque gentium fines propter magnitudinem attingit: neque quisquam est huius Germaniae, qui se aut adisse ad initium eius silvae dicat, cum dierum iter LX processerit, aut, quo ex loco oriatur, acceperit, multaque in ea genera ferarum nasci constat, quae reliquis in locis visa non sint; ex quibus quae maxime differant ab ceteris et memoriae prodenda videantur, haec sunt.

XXVI. Est bos cervi figura, cuius a media fronte inter aures unum cornu exsistit excelsius magisque directum his, quae nobis nota sunt, cornibus; ab eius summo sicut palmae ramique late diffunduntur. Eadem est feminae marisque natura, eadem forma magnitudoque cornuum.

XXVII. Sunt item, quae appellantur alces. Harum est consimilis capris figura et varietas pellium, sed magnitudine paulo antecedunt mutilaeque sunt cornibus et crura sine nodis articulisque habent, neque quietis causa procumbunt neque, si quo afflictae casu conciderunt, erigere sese aut sublevare possunt. His sunt arbores pro cubilibus: ad eas se applicant atque ita paulum modo reclinatae quietem capiunt. Quarum ex vestigiis cum est animadversum a venatoribus, quo se recipere consuerint, omnes eo loco aut ab radicibus subruunt aut accidunt arbores tantum, ut summa species earum stantium relinquatur. Huc cum se consuetudine reclinaverunt, infirmas arbores pondere affligunt atque una ipsae concidunt.

XXVIII. Tertium est genus eorum, qui uri appellantur. Hi sunt magnitudine paulo infra elephantos, specie et colore et figura tauri. Magna vis eorum est et magna velocitas, neque homini neque ferae, quam conspexerunt, parcunt. Hos studiose foveis captos interficiunt. Hoc se labore durant adulescentes atque hoc genere venationis exercent, et qui plurimos ex his interfecerunt, relatis in publicum cornibus, quae sint testimonio, magnam ferunt laudem. Sed assuescere ad homines et mansuefieri ne parvuli quidem excepti possunt. Amplitudo cornuum et figura et species multum a nostrorum boum cornibus differt. Haec studiose

conquisita ab labris argento circumcludunt atque in amplissimis epulis pro poculis utuntur.

Caesar, returning to Gaul, routs the forces of Ambiorix, and begins an active campaign against the Eburones.

XXIX. Caesar, postquam per Ubios exploratores comperit, Suebos sese in silvas recepisse, inopiam frumenti veritus, quod, ut supra demonstravimus, minime omnes Germani agriculturae student, constituit non progredi longius; sed, ne omnino metum reditus sui barbaris tolleret atque ut eorum auxilia tardaret, reducto exercitu partem ultimam pontis, quae ripas Ubiorum contingebat, in longitudinem pedum ducentorum rescindit, atque in extremo ponte turrim tabulatorum quattuor constituit praesidiumque cohortium XII pontis tuendi causa ponit magnisque eum locum munitionibus firmat. Ei loco praesidioque Gaium Volcatium Tullum adulescentem praefecit. Ipse, cum maturescere frumenta inciperent, ad bellum Ambiorigis profectus per Arduennam silvam, quae est totius Galliae maxima atque ab ripis Rheni finibusque Treverorum ad Nervios pertinet milibusque amplius quingentis in longitudinem patet, Lucium Minucium Basilum cum omni equitatu praemittit, si quid celeritate itineris atque opportunitate temporis proficere posset; monet, ut ignes in castris fieri prohibeat, ne qua eius adventus procul significatio fiat; sese confestim subsequi dicit.

XXX. Basilus, ut imperatum est, facit. Celeriter contraque omnium opinionem confecto itinere multos in agris inopinantes deprehendit: eorum indicio ad ipsum Ambiorigem contendit, quo in loco cum paucis equitibus esse dicebatur. Multum cum in omnibus rebus, tum in re militari potest fortuna. Nam sicut magno accidit casu, ut in ipsum incautum etiam atque imparatum incideret, priusque eius adventus ab omnibus videretur, quam fama ac nuntius afferretur, sic magnae fuit fortunae, omni militari instrumento, quod circum se habebat, erepto, redis equisque comprehensis, ipsum effugere mortem. Sed hoc quoque factum est, quod aedificio circumdato silva, ut sunt fere domicilia Gallorum, qui vitandi aestus causa plerumque silvarum atque fluminum petunt pro-

pinquitates, comites familiaresque eius angusto in loco paulisper equitum nostrorum vim sustinuerunt. His pugnantibus illum in equum quidam ex suis intulit; fugientem silvae texerunt. Sic et ad subeundum periculum et ad vitandum multum fortuna valuit.

XXXI. Ambiorix copias suas iudicione non conduxerit, quod proelio dimicandum non existimarit, an tempore exclusus et repentino equitum adventu prohibitus, cum reliquum exercitum subsequi crederet, dubium est. Sed certe dimissis per agros nuntiis sibi quemque consulere iussit. Quorum pars in Arduennam silvam, pars in continentes paludes profugit; qui proximi Oceano fuerunt, hi insulis sese occultaverunt, quas aestus efficere consuerunt; multi ex suis finibus egressi se suaque omnia alienissimis crediderunt. Catuvolcus, rex dimidiae partis Eburonum, qui una cum Ambiorige consilium inierat, aetate iam confectus, cum laborem belli aut fugae ferre non posset, omnibus precibus detestatus Ambiorigem, qui eius consilii auctor fuisset, taxo, cuius magna in Gallia Germaniaque copia est, se exanimavit.

XXXII. Segni Condrusique, ex gente et numero Germanorum, qui sunt inter Eburones Treverosque, legatos ad Caesarem miserunt oratum, ne se in hostium numero duceret neve omnium Germanorum, qui essent citra Rhenum, unam esse causam iudicaret: nihil se de bello cogitasse, nulla Ambiorigi auxilia misisse. Caesar explorata re quaestione captivorum, si qui ad eos Eburones ex fuga convenissent, ad se ut reducerentur, imperavit; si ita fecissent, fines eorum se violaturum negavit. Tum copiis in tres partes distributis impedimenta omnium legionum Aduatucam contulit. Id castelli nomen est. Hoc fere est in mediis Eburonum finibus, ubi Titurius atque Aurunculeius hiemandi causa consederant. Hunc cum reliquis rebus locum probarat, tum quod superioris anni munitiones integrae manebant, ut militum laborem sublevaret. Praesidio impedimentis legionem quartamdecimam reliquit, unam ex his tribus, quas proxime conscriptas ex Italia traduxerat. Ei legioni castrisque Quintum Tullium Ciceronem praeficit ducentosque equites attribuit.

XXXIII. Partito exercitu Titum Labienum cum legionibus tribus ad Oceanum versus in eas partes, quae Menapios attingunt, proficisci iubet; Gaium Trebonium cum pari legionum numero ad eam regionem, quae ad Aduatucos adiacet, depopulandam mittit; ipse cum reliquis tribus ad flumen Scaldem, quod influit in Mosam, extremasque Arduennae partis ire constituit, quo cum paucis equitibus profectum Ambiorigem audiebat. Discedens post diem septimum sese reversurum confirmat; quam ad diem ei legioni, quae in praesidio relinquebatur, deberi frumentum sciebat. Labienum Treboniumque hortatur, si reipublicae commodo facere possint, ad eum diem revertantur, ut rursus communicato consilio exploratisque hostium rationibus aliud initium belli capere possent.

XXXIV. Erat, ut supra demonstravimus, manus certa nulla, non oppidum, non praesidium, quod se armis defenderet, sed omnis in partis dispersa multitudo. Ubi cuique aut valles abdita aut locus silvestris aut palus impedita spem praesidii aut salutis aliquam offerebat, consederat. Haec loca vicinitatibus erant nota, magnamque res diligentiam requirebat non in summa exercitus tuenda (nullum enim poterat universis ab perterritis ac dispersis periculum accidere), sed in singulis militibus conservandis; quae tamen ex parte res ad salutem exercitus pertinebat. Nam et praedae cupiditas multos longius evocabat, et silvae incertis occultisque itineribus confertos adire prohibebant. Si negotium confici stirpemque hominum sceleratorum interfici vellet, dimittendae plures manus diducendique erant milites; si continere ad signa manipulos vellet, ut instituta ratio et consuetudo exercitus Romani postulabat, locus ipse erat praesidio barbaris, neque ex occulto insidiandi et dispersos circumveniendi singulis deerat audacia. Ut in eiusmodi difficultatibus, quantum diligentia provideri poterat, providebatur, ut potius in nocendo aliquid praetermitteretur, etsi omnium animi ad ulciscendum ardebant, quam cum aliquo militum detrimento noceretur. Dimittit ad finitimas civitates nuntios Caesar; omnes ad se evocat spe praedae ad diripiendos Eburones, ut potius in silvis Gallorum vita quam legionarius miles periclitetur, simul ut magna multitu-

dine circumfusa pro tali facinore stirps ac nomen civitatis tollatur. Magnus undique numerus celeriter convenit.

Meanwhile the Sugambri attack Cicero's camp, unsuccessfully.

XXXV. Haec in omnibus Eburonum partibus gerebantur, diesque appetebat septimus, quem ad diem Caesar ad impedimenta legionemque reverti constituerat. Hic, quantum in bello fortuna possit et quantos afferat casus, cognosci potuit. Dissipatis ac perterritis hostibus, ut demonstravimus, manus erat nulla, quae parvam modo causam timoris afferret. Trans Rhenum ad Germanos pervenit fama, diripi Eburones atque ultro omnes ad praedam evocari. Cogunt equitum duo milia Sugambri, qui sunt proximi Rheno, a quibus receptos ex fuga Tencteros atque Usipetes supra docuimus. Transeunt Rhenum navibus ratibusque triginta milibus passuum infra eum locum, ubi pons erat perfectus praesidiumque ab Caesare relictum; primos Eburonum fines adeunt; multos ex fuga dispersos excipiunt, magno pecoris numero, cuius sunt cupidissimi barbari, potiuntur. Invitati praeda longius procedunt. Non hos palus in bello latrociniisque natos, non silvae morantur. Quibus in locis sit Caesar, ex captivis quaerunt; profectum longius reperiunt omnemque exercitum discessisse cognoscunt. Atque unus ex captivis, 'Quid vos,' inquit, 'hanc miseram ac tenuem sectamini praedam, quibus licet iam esse fortunatissimis? Tribus horis Aduatucam venire potestis: huc omnes suas fortunas exercitus Romanorum contulit; praesidii tantum est, ut ne murus quidem cingi possit, neque quisquam egredi extra munitiones audeat.' Oblata spe Germani, quam nacti erant praedam, in occulto relinquunt; ipsi Aduatucam contendunt usi eodem duce, cuius haec indicio cognoverant.

XXXVI. Cicero, qui omnes superiores dies praeceptis Caesaris cum summa diligentia milites in castris continuisset ac ne calonem quidem quemquam extra munitionem egredi passus esset, septimo die, diffidens de numero dierum Caesarem fidem servaturum, quod longius progressum audiebat neque ulla de reditu eius fama afferebatur, simul eorum permotus vocibus, qui illius patientiam paene obsessionem

appellabant, siquidem ex castris egredi non liceret, nullum eiusmodi casum exspectans, quo, novem oppositis legionibus maximoque equitatu dispersis ac paene deletis hostibus, in milibus passuum tribus offendi posset, quinque cohortes frumentatum in proximas segetes mittit, quas inter et castra unus omnino collis intererat. Complures erant ex legionibus aegri relicti; ex quibus qui hoc spatio dierum convaluerant, circiter CCC, sub vexillo una mittuntur; magna praeterea multitudo calonum, magna vis iumentorum, quae in castris subsederant, facta potestate sequitur.

XXXVII. Hoc ipso tempore et casu Germani equites interveniunt protinusque eodem illo, quo venerant, cursu ab decumana porta in castra irrumpere conantur, nec prius sunt visi obiectis ab ea parte silvis, quam castris appropinquarent, usque eo ut, qui sub vallo tenderent mercatores, recipiendi sui facultatem non haberent. Inopinantes nostri re nova perturbantur, ac vix primum impetum cohors in statione sustinet. Circumfunduntur ex reliquis hostes partibus, si quem aditum reperire possent. Aegre portas nostri tuentur; reliquos aditus locus ipse per se munitioque defendit. Totis trepidatur castris, atque alius ex alio causam tumultus quaerit; neque quo signa ferantur, neque quam in partem quisque conveniat, provident. Alius iam castra capta pronuntiat, alius deleto exercitu atque imperatore victores barbaros venisse contendit; plerique novas sibi ex loco religiones fingunt Cottaeque et Titurii calamitatem, qui in eodem occiderint castello, ante oculos ponunt. Tali timore omnibus perterritis, confirmatur opinio barbaris, ut ex captivo audierant, nullum esse intus praesidium. Perrumpere nituntur seque ipsi adhortantur, ne tantam fortunam ex manibus dimittant.

XXXVIII. Erat aeger cum praesidio relictus Publius Sextius Baculus, qui primum pilum ad Caesarem duxerat, cuius mentionem superioribus proeliis fecimus, ac diem iam quintum cibo caruerat. Hic diffisus suae atque omnium saluti inermis ex tabernaculo prodit; videt, imminere hostes atque in summo esse rem discrimine: capit arma a proximis atque in porta consistit. Consequuntur hunc centuriones eius cohortis, quae in statione erat; paulisper una proelium susti-

nent. Relinquit animus Sextium gravibus acceptis vulneribus; aegre per manus tractus servatur. Hoc spatio interposito reliqui sese confirmant tantum, ut in munitionibus consistere audeant speciemque defensorum praebeant.

XXXIX. Interim confecta frumentatione milites nostri clamorem exaudiunt; praecurrunt equites; quanto res sit in periculo, cognoscunt. Hic vero nulla munitio est, quae perterritos recipiat: modo conscripti atque usus militaris imperiti ad tribunum militum centurionesque ora convertunt; quid ab his praecipiatur, exspectant. Nemo est tam fortis, quin rei novitate perturbetur. Barbari signa procul conspicati oppugnatione desistunt; redisse primo legiones credunt, quas longius discessisse ex captivis cognoverant; postea despecta paucitate ex omnibus partibus impetum faciunt.

XL. Calones in proximum tumulum procurrunt. Hinc celeriter deiecti se in signa manipulosque coniciunt; eo magis timidos perterrent milites. Alii, cuneo facto ut celeriter perrumpant, censent, quoniam tam propinqua sint castra, et si pars aliqua circumventa ceciderit, at reliquos servari posse confidunt; alii, ut in iugo consistant atque eundem omnes ferant casum. Hoc veteres non probant milites, quos sub vexillo una profectos docuimus. Itaque inter se cohortati duce Gaio Trebonio, equite Romano, qui eis erat praepositus, per medios hostes perrumpunt incolumesque ad unum omnes in castra perveniunt. Hos subsecuti calones equitesque eodem impetu militum virtute servantur. At ii, qui in iugo constiterant, nullo etiam nunc usu rei militaris percepto, neque in eo, quod probaverant, consilio permanere, ut se loco superiore defenderent, neque eam, quam prodesse aliis vim celeritatemque viderant, imitari potuerunt, sed se in castra recipere conati iniquum in locum demiserunt. Centuriones, quorum nonnulli ex inferioribus ordinibus reliquarum legionum virtutis causa in superiores erant ordines huius legionis traducti, ne ante partam rei militaris laudem amitterent, fortissime pugnantes conciderunt. Militum pars, horum virtute summotis hostibus, praeter spem incolumis in castra pervenit, pars a barbaris circumventa periit.

XLI. Germani desperata expugnatione castrorum, quod nostros iam constitisse in munitionibus videbant, cum ea praeda, quam in silvis deposuerant, trans Rhenum sese receperunt. Ac tantus fuit etiam post discessum hostium terror, ut ea nocte, cum Gaius Volusenus missus cum equitatu ad castra venisset, fidem non faceret, adesse cum incolumi Caesarem exercitu. Sic omnino animos timor praeoccupaverat, ut paene alienata mente deletis omnibus copiis equitatum se ex fuga recepisse dicerent neque incolumi exercitu Germanos castra oppugnaturos fuisse contenderent. Quem timorem Caesaris adventus sustulit.

XLII. Reversus ille, eventus belli non ignorans, unum, quod cohortes ex statione et praesidio essent emissae, questus (ne minimo quidem casu locum relinqui debuisse) multum fortunam in repentino hostium adventu potuisse iudicavit, multo etiam amplius, quod paene ab ipso vallo portisque castrorum barbaros avertisset. Quarum omnium rerum maxime admirandum videbatur, quod Germani, qui eo consilio Rhenum transierant, ut Ambiorigis fines depopularentur, ad castra Romanorum delati optatissimum Ambiorigi beneficium obtulerunt.

Caesar chastises the Eburones, calls a council of Gaul, places his army in winter quarters, and goes to Italy.

XLIII. Caesar rursus ad vexandos hostes profectus magno coacto numero ex finitimis civitatibus in omnes partes dimittit. Omnes vici atque omnia aedificia, quae quisque conspexerat, incendebantur; praeda ex omnibus locis agebatur; frumenta non solum tanta multitudine iumentorum atque hominum consumebantur, sed etiam anni tempore atque imbribus procubuerant, ut, si qui etiam in praesentia se occultassent, tamen his deducto exercitu rerum omnium inopia pereundum videretur. Ac saepe in eum locum ventum est tanto in omnis partis diviso equitatu, ut modo visum ab se Ambiorigem in fuga circumspicerent captivi nec plane etiam abisse ex conspectu contenderent, ut spe consequendi illata atque infinito labore suscepto, qui se summam ab Caesare gratiam inituros putarent, paene naturam studio vincerent, semperque paulum

ad summam felicitatem defuisse videretur, atque ille latebris aut saltibus se eriperet et noctu occultatus alias regiones partesque peteret non maiore equitum praesidio quam quattuor, quibus solis vitam suam committere audebat.

XLIV. Tali modo vastatis regionibus exercitum Caesar duarum cohortium damno Durocortorum Remorum reducit, concilioque in eum locum Galliae indicto de coniuratione Senonum et Carnutum quaestionem habere instituit; et de Accone, qui princeps eius consilii fuerat, graviore sententia pronuntiata more maiorum supplicium sumpsit. Nonnulli iudicium veriti profugerunt. Quibus cum aqua atque igni interdixisset, duas legiones ad fines Treverorum, duas in Lingonibus, sex reliquas in Senonum finibus Agedinci in hibernis collocavit frumentoque exercitui proviso, ut instituerat, in Italiam ad conventus agendos profectus est.

COMMENTARIUS SEPTIMUS.

The Gauls plan a general uprising. First the Carnutes rebel; then the Arverni, with Vercingetorix as leader.

I. QUIETA Gallia, Caesar, ut constituerat, in Italiam ad conventus agendos proficiscitur. Ibi cognoscit de Clodii caede, senatusque consulto certior factus, ut omnes iuniores Italiae coniurarent, delectum tota provincia habere instituit. Eae res in Galliam Transalpinam celeriter perferuntur. Addunt ipsi et affingunt rumoribus Galli, quod res poscere videbatur, retineri urbano motu Caesarem neque in tantis dissensionibus ad exercitum venire posse. Hac impulsi occasione, qui iam ante se populi Romani imperio subiectos dolerent, liberius atque audacius de bello consilia inire incipiunt. Indictis inter se principes Galliae conciliis silvestribus ac remotis locis queruntur de Acconis morte; posse hunc casum ad ipsos recidere demonstrant; miserantur communem Galliae fortunam; omnibus pollicitationibus ac praemiis deposcunt, qui belli initium faciant et sui capitis periculo Galliam in libertatem vindicent. Imprimis rationem esse habendam dicunt, priusquam eorum clandestina consilia efferantur, ut Caesar ab exercitu intercludatur. Id esse facile, quod neque legiones audeant absente imperatore ex hibernis egredi, neque imperator sine praesidio ad legiones pervenire possit. Postremo in acie praestare interfici, quam non veterem belli gloriam libertatemque, quam a maioribus acceperint, recuperare.

II. His rebus agitatis profitentur Carnutes, se nullum periculum communis salutis causa recusare, principesque ex omnibus bellum facturos pollicentur et, quoniam in praesentia obsidibus cavere inter se non possint, ne res efferatur, ut iureiurando ac fide sanciatur, petunt, collatis militaribus signis, quo more eorum gravissima caerimonia continetur, ne facto

initio belli ab reliquis deserantur. Tum collaudatis Carnutibus, dato iureiurando ab omnibus, qui aderant, tempore eius rei constituto ab concilio disceditur.

III. Ubi ea dies venit, Carnutes Gutruato et Conconnetodumno ducibus, desperatis hominibus, Cenabum signo dato concurrunt civesque Romanos, qui negotiandi causa ibi constiterant, in his Gaium Fufium Citam, honestum equitem Romanum, qui rei frumentariae iussu Caesaris praeerat, interficiunt bonaque eorum diripiunt. Celeriter ad omnes Galliae civitates fama perfertur. Nam ubicumque maior atque illustrior incidit res, clamore per agros regionesque significant; hunc alii deinceps excipiunt et proximis tradunt, ut tum accidit. Nam quae Cenabi oriente sole gesta essent, ante primam confectam vigiliam in finibus Arvernorum audita sunt, quod spatium est milium passuum circiter CLX.

IV. Simili ratione ibi Vercingetorix, Celtilli filius, Arvernus, summae potentiae adulescens, cuius pater principatum Galliae totius obtinuerat et ob eam causam, quod regnum appetebat, ab civitate erat interfectus, convocatis suis clientibus facile incendit. Cognito eius consilio ad arma concurritur. Prohibetur ab Gobannitione, patruo suo, reliquisque principibus, qui hanc temptandam fortunam non existimabant, expellitur ex oppido Gergovia; non destitit tamen atque in agris habet delectum egentium ac perditorum. Hac coacta manu, quoscumque adit ex civitate, ad suam sententiam perducit; hortatur, ut communis libertatis causa arma capiant, magnisque coactis copiis adversarios suos, a quibus paulo ante erat eiectus, expellit ex civitate. Rex ab suis appellatur. Dimittit quoqueversus legationes; obtestatur, ut in fide maneant. Celeriter sibi Senones, Parisios, Pictones, Cadurcos, Turonos, Aulercos, Lemovices, Andos reliquosque omnes, qui Oceanum attingunt, adiungit; omnium consensu ad eum defertur imperium. Qua oblata potestate omnibus his civitatibus obsides imperat, certum numerum militum ad se celeriter adduci iubet, armorum quantum quaeque civitas domi quodque ante tempus efficiat, constituit; imprimis equitatui studet. Summae diligentiae summam imperii severitatem addit; magnitudine supplicii dubitantes cogit. Nam

maiore commisso delicto igne atque omnibus tormentis necat, leviore de causa auribus desectis aut singulis effossis oculis domum remittit, ut sint reliquis documento et magnitudine poenae perterreant alios.

V. His suppliciis celeriter coacto exercitu, Lucterium Cadurcum, summae hominem audaciae, cum parte copiarum in Rutenos mittit; ipse in Bituriges proficiscitur. Eius adventu Bituriges ad Aeduos, quorum erant in fide, legatos mittunt subsidium rogatum, quo facilius hostium copias sustinere possint. Aedui de consilio legatorum, quos Caesar ad exercitum reliquerat, copias equitatus peditatusque subsidio Biturigibus mittunt. Qui cum ad flumen Ligerim venissent, quod Bituriges ab Aeduis dividit, paucos dies ibi morati neque flumen transire ausi domum revertuntur legatisque nostris renuntiant, se Biturigum perfidiam veritos revertisse, quibus id consilii fuisse cognoverint, ut, si flumen transissent, una ex parte ipsi, altera Arverni se circumsisterent. Id eane de causa, quam legatis pronuntiarunt, an perfidia adducti fecerint, quod nihil nobis constat, non videtur pro certo esse proponendum. Bituriges eorum discessu statim cum Arvernis iunguntur.

Caesar joins his army, subdues the Arverni, and sets out to go to Gorgobina, which Vercingetorix had attacked.

VI. His rebus in Italiam Caesari nuntiatis, cum iam ille urbanas res virtute Gnaei Pompei commodiorem in statum pervenisse intellegeret, in Transalpinam Galliam profectus est. Eo cum venisset, magna difficultate afficiebatur, qua ratione ad exercitum pervenire posset. Nam si legiones in provinciam arcesseret, se absente in itinere proelio dimicaturas intellegebat; si ipse ad exercitum contenderet, ne iis quidem eo tempore, qui quieti viderentur, suam salutem recte committi videbat.

VII. Interim Lucterius Cadurcus in Rutenos missus eam civitatem Arvernis conciliat. Progressus in Nitiobroges et Gabalos ab utrisque obsides accipit et magna coacta manu in provinciam Narbonem versus eruptionem facere contendit. Qua re nuntiata Caesar omnibus consiliis antevertendum existimavit, ut Narbonem proficisceretur. Eo cum venisset,

timentes confirmat, praesidia in Rutenis provincialibus, Volcis Arecomicis, Tolosatibus circumque Narbonem, quae loca hostibus erant finitima, constituit, partem copiarum ex provincia supplementumque, quod ex Italia adduxerat, in Helvios, qui fines Arvernorum contingunt, convenire iubet.

VIII. His rebus comparatis represso iam Lucterio et remoto, quod intrare intra praesidia periculosum putabat, in Helvios proficiscitur. Etsi mons Cebenna, qui Arvernos ab Helviis discludit, durissimo tempore anni altissima nive iter impediebat, tamen discussa nive sex in altitudinem pedum atque ita viis patefactis summo militum sudore ad fines Arvernorum pervenit. Quibus oppressis inopinantibus, quod se Cebenna ut muro munitos existimabant, ac ne singulari quidem umquam homini eo tempore anni semitae patuerant, equitibus imperat, ut, quam latissime possint, vagentur et quam maximum hostibus terrorem inferant. Celeriter haec fama ac nuntiis ad Vercingetorigem perferuntur; quem perterriti omnes Arverni circumsistunt atque obsecrant, ut suis fortunis consulat neu se ab hostibus diripi patiatur, praesertim cum videat omne ad se bellum translatum. Quorum ille precibus permotus castra ex Biturigibus movet in Arvernos versus.

IX. At Caesar biduum in his locis moratus, quod haec de Vercingetorige usu ventura opinione praeceperat, per causam supplementi equitatusque cogendi ab exercitu discedit, Brutum adulescentem his copiis praeficit; hunc monet, ut in omnis partes equites quam latissime pervagentur: daturum se operam, ne longius triduo ab castris absit. His constitutis rebus suis inopinantibus, quam maximis potest itineribus, Viennam pervenit. Ibi nanctus recentem equitatum, quem multis ante diebus eo praemiserat, neque diurno neque nocturno itinere intermisso per fines Aeduorum in Lingones contendit, ubi duae legiones hiemabant, ut, si quid etiam de sua salute ab Aeduis iniretur consilii, celeritate praecurreret. Eo cum pervenisset, ad reliquas legiones mittit priusque omnes in unum locum cogit, quam de eius adventu Arvernis nuntiari posset. Hac re cognita Vercingetorix rursus in Bituriges exercitum reducit atque inde profectus Gorgobinam, Boiorum

oppidum, quos ibi Helvetico proelio victos Caesar collocaverat Aeduisque attribuerat, oppugnare instituit.

X. Magnam haec res Caesari difficultatem ad consilium capiendum afferebat, si reliquam partem hiemis uno in loco legiones contineret, ne stipendiariis Aeduorum expugnatis cuncta Gallia deficeret, quod nullum amicis in eo praesidium videretur positum esse; si maturius ex hibernis educeret, ne ab re frumentaria duris subvectionibus laboraret. Praestare visum est tamen omnis difficultates perpeti, quam tanta contumelia accepta omnium suorum voluntates alienare. Itaque cohortatus Aeduos de supportando commeatu praemittit ad Boios, qui de suo adventu doceant hortenturque, ut in fide maneant atque hostium impetum magno animo sustineant. Duabus Agedinci legionibus atque impedimentis totius exercitus relictis ad Boios proficiscitur.

Caesar marches toward Avaricum, taking three cities on the way. The Bituriges burn all their towns except Avaricum.

XI. Altero die cum ad oppidum Senonum Vellaunodunum venisset, ne quem post se hostem relinqueret, quo expeditiore re frumentaria uteretur, oppugnare instituit idque biduo circumvallavit; tertio die missis ex oppido legatis de deditione, arma conferri, iumenta produci, sexcentos obsides dari iubet. Ea qui conficeret, C. Trebonium legatum relinquit, ipse ut quam primum iter faceret. Cenabum Carnutum proficiscitur; qui, tum primum allato nuntio de oppugnatione Vellaunoduni, cum longius eam rem ductum iri existimarent, praesidium Cenabi tuendi causa, quod eo mitterent, comparabant. Huc biduo pervenit. Castris ante oppidum positis, diei tempore exclusus in posterum oppugnationem differt, quaeque ad eam rem usui sint, militibus imperat et, quod oppidum Cenabum pons fluminis Ligeris continebat, veritus, ne nocte ex oppido profugerent, duas legiones in armis excubare iubet. Cenabenses paulo ante mediam noctem silentio ex oppido egressi flumen transire coeperunt. Qua re per exploratores nuntiata, Caesar legiones, quas expeditas esse iusserat, portis incensis intromittit atque oppido potitur perpaucis ex hostium numero desideratis, quin cuncti caperentur, quod pontis atque itine-

rum angustiae multitudinis fugam intercluserant. Oppidum diripit atque incendit, praedam militibus donat, exercitum Ligerem traducit atque in Biturigum fines pervenit.

XII. Vercingetorix, ubi de Caesaris adventu cognovit, oppugnatione destitit atque obviam Caesari proficiscitur. Ille oppidum Biturigum positum in via Noviodunum oppugnare instituerat. Quo ex oppido cum legati ad eum venissent oratum, ut sibi ignosceret suaeque vitae consuleret, ut celeritate reliquas res conficeret, qua pleraque erat consecutus, arma conferri, equos produci, obsides dari iubet. Parte iam obsidum tradita, cum reliqua administrarentur, centurionibus et paucis militibus intromissis, qui arma iumentaque conquirerent, equitatus hostium procul visus est, qui agmen Vercingetorigis antecesserat. Quem simulatque oppidani conspexerunt atque in spem auxilii venerunt, clamore sublato arma capere, portas claudere, murum complere coeperunt. Centuriones in oppido, cum ex significatione Gallorum novi aliquid ab iis iniri consilii intellexissent, gladiis destrictis portas occupaverunt suosque omnes incolumes receperunt.

XIII. Caesar ex castris equitatum educi iubet, proelium equestre committit; laborantibus iam suis Germanos equites circiter cccc submittit, quos ab initio habere secum instituerat. Eorum impetum Galli sustinere non potuerunt atque in fugam coniecti multis amissis se ad agmen receperunt. Quibus profligatis rursus oppidani perterriti comprehensos eos, quorum opera plebem concitatam existimabant, ad Caesarem perduxerunt seseque ei dediderunt. Quibus rebus confectis Caesar ad oppidum Avaricum, quod erat maximum munitissimumque in finibus Biturigum atque agri fertilissima regione, profectus est, quod eo oppido recepto civitatem Biturigum se in potestatem redacturum confidebat.

XIV. Vercingetorix tot continuis incommodis Vellaunoduni, Cenabi, Novioduni acceptis suos ad concilium convocat. Docet, longe alia ratione esse bellum gerendum, atque antea gestum sit. Omnibus modis huic rei studendum, ut pabulatione et commeatu Romani prohibeantur. Id esse facile, quod equitatu ipsi abundent et quod anni tempore subleventur. Pabulum secari non posse; necessario dispersos

hostes ex aedificiis petere: hos omnes cotidie ab equitibus deleri posse. Praeterea salutis causa rei familiaris commoda neglegenda: vicos atque aedificia incendi oportere hoc spatio ab via quoqueversus, quo pabulandi causa adire posse videantur. Harum ipsis rerum copiam suppetere, quod, quorum in finibus bellum geratur, eorum opibus subleventur; Romanos aut inopiam non laturos aut magno periculo longius ab castris processuros; neque interesse, ipsosne interficiant impedimentisne exuant, quibus amissis bellum geri non possit. Praeterea oppida incendi oportere, quae non munitione et loci natura ab omni sint periculo tuta, neu suis sint ad detrectandam militiam receptacula neu Romanis proposita ad copiam commeatus praedamque tollendam. Haec si gravia aut acerba videantur, multo illa gravius aestimare, liberos, coniuges in servitutem abstrahi, ipsos interfici; quae sit necesse accidere victis.

XV. Omnium consensu hac sententia probata, uno die amplius XX urbes Biturigum incenduntur. Hoc idem in reliquis fit civitatibus. In omnibus partibus incendia conspiciuntur; quae etsi magno cum dolore omnes ferebant, tamen hoc sibi solatii proponebant, quod se prope explorata victoria celeriter amissa reciperaturos confidebant. Deliberatur de Avarico in communi concilio, incendi placeret an defendi. Procumbunt omnibus Gallis ad pedes Bituriges, ne pulcherrimam prope totius Galliae urbem, quae praesidio et ornamento sit civitati, suis manibus succendere cogerentur; facile se loci natura defensuros dicunt, quod, prope ex omnibus partibus flumine et palude circumdata, unum habeat et perangustum aditum. Datur petentibus venia, dissuadente primo Vercingetorige, post concedente et precibus ipsorum et misericordia vulgi. Defensores oppido idonei deliguntur.

Caesar, though harassed by Vercingetorix, besieges Avaricum. Vercingetorix being accused of treachery clears himself. Avaricum is taken by Caesar.

XVI. Vercingetorix minoribus Caesarem itineribus subsequitur et locum castris deligit paludibus silvisque munitum ab Avarico longe milia passuum XVI. Ibi per certos explora-

tores in singula diei tempora, quae ad Avaricum agerentur, cognoscebat et, quid fieri vellet, imperabat. Omnis nostras pabulationes frumentationesque observabat dispersosque, cum longius necessario procederent, adoriebatur magnoque incommodo afficiebat, etsi, quantum ratione provideri poterat, ab nostris occurrebatur, ut incertis temporibus diversisque itineribus iretur.

XVII. Castris ad eam partem oppidi positis Caesar, quae intermissa a flumine et a paludibus aditum, ut supra diximus, angustum habebat, aggerem apparare, vineas agere, turres duas constituere coepit; nam circumvallare loci natura prohibebat. De re frumentaria Boios atque Aeduos adhortari non destitit; quorum alteri, quod nullo studio agebant, non multum adiuvabant, alteri non magnis facultatibus, quod civitas erat exigua et infirma, celeriter, quod habuerunt, consumpserunt. Summa difficultate rei frumentariae affecto exercitu tenuitate Boiorum, indiligentia Aeduorum, incendiis aedificiorum, usque eo, ut complures dies frumento milites caruerint et pecore ex longinquioribus vicis adacto extremam famem sustentarent, nulla tamen vox est ab iis audita populi Romani maiestate et superioribus victoriis indigna. Quin etiam Caesar cum in opere singulas legiones appellaret et, si acerbius inopiam ferrent, se dimissurum oppugnationem diceret, universi ab eo, ne id faceret, petebant: sic se complures annos illo imperante meruisse, ut nullam ignominiam acciperent, nusquam incepta re discederent; hoc se ignominiae laturos loco, si inceptam oppugnationem reliquissent; praestare omnes perferre acerbitates, quam non civibus Romanis, qui Cenabi perfidia Gallorum interissent, parentarent. Haec eadem centurionibus tribunisque militum mandabant, ut per eos ad Caesarem deferrentur.

XVIII. Cum iam muro turres appropinquassent, ex captivis Caesar cognovit, Vercingetorigem consumpto pabulo castra movisse propius Avaricum atque ipsum cum equitatu expeditisque, qui inter equites proeliari consuessent, insidiarum causa eo profectum, quo nostros postero die pabulatum venturos arbitraretur. Quibus rebus cognitis media nocte silentio profectus ad hostium castra mane pervenit. Illi cele-

riter per exploratores adventu Caesaris cognito carros impedimentaque sua in artiores silvas abdiderunt, copias omnis in loco edito atque aperto instruxerunt. Qua re nuntiata Caesar celeriter sarcinas conferri arma expediri iussit.

XIX. Collis erat leniter ab infimo acclivis. Hunc ex omnibus fere partibus palus difficilis atque impedita cingebat non latior pedibus quinquaginta. Hoc se colle interruptis pontibus Galli fiducia loci continebant generatimque distributi in civitates omnia vada ac saltus eius paludis obtinebant, sic animo parati, ut, si eam paludem Romani perrumpere conarentur, haesitantes premerent ex loco superiore, ut, qui propinquitatem loci videret, paratos prope aequo Marte ad dimicandum existimaret, qui iniquitatem condicionis perspiceret, inani simulatione sese ostentare cognosceret. Indignantes milites Caesar, quod conspectum suum hostes perferre possent tantulo spatio interiecto, et signum proelii exposcentes edocet, quanto detrimento et quot virorum fortium morte necesse sit constare victoriam; quos cum sic animo paratos videat, ut nullum pro sua laude periculum recusent, summae se iniquitatis condemnari debere, nisi eorum vitam sua salute habeat cariorem. Sic milites consolatus eodem die reducit in castra reliquaque, quae ad oppugnationem pertinebant oppidi, administrare instituit.

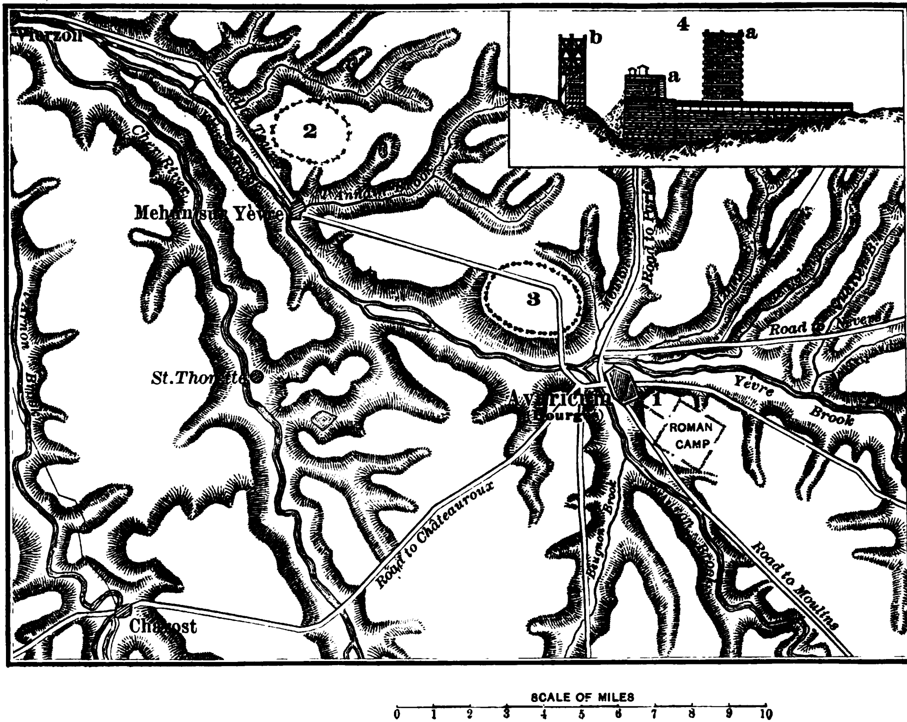
XX. Vercingetorix, cum ad suos redisset, proditionis insimulatus, quod castra propius Romanos movisset, quod cum omni equitatu discessisset, quod sine imperio tantas copias reliquisset, quod eius discessu Romani tanta opportunitate et celeritate venissent; non haec omnia fortuito aut sine consilio accidere potuisse; regnum illum Galliae malle Caesaris concessu quam ipsorum habere beneficio: tali modo accusatus ad haec respondit: Quod castra movisset, factum inopia pabuli etiam ipsis hortantibus; quod propius Romanos accessisset, persuasum loci opportunitate, qui se ipse ut munitione defenderet; equitum vero operam neque in loco palustri desiderari debuisse et illic fuisse utilem, quo sint profecti. Summam imperii se consulto nulli discedentem tradidisse, ne is multitudinis studio ad dimicandum impelleretur; cui rei propter animi mollitiem studere omnes videret, quod diutius

AVARICUM.

To face p. 178.

Lib. VII. c. 17. sqq.

PLAN X.



EXPLANATION.

1. The Roman Agger, prolonged toward Avaricum.

2. The first position of Vercingetorix.

3. The second position of Vercingetorix.

4. Cross-section of the Roman Agger.

a. a. Roman Towers.

b. Wall of Avaricum, surmounted by Towers.

laborem ferre non possent. Romani si casu intervenerint, fortunae, si alicuius indicio vocati, huic habendam gratiam, quod et paucitatem eorum ex loco superiore cognoscere et virtutem despicere potuerint, qui dimicare non ausi turpiter se in castra receperint. Imperium se ab Caesare per proditionem nullum desiderare, quod habere victoria posset, quae iam esset sibi atque omnibus Gallis explorata; quin etiam ipsis remittere, si sibi magis honorem tribuere quam ab se salutem accipere videantur. 'Haec ut intellegatis,' inquit, 'a me sincere pronuntiari, audite Romanos milites.' Producit servos, quos in pabulatione paucis ante diebus exceperat et fame vinculisque excruciaverat. Hi iam ante edocti, quae interrogati pronuntiarent, milites se esse legionarios dicunt; fame et inopia adductos clam ex castris exisse, si quid frumenti aut pecoris in agris reperire possent; simili omnem exercitum inopia premi, nec iam vires sufficere cuiusquam nec ferre operis laborem posse; itaque statuisse imperatorem, si nihil in oppugnatione oppidi profecissent, triduo exercitum deducere. 'Haec,' inquit, 'a me,' Vercingetorix, 'beneficia habetis, quem proditionis insimulatis; cuius opera sine vestro sanguine tantum exercitum victorem fame consumptum videtis; quem turpiter se ex fuga recipientem ne qua civitas suis finibus recipiat, a me provisum est.'

XXI. Conclamat omnis multitudo et suo more armis concrepat, quod facere in eo consuerunt, cuius orationem approbant; summum esse Vercingetorigem ducem, nec de eius fide dubitandum, nec maiore ratione bellum administrari posse. Statuunt, ut decem milia hominum delecta ex omnibus copiis in oppidum mittantur, nec solis Biturigibus communem salutem committendam censent, quod penes eos, si id oppidum retinuissent, summam victoriae constare intellegebant.

XXII. Singulari militum nostrorum virtuti consilia cuiusquemodi Gallorum occurrebant, ut est summae genus sollertiae atque ad omnia imitanda et efficienda, quae ab quoque traduntur, aptissimum. Nam et laqueis falces avertebant, quas, cum destinaverant, tormentis introrsus reducebant, et aggerem cuniculis subtrahebant, eo scientius, quod apud eos magnae sunt ferrariae atque omne genus cuniculorum notum

atque usitatum est. Totum autem murum ex omni parte turribus contabulaverant atque has coriis intexerant. Tum crebris diurnis nocturnisque eruptionibus aut aggeri ignem inferebant aut milites occupatos in opere adoriebantur et nostrarum turrium altitudinem, quantum has cotidianus agger expresserat, commissis suarum turrium malis adaequabant et apertos cuniculos praeusta et praeacuta materia et pice fervefacta et maximi ponderis saxis morabantur moenibusque appropinquare prohibebant.

XXIII. Muri autem omnes Gallici hac fere forma sunt. Trabes directae perpetuae in longitudinem paribus intervallis, distantes inter se binos pedes, in solo collocantur. Hae revinciuntur introrsus et multo aggere vestiuntur; ea autem, quae diximus, intervalla grandibus in fronte saxis effarciuntur. His collocatis et coagmentatis alius insuper ordo additur, ut idem illud intervallum servetur neque inter se contingant trabes, sed paribus intermissae spatiis singulae singulis saxis interiectis arte contineantur. Sic deinceps omne opus contexitur, dum iusta muri altitudo expleatur. Hoc cum in speciem varietatemque opus deforme non est alternis trabibus ac saxis, quae rectis lineis suos ordines servant, tum ad utilitatem et defensionem urbium summam habet opportunitatem, quod et ab incendio lapis et ab ariete materia defendit, quae perpetuis trabibus pedes quadragenos plerumque introrsus revincta neque perrumpi neque distrahi potest.

XXIV. His tot rebus impedita oppugnatione, milites, cum toto tempore frigore et assiduis imbribus tardarentur, tamen continenti labore omnia haec superaverunt et diebus XXV aggerem latum pedes CCCXXX, altum pedes LXXX exstruxerunt. Cum is murum hostium paene contingeret et Caesar ad opus consuetudine excubaret militesque hortaretur, ne quod omnino tempus ab opere intermitteretur, paulo ante tertiam vigiliam est animadversum, fumare aggerem, quem cuniculo hostes succenderant, eodemque tempore toto muro clamore sublato duabus portis ab utroque latere turrium eruptio fiebat. Alii faces atque aridam materiem de muro in aggerem eminus iaciebant, alii picem reliquasque res, quibus ignis excitari potest, fundebant, ut, quo primum curreretur aut cui rei

ferretur auxilium, vix ratio iniri posset. Tamen, quod instituto Caesaris semper duae legiones pro castris excubabant pluresque partitis temporibus erant in opere, celeriter factum est, ut alii eruptionibus resisterent, alii turres reducerent aggeremque interscinderent, omnis vero ex castris multitudo ad restinguendum concurreret.

XXV. Cum in omnibus locis consumpta iam reliqua parte noctis pugnaretur semperque hostibus spes victoriae redintegraretur, eo magis, quod deustos pluteos turrium videbant nec facile adire apertos ad auxiliandum animadvertebant, semperque ipsi recentes defessis succederent omnemque Galliae salutem in illo vestigio temporis positam arbitrarentur, accidit inspectantibus nobis, quod dignum memoria visum praetereundum non existimavimus. Quidam ante portam oppidi Gallus per manus sevi ac picis traditas glebas in ignem e regione turris proiciebat; scorpione ab latere dextro traiectus exanimatusque concidit. Hunc ex proximis unus iacentem transgressus eodem illo munere fungebatur; eadem ratione ictu scorpionis exanimato alteri successit tertius et tertio quartus, nec prius ille est a propugnatoribus vacuus relictus locus, quam restincto aggere atque omni ex parte summotis hostibus finis est pugnandi factus.

XXVI. Omnia experti Galli, quod res nulla successerat, postero die consilium ceperunt ex oppido profugere, hortante et iubente Vercingetorige. Id silentio noctis conati non magna iactura suorum sese effecturos sperabant, propterea quod neque longe ab oppido castra Vercingetorigis aberant, et palus, quae perpetua intercedebat, Romanos ad insequendum tardabat. Iamque hoc facere noctu apparabant, cum matresfamiliae repente in publicum procurrerunt flentesque proiectae ad pedes suorum omnibus precibus petierunt, ne se et communes liberos hostibus ad supplicium dederent, quos ad capiendam fugam naturae et virium infirmitas impediret. Ubi eos in sententia perstare viderunt, quod plerumque in summo periculo timor misericordiam non recipit, conclamare et significare de fuga Romanis coeperunt. Quo timore perterriti Galli, ne ab equitatu Romanorum viae praeoccuparentur, consilio destiterunt.

XXVII. Postero die Caesar promota turri directisque operibus, quae facere instituerat, magno coorto imbre, non inutilem hanc ad capiendum consilium tempestatem arbitratus est, quod paulo incautius custodias in muro dispositas videbat, suosque languidius in opere versari iussit et, quid fieri vellet, ostendit. Legionibusque inter castra vineasque in occulto expeditis, cohortatus, ut aliquando pro tantis laboribus fructum victoriae perciperent, iis, qui primi murum ascendissent, praemia proposuit militibusque signum dedit. Illi subito ex omnibus partibus evolaverunt murumque celeriter compleverunt.

XXVIII. Hostes re nova perterriti, muro turribusque deiecti in foro ac locis patentioribus cuneatim constituerunt, hoc animo, ut, si qua ex parte obviam veniretur, acie instructa depugnarent. Ubi neminem in aequum locum sese demittere, sed toto undique muro circumfundi viderunt, veriti, ne omnino spes fugae tolleretur, abiectis armis ultimas oppidi partes continenti impetu petiverunt, parsque ibi, cum angusto exitu portarum se ipsi premerent, a militibus, pars iam egressa portis ab equitibus est interfecta. Nec fuit quisquam, qui praedae studeret. Sic et Cenabi caede et labore operis incitati non aetate confectis, non mulieribus, non infantibus pepercerunt. Denique omni ex numero, qui fuit circiter milium XL, vix DCCC, qui primo clamore audito se ex oppido eiecerunt, incolumes ad Vercingetorigem pervenerunt. Quos ille multa iam nocte silentio ex fuga excepit, veritus, ne qua in castris ex eorum concursu et misericordia vulgi seditio oreretur, ut, procul in via dispositis familiaribus suis principibusque civitatum, disparandos deducendosque ad suos curaret, quae cuique civitati pars castrorum ab initio obvenerat.

Vercingetorix continues the war. Caesar puts down an uprising among the Aedui.

XXIX. Postero die concilio convocato consolatus cohortatusque est, ne se admodum animo demitterent, ne perturbarentur incommodo. Non virtute neque in acie vicisse Romanos, sed artificio quodam et scientia oppugnationis, cuius rei fuerint ipsi imperiti. Errare, si qui in bello omnis secundos

rerum proventus exspectent. Sibi numquam placuisse Avaricum defendi, cuius rei testes ipsos haberet; sed factum imprudentia Biturigum et nimia obsequentia reliquorum, uti hoc incommodum acciperetur. Id tamen se celeriter maioribus commodis sanaturum. Nam quae ab reliquis Gallis civitates dissentirent, has sua diligentia adiuncturum atque unum consilium totius Galliae effecturum, cuius consensui ne orbis quidem terrarum possit obsistere; idque se prope iam effectum habere. Interea aequum esse ab iis communis salutis causa impetrari, ut castra munire instituerent, quo facilius repentinos hostium impetus sustinerent.

XXX. Fuit haec oratio non ingrata Gallis, et maxime, quod ipse animo non defecerat tanto accepto incommodo neque se in occultum abdiderat et conspectum multitudinis fugerat; plusque animo providere et praesentire existimabatur, quod re integra primo incendendum Avaricum post deserendum censuerat. Itaque ut reliquorum imperatorum res adversae auctoritatem minuunt, sic huius ex contrario dignitas incommodo accepto in dies augebatur. Simul in spem veniebant eius affirmatione de reliquis adiungendis civitatibus; primumque eo tempore Galli castra munire instituerunt, et sic sunt animo consternati homines insueti laboris, ut omnia, quae imperarentur, sibi patienda existimarent.

XXXI. Nec minus, quam est pollicitus, Vercingetorix animo laborabat, ut reliquas civitates adiungeret, atque eas donis pollicitationibusque alliciebat. Huic rei idoneos homines deligebat, quorum quisque aut oratione subdola aut amicitia facillime capere posset. Qui Avarico expugnato refugerant, armandos vestiendosque curat; simul, ut deminutae copiae redintegrarentur, imperat certum numerum militum civitatibus, quem et quam ante diem in castra adduci velit, sagittariosque omnes, quorum erat permagnus numerus in Gallia, conquiri et ad se mitti iubet. His rebus celeriter id, quod Avarici deperierat, expletur. Interim Teutomatus, Olloviconis filius, rex Nitiobrogum, cuius pater ab senatu nostro amicus erat appellatus, cum magno equitum suorum numero et quos ex Aquitania conduxerat ad eum pervenit.

XXXII. Caesar Avarici complures dies commoratus summamque ibi copiam frumenti et reliqui commeatus nanctus exercitum ex labore atque inopia refecit. Iam prope hieme confecta, cum ipso anni tempore ad gerendum bellum vocaretur et ad hostem proficisci constituisset, sive eum ex paludibus silvisque elicere sive obsidione premere posset, legati ad eum principes Aeduorum veniunt oratum, ut maxime necessario tempore civitati subveniat: summo esse in periculo rem, quod, cum singuli magistratus antiquitus creari atque regiam potestatem annum obtinere consuessent, duo magistratum gerant et se uterque eorum legibus creatum esse dicat. Horum esse alterum Convictolitavem, florentem et illustrem adulescentem, alterum Cotum, antiquissima familia natum atque ipsum hominem summae potentiae et magnae cognationis, cuius frater Valetiacus proximo anno eundem magistratum gesserit. Civitatem esse omnem in armis; divisum populum, suas cuiusque eorum clientelas. Quod si diutius alatur controversia, fore, uti pars cum parte civitatis confligat; id ne accidat, positum in eius diligentia atque auctoritate.

XXXIII. Caesar, etsi a bello atque hoste discedere detrimentosum esse existimabat, tamen non ignorans, quanta ex dissensionibus incommoda oriri consuessent, ne tanta et tam coniuncta populo Romano civitas, quam ipse semper aluisset omnibusque rebus ornasset, ad vim atque arma descenderet, atque ea pars, quae minus confideret, auxilia a Vercingetorige arcesseret, huic rei praevertendum existimavit et, quod legibus Aeduorum iis, qui summum magistratum obtinerent, excedere ex finibus non liceret, ne quid de iure aut de legibus eorum deminuisse videretur, ipse in Aeduos proficisci statuit senatumque omnem et quos inter controversia esset ad se Decetiam evocavit. Cum prope omnis civitas eo convenisset, docereturque, paucis clam convocatis alio loco, alio tempore, atque oportuerit, fratrem a fratre renuntiatum, cum leges duo ex una familia vivo utroque non solum magistratus creari vetarent, sed etiam in senatu esse prohiberent, Cotum imperium deponere coëgit, Convictolitavem, qui per sacerdotes more civitatis intermissis magistratibus esset creatus, potestatem obtinere iussit.

Caesar sends a part of his army north, with the rest encamps before Gergovia; he settles another disturbance among the Aedui.

XXXIV. Hoc decreto interposito cohortatus Aeduos, ut controversiarum ac dissensionis obliviscerentur atque omnibus omissis rebus huic bello servirent eaque, quae meruissent, praemia ab se devicta Gallia exspectarent equitatumque omnem et peditum milia decem sibi celeriter mitterent, quae in praesidiis rei frumentariae causa disponeret, exercitum in duas partes divisit: quattuor legiones in Senones Parisiosque Labieno ducendas dedit, sex ipse in Arvernos ad oppidum Gergoviam secundum flumen Elaver duxit; equitatus partem illi attribuit, partem sibi reliquit. Qua re cognita Vercingetorix omnibus interruptis eius fluminis pontibus ab altera fluminis parte iter facere coepit.

XXXV. Cum uterque utrique esset exercitus in conspectu fereque e regione castris castra poneret, dispositis exploratoribus, necubi effecto ponte Romani copias traducerent, erat in magnis Caesaris difficultatibus res, ne maiorem aestatis partem flumine impediretur, quod non fere ante autumnum Elaver vado transiri solet. Itaque, ne id accideret, silvestri loco castris positis e regione unius eorum pontium, quos Vercingetorix rescindendos curaverat, postero die cum duabus legionibus in occulto restitit; reliquas copias cum omnibus impedimentis, ut consueverat, misit, captis quibusdam cohortibus, uti numerus legionum constare videretur. His, quam longissime possent, egredi iussis, cum iam ex diei tempore coniecturam ceperat, in castra perventum, isdem sublicis, quarum pars inferior integra remanebat, pontem reficere coepit. Celeriter effecto opere legionibusque traductis et loco castris idoneo delecto reliquas copias revocavit. Vercingetorix re cognita, ne contra suam voluntatem dimicare cogeretur, magnis itineribus antecessit.

XXXVI. Caesar ex eo loco quintis castris Gergoviam pervenit equestrique eo die proelio levi facto, perspecto urbis situ, quae posita in altissimo monte omnis aditus difficiles habebat, de expugnatione desperavit, de obsessione non prius

agendum constituit, quam rem frumentariam expedisset. At Vercingetorix castris prope oppidum positis mediocribus circum se intervallis separatim singularum civitatium copias collocaverat, atque omnibus eius iugi collibus occupatis, qua despici poterat, horribilem speciem praebebat principesque earum civitatium, quos sibi ad concilium capiendum delegerat, prima luce cotidie ad se convenire iubebat, seu quid communicandum, seu quid administrandum videretur, neque ullum fere diem intermittebat, quin equestri proelio interiectis sagittariis, quid in quoque esset animi ac virtutis suorum, perspiceret. Erat e regione oppidi collis sub ipsis radicibus montis egregie munitus atque ex omni parte circumcisus; quem si tenerent nostri, et aquae magna parte et pabulatione libera prohibituri hostes videbantur. Sed is locus praesidio ab his non nimis firmo tenebatur. Tamen silentio noctis Caesar ex castris egressus, priusquam subsidio ex oppido veniri posset, deiecto praesidio potitus loco, duas ibi legiones collocavit fossamque duplicem duodenum pedum a maioribus castris ad minora perduxit, ut tuto ab repentino hostium incursu etiam singuli commeare possent.

XXXVII. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Convictolitavis Aeduus, cui magistratum adiudicatum a Caesare demonstravimus, sollicitatus ab Arvernis pecunia cum quibusdam adulescentibus colloquitur; quorum erat princeps Litaviccus atque eius fratres, amplissima familia nati adulescentes. Cum his praemium communicat hortaturque, ut se liberos et imperio natos meminerint. Unam esse Aeduorum civitatem, quae certissimam Galliae victoriam detineat; eius auctoritate reliquas contineri; qua traducta locum consistendi Romanis in Gallia non fore. Esse nonnullo se Caesaris beneficio affectum, sic tamen, ut iustissimam apud eum causam obtinuerit; sed plus communi libertati tribuere. Cur enim potius Aedui de suo iure et de legibus ad Caesarem disceptatorem, quam Romani ad Aeduos veniant? Celeriter adulescentibus et oratione magistratus et praemio deductis, cum se vel principes eius consilii fore profiterentur, ratio perficiendi quaerebatur, quod civitatem temere ad suscipiendum bellum adduci posse non confidebant.

Placuit, ut Litaviccus decem illis milibus, quae Caesari ad bellum mitterentur, praeficeretur atque ea ducenda curaret, fratresque eius ad Caesarem praecurrerent. Reliqua qua ratione agi placeat, constituunt.

XXXVIII. Litaviccus accepto exercitu, cum milia passuum circiter xxx ab Gergovia abesset, convocatis subito militibus lacrimans, 'Quo proficiscimur,' inquit, 'milites? Omnis noster equitatus, omnis nobilitas interiit; principes civitatis, Eporedorix et Viridomarus, insimulati proditionis, ab Romanis indicta causa interfecti sunt. Haec ab ipsis cognoscite, qui ex ipsa caede fugerunt; nam ego, fratribus atque omnibus meis propinquis interfectis, dolore prohibeor, quae gesta sunt, pronuntiare.' Producuntur hi, quos ille edocuerat, quae dici vellet, atque eadem, quae Litaviccus pronuntiaverat, multitudini exponunt: equites Aeduorum interfectos, quod collocuti cum Arvernis dicerentur; ipsos se inter multitudinem militum occultasse atque ex media caede fugisse. Conclamant Aedui et Litaviccum obsecrant, ut sibi consulat. 'Quasi vero,' inquit ille, 'consilii sit res, ac non necesse sit nobis Gergoviam contendere et cum Arvernis nosmet coniungere. An dubitamus, quin nefario facinore admisso Romani iam ad nos interficiendos concurrant? Proinde, si quid in nobis animi est, persequamur eorum mortem, qui indignissime interierunt, atque hos latrones interficiamus.' Ostendit cives Romanos, qui eius praesidii fiducia una erant; magnum numerum frumenti commeatusque diripit, ipsos crudeliter excruciatos interficit. Nuntios tota civitate Aeduorum dimittit, eodem mendacio de caede equitum et principum permovet; hortatur, ut simili ratione, atque ipse fecerit, suas iniurias persequantur.

XXXIX. Eporedorix Aeduus, summo loco natus adulescens et summae domi potentiae, et una Viridomarus, pari aetate et gratia, sed genere dispari, quem Caesar ab Divitiaco sibi traditum ex humili loco ad summam dignitatem perduxerat, in equitum numero convenerant nominatim ab eo evocati. His erat inter se de principatu contentio, et in illa magistratuum controversia alter pro Convictolitavi, alter pro Coto summis opibus pugnaverant. Ex his Eporedorix cog-

nito Litavicci consilio media fere nocte rem ad Caesarem defert; orat, ne patiatur civitatem pravis adulescentium consiliis ab amicitia populi Romani deficere; quod futurum provideat, si se tot hominum milia cum hostibus coniunxerint, quorum salutem neque propinqui neglegere neque civitas levi momento aestimare posset.

XL. Magna affectus sollicitudine hoc nuntio Caesar, quod semper Aeduorum civitati praecipue indulserat, nulla interposita dubitatione legiones expeditas quattuor equitatumque omnem ex castris educit, nec fuit spatium tali tempore ad contrahenda castra, quod res posita in celeritate videbatur; Gaium Fabium legatum cum legionibus duabus castris praesidio relinquit. Fratres Litavicci cum comprehendi iussisset, paulo ante reperit ad hostes fugisse. Adhortatus milites, ne necessario tempore itineris labore permoveantur, cupidissimis omnibus progressus milia passuum xxv, agmen Aeduorum conspicatus, immisso equitatu iter eorum moratur atque impedit interdicitque omnibus, ne quemquam interficiant. Eporedorigem et Viridomarum, quos illi interfectos existimabant, inter equites versari suosque appellare iubet. His cognitis et Litavicci fraude perspecta Aedui manus tendere, deditionem significare et proiectis armis mortem deprecari incipiunt. Litaviccus cum suis clientibus, quibus more Gallorum nefas est etiam in extrema fortuna deserere patronos, Gergoviam profugit.

Meanwhile the Roman Camp before Gergovia is attacked. The Aedui revolt.

XLI. Caesar nuntiis ad civitatem Aeduorum missis, qui suo beneficio conservatos docerent, quos iure belli interficere potuisset, tribusque horis noctis exercitui ad quietem datis castra ad Gergoviam movit. Medio fere itinere equites a Fabio missi, quanto res in periculo fuerit, exponunt. Summis copiis castra oppugnata demonstrant, cum crebro integri defessis succederent nostrosque assiduo labore defatigarent, quibus propter magnitudinem castrorum perpetuo esset isdem in vallo permanendum. Multitudine sagittarum atque omnis generis telorum multos vulneratos; ad haec sustinenda

magno usui fuisse tormenta. Fabium discessu eorum duabus relictis portis obstruere ceteras pluteosque vallo addere et se in posterum diem similemque casum apparare. His rebus cognitis Caesar summo studio militum ante ortum solis in castra pervenit.

XLII. Dum haec ad Gergoviam geruntur, Aedui primis nuntiis ab Litavicco acceptis nullum sibi ad cognoscendum spatium relinquunt. Impellit alios avaritia, alios iracundia et temeritas quae maxime illi hominum generi est innata, ut levem auditionem habeant pro re comperta. Bona civium Romanorum diripiunt, caedes faciunt, in servitutem abstrahunt. Adiuvat rem proclinatam Convictolitavis plebemque ad furorem impellit, ut facinore admisso ad sanitatem reverti pudeat. Marcum Aristium tribunum militum iter ad legionem facientem fide data ex oppido Cabillono educunt; idem facere cogunt eos, qui negotiandi causa ibi constiterant. Hos continuo in itinere adorti omnibus impedimentis exuunt; repugnantes diem noctemque obsident; multis utrimque interfectis maiorem multitudinem armatorum concitant.

XLIII. Interim nuntio allato, omnes eorum milites in potestate Caesaris teneri, concurrunt ad Aristium, nihil publico factum consilio demonstrant; quaestionem de bonis direptis decernunt, Litavicci fratrumque bona publicant, legatos ad Caesarem sui purgandi gratia mittunt. Haec faciunt reciperandorum suorum causa; sed contaminati facinore et capti compendio ex direptis bonis, quod ea res ad multos pertinebat, et timore poenae exterriti consilia clam de bello inire incipiunt civitatesque reliquas legationibus sollicitant. Quae tametsi Caesar intellegebat, tamen, quam mitissime potest, legatos appellat: nihil se propter inscientiam levitatemque vulgi gravius de civitate iudicare neque de sua in Aeduos benevolentia deminuere. Ipse maiorem Galliae motum exspectans, ne ab omnibus civitatibus circumsisteretur, consilia inibat, quemadmodum a Gergovia discederet ac rursus omnem exercitum contraheret, ne profectio nata ab timore defectionis similis fugae videretur.

Caesar storms Gergovia, unsuccessfully; he addresses his army and raises the siege, moves his camp among the Aedui.

XLIV. Haec cogitanti accidere visa est facultas bene rei gerendae. Nam cum in minora castra operis perspiciendi causa venisset, animadvertit collem, qui ab hostibus tenebatur, nudatum hominibus, qui superioribus diebus vix prae multitudine cerni poterat. Admiratus quaerit ex perfugis causam, quorum magnus ad eum cotidie numerus confluebat. Constabat inter omnes, quod iam ipse Caesar per exploratores cognoverat, dorsum esse eius iugi prope aequum, sed hunc silvestrem et angustum, qua esset aditus ad alteram partem oppidi; vehementer huic illos loco timere, nec iam aliter sentire, uno colle ab Romanis occupato, si alterum amisissent, quin paene circumvallati atque omni exitu et pabulatione interclusi viderentur: ad hunc muniendum omnes a Vercingetorige evocatos.

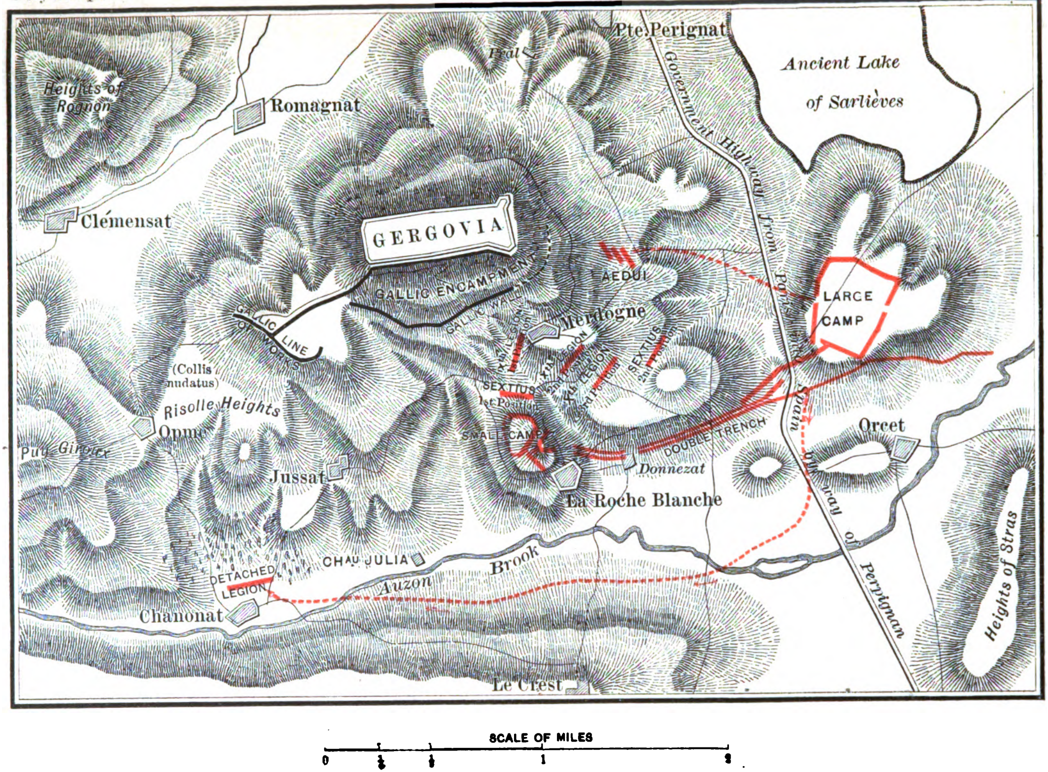
XLV. Hac re cognita Caesar mittit complures equitum turmas; eis de media nocte imperat, ut paulo tumultuosius omnibus locis vagarentur. Prima luce magnum numerum impedimentorum ex castris mulorumque produci deque his stramenta detrahi mulionesque cum cassidibus equitum specie ac simulatione collibus circumvehi iubet. His paucos addit equites, qui latius ostentationis causa vagarentur. Longo circuitu easdem omnes iubet petere regiones. Haec procul ex oppido videbantur, ut erat a Gergovia despectus in castra, neque tanto spatio, certi quid esset, explorari poterat. Legionem unam eodem iugo mittit et paulum progressam inferiore constituit loco silvisque occultat. Augetur Gallis suspicio atque omnes illo munitionum copiae traducuntur. Vacua castra hostium Caesar conspicatus tectis insignibus suorum occultatisque signis militaribus raros milites, ne ex oppido animadverterentur, ex maioribus castris in minora traducit legatisque, quos singulis legionibus praefecerat, quid fieri velit, ostendit; imprimis monet, ut contineant milites, ne studio pugnandi aut spe praedae longius progrediantur; quid iniquitas loci habeat incommodi, proponit; hoc una

To face p. 190.

GERGOVIA.

Lib. VII. c. 36. sqq.

PLAN XI.



celeritate posse mutari; occasionis esse rem, non proelii. His rebus expositis signum dat et ab dextra parte alio ascensu eodem tempore Aeduos mittit.

XLVI. Oppidi murus ab planitie atque initio ascensus recta regione, si nullus amfractus intercederet, mille ducentos passus aberat; quicquid huc circuitus ad molliendum clivum accesserat, id spatium itineris augebat. A medio fere colle in longitudinem, ut natura montis ferebat, ex grandibus saxis sex pedum murum, qui nostrorum impetum tardaret, praeduxerant Galli atque inferiore omni spatio vacuo relicto superiorem partem collis usque ad murum oppidi densissimis castris compleverant. Milites dato signo celeriter ad munitionem perveniunt eamque transgressi trinis castris potiuntur; ac tanta fuit in castris capiendis celeritas, ut Teutomatus, rex Nitiobrogum, subito in tabernaculo oppressus, ut meridie conquieverat, superiore corporis parte nudata, vulnerato equo vix se ex manibus praedantium militum eriperet.

XLVII. Consecutus id, quod animo proposuerat, Caesar receptui cani iussit legionisque decimae, quacum erat, continuo signa constituit. At reliquarum legionum milites non exaudito tubae sono, quod satis magna valles intercedebat, tamen ab tribunis militum legatisque, ut erat a Caesare praeceptum, retinebantur; sed elati spe celeris victoriae et hostium fuga et superiorum temporum secundis proeliis nihil adeo arduum sibi esse existimaverunt, quod non virtute consequi possent, neque finem prius sequendi fecerunt, quam muro oppidi portisque appropinquarunt. Tum vero ex omnibus urbis partibus orto clamore, qui longius aberant, repentino tumultu perterriti, cum hostem intra portas esse existimarent, sese ex oppido eiecerunt. Matresfamiliae de muro vestem argentumque iactabant et pectore nudo prominentes passis manibus obtestabantur Romanos, ut sibi parcerent neu, sicut Avarici fecissent, ne a mulieribus quidem atque infantibus abstinerent; nonnullae de muris per manus demissae sese militibus tradebant. L. Fabius, centurio legionis VIII, quem inter suos eo die dixisse constabat, excitari se Avaricensibus praemiis neque commissurum, ut prius quisquam murum ascenderet, tres suos nactus manipulares atque ab iis suble-

vatus murum ascendit; hos ipse rursus singulos exceptans in murum extulit.

XLVIII. Interim ii, qui ad alteram partem oppidi, ut supra demonstravimus, munitionis causa convenerant, primo exaudito clamore, inde etiam crebris nuntiis incitati, oppidum a Romanis teneri, praemissis equitibus magno concursu eo contenderunt. Eorum ut quisque primus venerat, sub muro consistebat suorumque pugnantium numerum augebat. Quorum cum magna multitudo convenisset, matresfamiliae, quae paulo ante Romanis de muro manus tendebant, suos obtestari et more Gallico passum capillum ostentare liberosque in conspectum proferre coeperunt. Erat Romanis nec loco nec numero aequa contentio; simul et cursu et spatio pugnae fatigati non facile recentes atque integros sustinebant.

XLIX. Caesar cum iniquo loco pugnari hostiumque augeri copias videret, praemetuens suis ad Titum Sextium legatum, quem minoribus castris praesidio reliquerat, misit, ut cohortes ex castris celeriter educeret et sub infimo colle ab dextro latere hostium constitueret, ut, si nostros loco depulsos vidisset, quo minus libere hostes insequerentur, terreret. Ipse paulum ex eo loco cum legione progressus, ubi constiterat, eventum pugnae exspectabat.

L. Cum acerrime comminus pugnaretur, hostes loco et numero, nostri virtute confiderent, subito sunt Aedui visi ab latere nostris aperto, quos Caesar ab dextra parte alio ascensu manus distinendae causa miserat. Hi similitudine armorum vehementer nostros perterruerunt, ac tametsi dextris humeris exsertis animadvertebantur, quod insigne pacatorum esse consuerat, tamen id ipsum sui fallendi causa milites ab hostibus factum existimabant. Eodem tempore Lucius Fabius centurio, quique una murum ascenderant, circumventi atque interfecti muro praecipitabantur. Marcus Petronius, eiusdem legionis centurio, cum portas excidere conatus esset, a multitudine oppressus ac sibi desperans, multis iam vulneribus acceptis, manipularibus suis, qui illum secuti erant, 'Quoniam,' inquit, 'me una vobiscum servare non possum, vestrae quidem certe vitae prospiciam, quos cupiditate gloriae adductus in periculum deduxi. Vos data facultate vobis con-

sulite.' Simul in medios hostis irrupit duobusque interfectis reliquos a porta paulum summovit. Conantibus auxiliari suis 'Frustra,' inquit, 'meae vitae subvenire conamini, quem iam sanguis viresque deficiunt. Proinde abite, dum est facultas, vosque ad legionem recipite.' Ita pugnans post paulum concidit ac suis saluti fuit.

LI. Nostri, cum undique premerentur, XLVI centurionibus amissis deiecti sunt loco. Sed intolerantius Gallos insequentes legio decima tardavit, quae pro subsidio paulo aequiore loco constiterat. Hanc rursus XIII legionis cohortes exceperunt, quae ex castris minoribus eductae cum Tito Sextio legato ceperant locum superiorem. Legiones, ubi primum planitiem attigerunt, infestis contra hostes signis constiterunt. Vercingetorix ab radicibus collis suos intra munitiones reduxit. Eo die milites sunt paulo minus septingenti desiderati.

LII. Postero die Caesar contione advocata temeritatem cupiditatemque militum reprehendit, quod sibi ipsi iudicavissent, quo procedendum aut quid agendum videretur, neque signo recipiendi dato constitissent neque ab tribunis militum legatisque retineri potuissent. Exposuit, quid iniquitas loci posset, quid ipse ad Avaricum sensisset, cum sine duce et sine equitatu deprehensis hostibus exploratam victoriam dimisisset, ne parvum modo detrimentum in contentione propter iniquitatem loci accideret. Quanto opere eorum animi magnitudinem admiraretur, quos non castrorum munitiones, non altitudo montis, non murus oppidi tardare potuisset, tanto opere licentiam arrogantiamque reprehendere, quod plus se quam imperatorem de victoria atque exitu rerum sentire existimarent; nec minus se ab milite modestiam et continentiam quam virtutem atque animi magnitudinem desiderare.

LIII. Hac habita contione et ad extremam orationem confirmatis militibus, ne ob hanc causam animo permoverentur neu, quod iniquitas loci attulisset, id virtuti hostium tribuerent, eadem de profectione cogitans, quae ante senserat, legiones ex castris eduxit aciemque idoneo loco constituit. Cum Vercingetorix nihilo magis in aequum locum descenderet, levi facto equestri proelio atque secundo in castra exerci-

tum reduxit. Cum hoc idem postero die fecisset, satis ad Gallicam ostentationem minuendam militumque animos confirmandos factum existimans in Aeduos movit castra. Ne tum quidem insecutis hostibus, tertio die ad flumen Elaver pontes reficit eoque exercitum traducit.

The Aedui begin war; Caesar crosses the Liger.

LIV. Ibi a Viridomaro atque Eporedorige Aeduis appellatus discit, cum omni equitatu Litaviccum ad sollicitandos Aeduos profectum; opus esse ipsos antecedere ad confirmandam civitatem. Etsi multis iam rebus perfidiam Aeduorum perspectam habebat atque horum discessu admaturari defectionem civitatis existimabat, tamen eos retinendos non constituit, ne aut inferre iniuriam videretur aut dare timoris aliquam suspicionem. Discedentibus his breviter sua in Aeduos merita exposuit; quos et quam humiles accepisset, compulsos in oppida, multatos agris, omnibus ereptis copiis, imposito stipendio, obsidibus summa cum contumelia extortis, et quam in fortunam quamque in amplitudinem deduxisset, ut non solum in pristinum statum redissent, sed omnium temporum dignitatem et gratiam antecessisse viderentur. His datis mandatis eos ab se dimisit.

LV. Noviodunum erat oppidum Aeduorum ad ripas Ligeris opportuno loco positum. Huc Caesar omnes obsides Galliae, frumentum, pecuniam publicam, suorum atque exercitus impedimentorum magnam partem contulerat; huc magnum numerum equorum huius belli causa in Italia atque Hispania coëmptum miserat. Eo cum Eporedorix Viridomarusque venissent et de statu civitatis cognovissent, Litaviccum Bibracti ab Aeduis receptum, quod est oppidum apud eos maximae auctoritatis, Convictolitavim magistratum magnamque partem senatus ad eum convenisse, legatos ad Vercingetorigem de pace et amicitia concilianda publice missos, non praetermittendum tantum commodum existimaverunt. Itaque interfectis Novioduni custodibus, quique eo negotiandi causa convenerant, pecuniam atque equos inter se partiti sunt, obsides civitatum Bibracte ad magistratum deducendos curaverunt, oppidum, quod a se teneri non posse iudicabant,

ne cui esset usui Romanis, incenderunt, frumenti quod subito potuerunt, navibus avexerunt, reliquum flumine atque incendio corruperunt. Ipsi ex finitimis regionibus copias cogere, praesidia custodiasque ad ripas Ligeris disponere equitatumque omnibus locis iniciendi timoris causa ostentare coeperunt, si ab re frumentaria Romanos excludere aut adductos inopia in provinciam expellere possent. Quam ad spem multum eos adiuvabat, quod Liger ex nivibus creverat, ut omnino vado non posse transiri videretur.

LVI. Quibus rebus cognitis Caesar maturandum sibi censuit, si esset in perficiendis pontibus periclitandum, ut prius, quam essent maiores eo coactae copiae, dimicaret. Nam ut cummutato consilio iter in provinciam converteret, id ne metu quidem necessario faciundum existimabat, cum quod infamia atque indignitas rei et oppositus mons Cebenna viarumque difficultas impediebat, tum maxime quod, abiuncto Labieno atque iis legionibus, quas una miserat, vehementer timebat. Itaque admodum magnis diurnis nocturnisque itineribus confectis contra omnium opinionem ad Ligerem venit, vadoque per equites invento pro rei necessitate opportuno, ut brachia modo atque humeri ad sustinenda arma liberi ab aqua esse possent, disposito equitatu, qui vim fluminis refringeret, atque hostibus primo aspectu perturbatis, incolumem exercitum traduxit, frumentumque in agris et pecoris copiam nactus, repleto his rebus exercitu iter in Senones facere instituit.

Meanwhile the expedition of Labienus against Lutetia is successful. He joins Caesar.

LVII. Dum haec apud Caesarem geruntur, Labienus eo supplemento, quod nuper ex Italia venerat, relicto Agedinci, ut esset impedimentis praesidio, cum quattuor legionibus Lutetiam proficiscitur. Id est oppidum Parisiorum, quod positum est in insula fluminis Sequanae. Cuius adventu ab hostibus cognito, magnae ex finitimis civitatibus copiae convenerunt. Summa imperii traditur Camulogeno Aulerco, qui prope confectus aetate tamen propter singularem scientiam rei militaris ad eum est honorem evocatus. Is cum ani-

madvertisset, perpetuam esse paludem, quae influeret in Sequanam atque illum omnem locum magnopere impediret, hic consedit nostrosque transitu probibere instituit.

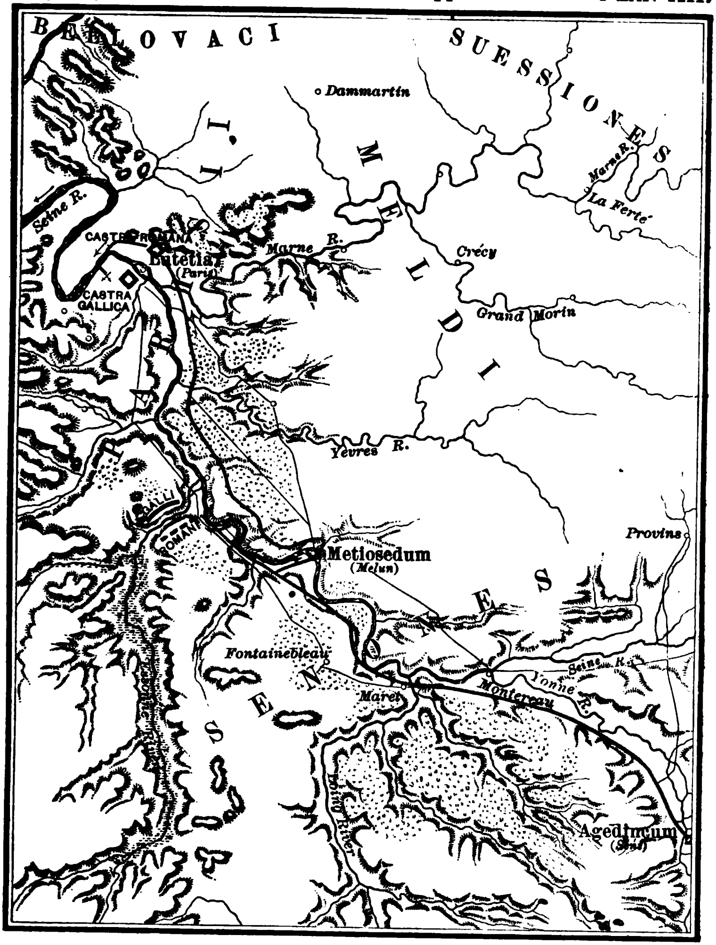
LVIII. Labienus primo vineas agere, cratibus atque aggere paludem explere atque iter munire conabatur. Postquam id difficilius confieri animadvertit, silentio e castris tertia vigilia egressus eodem, quo venerat, itinere Metiosedum pervenit. Id est oppidum Senonum, in insula Sequanae positum, ut paulo ante de Lutetia diximus. Deprensis navibus circiter quinquaginta celeriterque coniunctis atque eo militibus iniectis et rei novitate perterritis oppidanis, quorum magna pars erat ad bellum evocata, sine contentione oppido potitur. Refecto ponte, quem superioribus diebus hostes resciderant, exercitum traducit et secundo flumine ad Lutetiam iter facere coepit. Hostes re cognita ab iis, qui Metiosedo fugerant, Lutetiam incendi pontesque eius oppidi rescindi iubent; ipsi profecti a palude ad ripas Sequanae e regione Lutetiae contra Labieni castra considunt.

LIX. Iam Caesar a Gergovia discessisse audiebatur, iam de Aeduorum defectione et secundo Galliae motu rumores afferebantur, Gallique in colloquiis interclusum itinere et Ligeri Caesarem inopia frumenti coactum in provinciam contendisse confirmabant. Bellovaci autem defectione Aeduorum cognita, qui iam ante erant per se infideles, manus cogere atque aperte bellum parare coeperunt. Tum Labienus tanta rerum commutatione longe aliud sibi capiendum consilium, atque antea senserat, intellegebat, neque iam, ut aliquid acquireret proelioque hostes lacesseret, sed ut incolumem exercitum Agedincum reduceret, cogitabat. Namque altera ex parte Bellovaci, quae civitas in Gallia maximam habet opinionem virtutis, instabant, alteram Camulogenus parato atque instructo exercitu tenebat; tum legiones a praesidio atque impedimentis interclusas maximum flumen distinebat. Tantis subito difficultatibus obiectis ab animi virtute auxilium petendum videbat.

LX. Sub vesperum consilio convocato, cohortatus, ut ea, quae imperasset, diligenter industrieque administrarent, naves, quas Metiosedo deduxerat, singulas equitibus Romanis attri-

EXPEDITION OF LABIENUS AGAINST LUTETIA.

To face p. 196. Lib. VII. c. 59. sqq. PLAN XII.



SCALE OF MILES

0 5 10 15 20

buit et prima confecta vigilia quattuor milia passuum secundo flumine silentio progredi ibique se exspectari iubet. Quinque cohortes, quas minime firmas ad dimicandum esse existimabat, castris praesidio relinquit; quinque eiusdem legionis reliquas de media nocte cum omnibus impedimentis adverso flumine magno tumultu proficisci imperat. Conquirit etiam lintres; has magno sonitu remorum incitatas in eandem partem mittit. Ipse post paulo silentio egressus cum tribus legionibus eum locum petit, quo naves appelli iusserat.

LXI. Eo cum esset ventum, exploratores hostium, ut omni fluminis parte erant dispositi, inopinantes, quod magna subito erat coorta tempestas, ab nostris opprimuntur; exercitus equitatusque equitibus Romanis administrantibus, quos ei negotio praefecerat, celeriter transmittitur. Uno fere tempore sub lucem hostibus nuntiatur, in castris Romanorum praeter consuetudinem tumultuari, et magnum ire agmen adverso flumine sonitumque remorum in eadem parte exaudiri, et paulo infra milites navibus transportari. Quibus rebus auditis, quod existimabant, tribus locis transire legiones atque omnes perturbatos defectione Aeduorum fugam parare, suas quoque copias in tres partes distribuerunt. Nam praesidio e regione castrorum relicto et parva manu Metiosedum versus missa, quae tantum progrediatur, quantum naves processissent, reliquas copias contra Labienum duxerunt.

LXII. Prima luce et nostri omnes erant transportati et hostium acies cernebatur. Labienus milites cohortatus, ut suae pristinae virtutis et secundissimorum proeliorum retinerent memoriam atque ipsum Caesarem, cuius ductu saepenumero hostes superassent, praesentem adesse existimarent, dat signum proelii. Primo concursu ab dextro cornu, ubi septima legio constiterat, hostes pelluntur atque in fugam coniciuntur; ab sinistro, quem locum duodecima legio tenebat, cum primi ordines hostium transfixi telis concidissent, tamen acerrime reliqui resistebant, nec dabat suspicionem fugae quisquam. Ipse dux hostium Camulogenus suis aderat atque eos cohortabatur. Incerto nunc etiam exitu victoriae, cum septimae legionis tribunis esset nuntiatum, quae in sinistro

cornu gererentur, post tergum hostium legionem ostenderunt signaque intulerunt. Ne eo quidem tempore quisquam loco cessit, sed circumventi omnes interfectique sunt. Eandem fortunam tulit Camulogenus. At ii, qui praesidio contra castra Labieni erant relicti, cum proelium commissum audissent, subsidio suis ierunt collemque ceperunt, neque nostrorum militum victorum impetum sustinere potuerunt. Sic cum suis fugientibus permixti, quos non silvae montesque texerunt, ab equitatu sunt interfecti. Hoc negotio confecto Labienus revertitur Agedincum, ubi impedimenta totius exercitus relicta erant; inde cum omnibus copiis ad Caesarem pervenit.

The revolt becomes general. Vercingetorix is appointed commander. His cavalry being defeated by Caesar, he takes refuge in Alesia.

LXIII. Defectione Aeduorum cognita bellum augetur. Legationes in omnes partes circummittuntur; quantum gratia, auctoritate, pecunia valent, ad sollicitandas civitates nituntur; nacti obsides, quos Caesar apud eos deposuerat, horum supplicio dubitantes territant. Petunt a Vercingetorige Aedui, ut ad se veniat rationesque belli gerendi communicet. Re impetrata contendunt, ut ipsis summa imperii tradatur, et re in controversiam deducta totius Galliae concilium Bibracte indicitur. Eodem conveniunt undique frequentes. Multitudinis suffragiis res permittitur; ad unum omnes Vercingetorigem probant imperatorem. Ab hoc concilio Remi, Lingones, Treveri afuerunt; illi, quod amicitiam Romanorum sequebantur; Treveri, quod aberant longius et ab Germanis premebantur, quae fuit causa, quare toto abessent bello et neutris auxilia mitterent. Magno dolore Aedui ferunt se deiectos principatu, queruntur fortunae commutationem et Caesaris indulgentiam in se requirunt, neque tamen suscepto bello suum consilium ab reliquis separare audent. Inviti summae spei adulescentes, Eporedorix et Viridomarus, Vercingetorigi parent.

LXIV. Ipse imperat reliquis civitatibus obsides diemque huic rei constituit; omnes equites, xv milia numero, celeriter convenire iubet. Peditatu, quem antea habuerat, se fore

contentum dicit, neque fortunam temptaturum aut in acie dimicaturum, sed, quoniam abundet equitatu, perfacile esse factu frumentationibus pabulationibusque Romanos prohibere; aequo modo animo sua ipsi frumenta corrumpant aedificiaque incendant, qua rei familiaris iactura perpetuum imperium libertatemque se consequi videant. His constitutis rebus Aeduis Segusiavisque, qui sunt finitimi provinciae, decem milia peditum imperat; huc addit equites octingentos. His praeficit fratrem Eporedorigis bellumque inferri Allobrogibus iubet. Altera ex parte Gabalos proximosque pagos Arvernorum in Helvios, item Rutenos Cadurcosque ad fines Volcarum Arecomicorum depopulandos mittit. Nihilo minus clandestinis nuntiis legationibusque Allobrogas sollicitat, quorum mentes nondum ab superiore bello resedisse sperabat. Horum principibus pecunias, civitati autem imperium totius provinciae pollicetur.

LXV. Ad hos omnes casus provisa erant praesidia cohortium duarum et viginti, quae ex ipsa provincia ab Lucio Caesare legato ad omnes partes opponebantur. Helvii sua sponte cum finitimis proelio congressi pelluntur et Gaio Valerio Donnotauro, Caburi filio, principe civitatis, compluribusque aliis interfectis intra oppida ac muros compelluntur. Allobroges crebris ad Rhodanum dispositis praesidiis magna cum cura et diligentia suos fines tuentur. Caesar, quod hostes equitatu superiores esse intellegebat et interclusis omnibus itineribus nulla re ex provincia atque Italia sublevari poterat, trans Rhenum in Germaniam mittit ad eas civitates, quas superioribus annis pacaverat, equitesque ab his arcessit et levis armaturae pedites, qui inter eos proeliari consuerant. Eorum adventu, quod minus idoneis equis utebantur, a tribunis militum reliquisque equitibus Romanis atque evocatis equos sumit Germanisque distribuit.

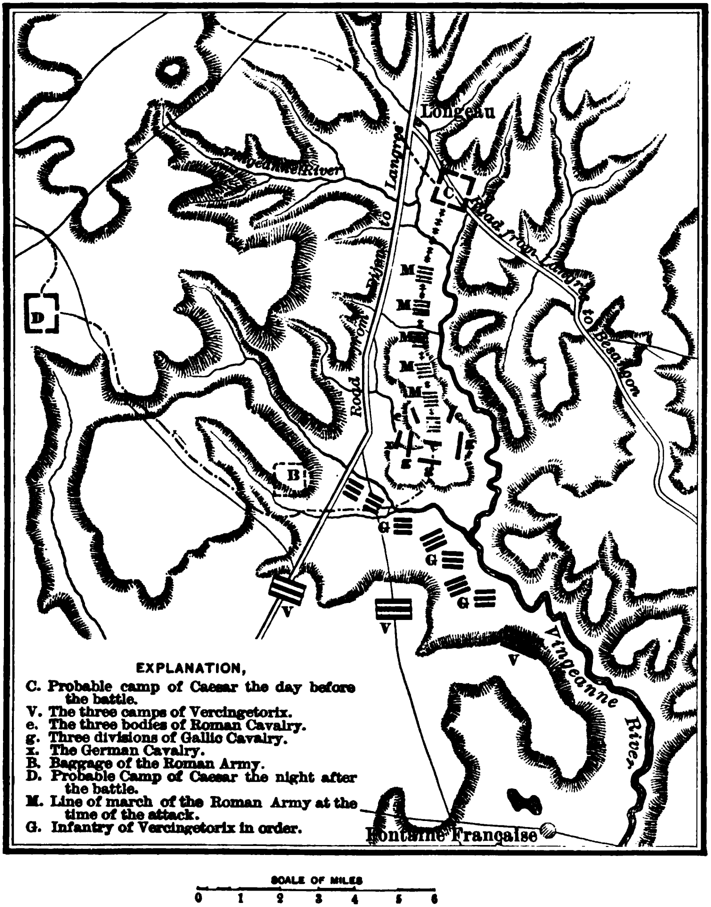
LXVI. Interea, dum haec geruntur, hostium copiae ex Arvernis equitesque, qui toti Galliae erant imperati, conveniunt. Magno horum coacto numero, cum Caesar in Sequanos per extremos Lingonum fines iter faceret, quo facilius subsidium provinciae ferri posset, circiter milia passuum decem ab Romanis trinis castris Vercingetorix consedit convo-

catisque ad concilium praefectis equitum venisse tempus victoriae demonstrat: fugere in provinciam Romanos Galliaque excedere. Id sibi ad praesentem obtinendam libertatem satis esse; ad reliqui temporis pacem atque otium parum profici: maioribus enim coactis copiis reversuros neque finem bellandi facturos. Proinde agmine impeditos adoriantur. Si pedites suis auxilium ferant atque in eo morentur, iter facere non posse; si, id quod magis futurum confidat, relictis impedimentis suae saluti consulant, et usu rerum necessariarum et dignitate spoliatum iri. Nam de equitibus hostium, quin nemo eorum progredi modo extra agmen audeat, ipsos quidem non debere dubitare. Id quo maiore faciant animo, copias se omnes pro castris habiturum et terrori hostibus futurum. Conclamant equites, sanctissimo iureiurando confirmari oportere, ne tecto recipiatur, ne ad liberos, ne ad parentes, ad uxorem aditum habeat, qui non bis per agmen hostium perequitasset.

LXVII. Probata re atque omnibus iureiurando adactis, postero die in tres partes distributo equitatu duae se acies ab duobus lateribus ostendunt, una a primo agmine iter impedire coepit. Qua re nuntiata Caesar suum quoque equitatum tripertito divisum contra hostem ire iubet. Pugnatur una omnibus in partibus. Consistit agmen; impedimenta inter legiones recipiuntur. Si qua in parte nostri laborare aut gravius premi videbantur, eo signa inferri Caesar aciemque constitui iubebat; quae res et hostes ad insequendum tardabat et nostros spe auxilii confirmabat. Tandem Germani ab dextro latere summum iugum nancti hostes loco depellunt; fugientes usque ad flumen, ubi Vercingetorix cum pedestribus copiis consederat, persequuntur compluresque interficiunt. Qua re animadversa reliqui, ne circumirentur, veriti se fugae mandant. Omnibus locis fit caedes. Tres nobilissimi Aedui capti ad Caesarem perducuntur: Cotus, praefectus equitum, qui controversiam cum Convictolitavi proximis comitiis habuerat, et Cavarillus, qui post defectionem Litavicci pedestribus copiis praefuerat, et Eporedorix, quo duce ante adventum Caesaris Aedui cum Sequanis bello contenderant.

CAESAR'S VICTORY OVER VERCINGETORIX AT THE VINGEANNE.

To face p. 200. Lib. VII. c. 66. sqq. PLAN XIII.



LXVIII. Fugato omni equitatu, Vercingetorix copias, ut pro castris collocaverat, reduxit protinusque Alesiam, quod est oppidum Mandubiorum, iter facere coepit celeriterque impedimenta ex castris educi et se subsequi iussit. Caesar impedimentis in proximum collem deductis, duabus legionibus praesidio relictis secutus, quantum diei tempus est passum, circiter tribus milibus hostium ex novissimo agmine interfectis altero die ad Alesiam castra fecit. Perspecto urbis situ perterritisque hostibus, quod equitatu, qua maxime parte exercitus confidebant, erant pulsi, adhortatus ad laborem milites circumvallare instituit.

Caesar besieges Alesia with two lines of works, protecting his army on both sides.

LXIX. Ipsum erat oppidum Alesia in colle summo admodum edito loco, ut nisi obsidione expugnari non posse videretur; cuius collis radices duo duabus ex partibus flumina subluebant. Ante id oppidum planities circiter milia passuum tria in longitudinem patebat; reliquis ex omnibus partibus colles mediocri interiecto spatio pari altitudinis fastigio oppidum cingebant. Sub muro, quae pars collis ad orientem solem spectabat, hunc omnem locum copiae Gallorum compleverant fossamque et maceriam sex in altitudinem pedum praeduxerant. Eius munitionis, quae ab Romanis instituebatur, circuitus XI milia passuum tenebat. Castra opportunis locis erant posita ibique castella viginti tria facta, quibus in castellis interdiu stationes ponebantur, ne qua subito eruptio fieret; haec eadem noctu excubitoribus ac firmis praesidiis tenebantur.

LXX. Opere instituto fit equestre proelium in ea planitie, quam intermissam collibus tria milia passuum in longitudinem patere supra demonstravimus. Summa vi ab utrisque contenditur. Laborantibus nostris Caesar Germanos submittit legionesque pro castris constituit, ne qua subito irruptio ab hostium peditatu fiat. Praesidio legionum addito nostris animus augetur; hostes in fugam coniecti se ipsi multitudine impediunt atque angustioribus portis relictis coacervantur. Germani acrius usque ad munitiones sequuntur. Fit magna

caedes; nonnulli relictis equis fossam transire et maceriam transcendere conantur. Paulum legiones Caesar, quas pro vallo constituerat, promoveri iubet. Non minus, qui intra munitiones erant, perturbantur Galli; veniri ad se confestim existimantes ad arma conclamant; nonnulli perterriti in oppidum irrumpunt. Vercingetorix iubet portas claudi, ne castra nudentur. Multis interfectis, compluribus equis captis Germani sese recipiunt.

LXXI. Vercingetorix, priusquam munitiones ab Romanis perficiantur, consilium capit, omnem ab se equitatum noctu dimittere. Discedentibus mandat, ut suam quisque eorum civitatem adeat omnesque, qui per aetatem arma ferre possint, ad bellum cogant. Sua in illos merita proponit obtestaturque, ut suae salutis rationem habeant, neu se optime de communi libertate meritum hostibus in cruciatum dedant. Quod si indiligentiores fuerint, milia hominum delecta LXXX una secum interitura demonstrat. Ratione inita se exigue dierum XXX habere frumentum, sed paulo etiam longius tolerari posse parcendo. His datis mandatis, qua opus erat intermissum, secunda vigilia silentio equitatum mittit. Frumentum omne ad se referri iubet; capitis poenam iis, qui non paruerint, constituit; pecus, cuius magna erat copia ab Mandubiis compulsa, viritim distribuit, frumentum parce et paulatim metiri instituit. Copias omnes, quas pro oppido collocaverat, in oppidum recepit. His rationibus auxilia Galliae exspectare et bellum parat administrare.

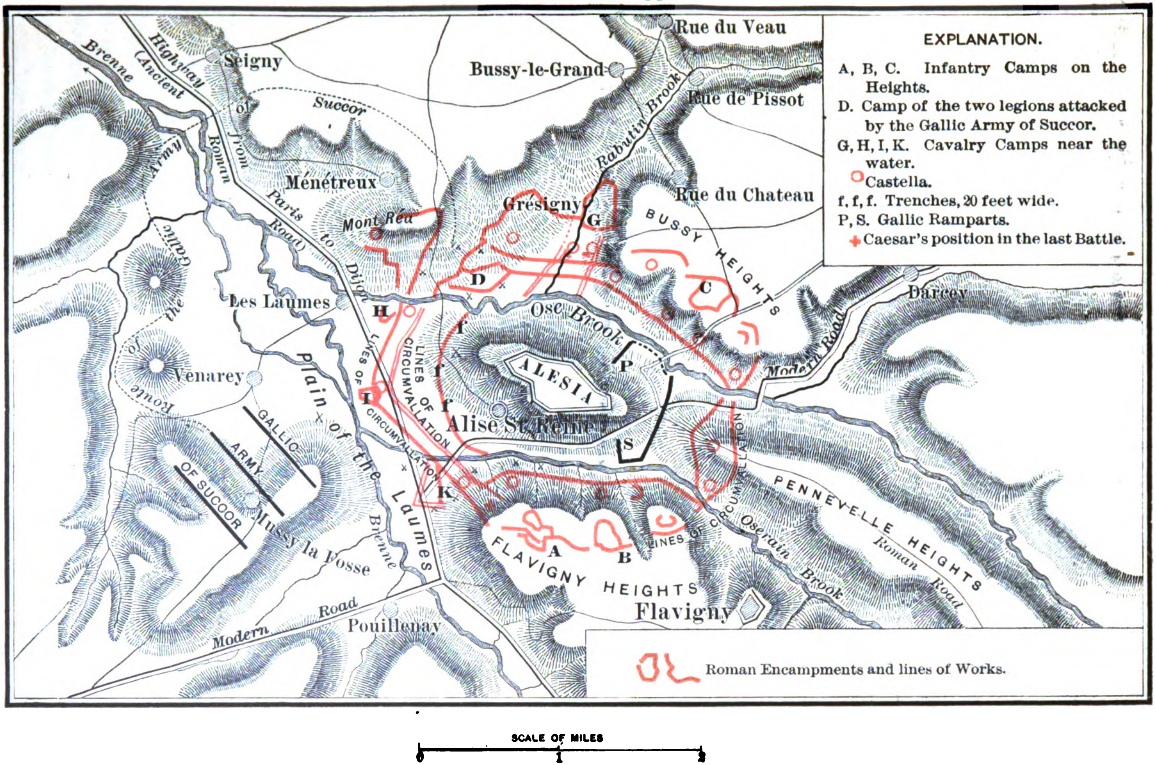
LXXII. Quibus rebus cognitis ex perfugis et captivis Caesar haec genera munitionis instituit. Fossam pedum viginti directis lateribus duxit, ut eius fossae solum tantundem pateret, quantum summae fossae labra distarent. Reliquas omnes munitiones ab ea fossa pedes quadringentos reduxit, id hoc consilio, quoniam tantum esset necessario spatium complexus nec facile totum corpus corona militum cingeretur, ne de improviso aut noctu ad munitiones hostium multitudo advolaret, aut interdiu tela in nostros operi destinatos conicere possent. Hoc intermisso spatio duas fossas quindecim pedes latas, eadem altitudine, perduxit; quarum interiorem campestribus ac demissis locis aqua ex flumine derivata complevit. Post

To face p. 202.

SIEGE OF ALESIA.

Lib. VII c. 69. sqq.

PLAN XIV.



eas aggerem ac vallum XII pedum exstruxit. Huic loricam pinnasque adiecit, grandibus cervis eminentibus ad commissuras pluteorum atque aggeris, qui ascensum hostium tardarent, et turres toto opere circumdedit, quae pedes LXXX inter se distarent.

LXXIII. Erat eodem tempore et materiari et frumentari et tantas munitiones fieri necesse deminutis nostris copiis, quae longius ab castris progrediebantur; ac nonnumquam opera nostra Galli temptare atque eruptionem ex oppido pluribus portis summa vi facere conabantur. Quare ad haec rursus opera addendum Caesar putavit, quo minore numero militum munitiones defendi possent. Itaque truncis arborum admodum firmis ramis abscisis atque horum delibratis ac praeacutis cacuminibus perpetuae fossae quinos pedes altae ducebantur. Huc illi stipites demissi et ab infimo revincti, ne revelli possent, ab ramis eminebant. Quini erant ordines coniuncti inter se atque implicati; quo qui intraverant, se ipsi acutissimis vallis induebant. Hos cippos appellabant. Ante quos obliquis ordinibus in quincuncem dispositis scrobes tres in altitudinem pedes fodiebantur paulatim angustiore ad infimum fastigio. Huc teretes stipites feminis crassitudine ab summo praeacuti et praeusti demittebantur ita, ut non amplius digitis quattuor ex terra eminerent; simul confirmandi et stabiliendi causa singuli ab infimo solo pedes terra exculcabantur; reliqua pars scrobis ad occultandas insidias viminibus ac virgultis integebatur. Huius generis octoni ordines ducti ternos inter se pedes distabant. Id ex similitudine floris lilium appellabant. Ante haec taleae pedem longae ferreis hamis infixis totae in terram infodiebantur mediocribusque intermissis spatiis omnibus locis disserebantur, quos stimulos nominabant.

LXXIV. His rebus perfectis, regiones secutus quam potuit aequissimas pro loci natura, XIV milia passuum complexus pares eiusdem generis munitiones, diversas ab his, contra exteriorem hostem perfecit, ut ne magna quidem multitudine, si ita accidat, eius discessu munitionum praesidia circumfundi possent; ac ne cum periculo ex castris egredi cogatur, dierum triginta pabulum frumentumque habere omnes convectum iubet.

The Gauls gather a great army to relieve the town. Misery of the inhabitants. The Gauls are defeated. Alesia surrenders.

LXXV. Dum haec apud Alesiam geruntur, Galli concilio principum indicto non omnes eos, qui arma ferre possent, ut censuit Vercingetorix, convocandos statuunt, sed certum numerum cuique ex civitate imperandum, ne tanta multitudine confusa nec moderari nec discernere suos nec frumentandi rationem habere possent. Imperant Aeduis atque eorum clientibus, Segusiavis, Ambivaretis, Aulercis Brannovicibus, Brannoviis, milia XXXV; parem numerum Arvernis adiunctis Eleutetis, Cadurcis, Gabalis, Vellavis, qui sub imperio Arvernorum esse consuerunt; Sequanis, Senonibus, Biturigibus, Santonis, Rutenis, Carnutibus duodena milia; Bellovacis X; totidem Lemovicibus; octona Pictonibus et Turonis et Parisiis et Helvetiis; Ambianis, Mediomatricis, Petrocoriis, Nerviis, Morinis, Nitiobrogibus quina milia; Aulercis Cenomanis totidem; Atrebatibus IV; Veliocassis, Lexoviis et Aulercis Eburovicibus terna; Rauricis et Boiis bina; XXX universis civitatibus, quae Oceanum attingunt quaeque eorum consuetudine Aremoricae appellantur, quo sunt in numero Curiosolites, Redones, Ambibarii, Caletes, Osismi, Lemovices, Venelli. Ex his Bellovaci suum numerum non compleverunt, quod se suo nomine atque arbitrio cum Romanis bellum gesturos dicebant neque cuiusquam imperio obtemperaturos; rogati tamen ab Commio pro eius hospitio duo milia una miserunt.

LXXVI. Huius opera Commii, ut antea demonstravimus, fideli atque utili superioribus annis usus in Britannia Caesar; quibus ille pro meritis civitatem eius immunem esse iusserat, iura legesque reddiderat atque ipsi Morinos attribuerat. Tamen tanta universae Galliae consensio fuit libertatis vindicandae, et pristinae belli laudis recuperandae, ut neque beneficiis neque amicitiae memoria moverentur, omnesque et animo et opibus in id bellum incumberent. Coactis equitum VIII milibus et peditum circiter CCL, haec in Aeduorum finibus recensebantur, numerusque inibatur, praefecti constitue-

bantur. Commio Atrebati, Viridomaro et Eporedorigi Aeduis, Vercassivellauno Arverno, consobrino Vercingetorigis, summa imperii traditur. His delecti ex civitatibus attribuuntur, quorum consilio bellum administraretur. Omnes alacres et fiduciae pleni ad Alesiam proficiscuntur, neque erat omnium quisquam, qui aspectum modo tantae multitudinis sustineri posse arbitraretur, praesertim ancipiti proelio, cum ex oppido eruptione pugnaretur, foris tantae copiae equitatus peditatusque cernerentur.

LXXVII. At ii, qui Alesiae obsidebantur, praeterita die, qua auxilia suorum exspectaverant, consumpto omni frumento inscii, quid in Aeduis gereretur, concilio coacto de exitu suarum fortunarum consultabant. Ac variis dictis sententiis, quarum pars deditionem, pars, dum vires suppeterent, eruptionem censebat, non praetereunda oratio Critognati videtur propter eius singularem et nefariam crudelitatem. Hic, summo in Arvernis ortus loco et magnae habitus auctoritatis, 'Nihil,' inquit, 'de eorum sententia dicturus sum, qui turpissimam servitutem deditionis nomine appellant, neque hos habendos civium loco neque ad concilium adhibendos censeo. Cum his mihi res sit, qui eruptionem probant; quorum in consilio omnium vestrum consensu pristinae residere virtutis memoria videtur. Animi est ista mollitia, non virtus, paulisper inopiam ferre non posse. Qui se ultro morti offerant, facilius reperiuntur, quam qui dolorem patienter ferant. Atque ego hanc sententiam probarem (tantum apud me dignitas potest), si nullam praeterquam vitae nostrae iacturam fieri viderem; sed in consilio capiendo omnem Galliam respiciamus, quam ad nostrum auxilium concitavimus. Quid hominum milibus LXXX uno loco interfectis propinquis consanguineisque nostris animi fore existimatis, si paene in ipsis cadaveribus proelio decertare cogentur? Nolite hos vestro auxilio exspoliare, qui vestrae salutis causa suum periculum neglexerunt, nec stultitia ac temeritate vestra aut animi imbecillitate omnem Galliam prosternere et perpetuae servituti subicere. An, quod ad diem non venerunt, de eorum fide constantiaque dubitatis? Quid ergo? Romanos in illis ulterioribus munitionibus animine causa cotidie exerceri putatis?

Si illorum nuntiis confirmari non potestis omni aditu praesepto, his utimini testibus, appropinquare eorum adventum; cuius rei timore exterriti diem noctemque in opere versantur. Quid ergo mei consilii est? Facere, quod nostri maiores nequaquam pari bello Cimbrorum Teutonumque fecerunt; qui in oppida compulsi ac simili inopia subacti eorum corporibus, qui aetate ad bellum inutiles videbantur, vitam toleraverunt neque se hostibus tradiderunt. Cuius rei si exemplum non haberemus, tamen libertatis causa institui et posteris prodi pulcherrimum iudicarem. Nam quid illi simile bello fuit? Depopulata Gallia Cimbri magnaque illata calamitate finibus quidem nostris aliquando excesserunt atque alias terras petierunt; iura, leges, agros, libertatem nobis reliquerunt. Romani vero quid petunt aliud aut quid volunt, nisi invidia adducti, quos fama nobiles potentesque bello cognoverunt, horum in agris civitatibusque considere atque his aeternam iniungere servitutem? Neque enim ulla alia condicione bella gesserunt. Quod si ea, quae in longinquis nationibus geruntur, ignoratis, respicite finitimam Galliam, quae in provinciam redacta, iure et legibus commutatis, securibus subiecta perpetua premitur servitute.'

LXXVIII. Sententiis dictis constituunt, ut ii, qui valetudine aut aetate inutiles sunt bello, oppido excedant atque omnia prius experiantur, quam ad Critognati sententiam descendant; illo tamen potius utendum consilio, si res cogat atque auxilia morentur, quam aut deditionis aut pacis subeundam condicionem. Mandubii, qui eos oppido receperant, cum liberis atque uxoribus exire coguntur. Hi cum ad munitiones Romanorum accessissent, flentes omnibus precibus orabant, ut se in servitutem receptos cibo iuvarent. At Caesar dispositis in vallo custodibus recipi prohibebat.

LXXIX. Interea Commius reliquique duces, quibus summa imperii permissa erat, cum omnibus copiis ad Alesiam perveniunt et colle exteriore occupato non longius mille passibus ab nostris munitionibus considunt. Postero die equitatu ex castris educto omnem eam planitiem, quam in longitudinem tria milia passuum patere demonstravimus, complent pedestresque copias paulum ab eo loco abditas in locis superiori-

bus constituunt. Erat ex oppido Alesia despectus in campum. Concurrunt his auxiliis visis; fit gratulatio inter eos atque omnium animi ad laetitiam excitantur. Itaque productis copiis ante oppidum considunt et proximam fossam cratibus integunt atque aggere explent seque ad eruptionem atque omnes casus comparant.

LXXX. Caesar omni exercitu ad utramque partem munitionum disposito, ut, si usus veniat, suum quisque locum teneat et noverit, equitatum ex castris educi et proelium committi iubet. Erat ex omnibus castris, quae summum undique iugum tenebant, despectus, atque omnes milites intenti pugnae proventum exspectabant. Galli inter equites raros sagittarios expeditosque levis armaturae interiecerant, qui suis cedentibus auxilio succurrerent et nostrorum equitum impetus sustinerent. Ab his complures de improviso vulnerati proelio excedebant. Cum suos pugna superiores esse Galli confiderent et nostros multitudine premi viderent, ex omnibus partibus et ii, qui munitionibus continebantur, et hi, qui ad auxilium convenerant, clamore et ululatu suorum animos confirmabant. Quod in conspectu omnium res gerebatur neque recte ac turpiter factum celari poterat, utrosque et laudis cupiditas et timor ignominiae ad virtutem excitabat. Cum a meridie prope ad solis occasum dubia victoria pugnaretur, Germani una in parte confertis turmis in hostes impetum fecerunt eosque propulerunt; quibus in fugam coniectis sagittarii circumventi interfectique sunt. Item ex reliquis partibus nostri cedentes usque ad castra insecuti sui colligendi facultatem non dederunt. At ii, qui ab Alesia processerant, maesti prope victoria desperata se in oppidum receperunt.

LXXXI. Uno die intermisso Galli atque hoc spatio magno cratium, scalarum, harpagonum numero effecto media nocte silentio ex castris egressi ad campestres munitiones accedunt. Subito clamore sublato, qua significatione, qui in oppido obsidebantur, de suo adventu cognoscere possent, crates proicere, fundis, sagittis, lapidibus nostros de vallo proturbare reliquaque, quae ad oppugnationem pertinent, parant administrare. Eodem tempore clamore exaudito dat tuba

signum suis Vercingetorix atque ex oppido educit. Nostri, ut superioribus diebus suus cuique erat locus attributus, ad munitiones accedunt; fundis librilibus sudibusque, quas in opere disposuerant, ac glandibus Gallos proterrent. Prospectu tenebris adempto multa utrimque vulnera accipiuntur. Complura tormentis tela coniciuntur. At Marcus Antonius et Gaius Trebonius legati, quibus hae partes ad defendendum obvenerant, qua ex parte nostros premi intellexerant, his auxilio ex ulterioribus castellis deductos submittebant.

LXXXII. Dum longius ab munitione aberant Galli, plus multitudine telorum proficiebant; posteaquam propius successerunt, aut se stimulis inopinantes induebant aut in scrobes delati transfodiebantur aut ex vallo ac turribus traiecti pilis muralibus interibant. Multis undique vulneribus acceptis nulla munitione perrupta, cum lux appeteret, veriti, ne ab latere aperto ex superioribus castris eruptione circumvenirentur, se ad suos receperunt. At interiores, dum ea, quae a Vercingetorige ad eruptionem praeparata erant, proferunt, priores fossas explent, diutius in his rebus administrandis morati prius suos discessisse cognoverunt, quam munitionibus appropinquarent. Ita re infecta in oppidum reverterunt.

LXXXIII. Bis magno cum detrimento repulsi Galli, quid agant, consulunt; locorum peritos adhibent: ex his superiorum castrorum situs munitionesque cognoscunt. Erat a septentrionibus collis, quem propter magnitudinem circuitus opere circumplecti non potuerant nostri: necessario paene iniquo loco et leniter declivi castra fecerunt. Haec Gaius Antistius Reginus et Gaius Caninius Rebilus legati cum duabus legionibus obtinebant. Cognitis per exploratores regionibus duces hostium LX milia ex omni numero deligunt earum civitatum, quae maximam virtutis opinionem habebant; quid quoque pacto agi placeat, occulte inter se constituunt; adeundi tempus definiunt, cum meridies esse videatur. His copiis Vercassivellaunum Arvernum, unum ex quattuor ducibus, propinquum Vercingetorigis, praeficiunt. Ille ex castris prima vigilia egressus prope confecto sub lucem itinere post montem se occultavit militesque ex nocturno labore sese reficere

iussit. Cum iam meridies appropinquare videretur, ad ea castra, quae supra demonstravimus, contendit; eodemque tempore equitatus ad campestres munitiones accedere et reliquae copiae pro castris sese ostendere coeperunt.

LXXXIV. Vercingetorix ex arce Alesiae suos conspicatus ex oppido egreditur: cratis, longurios, musculos, falces reliquaque, quae eruptionis causa paraverat, profert. Pugnatur uno tempore omnibus locis, atque omnia temptantur; quae minime visa pars firma est, huc concurritur. Romanorum manus tantis munitionibus distinetur nec facile pluribus locis occurrit. Multum ad terrendos nostros valet clamor, qui post tergum pugnantibus exstitit, quod suum periculum in aliena vident salute constare; omnia enim plerumque, quae absunt, vehementius hominum mentes perturbant.

LXXXV. Caesar idoneum locum nactus, quid quaque ex parte geratur, cognoscit; laborantibus submittit. Utrisque ad animum occurrit, unum esse illud tempus, quo maxime contendi conveniat: Galli, nisi perfregerint munitiones, de omni salute desperant; Romani, si rem obtinuerint, finem laborum omnium exspectant. Maxime ad superiores munitiones laboratur, quo Vercassivellaunum missum demonstravimus. Iniquum loci ad declivitatem fastigium magnum habet momentum. Alii tela coniciunt, alii testudine facta subeunt; defatigatis in vicem integri succedunt. Agger ab universis in munitionem coniectus et ascensum dat Gallis et ea, quae in terra occultaverant Romani, contegit; nec iam arma nostris nec vires suppetunt.

LXXXVI. His rebus cognitis Caesar Labienum cum cohortibus sex subsidio laborantibus mittit; imperat, si sustinere non posset, deductis cohortibus eruptione pugnaret; id nisi necessario ne faciat. Ipse adit reliquos, cohortatur, ne labori succumbant; omnium superiorum dimicationum fructum in eo die atque hora docet consistere. Interiores desperatis campestribus locis propter magnitudinem munitionum loca praerupta ex ascensu temptant; huc ea, quae paraverant, conferunt. Multitudine telorum ex turribus propugnantes deturbant, aggere et cratibus fossas explent, falcibus vallum ac loricam rescindunt.

LXXXVII. Mittit primo Brutum adulescentem cum cohortibus Caesar, post cum aliis Gaium Fabium legatum; postremo ipse, cum vehementius pugnaretur, integros subsidio adducit. Restituto proelio ac repulsis hostibus eo, quo Labienum miserat, contendit; cohortes quattuor ex proximo castello deducit, equitum partem se sequi, partem circumire exteriores munitiones et ab tergo hostes adoriri iubet. Labienus, postquam neque aggeres neque fossae vim hostium sustinere poterant, coactis una XL cohortibus, quas ex proximis praesidiis deductas fors obtulit, Caesarem per nuntios facit certiorem, quid faciendum existimet. Accelerat Caesar, ut proelio intersit.

LXXXVIII. Eius adventu ex colore vestitus cognito, quo insigni in proeliis uti consuerat, turmisque equitum et cohortibus visis, quas se sequi iusserat, ut de locis superioribus haec declivia et devexa cernebantur, hostes proelium committunt. Utrimque clamore sublato, excipit rursus ex vallo atque omnibus munitionibus clamor. Nostri omissis pilis gladiis rem gerunt. Repente post tergum equitatus cernitur; cohortes aliae appropinquant. Hostes terga vertunt; fugientibus equites occurrunt. Fit magna caedes. Sedulius, dux et princeps Lemovicum, occiditur; Vercassivellaunus Arvernus vivus in fuga comprehenditur; signa militaria septuaginta quattuor ad Caesarem referuntur; pauci ex tanto numero se incolumes in castra recipiunt. Conspicati ex oppido caedem et fugam suorum desperata salute copias a munitionibus reducunt. Fit protinus hac re audita ex castris Gallorum fuga. Quod nisi crebris subsidiis ac totius diei labore milites essent defessi, omnes hostium copiae deleri potuissent. De media nocte missus equitatus novissimum agmen consequitur; magnus numerus capitur atque interficitur, reliqui ex fuga in civitates discedunt.

LXXXIX. Postero die Vercingetorix consilio convocato id bellum se suscepisse non suarum necessitatum, sed communis libertatis causa demonstrat, et quoniam sit fortunae cedendum, ad utramque rem se illis offerre, seu morte sua Romanis satisfacere seu vivum tradere velint. Mittuntur de his rebus ad Caesarem legati. Iubet arma tradi, prin-

cipes produci. Ipse in munitione pro castris consedit; eo duces producuntur. Vercingetorix deditur, arma proiciuntur. Reservatis Aeduis atque Arvernis, si per eos civitates reciperare posset, ex reliquis captivis toto exercitui capita singula praedae nomine distribuit.

All Gaul submits to Caesar. He places his army in winter quarters. A thanksgiving is decreed at Rome.

XC. His rebus confectis in Aeduos proficiscitur; civitatem recipit. Eo legati ab Arvernis missi, quae imperaret, se facturos pollicentur. Imperat magnum numerum obsidum. Legiones in hiberna mittit. Captivorum circiter xx milia Aeduis Arvernisque reddit. T. Labienum duabus cum legionibus et equitatu in Sequanos proficisci iubet; huic M. Sempronium Rutilum attribuit. Gaium Fabium legatum et Lucium Minucium Basilum cum legionibus duabus in Remis collocat, ne quam ab finitimis Bellovacis calamitatem accipiant. Gaium Antistium Reginum in Ambivaretos, Titum Sextium in Bituriges, Gaium Caninium Rebilum in Rutenos cum singulis legionibus mittit. Quintum Tullium Ciceronem et Publium Sulpicium Cabilloni et Matiscone in Aeduis ad Ararim rei frumentariae causa collocat. Ipse Bibracte hiemare constituit. His rebus ex litteris Caesaris cognitis, Romae dierum viginti supplicatio redditur.

NOTES.

NOTES.

Page 47. C. IULI CAESARIS: on the three names, — *praenōmen, nōmen*, and *cognōmen*, — see A. 80; H. 649.[1] **C.** stands for *Gaius;* in proper names initial *c* was in Caesar's time written in place of *g*. Why? A. 6; H. 2 1–3. **Iuli**: why the ending *i* instead of *ii?* A. 40 *b*; G. 29 R. 1; H. 51 5. **Caesaris**: the origin of the name Caesar has been much discussed, but remains uncertain. Most likely it comes from *caesaries*, 'hair,' — the first one to bear the name having had a remarkable amount of hair in infancy. What other derivations have been suggested? See Smith's Dict. of Biography and Mythology, vol. i. p. 536. DE BELLO GALLICO: A. 217 R.; H. 359 N.1 4); the titles of books in Latin are often put in the abl. with *de*. COMMENTARIUS: 'commentary,' 'memoir. Originally the word *commentarius* was an adjective modifying *liber* expressed or understood; it is here used as a noun. What case is it in and why? Sc.[2] *hic est*. Read pp. 17–20.

Chapter I. **1. Gallia**: Study pp. 38–40, in connection with the map of Gaul. **omnis**: 'as a whole.' **divisa**: A. 291 *b*; G. 439; H. 550 N.2. If *divisa est* were a perfect passive, it would have to be translated 'has been divided,' or 'was divided.' **unam**: sc. *partem*. **2. tertiam, qui**: = *tertiam partem ii incolunt, qui*. A. 200 *c*; G. 621; H. 445 6. **ipsorum**: for *sua ipsorum*, emphatic, 'their own.' **lingua**: A. 248; G. 403; H. 420. **3. Celtae**: A. 185; G. 324; H. 362 2 2). **nostra**: = *Latinā*

[1] A. = Allen and Greenough's Latin Grammar, G. = Gildersleeve's, H. = Harkness's, the "Standard" edition. References like this, p. 48, 7 (page 48, line 7) are to the pages of this book. Translations of Latin words or phrases are put in single quotation marks.

[2] Sc. (*scilicet*) = "supply," or "understood"; N. = "note"; R. = "remark"; vocab. = "vocabulary," at the end of the book; cf. (*confer*) = "compare"; dir. disc. = "direct discourse"; indir. disc. = "indirect discourse" (*oratio obliqua*); constr. = "construction"; l. = "line"; lit. = "literally"; dep. = "depends" or "dependent"; trans. = "translate" or "translation"; pred. = "predicate."

For other abbreviations see the list preceding the vocabulary. Teachers at the outset should see that their pupils are made familiar both with the abbreviations here given and with the list before the vocabulary.

[*linguā*]. Caesar, although writing in the third person, often uses *nos* and *noster* for *Romani* and *Romanorum*. **lingua**: A. 253; G. 398; H. 424. The language of all the Gauls except the *Aquitani* was Keltic, of which, however, there were many dialects. Some dialects of the Belgae contained German elements. The peculiar speech of the Aquitani survives in the Basque language; see p. 40. **lingua, institutis, legibus**: When several words stand in the same construction, a conjunction is usually repeated with all, or entirely omitted. In translating, supply 'and' with the last two. Sometimes, however, *-que* may be added to the last word, when the conjunction is omitted with the others. **4. inter se**: 'from one another.' A. 196 *f*; G. 212; H. 448 N. **5. dividit**: sing. number because the Marne and Seine were looked upon as forming *one* boundary. A. 205 *b*; G. 202 R. 1; H. 463 II. 3.

6. Horum: A. 216 *a* 2; G. 370; H. 397 3. **propterea quod**: 'because'; *propterea* (= *propter ea*) is properly an adv. meaning 'on this account,' but when closely connected with *quod*, as here, the two may be translated by one word. **7. cultu**: refers to the external characteristics of 'civilization,' as dress, food, etc., while *humanitas* suggests 'refinement' and culture of mind. **8. minime — saepe**: = *rarissime*, 'very seldom.' **mercatores**: the 'traders' were mainly from Massilia (see p. 41) and found their way into central Gaul by following the course of the Rhone and the Saône (see p. 39), so that naturally they did not often go so far north as the region of the *Belgae*. **9. ad effeminandos animos**, etc.: 'tend to weaken the courage.' A. 296, 300; G. 428; H. 544 I. **10. Germanis**: A. 234 *a* G. 356; H. 391 I. What other case does *proximus* govern? Cf. p. 76, 8 and N.; p. 95, 36. **quibuscum**: A. 104 *e*; G. 414 R. 1; H. 187 2. **11. Qua**: 'this.' A. 180 *f*; G. 612 R. 1; H. 453. **12. reliquos**: 'the rest of the.' A. 193; G. 287 R.; H. 440 N. 1 2. **virtute**: *not* 'virtue.' A. 253; G. 398; H. 424. **13. proeliis**: A. 248; G. 403; H. 420. **cum**: the conj. *cum* can be distinguished from the prep. *cum* only by the sense and the connection. **suis**: A. 196; G. 295; H. 449. **finibus**: A. 243; G. 388; H. 414. **14. eos**: = *Germanos*.

15. Eorum: = *horum omnium*, i. e., the inhabitants of Gaul mentioned at the beginning of the chapter; *pars*, 'division,' is used because *eorum* refers to the country rather than to the people. **quam**: object of *obtinere* ('occupy'), which with *Gallos* stands as subject of *dictum est*. A. 329, 330 *a* 2; G. 528; H. 538. The Galli here are simply the inhabitants of the central part of Gaul; see p. 38. **16. capit a**: 'begins at.' **Garumna**: Why abl.? Notice the omission of the conjunction; see N. to l. 3 above. **17. Oceano**: *Oceanus* was often used to designate the Atlantic Ocean; the part here referred to is known to-day as the Bay of Biscay. **ab**: 'on the side of.' **18. vergit**: 'slopes.' **19. extremis**: 'furthest.' Caesar's standpoint is the Roman Province. **inferiorem partem**: the part of

the Rhine near its mouth. **20. in septen. et or. solem**: i. e., (toward the) N. E. **22. ad**: 'near.' **23. occasum solis et septen.**: i. e., (toward the) N. W.

THE WAR WITH THE HELVETII. II–XXIX. B.C. 58.

Page 48. II. 1. longe: A. 343 *d*; G. 679; H. 566. **ditissimus**: how compared? See Vocab., *dives*. **2. Orgetorix**: the name is said by some to mean 'Lord of a hundred mountains'; by others, 'Slayer.' The form ORGETIRIX is found on Gallic coins. **M.**: = *Marco*. **consulibus**: A. 255 *a*; G. 408; H. 431 4. Trans. 'in the consulship of'; = B. C. 61. As the consuls were the chief magistrates of Rome, and held office but one year, Roman dates were designated by the names of the consuls in office at the time. **3. cupiditate**: A. 245 *b*; G. 407 R. I; H. 416 N. I. **civitati**: A. 227; G. 345 2; H. 385 II. **4. ut**: the clause *ut . . . exirent* stands as object of *persuasit*; 'to go out,' etc. **exirent**: pl. because of the idea of *cives* in *civitati*. A. 331 *a*; G. 546; H. 498 I. **5. perfacile** to **potiri**, indirect discourse; sc. *dixit*, or *dicens*. A. 330 *e*, 335, 336; G. 651–653; H. 522–524. The subject of *esse* is *potiri*. How does *perfacile* differ from *facile*, and why is it neuter? A. 170 *c*, 29 *c*, 189 *d*; G. 202; H. 170 I and 42 N. **virtute**: A. 253; G. 398; H. 424. **omnibus**: A. 228; G. 346; H. 386. **praestarent**: subj. for what two reasons? A. 326, 336; G. 587, 653; H. 517, 524. **6. imperio**: A. 249; G. 405; H. 421 I. **Id**: refers to the clause *perfacile . . . potiri*; 'that (course).' A. 225 *c*; G. 344; H. 384, 2, (1). **hoc**: A. 245; G. 407; H. 416.

7. loci natura: 'by the character of their country' (lit. 'of their situation'). **una, etc.**: 'on one side.' **8. latissimo**: A. 93 *b*; H. 444, I. **qui**: why masc., when its antecedent is properly *flumine*? A. 199; G. 616 3 II.; H. 445 4. **9. altera**: here for *secunda*, as often. **10. tertia**: sc. *ex parte*; trace out these boundaries on the map. **11. nostram**: = *Romanam*. **12. rebus**: see N. on **hoc**, line 6. **fiebat**: the subject is *ut . . . possent*. A. 319, 332 *a*; G. 558 3; H. 501 I. I. **et—et**: A. 155 A; G. 478; H. 554 I. 5. **minus late, minus facile**: i. e., than they wished. **finitimis**: A. 228; G. 346; H. 386. **13. qua ex parte**: 'in this respect.' See N. to p. 47, 11. Some editions have *qua de causa*, 'for this reason.' **homines**: a kind of appositive; 'being men.' **bellandi**: A. 298, 218 *a*; G. 429, 373; H. 542 I., 399 I. I. **14. Pro**: 'in proportion to,' 'considering.' **16. finis**: accusative. A. 58; G. 60 I; H. 62. **qui**: i. e., *fines*. **milia**: A. 257; G. 335 2; H. 379. The Roman mile (*mille passus*, pl. *milia passuum*) = 4854 English feet; the *passus* (originally a double pace) as a measure of length = 5 Roman *pedes* = 4 feet 10¼ inches by English measurement. **17. ccxl**: = *ducenta et quadraginta*. Always read numbers in the text with the Latin words. From

the boundaries here given we see that *Helvetia* was nearly the size of modern Switzerland. The reasons assigned by Caesar for the migration of the Helvetii do not seem adequate. There were doubtless other causes which, if known, would throw light upon the subject.

III. 19. constituerunt: i. e., *Helvetii*. **ea, quae**: 'such things as.' **proficiscendum**: A. 300; G. 433; H. 542 III. **pertinerent**: the subj. implies that Caesar was giving the thought of the Helvetii rather than his own. A. 341 *d*; G. 630; H. 528 I. **comparare, coëmere, facere, confirmare**: A. 271 *a*; G. 424; H. 533 I. I. **20. carrorum**: two-wheeled carts, generally covered, for the carrying of the baggage, the women, and children. *Carrus* is of Keltic origin; our word "car" is connected with it in derivation. **quam**: adv. A. 93 *b*; G. 317; H. 170 2 (2); *quam maximum* = *tam magnum quam maximum*, 'as large as possible,' 'the greatest possible.' **22. suppeteret**: A. 317; G. 545 I; H. 497 II. **23. conficiendas**: A. 296; G. 428; H. 544 I. **24. satis**: takes the place of a predicate adj. **duxerunt**: 'they reckoned.' **in**: 'for.' **26. sibi**: A. 228; G. 346; H. 386. **persuadet**: historical present. A. 276, *d*; G. 220; H. 467 III. and III. I. **27. Castico**: see N. to l. 3, *civitati*. **filio, Sequano**: A. 184; G. 319; H. 363. **regnum**: 'headship,' 'chief authority.' At this time there was no absolute or hereditary monarchy among the Gauls. See p. 40. **28. annos**: A. 256; G. 337; H. 379. **29. amicus**: A. 185; G. 324; H. 362 2 2). Not infrequently the Roman Senate conferred the title of "friend" upon foreign chiefs and rulers as a means of winning their favor. **ut . . . occuparet**: object of **persuadet**; see N. to l. 4. Imperfect after historical present. **sua**: 'his own.' See N. to 47, 13. **30. quod**: why not 'because'? **31. civitate**: i. e., *Aeduorum*. **obtinebat**: force of the imperfect? A. 115 2 *b*; G. 222; H. 469 II. **32. plebi**: A. 234 *a*; G. 356; H. 391 I. **acceptus**: here an adj. **idem**: acc.; 'the same thing.' **conaretur**: N. to l. 4, *exirent*. **33. in matrimonium dat**: see IDIOMS, under *dare*, p. 383. **Perfacile** to **possent**, indirect discourse depending on *probat*. The subject of *esse* is *perficere*, the construction is like that in lines 5, 6, above. **34. factu**: A. 303 R.; G. 437; H. 547 N. I. **illis probat**: 'he shows them.'

Page 49. 1. obtenturus esset: a periphrastic form is here used, because there is no future tense in the subj. proper. A. 129; G. 515; H. 496 II. N. 2. **dubium**: neuter, because the subject of *esse* is a clause (*quin . . . possent*). A. 29 *c*; G. 19 III.; H. 42 II. 2 N. **2. Galliae**: A. 216 *a* 2; G. 371; H. 397 3. **plurimum**: neut. acc., used adverbially; strictly speaking, a cognate acc. A. 148 *d*, 240 *a*; G. 331 R. 2; H. 304 I 3 and 371 II. (2). Trans. with *possent*, 'had the most power,' 'were the most powerful.' **possent**: A. 332 *g*; G. 551 2; H. 501 I. 2. **copiis**:

'means,' 'wealth.' **3. conciliaturum**: in compound infinitives *esse* is often omitted; 'would procure.' **4. inter se fidem et iusiur. dant**: 'they give one another an oath-bound pledge of good faith'; hendiadys in *fidem et iusiurandum*. A. page 298; G. 695; H. 636 III. 2. **iusiurandum**: A. 79 *d*; H. 126. **regno occupato**: = *cum regnum occupavissent*. A. 255; G. 408; H. 431 2 (3). **5. tres populos**: i. e., *Helvetios, Aeduos, Sequanos*. **6. Galliae**: A. 249 *a*; G. 405 R. 3; H. 410 V. 3. **sese**: subject of *posse*.

IV. 7. Ea res: what fact? **per indicium**: = *per indices*, 'by informers' (lit. 'by means of information'). **Moribus**: A. 245; G. 407; H. 416 I N. 2. **8. ex**: we should say 'in.' **causam dicere**: 'to plead his case,' i. e., 'to make his defence.' **Damnatum**: = *si damnatus esset*. A. 292; G. 670; H. 549 2. Sc. *eum*, obj. of *sequi*. A. 146 *d*; G. 199 R. 2; H. 298, foot-n. 5. **9. ut . . . cremaretur**: in apposition with *poenam*. A. 329 2 and 332 *f*; G. 559; H. 501 III. The Gauls punished traitors by burning at the stake. On certain occasions also they offered human sacrifices. **Die**: A. 256; G. 392; H. 429. Is *dies* usually fem.? A. 73; G. 70; H. 123. **10. dictionis**: 'for the pleading.' G. 357 R. I; H. 393 N. **11. familiam**: *not* 'family'; see voc. **ad**: adv. modifying *decem*; 'about.' What other adverb is thus used with numerals? **milia**: A. 94 *e*; G. 308; H. 178; appositive of *familiam*. **12. obaeratos**: does the derivation of this word indicate the kind of money most common among the Romans? **13. eodem**: adv. **diceret**: A. 317; G. 545 3; H. 497 II. **14. se eripuit**: i. e., he overawed the judges so that they did not dare call him to account. **ius suum**: the right of the state to punish traitors. **15. conaretur, cogerent**: A. 325; G. 586; H. 521 II. 2. **16. neque**: = *et non*. A. 156 *a*; G. 482; H. 554 I. 2. **17. ut**: what does *ut* mean with the indic.? with the subj.? see voc. **sibi mortem consciverit**: 'committed suicide.' A. 319 *d*; G. 551; H. 504, 3, 2).

V. 18. eius: = *Orgetorigis*. **nihilo**: A. 250; G. 400; H. 417 2. **19. conantur**: see N. to p. 48, 26, *persuadet*. **ut . . . exeant**: explains *id*. A. 329 2; H. 363 5. **20. paratos**: adj. **oppida**: 'walled towns'; while the vici were rows or groups of houses in the open country. **21. numero**: A. 253; G. 398; H. 424. **ad**: adv. **reliqua**, etc.: the buildings belonging to individuals not in the walled towns and villages. **22. incendunt**: 'set fire to'; **comburunt**: 'burn up.' **23. domum**: A. 258 *b*; G. 410; H. 380 II. 2. The idea of motion is suggested by *reditionis*, which = *redeundi*. **spe**: A. 255; G. 408; H. 431. **24. subeunda**: A. 296; G. 428; H. 544 I. **essent**: A. 317; G. 545 I; H. 497 II. **25. mensum**: the more common form is *mensium*. A. 59;

H. p. 36, foot-note 3. **cibaria**: here used for *frumentum*. A vast amount of supplies would be needed to feed 368,000 people (the number of the Helvetii) for three months. It has been computed that for the provisions alone, 8000 carts were required. What kind of supplies did the Roman army have? See p. 28. **domo**: A. 258 *a*; G. 411; H. 412 II. 1. **efferre**: A. 331 *a*; G. 546 R. 1; H. 535 II. **26. Rauricis**: A. 227; G. 345 2; H. 385 II. The Raurici were in the vicinity of modern Basle, the Tulingi about Schaffhausen, the Latobrigi on the upper Danube, in the Black Forest. See map. **27. usi**: 'adopting' (lit. 'having used'). **consilio**: A. 249; G. 405; H. 421 I. **oppidis**: A. 255; G. 408; H. 431. **una**: adv. **eis**: *Helvetiis*. **28. Boios**: see Vocab. **Noreiam**: the site of Noreia is occupied by the town of Neumarkt, in Carinthia (a district of Austria), 150 miles southwest of Vienna. **oppugnarant**: A. 128 *a*; G. 151 1; H. 235. **receptos**: agrees with *Boios*. A. 292 R.; G. 667 R. 1; H. 549 5. **30. socios**: A. 184; G. 319; H. 363. **sibi**: after *adsciscunt*; **ad se** goes with *receptos*.

VI. 31. Erant: 'There were.' Forms of *esse* should often be rendered with the expletive 'there,' even though there is no corresponding word expressed in the Latin. **itineribus**: not to be translated. A. 200 *a*; G. 617; H. 445 8. **domo**: as in l. 25. **32. possent**: potential subj., in this use often called subj. of characteristic; 'routes (of such character that) by them they [the Helvetii] could go out.' A. 320; G. 633; H. 503 I. **unum** (*iter*), and **alterum** (*iter*) are in partitive apposition with *itinera*. A. 184; G. 321; H. 364. **33. inter . . . Rhodanum**: i. e., on the right bank of the Rhone. The Gauls seem to have known of no route over the Jura range. **qua**: A. 148 *e*; G. 107 1; H. 305 V. **singuli**: A. 95; G. 95; H. 172 3; 'one by one,' here = 'in single file.' The narrowest point of the defile is at Pas de l'Écluse, 19 Roman miles (nearly 18 English miles) below Geneva. See Plan I. This route is now traversed by the railway from Paris by way of Macon to Geneva. **34. ducerentur**: for mood see N. to *possent* above; the relative adv. *qua* has the force of a rel. pron. **altissimus**: see N. to p. 48, 8. **35. perpauci**: force of *per*? A. 170 *c*; H. 170 I. **possent**: A. 319; G. 554; H. 500 II. **nostram**: N. to 48, 11. **36. multo**: see *nihilo*, l. 18. **propterea quod**: N. to 47, 6.

Page 50. 1. Allobrogum: on the left bank of the Rhone, in the Province; they were subdued by C. Pomptinus B.C. 61. **2. locis**: A. 258 *f*; G. 385 R.; H. 425 II. 2. **vado**: A. 248; G. 403; H. 420. At present the Rhone is said to be fordable only in two places, a few miles below Geneva. Once having crossed the river, the Helvetii would find the route along the left bank through the Province easy enough. **transitur**: = *transiri potest*. **3. finibus**: A. 234 *a*; G. 356; H. 391 I.

5. Allobrogibus: A. 227; G. 345 R.2; H. 385 II. **persuasuros**: sc. *esse;* so with *coacturos,* below. A. 330 I; G. 200, 527; H. 534 N., 535 I. I. **bono animo**: 'kindly disposed'; in pred. with *esse* understood. A. 251; G. 402; H. 419 II. **6. viderentur**: A. 336; G. 653; H. 524. **vi**: how declined? **7. suos**: refers to the Allobroges; **eos** = *Helvetios.* **paterentur**: subj. for what two reasons? A. 331 *a,* 336; G. 546, 653; H. 498 II., 524. **8. die**: N. to p. 49, 9; N. to p. 49, 31 *itineribus.* **9. conveniant**: A. 317; G. 632; H. 497 I.; *qua* = *ut eā,* 'that on that day.' **a. d. v. Kal. Apr.**: = *ante diem quintum Kalendas Aprilis; ante* governs *Kalendas, diem quintum* being parenthetical and attracted from the abl. by the proximity of *ante;* 'before (on the fifth day) the Kalends of April,' 'the fifth day before the Kalends of Apr.,' = March 28 of the unreformed calendar, March 24 or April 16, according to the Julian calendar; authorities disagree. *Aprilis* is an adj. A. 376 *a,* 259 *e;* G. Appendix; H. 642–644. **10. consulibus**: N. to p. 48, 2. What year is here indicated? See p. 45.

VII. 11. Caesari: A. 225 *e,* 344 *i;* G. 344 and 675 I; H. 384 I., 561 I. **nuntiatum esset**: A. 325; G. 586; H. 521 II. 2. **eos . . . conari**: appositive of *id.* A. 329 I.; H. 539 II. **12. urbe**: Rome, which by way of distinction was "*the* city." **quam**: N. to p. 48, 20. **13. Galliam ulteriorem**: = *Galliam Transalpinam;* see p. 38. **14. ad**: 'into the vicinity of,' 'as far as.' A. 258 *f* R.; G. 410 R. 3; H. 380 II. I (I) **Genavam**: derived from Keltic *gena,* 'mouth,' because the lake there presses into the narrow river course. Plutarch states that Caesar made the journey from Rome to Geneva in eight days. **Provinciae**: A. 227; G. 345; H. 385 I. **15. imperat**: 'levies.' **16. legio una**: probably the tenth legion. Study p. 21. **17. certiores . . . sunt**: see IDIOMS, just before the vocabulary. **18. nobilissimos**: A. 188, 184; G. 195 R.I., 319; H. 441, 363. **legationis**: = *legatorum.* The abstract noun in cases like this is often put for the concrete. **19. dicerent**: A. 317; G. 632; H. 497 I. **sibi**: A. 231; G. 349; H. 387. The rest of the sentence is indir. disc.; the principal verbs are *esse,* whose subject is *facere;* and *rogare,* whose subject is *se* understood. **20. in animo**: 'the intention'; 'the Helvetii intended.' **21. nullum**: emphatic position. **22. liceat**: this would be subj. in dir. disc. A. 331 *a;* G. 546; H. 498 I. **memoria**: A. 248; G. 403; H. 420; *memoria tenebat* = *meminerat.* **23. occisum**: supply *esse,* as also with *pulsum, missum, concedendum,* and *temperaturos.* **24. sub iugum**: two spears were set up and a third placed across on top; this was the 'yoke,' and conquered soldiers were made to pass under it, one by one, as a token of complete submission and humiliation. The terrible defeat here referred to took place B.C. 107. See Mommsen's Hist. of Rome, vol. iii., p. 222;

Liddell's Hist. of Rome, ch. 55. **concedendum**: 'that it (the request of the Helvetii) ought not to be granted.' **25. neque**: = *et non.* **animo**: A. 251; G. 402; H. 419 II. **data facultate**: = *si facultas data esset.* A. 292 R., 310; G. 594 2; H. 507 3 N. 7. **26. faciundi**: = *faciendi.* A. 296; G. 428 and 151 5; H. 239 and 544 I. **27. spatium**: (nom.) = *tempus.* **28. convenirent**: A. 328; G. 574; H. 519 II. 2. **29. diem**: 'time.' **quid**: indef. After *si* and *ne*, *quis* and *quid* always mean 'anyone,' 'anything.' **vellent**: A. 336, 337; G. 653; H. 524. **ad**: 'about,' 'on.' **Id. April.**: = *Idus Aprilis*, = Apr. 13, of the unreformed calendar. A. 376; G. Appendix; H. 641–643. **30. reverterentur**: A. 339; G. 655; H. 523 III. In dir. disc. the sentence would read, *Si quid voletis, ad Id. April. revertimini.*

VIII. 31. legione, militibus: looked upon as instrument rather than as agent. A. 248; G. 403; H. 420. **32. qui — influit**: as a matter of fact the Rhone flows into the lake at the upper end, and out at the lower. **34. Sequanorum**: west of the Jura; see map. **milia passuum**: N. to p. 48, 16. **decem novem**: = *decem et novem* = *undeviginti.* **35. pedum**: A. 215 *b*; G. 364; H. 396 V. **murum fossamque**: we are not to suppose that Caesar built a wall and dug a trench from Geneva to Pas de l'Écluse; (see N. to p. 49, 33, and Plan I.) For a large part of the distance the cliffs on the left bank are so steep as to render fortifying unnecessary. What Caesar did was to make the gentler slopes difficult to scale by cutting the face sheer down from the top for 16 feet, and throwing the dirt out towards the river; in this way the general effect of a wall and moat was produced, as shown by the "section" view in Plan I. At points specially exposed he erected redoubts (*castella*). Recent surveys indicate that the whole distance which really needed to be fortified was hardly more than three miles out of the nineteen. The work was probably completed in three or four days.

Page 51. 1. praesidia: 'garrisons,' referring to the forces occupying the redoubts; the redoubts themselves were called *castella*. **quo**: A. 317 *b*; G. 545 2; H. 497 II. 2. **2. se invito**: 'without his leave,' 'against his will' (lit. 'he being unwilling'). A. 255 *a*; G. 408; H. 431 4. **conarentur**: A. 342; G. 631; H. 529 II. Notice that the hist. pres. *communit* is followed both by a primary tense (*possit*), and by a secondary tense (*conarentur*). A. 287 *e*; G. 511 R. 1; H. 495 II. **4. negat**: = *dicit non.* **more**: A. 245; G. 407; H. 416. **5. iter**: 'right of way.' **vim facere**: 'use force.' **6. conentur**: A. 336; G. 653; H. 524. **prohibiturum**: = *se prohibiturum esse.* **spe**: A. 243; G. 388; H. 414. **7. iunctis, etc.**: 'by joining boats and rafts.' A. 255; G. 408; H. 431 2 (2). We should expect *alii* before *navibus* correlative with *alii* before *vadis*, 'some . . . others.' But the use of the latter *alii*

alone implies that most of the Helvetii tried to cross over in the way first mentioned. **9. conati, si — possent**: 'having tried (to see) whether they could.' A. 334 *f*; G. 462, 2; H. 529 II. 1 N.1. What particle is commonly used with single indirect questions? **operis munitione**: 'by the strength of the works.' **10. concursu**: the rapid massing of the soldiers at any point attacked. **conatu**: A. 243; G. 388; H. 414.

IX. 12. una via: 'only the way.' **qua**: A. 258 *g*; G. 403; H. 420, 1, 3). **Sequanis**: N. to l. 2, *se*. **13. angustias**: the Pas de l'Écluse, where, as stated in Chapter 6, a few men could prevent the passage of the Helvetii. **sua sponte**: 'by their own influence.' A. 248; G. 403; H. 420. **14. possent**: A. 325; G. 586; H. 521 II. 2. **15. eo**: N. to *se*, l. 2, above; 'by his intercession' ('he being intercessor'). **impetrarent**: A. 287 *e*; G. 511 R.1; H. 495 II.; 'they might gain their request.' **16. gratia**: 'popularity.' A. 248; G. 403; H. 420. **plurimum**: N. to p. 49, 2. **17. Helvetiis**: A. 234 *a*; G. 356; H. 391 I. **19. novis rebus**: 'a revolution.' A. 227; G. 345; H. 385. **quam**: N. to p. 48, 20. **21. ut . . . patiantur**: object of *impetrat*; *uti . . . dent* is object of *perficit*. A. 331 *a*; G. 546; H. 498 I. and II. **obsides**: hostages were exchanged between states and tribes as a pledge of good faith. If the agreement were violated, the hostages were usually put to death with the most horrible tortures. **22. Sequani, Helvetii**: sc. *obsides dent*. **itinere**: A. 243; G. 388; H. 414. **23. prohibeant, transeant**: A. 317; G. 545; H. 497 II.

X. 24. renuntiatur: 'word is brought back;' the *re-* implies that men had been sent out by Caesar who now returned with the information sought. The subject is the following infin. **Helvetiis, etc.**: see N. to p. 50, 19–20. The Helvetii intended to settle over near the west coast of Gaul. **25. Santonum**: see map; the name still survives in the name of the French province Saintonge and the town of Saintes. **26. quae**: 'and this,' referring to the state of the Tolosates. **27. Id**: refers to *iter . . . facere* above. **fieret**: A. 336; G. 653; H. 524. The principal verb of the indir. disc. is *futurum* (*esse*), whose subject is the clause *ut . . . haberet*. A. 319, 332 *a*; G. 558 3; H. 501 I. 1. **29. inimicos**: A. 184; G. 319; H. 363. **locis**: A. 234 *a*; G. 356; H. 391 I. **30. munitioni**: A. 228; G. 346; H. 386. **31. legatum**: what were the officers of the Roman army? See p. 22. Titus Labienus was the ablest of Caesar's lieutenants, and one of the most trusted. In the civil war (see pp. 5, 6), however, he deserted his old commander and went over to the side of Pompey. **Italiam**: Italia proper extended north only as far as the Rubicon; but Caesar here evidently includes Cisalpine Gaul,

which was really his destination. **33. Aquileiam**: a Roman colony (founded B.C. 181) near the head of the Adriatic Sea, east of Venice. It was the centre of the Roman military operations for the Northeast, and was hence strongly garrisoned. At one time it had 800,000 inhabitants.

Page 52. 1. ulteriorem Galliam: = *Galliam Transalpinam;* see p. 38. **quinque**: the two legions levied in Cisalpine Gaul were the XIth and XIIth, the three drawn from winter-quarters at Aquileia, the VIIth, VIIIth, and IXth. As the Xth legion was already near Geneva, Caesar's force now consisted of six legions (how many men? see p. 21) and soldiers from the Province (p. 50, 14–16). **2. Ibi**: = *in Alpibus;* Caesar's route lay by way of Turin and Mt. Génèvre. See map. **3. itinere**: N. to p. 51, 22. **4. Compluribus**: order, *his pulsis compluribus proeliis.* **ab**: 'from.' **5. Citerioris**: on the side nearer Rome; *cit. prov.* = *Galliae Cisalpinae.* **extremum**: sc. *oppidum;* 'last,' here = 'most westerly.' **8. trans Rhodanum**: Caesar crossed to the west of the Rhone, and went outside the province in order to intercept or overtake the Helvetii, who, with their vast throng of women and children and their loaded carts, had gone only about 100 miles, in the time that he had taken (doubtless 40–50 days) to bring the five legions from Cisalpine Gaul. The Segusiavi were clients of the Aedui, hence on good terms with the Romans.

XI. 9. angustias: see p. 49, 32, and p. 51, 13. **11. populabantur**: notice the change from the plup. *traduxerant* to the impf., implying that the devastation was still going on. **sua**: A. 188, 197 *d*; G. 195 R.2; H. 449, 4. **12. possent**: A. 326; G. 587; H. 517. **rogatum**: A. 302; G. 436; H. 546. **13. Ita se meritos esse**: '(saying) that they had so deserved.' **14. nostri**: with *exercitus,* = *Romani.* **vastari**: A. 288 *a*; H. 537, 1. **15. eorum**: = *sui.* **17. depopulatis**: passive. A. 135 *b*; H. 231 2. **19. trans Rhodanum**: west of the Rhone. **20. fuga**: A. 248; G. 403; H. 420. **demonstrant**: = (*eum*) *certiorem faciunt.* **21. sibi**: A. 231; G. 349; H. 387. **21. solum**: noun. **reliqui**: A. 216 *a* 1; G. 371; H. 397 1; 'that they had nothing left.' **Quibus**: 'These.' A. 180 *f*; G. 612, R.1; H. 453. **22. exspectandum [esse] sibi**: 'that he ought not to wait.' A. 232, 330 *c*; G. 353; H. 388 and 301 2. **23. fortunis consumptis**: render by a clause beginning with 'after.' **24. pervenirent**: A. 328; G. 574; H. 519 II. 2.

XII. 25. Flumen, etc.: 'There is a river (called) the Arar'; N. to p. 49, 31; consult p. 39 and map. For a part of its course the Arar (Saône) formed the boundary between the territories of the Aedui and the Sequani. **26. lenitate**: A. 248 R.; G. 401; H. 419 III. **27. fluat**:

A. 334; G. 469; H. 529 I. **possit**: A. 319; G. 554; H. 500 II. **28. iunctis**: N. to p. 51, 7. Where the Helvetii crossed the Saône is not known; probably a few miles north of its junction with the Rhone. **29. copiarum**: 'forces.' **partes, flumen**: A. 239 *b*; G. 330 R. 1; H. 376. **30. citra**: on the east side. **31. Ararim**: A. 56 *a* 1; H. 62 III. 1. **de**: 'in' (lit. 'out of'); *de* with *vigilia* implies that the watch had already begun. See p. 33. A. 153; G. 393 R.; H. 429 I. **32. profectus**: from *proficiscor*. **34. concidit**: *concīdit;* how different in meaning from *concĭdit?* **mandarunt**: A. 128 *a*; G. 151 1; H. 235. **35. in silvas**: the acc. with *in* implies the idea of motion in *abdiderunt;* they (went) into the woods and concealed themselves.

Page 53. 1. Tigurinus: A. 185; G. 324; H. 362. The word *pagus* ('canton'), which properly has reference to a division of territory, is here used of the people inhabiting it. **2. divisa**: N. to p. 47, 1. **domo**: A. 258 *a*; G. 411; H. 412 II. 1. **exisset**: A. 325; G. 586; H. 521 II. 2. **3. memoria**: A. 256; G. 392; H. 429. **L. Cassium**: see p. 50, 22–25 and N. **4. casu**: A. 245; G. 407; H. 416. **5. quae pars**, etc., = *ea pars civitatis Helvetiae, quae.* A. 200 *b* N.; G. 618; H. 445, 9. **6. princeps persolvit**: 'was the first to pay.' A. 191; G. 324 R. 6; H. 443 N. 1. **8. quod**, etc.: *quod Tigurini, eodem proelio quo Cassium* (*interfecerant*), *interfecerant Lucium Pisonem legatum, avum Lucii Pisonis, eius* (Caesar's) *soceri.* Lucius Calpurnius Piso, consul B.C. 58 (see p. 45), was the father of Caesar's second wife. Thence she took the name Calpurnia, familiar to the readers of Shakspere's "Julius Caesar." **9. proelio**: A. 256; G. 392; H. 429.

XIII. 11. Hoc proelio facto: = *post hoc proelium.* **12. posset**: A. 317; G. 545 1; H. 497 II. **in**: 'over.' **faciendum**: 'he has a bridge built.' A. 294 *d*; G. 431; H. 544 2 N. 2. **14. id**: object of **fecisse**; explained by *ut flumen transirent.* A. 329 2; H. 363, 5. **15. illum**: = *Caesarem.* **intellegerent**: A. 325; G. 586; H. 521 II. 2. **16. legationis**: N. to p. 50, 18. **17. bello Cassiano**: 'war with Cassius.' A. 190; G. 360 R. 1; H. 395 N. 2. As the defeat of Cassius took place B.C. 107, at the time of which Caesar was writing (B.C. 58), Divico must have been a very old man. **18. si**, etc.: indir. disc. to the end of the chapter. The direct form is given in A. 339, and in Comstock's First Latin Book, p. 226. A general outline of each sentence is here given.

Si to Helvetiorum. This sentence is *Declaratory*, as far as **voluisset**; the remainder is *Imperative.* The Principal Verbs in the Declaratory part are **ituros** (**esse**), **futuros** (**esse**); the Principal Verb in the Imperative part is **reminisceretur**, 'let him remember' ('he should remember'). — **Quod to niterentur.** This sentence is *Imperative*, to **despiceret**; the remainder is *Declaratory.* The Principal Verbs in the Imperative

part are (ne) **tribueret, despiceret,** 'let him not' (= 'that he should not') attribute (the victory), etc., 'or despise them'; the Principal Verb in the Declaratory part is **didicisse.** — **Quare** to **proderet.** This sentence is *Imperative*, the Principal Clause being **ne** (Caesar) **committeret**: 'let him not (= that he should not) cause the place where they should take (should have taken) their stand to receive (lit., 'cause that it should receive') a name,' etc., 'or transmit the remembrance' (of the defeat to future generations).

18. faceret, constituisset, voluisset: A. 336, 337; G. 653; H. 524. **constituisset, voluisset**: indic. fut. perf., in direct disc. **19. ituros** [esse] and **futuros** [esse] represent the indic. fut. of the direct form. A. 330 I, 337; G. 527, 659; H. 535 I., 527 I. **ubi**: = *in qua*. **20. bello**: A. 248; G. 403; H. 420. **perseveraret**: sc. *Caesar*. **21. reminisceretur**: = *reminiscere* (imper.) in direct disc. A. 339; G. 655; H. 523 III. **incommodi**: refers to the defeat of Cassius. A. 219; G. 375; H. 406 II. **22. Quod**: causal conj.; 'as to the fact that.' A. 333 *a*; G. 525; H. 516 II. 2 N. **pagum**: i. e, *Tigurinum*. **23. adortus esset, transissent**: A. 336; G. 653; H. 524. **24. possent**: subj. for what two reasons? **ne**: A. 269 *a*; G. 266; H. 483, 3. **rem**: refers to the clause *quod . . . adortus esset*. **virtuti**: A. 225; G. 344; H. 384 II. Supply *aliquid* as object of *tribueret*. **25. tribueret**: A. 339; G. 655; H. 523 III. How would *ne tribueret, despiceret*, be expressed in direct disc.? **ipsos**: = *Helvetios*. **se ita**, etc.: in dir. disc., (*nos*) *ita a patribus maioribusque nostris d i d i c i m u s*, *ut magis virtute quam dolo c o n t e n d a m u s*, *aut insidiis n i t a m u r*. **26. didicisse**: = *institutos esse*. **contenderent**: A. 319; G. 554; H. 500 II. **27. insidiis niterentur**: 'rely on ambuscades.' A. 248, 254 *b*; G. 403 R. 3; H. 420 and 425 I. I) N. **committeret**: 'give occasion.' A. 339; G. 655; H. 523 III. **28. constitissent**: in dir. disc. fut. pf., 'where we shall have taken our stand.' **29. caperet, proderet**: what mode in direct disc.? A. 332 *e*; G. 554; H. 501 II. I.

XIV. 30. His: sc. *legatis*. **Eo**: 'for this reason.' A. 245; G. 407; H. 416; indir. disc. from **Eo** to p. 54, 15; a part of the passage in both direct and indirect forms is given in G. 664 2 and H. 531. **dubitationis**: A. 216 *a* 2; G. 370; H. 397 3. **31. dari**: A. 336; G. 653; H. 523 I. **32. memoria teneret**: 'he remembered.' A. 248; G. 403; H. 420. **merito**: A. 248 R.; G. 401; H. 419 III. N. 2. **eo — quo**: A. 250 R.; G. 400; H. 417 2. **33. qui**: = *populus Romanus*, 'it.' **iniuriae**: A. 218 *a*; G. 373; H. 399 I. 2. **34. fuisse**: *fuit* in dir. disc.; 'it was not'; the subject is *cavere*. **eo**: A. 245; G. 407; H. 416. **deceptum**: i. e., *populum Romanum deceptum esse*. **35. commissum**: sc. *aliquid esse*. **timeret**: subj. also in dir. disc., characteris-

tic result; for *quare* here = *propter quod*. A. 320 *a*; G. 633, 634; H. 503 I. **36. timendum**: sc. *esse;* impers. A. 330 *e*; H. 301 2. **quod**: 'now'; properly an adverbial acc. referring to the thought of the preceding sentence (lit. 'as to which'). A. 240 *a*; G. 331 R.3; H. 378 2 and 453, 6. **contumeliae**: A. 219; G. 375; H. 406 II.

Page 54. 1. num: what sort of an answer does *num* expect? A. 210 *c*; G. 458; H. 351, 1 N.3. **iniuriarum**: depends on *memoriam*. The 'wrongs' are specified in the following clauses introduced by *quod*, 'that.' A. 329, 3 and 184; H. 540 IV. and 363, 5. **2. eo**: = *Caesare*. A. 255 *a*; G. 408; H. 431 4. **temptassent**: A. 128 *a*, 336; G. 151 1, 653; H. 235, 524. **3. Allobrogas**: Greek acc. of a Keltic word. A. 63 *f*; G. 73; H. 68. **4. posse**: in dir. disc. *possim*. **Quod**: 'the fact that'; the two clauses introduced by *quod* stand as subject of *pertinere*. A. 333 *a*; G. 525; H. 516 II. 2 N. **sua**: 'their,' of the Helvetii. **victoria**: referring to the defeat of the Romans under Cassius, B.C. 107. **6. eodem pertinere**: 'pointed to the same thing,' i. e., impending destruction of the Helvetii. **Consuesse**: is this perfect in meaning? A. 143 *c*. N., 128 *a*; G. 151 1 and 228 2 R.1; H. 235 and 297 I. 2. **7. quo**: A. 317 *b*; G. 545, 2; H. 497 II. 2. **9. Cum**: temporal, causal, or concessive? A. 326; G. 610; H. 515 III. **10. ea**: object of *facturos* [*esse*], with which supply *eos*. **11. Aeduis**: sc. *satisfaciant*. A. 227 *e*; G. 345; H. 384 II. 4 N.1. **ipsis**: = *Aeduis*. **13. sese**, etc.; in dir. disc., *vobiscum pacem faciam* (indic.). **15. consuerint**: A. 319; G. 554; H. 500 II.

XV. 17. movent: sc. *Helvetii*. **Idem**: neut. acc. **19. coactum habebat**: A. 292 *c*; G. 230; H. 388 1 N. **20. videant**: pl. from the idea of *equites* in *equitatum*. A. 317; G. 632; H. 497 I. **21. faciant**: A. 334; G. 469; H. 529 I.; *quas* is interrogative. **Qui**: how trans.? A. 180 *f*; G. 612 R.1; H. 453. **cupidius**: 'too eagerly.' A. 93 *a*; H. 444 1. **novissimum agmen**: the 'rear' of the line of march of the Helvetii. **alieno loco**: 'in an unfavorable place.' A. 258 *f*; G. 385 R.; H. 425 II. 2. **23. de nostris**: = *nostrorum*. A. 216 *c*; G. 371 R.5; H. 397, 3 N.3. **24. equitibus**: looked upon as instrument rather than as agent. A. 248; G. 403; H. 420. **25. novissimo agmine**: 'rear' of the Helvetian line of march. Study pp. 29–31. A. 258 *f*; G. 385 R.; H. 425 II. 2. **26. proelio**: A. 248; G. 403; H. 420. **nostros**: sc. *milites*. **27. in praesentia**: = *in praesenti tempore*, 'for the moment.' **rapinis**: A. 243; G. 388; H. 414 I. **28. prohibere**: object of *habebat*, with *satis* as predicate acc. A. 239 *a*, 271; G. 334; H. 373, 533. **Ita**: correlative with *uti*. **dies**: A. 256; G. 337; H. 379. **circiter**: adv. modifying *quindecim*. **30. primum** [agmen]: 'van'; see p. 29.

quinis, senis: distributive, i. e., 'five or six miles (each day).' A. 95; G. 95; H. 172 3. **milibus**: A. 247; G. 399; H. 417; N. to 48, 16.

XVI. 32. Aeduos frumentum: A. 239 *c*; G. 333; H. 374. **33. publice**: 'in the name of the state.' **essent polliciti**: Caesar the writer presents the statement of Caesar the commander as if it were the thought of some one else, or a clause in indir. disc.; 'which (he said) they had promised.' A. 341 *d* R.; G. 630; H. 528 I. **flagitare**: A. 275; G. 650; H. 536 I. Notice the frequentative (or iterative) force, 'kept asking,' 'asked again and again.' A. 167 *b*; H. 336. **frigora**: 'cold seasons.' What difference in meaning between sing. and pl. of such words? A. 75 *c*; G. 195 R. 5; H. 130, 2. **34. posita**: A. 291 *b*; G. 439; H. 550 N. 2. **35. frumenta**: standing grain. Why pl.? **ne pabuli, etc.**: the season must have been very backward, for it was now the middle of June or later. Caesar, too, was writing with the early spring of Italy in mind. **ne quidem**: 'not even.' A. 151 *e*; H. 569 III. 2. **36. frumento**: A. 249; G. 405; H. 421 I.

Page 55. 1. flumine: A. 258 *g*; G. 403; H. 420. **2. averterant**: the Helvetii had turned to the northwest, into the valley of the Loire (Liger), avoiding the mountains in the region of the Aulerci Brannovīces. See map. **3. Diem ex die ducere**: = *ducere* ('were putting off') *Caesarem ex die in diem* ('from day to day'); *ducere* is hist. inf., *diem* acc. of time. **conferri, etc.**: climax; A. p. 299; H. 637 VI.; *conferri* refers to the collecting, *comportari* to the transportation to Caesar's headquarters, *adesse* to the immediate delivery. **5. die**: not to be translated. A. 200 *a*; G. 617; H. 445, 8. **metiri**: A. 270; G. 423; H. 538. How often was the grain measured out to the army? See p. 28. **oporteret**: A. 336; G. 653; H. 524. **7. Divitiaco, Lisco**: sc. *convocatis*; abl. abs. **magistratui**: A. 228; G. 346; H. 386. **8. vergobretum**: a Keltic word meaning 'giver of judgment.' A. 239 *a*; G. 334; H. 373. **annuus**: A. 191; G. 324 R. 6; H. 443. **9. in suos**: 'over his people.' **eos**: = *Divitiacum et Liscum*. **10. posset**: sc. *frumentum*. A. 341, 342; G. 630, 631; H. 528 I and 529 II. **tam necessario tempore**: 'at so urgent a crisis.' **11. hostibus**: A. 255 *a*; G. 408; H. 431, 4. **sublevetur**: see N. to p. 54, 32, *essent polliciti*; also A. 287 *e*; G. 511 R. 1; H. 495 II. **12. magna ex parte**: 'in great measure.' **13. multo**: A. 250; G. 400; H. 417, 2. **sit**: N. to p. 54, 32.

XVII. 16. quod: sc. *id*, object of *proponit*. **Esse, etc.**: indir. disc. to the end of the chapter. **17. plurimum valeat**: 'has the greatest influence'; see N. to p. 49, 2. **plus possint**: 'have more power.' The state of things here depicted arose from the feudal organi-

zation of society, which rendered it possible for the great land-holders and chiefs to control vast multitudes of personal adherents. Cf. p. 40. **19. ne . . . conferant**: pl. from the plural idea in *multitudinem*, from which the subject is to be supplied; 'from furnishing.' A. 331 *e*; G. 546; H. 498 II. **20. si . . . sint erepturi**: parenthetical, giving the arguments used by the demagogues to stir up the people. **23. una**: adv. **reliqua**: A. 193; G. 287 R.; H. 440 2 N. 1. **Aeduis**: A. 229; G. 344 R. 2; H. 386 2 and 385 II. 2. **sint erepturi**: more emphatic than *eripiant*, which might have been used. A. 319 *d*; G. 554; H. 501 II. 2. Why must the fut. subj. be expressed by a periphrastic form? See N. to p. 49, 1. **24. quaeque . . . gerantur**: 'and whatever is done' (lit. 'and what things are done'). **25. se**: = *Lisco*. **Quin etiam**: 'moreover.' **26. quod**: 'in that.' A. 333 *a*; G. 525; H. 516 II. 2 N. **27. id**: refers to the clause, *Quod . . . enuntiarit*. **28. tacuisse**: trans. as plup. indic. A. 288; G. 529, 530; H. 537.

XVIII. 30. pluribus: A. 255 *a*; G. 408; H. 431 4. **31. iactari**: 'discussed.' **dimittit, retinet**: what is the omission of a conj. (a usage common in Caesar) called? A. p. 298; G. 475 R.; H. 636 I. 1. **32. solo**: sc. *eo*. **34. esse**: sc. *haec*. **vera**: case? A. 186 *b*; G. 202; H. 536 2 2). **Ipsum**: in pred.; 'that Dumnorix was the very man'; indir. disc. to p. 56, 16, *reperiebat*. **35. magna gratia**: A. 251; G. 402; H. 419 II. **36. Compluris**: acc. pl. **annos**: A. 256; G. 337; H. 379.

Page 56. 1. vectigalia: from *veho*, *vectus*, meaning what is *brought in* to the public treasury; revenues in general, taxes on grain and other products of the soil, stock, etc. The **portoria** were customs duties collected on imports and exports, levies on goods passing through the country on rivers and roads, bridge tolls, and the like. These revenues were "farmed out," as among the Romans, — that is, the privilege of collecting them was sold at auction to the highest bidder, who guaranteed to the State a certain sum, did the collecting through his agents, and kept for himself all that he could get over and above the amount paid in to the public treasury. **redempta habere**: = *redemisse*. A. 292 *c*; G. 230; H. 388 1 N. **2. illo licente**: Dumnorix was so powerful and arbitrary that when he bid for the collecting of the revenues no one dared oppose him; hence he was awarded the privilege on the most favorable terms. **3. auxisse**: why not *crevisse*? **largiendum**: A. 300; G. 433; H. 542 III. N. 2. **4. comparasse**: sc. *eum*. A. 128 *a*; G. 151 1; H. 235. **5. neque**: = *et non*. A. 156 *a*; G. 482; H. 554 I. 2. **domi**: A. 258 *d*; G. 412 R. 1; H. 426, 2. **6. largiter**: what peculiarity in the formation of this adverb? **largiter posse**: = *largiter potentem esse*. **7. causa**: 'for the sake of.' A. 245 *c*; G. 407; H. 416. **8. ipsum**: Dumnorix, whose wife was the daughter of Orgetorix; see

Chap. 3. **9. sororem ex matre**: sc. *partam*; 'half-sister on the mother's side.' **nuptum**: A. 302; G. 436; H. 546 I. **nuptum collocasse**: 'had given in marriage.'

10. cupere Helvetiis: 'was well-disposed toward the Helvetii.' A. 227; G. 345; H. 385 I. **11. suo nomine**: 'on his own account.' A. 245; G. 407; H. 416. **12. deminuta**: sc. *sit*. **Divitiacus**: was a Druid of high rank, and a man of some culture; he had spent some time at Rome, B.C. 63, endeavoring to get the help of the Romans against Ariovistus. **13. quid**: N. to p. 50, 29. **14. accidat**: here used of something unfavorable, disastrous. **per**: 'with the help of.' A. 246 *b*; G. 403; H. 415 I. N. I. **15. imperio**: 'under the sovereignty.' A. 245; G. 407; H. 416; or, A. 256; G. 392; H. 429; 'while the Roman people were in power.' **17. quod**, etc.: 'in regard to the unsuccessful cavalry skirmish which had taken place'; *proelium* is attracted into the relative clause, while its proper place in the antecedent clause is taken by *fugae*. **19. auxilio Caesari**: A. 233; G. 350; H. 390 II.

XIX. 22. Quibus, etc.: 'after these things had been found out.' **suspiciones**: 'grounds of suspicion.' **23. accederent**: = *adderentur*, 'were added.' A. 325; G. 586; H. 521 II. 2. **quod**: 'that,' 'the fact that.' **24. traduxisset**: A. 341 *d*; G. 630; H. 516 II., and 528 I. **curasset**, etc.: 'had procured an exchange of hostages.' **25. iniussu**: 'without his own (Caesar's) bidding and that of the state' of the Aedui. **26. ipsis**: = *Caesare et Aeduis*. **magistratu**: the Vergobret, Liscus; see Chap. 16. **27. causae**: dep. on *satis*, which is used as a noun. A. 216 *a* 4; G. 371; H. 397 4. **28. animadverteret**: subj. for two reasons (*quare* = *propter quod*). A. 320 *a*, 336; G. 633, 634, 653; H. 524, 503 I. **29. rebus**: A. 227; G. 345; H. 385 I. **unum**: nom., 'one consideration.' **31. cognoverat**: 'he was familiar with.' A. 279 *d* R; G. 228 2 R. I; H. 297 I. 2. Notice the omission of the conjunctions in this line. Cf. N. to p. 47, 3, *lingua*, etc. **32. ne**: 'that.' A. 331 *f*; G. 552; H. 498 III. N. **eius**: = *Dumnorigis*. **33. prius, quam**: trans. as one word, 'before.' **conaretur**: A. 327; G. 579; H. 520 II. **34. cotidianis**: 'ordinary.' **35. Galliae**: noun or adj.?

Page 57. 1. cui: 'in whom.' **omnium rerum**: 'in every respect.' **eo**: = *Divitiaco*. **3. sint dicta**: A. 340; G. 630; H. 528 I. **4. eo**: = *Dumnorige*. **apud se**: 'in his (Caesar's) presence.' **5. eius**: dep. on *animi*; 'without wounding his (Divitiacus's) feelings.' **ipse**: Caesar. **causa cognita**: abl. abs.; 'after trying the case.'

XX. 8. gravius: 'too severe.' A. 93 *a*; H. 444 I. **Scire, etc.**: sc. *dixit*; indir. disc. to l. 18. **9. nec quemquam**: 'and no one.' **ex eo**: 'from that fact,' 'on account of that fact.' **plus doloris**: A. 216

a 2; G. 370; H. 397 3. **10. ipse**: i. e. Divitiacus. **gratia**: A. 245; G. 407; H. 416. **plurimum**: sc. *posset;* see N. to p. 49, 2. **domi**: = *in Aeduis*. **11. ille**: Dumnorix. **12. crevisset**: with *propterea quod;* sc. *opibus ac nervis*. Dumnorix had become powerful through the influence and with the help of Divitiacus. **opibus**: refers to resources, means, while **nervis** means strength, power. A. 249; G. 405; H. 421 I. **13. uteretur**: sc. *propterea quod*. A. 336; G. 653; H. 524. **14. fraterno**: = *fratris*. A. 190; G. 360; H. 395 N. 2. **15. Quod**: N. to p. 53, 36. **ei**: = *Dumnorigi*. **a Caesare**: 'at the hands of Caesar.' **16. cum**: 'while.' **apud eum**: = *apud Caesarem*. **17. non factum** [esse]: 'that it was not done,' object of *existimaturum* (*esse*). **futurum** [esse]: 'it would come about.' **19. peteret**: A. 325; G. 586; H. 521 II. 2. **20. faciat**: A. 331 *f* R.; G. 546 R. 3; H. 499, 2. **tanti,** etc.: 'that his (Caesar's, *apud se*) regard for him (*eius*, = *Divitiaci*) is so great (lit. of so great account).' A. 215 *c*, 252 *a*; G. 379; H. 404, 405. **22. voluntati**: 'in answer to his wish.' **24. intellegat**: A. 340; G. 630; H. 528 I; or, A. 334; G. 469; H. 529 I. See N. to p. 54, 33. **25. praeterita**: = *res praeteritas*, 'by-gones.' **27**: **agat, loquatur**: A. 334, 342; G. 469, 631; H. 529 I., 529 II.

XXI. 28. hostes, etc.: the Helvetii were now in the valley of the Liger, some distance south of Bibracte; see N. to p. 55, 2, and map. **30. esset**: A. 334; G. 469; H. 529 I. **in circuitu ascensus**: 'the ascent in case one should go around' (lit. 'in the going around'), i. e., in case one should try it from the other side. Caesar planned a flank movement, by which he intended secretly to get on the other side of the height, and occupy the summit above the heads of the enemy,—a very advantageous position. **31. cognoscerent**: A. 317; G. 632; H. 497 I. **misit**: sc. *exploratores*, 'scouts.' **esse**: sc. *ascensum*. **32. De tertia vigilia**: N. to p. 52, 31. **pro praetore**: when a lieutenant was given a special responsibility, to act outside the presence of the commander, he was called *legatus pro praetore*, 'lieutenant in place of the general,' and for the time being had the authority and insignia of the commander. On the *legatus* see p. 22. **33. ducibus**: appositive, 'with those men as guides,' referring to the scouts previously sent out. **34. consilii**: A. 216 *a* 1; G. 371; H. 397 3. **35. itinere**: A. 258 *g*; G. 403; H. 420 1 3). **quo**: 'as.' G. 296 R. 1; H. 451 5.

Page 58. 2. rei: A. 218 *a*; G. 373; H. 399 I. 2. **peritissimus**: pred. adj. **3. M. Crassi**: sc. *exercitu*.

XXII. 5. Prima: A. 193; G. 287 R.; H. 440 2 N. 1. As it was now midsummer, daybreak was not far from four o'clock. **summus mons**: 'the top of the height.' **6. passibus**: A. 247; G. 399; H. 417.

8. cognitus esset: A. 325, 323; G. 586; H. 521 II. 2. **equo admisso**: abl. abs., 'with his horse at full speed.' **10. voluerit**: A. 336; G. 653; H. 524. **13. committeret**: A. 331 *a*; G. 546; H. 498 I. **14. visae essent**: A. 342; G. 631; H. 529 II. **15. fieret**: subj. of purpose. **proelio**: A. 243; G. 388; H. 414 I. **16. multo die**: 'later in the day'; abl. of time. **18. perterritum**: participle; force of *per?* **pro viso**: used as a noun, = 'as (something) seen.' Considius in the dim light had mistaken the detachment of Labienus on the height for a Gallic force. **19. renuntiasse**: sc. *id.* **intervallo**: five or six miles, as we learn from p. 54, 30. A. 200 *b*; G. 618; H. 445, 9. **20. milia**: A. 257; G. 335 2; H. 379.

XXIII. **21. diei**: A. 214 *g*; G. 371 R. 4; H. 398 5. **22. cum**: 'before,' 'within which.' **oporteret**: A. 323, 325; G. 586; H. 521 II 2. **24. milibus passuum xviii**: = 16½ English miles; N. to p. 48, 16. Caesar was south of Bibracte. See map. **rei**: A. 228; G. 346; H. 386. **prospiciendum**: sc. *esse;* impers. **25. Bibracte**: A. 57 *d*, 258; G. 60, 3 *b* and 410; H. 63, 2 (1) and 380 II. **26. fugitivos**: 'runaway slaves'; deserters from the ranks were called *transfŭgae.* **decurionis**: what was his position? See pp. 22, 23. **28. existimarent**: A. 341 *d*; G. 630; H. 516 II. **eo**: A. 250 R.; G. 400; H. 423. **30. eo**: 'on this account.' A. 245; G. 407; H. 416. **re**: A. 243; G. 388; H. 414 I. **posse**: sc. *Romanos.* **31. itinere converso**: abl. abs., 'having reversed the line of march.' **32. novissimo agmine**: see pp. 29, 30.

XXIV. **33. animum advertit**: = *animadvertit; animum* is object of *vertit; id* is governed by *ad.* A. 239 *b*; G. 330 R. 1; H. 376. **34. sustineret**: A. 317; G. 632; H. 497 I. The battle was fought some miles south of Bibracte; see the mark of the crossed swords on the map.

Page 59. **1. in colle medio**: 'half-way up the hill.' See Plan II. **triplicem aciem**: see pp. 33, 34. The four legions were placed in a line. **3. supra se**: this implies that Caesar was with the four legions, at the front. **summo**: A. 193; G. 287 R.; H. 440 2 N. 1 and 2. **quas, etc.**: see Chap. 10. **4. auxilia**: soldiers that were not Romans, — light-armed troops and cavalry. See pp. 21, 22. **5. sarcinas**: how different from *impedimenta?* See p. 23. **6. superiore acie**: 'the upper line,' the two legions posted on the top of the hill. **7. carris**: N. to p. 48, 20. **9. acie**: A. 248 R.; G. 401; H. 419 III. **phalange**: a term taken from Greek tactics, meaning 'a compact mass.' The Gauls in the front line of a phalanx often chained themselves together and interlocked their shields, so as to present a firm barrier to the enemy.

XXV. 11. suo: sc. *equo remoto.* **omnium equis**: i. e., of Caesar's staff and the mounted officers, not of the cavalry. Plutarch says that Caesar, in sending his horse away, gave orders that it should be brought back after the battle, in order to pursue the enemy. **14. pilis**: see p. 23. What other weapons did the Roman soldier use? **Ea**: render the first abl. abs. by a temporal clause, the second by a participle with object. **15. Gallis impedimento**: A. 233; G. 350; H. 390 I. **17. scutis, etc.**: as the strong bayonet-like point of the pike was over a foot long, by the force of the hurling it could well penetrate two or more shields, which in so dense a throng overlapped one another. **18. inflexisset**: H. 326; G. 587; H. 517. **sinistra**: the shield was carried on the left arm. **19. ut**: 'so that.' **iactato**: 'exerted' in trying to pull the bent point of the pike from the shields. **20. nudo**: 'unprotected' by a shield. **21. pedem referre**: see IDIOMS. **mons**: the height spoken of, p. 57, 29. **22. mille**: here a noun. A. 94 *e* N., 257; G. 308 and 335 2; H. 178, 379. **eo**: adverb. **23. Capto**: abl. abs.; 'after having reached,' referring to the Helvetii. **24. milibus**: A. 248; G. 403; H. 420. **agmen claudebant**: 'were bringing up the rear.' **25. novissimis** (= *novissimo agmini*) **praesidio**: A. 233; G. 350; H. 390 I. **ex itinere**: 'leaving their (the Boii and Tulingi) line of march.' **latere aperto**: which was the 'unprotected flank' of his army Caesar does not say; it was probably the right flank. See Plan II. **26. circumvenire**: sc. *coeperunt.* **28. conversa**: A. 292 R.; G. 667 R. 1; H. 549 5; 'changed their front and advanced in two divisions'; facing probably in two different directions, — one division facing straight ahead (*prima et secunda acies*), the other forming an angle with this (*tertia acies*). See Plan II. **29. victis ac summotis**: = *Helvetiis.* **30. venientes**: = *Boios ac Tulingos;* these had been in the rear of the Helvetian host, came up too late to join in the main engagement, and so attacked on one side the Roman column that was just driving the Helvetii up the height. Their line of march is indicated on the plan by a dotted line; the second position of the Helvetii, by parallel dotted black lines; the second position of the Romans, by dotted red lines.

XXVI. 31. ancipiti: 'twofold,' because the Romans were fighting on two fronts. **pugnatum est**: 'fighting went on' (lit. 'it was fought'). A. 146 *c*; G. 199 R. 1; H. 301, 1. **32. possent**: sc. *Helvetii, Boii et Tulingi.* **34. proelio**: A. 256 *b*; G. 392 R. 2; H. 379 I. **35. cum**: 'although.' A. 326; G. 588; H. 515 III. **hora septima**: one o'clock. The day, from sunrise to sunset, was divided by the Romans into twelve hours of equal length. **aversum hostem**: 'the back of a foe.' Caesar states this with evident admiration of the bravery of the enemy. **36. Ad multam noctem**: 'to a late hour of the night'; see p. 58, 16, *multo die.*

Page 60. **2. loco superiore**: the top of the rampart made by the vehicles. Even this elevation would be of great advantage in throwing their darts and missiles. **3. mataras**: Gallic spears; *tragulae* were light darts thrown by means of a leather thong. **4. subiciebant**: some sheltered themselves behind the wagons, casting their missiles from underneath and through the spokes of the wheels. **5. impedimentis, castris**: A. 249; G. 405; H. 421 I. Here were the women and children, a large number of whom were doubtless immediately slaughtered. **6. captus est**: agrees with the nearer subject. Notice the force of *atque*; the capture of a son was regarded as more important than that of a daughter. A. 156 *a*; G. 479; H. 554 I. 2. **7. nocte**: A. 256 *b*; G. 392 R. 2; H. 379 I. **8. partem**: A. 256; G. 337; H. 379. **9. fines Lingonum**: 60 or 70 miles from the battlefield, almost directly north. See map. **10. triduum**: = *tres dies* (acc.). The fact that the Romans delayed so long before following up the victory shows that it must have cost them dearly. **11. potuissent**: A. 326; G. 587; H. 517. **Lingonas**: Greek form. A. 63 *f*; G. 73; H. 68. **12. iuvarent**: A. 339; G. 655; H. 523 III. **13. iuvissent**: fut. pf. in dir. disc. A. 337; G. 659 3; H. 527 I. **se,** etc.: *se habiturum esse eos* (= *Lingonas*) *eodem loco, quo Helvetios, haberet.* **loco**: 'position'; A. 258 *f*; G. 385 R.; H. 425 II. 2).

XXVII. **16. Qui**: A. 180 *f*; G. 612 R. 1; H. 453. **convenissent**: here transitive. **18. eos**: = *Helvetios*, not *legatos*. **essent**: A. 342; G. 631; H. 529 II. **20. perfugissent**: A. 341 *d*; G. 630; H. 528 I. **21. ea**: neut. pl. (A. 195, 187 *b*; H. 445 3 N. 1 and 439 2 N.) = *obsides, arma, (fugitivi) servi*, spoils of war. **nocte**: the collection of hostages, etc., was not completed in one day. **22. circiter**: adv. with *sex* (VI.). **Verbigenus**: at home this canton dwelt east of the *pagus Tigurinus*; see map. **23. perterriti**: with *milia*. A. 187 *d*; G. 202 ex. 2); H. 438 6. **ne**: 'that.' A. 331 *f*; G. 552; H. 498 III. N. 1. How is "that not" expressed with words implying fear? **26. existimarent**: A. 341 *d*; G. 630; H. 516 II. **prima**: A. 193; G. 287 R.; H. 440 2 N. 1.

XXVIII. **28. Quod**: A. 180 *f*; G. 612 R. 1; H. 453. **ubi**: of place or time? **quorum**: precedes its antecedent, *his*. **29. conquirerent**: A. 331 *a*; G. 546; H. 498 I. **sibi**: 'in his sight.' A. 235; G. 351; H. 384 4 N. 3. **purgati**: pf. part. used as adj., 'cleared,' 'blameless.' A. 272 *b*; H. 537 2 and 536 2 1). **30. in . . . habuit**: a polite way of saying that they were all massacred. **32. unde**: = *e quibus*. **34. domi**: A. 258 *d*; G. 412 R. 1; H. 426 2. **quo**: A. 248; G. 403; H. 420. **tolerarent**: A. 320 *a*; G. 633, 634; H. 503 I. **35. facerent**: 'furnish.' **ipsos**: = *Helvetios, Tulingos, Latobrigos.* **oppida,** etc.: see Chap. 5.

Page 61. **2. unde**: = *ex quo.* **5. transirent**: A. 317; G. 545, 3; H. 497 II. As the Helvetii were reduced to one third of their former number, much of their land must have been left unoccupied after their return, and was probably soon seized upon by German tribes. At any rate the population of that whole region now is of Germanic origin. **6. Boios,** etc.: *Aeduis petentibus* (abl. abs.), *ut Boios in finibus suis collocarent, quod* (*Boii*) *egregia virtute* (A. 251; G. 402; H. 419 II.) *cogniti erant* (*Caesar id* = this request) *concessit.* The Aedui, hard pressed in their struggles with the Sequani, desired an accession of strength. **7. quibus, quos**: = *eis, eos.* A. 180 *f*; G. 612 R. 1; H. 453. **postea** after the great Gallic rebellion under Vercingetorix, narrated in Bk. VII. **9. atque**: 'as.' A. 156 *a*; G. 646; H. 554 I. 2 N.

XXIX. **10. tabulae**: 'lists.' **litteris**: 'characters.' These the Gauls learned from Greek traders (N. to p. 47, 8), but a knowledge of the Greek alphabet was by no means widely diffused; see Bk. V., Chap. 48. The 'lists' were probably written in wax on thin small boards, fastened at the back by a hinge, so as to open like the leaves of a book. **11. tabulis**: A. 200 *a*; G. 617; H. 445, 8. **12. ratio**: 'statement.' **qui**: interrogative. A. 104 *a*; G. 104; H. 188 II. 1. **domo**: A. 258 *a*; G. 411; H. 412 II. 1. **exisset**: A. 334; G. 469; H. 529 I. **13. possent**: A. 320 *a*; G. 633, 634; H. 503 I. **14. rerum**: 'items'; here used of persons; Caesar had in mind the numbers rather than the personality. **capitum Helvetiorum**: = *Helvetiorum.* We say 'head' of stock, but 'souls' of human beings. **15. cclxiii**: = *ducenta sexaginta tria;* read all these numbers in the Latin. **17. ad**: adv., with *nonaginta duo.* **18. fuerunt**: A. 204 *b*; G. 202 exc. 3; H. 462. **milia**: nom., in pred.; *ad* is an adv. Of the 368,000 that started to emigrate, fully 226,000 perished in the brief campaign from March to July. Excavations on the field of the great battle near Bibracte (Autun) have brought to light many graves, in which were found the remains of skeletons, ornaments for the hair, bracelets, knives, and many other things buried with the dead.

THE WAR WITH ARIOVISTUS. XXX–LIV.

XXX. **21. Galliae**: probably here the land of the *Galli* alone is referred to. **22. gratulatum**: A. 302; G. 436; H. 546. **23. Intellegere,** etc.: sc. *dixerunt.* A. 336; G. 653–655; H. 523, 524. **iniuriis**: with two genitives. A. 217 *b*; G. 361 R. 2; H. 398 2; 'inflicted upon the Roman people by the Helvetii.' Notice here the difference in meaning between the subjective genitive, denoting the agent of an action, and the objective genitive, denoting the object (person or thing) toward which the action or feeling is directed. A. 214, 217; G. 361; H. 396 II.

and III. **24. rem**: refers to the preceding clause. **25. ex usu**: 'of advantage'; 'advantageous.' **accidisse**: dep. on *Intellegere*. **26. eo consilio**: 'with this design'; explained by the compound *uti*-clause, which is in apposition with it. A 248 R.; G. 401; H. 419 III. **florentissimis rebus**: 'although their circumstances were,' etc. A. 255 *a* and N.; G. 408; H. 431, 4 and 2 (3). **27. inferrent**: A. 329, 2; H. 363, 5. **28. imperio**: A. 249; G. 405; H. 421 I. **domicilio**: A. 233; G. 344; H. 384 II. 1 3). **copia**: sc. *locorum*. **30. stipendiarias**: predicative. A. 186 *b*; G. 334 R.; H. 373, 1 N. 2. **31. Petierunt, uti sibi . . . liceret**: 'they asked permission.' **32. id . . . liceret**: they wished Caesar's consent in order not to appear to him to be acting disloyally or too independently. **33. habere**: A. 330 *e*; G. 652 R. 2; H. 523 I. N. **35. ne quis**. N. to p. 56, 29, *quid;* 'that not any one,' = 'that no one.' **enuntiaret**: 'should make an announcement' of what might be done in the council. A. 331 *a*; G. 546; H. 498 I. **nisi, etc.**: i. e., *nisi ut ii enuntiarent, quibus*, 'except those to whom,' etc. H. 507, 3 N. 3. Difference between *concilium* and *consilium?* See vocab. **36. mandatum esset**: plup. subj. for fut. perfect ind. of dir. disc. A. 336; G. 653; H. 524. See IDIOMS, p. 389.

Page 62. XXXI. 1. idem: nom. **2. fuerant**: sc. *apud eum*. **petierunt, etc.**: N. to p. 61, 31. **3. secreto**: 'apart' from all others, 'by themselves'; *in occulto*, 'in a secluded place.' Their lives depended on absolute secrecy in the matter. **4. liceret**: A. 270 *a*; G. 199 R. 2; H. 538, 1 (2). **Caesari**: = *Caesaris*. A. 235 *a*; G. 343 R. 2; H. 384 II. 4 N. 2. **5. id**: explained by the appositive clause *ne . . . enuntiarentur*. **se contendere**: sc. *dixerunt*. **6. vellent**: A. 336; G. 653; H. 524. **7. enuntiatum esset**: impers.; 'if disclosure should have been made.' A. 337; G. 659; H. 527 I.; the conclusion of the condition is represented by *venturos* (*esse*). **8. Divitiacus**: see N. to p. 56, 12; indir. disc. to the end of the chapter. Study carefully the moods and tenses. **9. factiones**: 'parties.' **10. principatum**: 'headship.' **12. factum esse**: 'it had come to pass.' A. 336; G. 653–655; H. 523, 524. **Arvernis Sequanisque**: the original cause of contention lay between the Sequani and the Aedui. The latter controlled the country along the lower part of the Saône, and levied excessive tolls upon the dried bacon, the principal export of the Sequani, which was shipped down the river. The Sequani in consequence attacked the Aedui, and proving unequal to the contest, called in the aid of Ariovistus. At this time the Sequani were tributary to the Arverni. **mercede**: A. 252; G. 404; H. 422. **arcesserentur**: A. 332 *e*, 336; G. 557, 653; H. 498 II. N. 2 and 524. **14. posteaquam**: How different in meaning and use from *postea?* **15. adamassent**: *ad-* is here

intensive. **traductos**: sc. *esse*. **plures**: sc. *Germanos*. **esse**: subject? **17**. **clientes**: 'dependents,' here dependent or tributary states. **20**. **fractos**: agrees with *eos* (understood), antecedent of *qui* and subject of *coactos esse*. **21**. **plurimum, etc.**: 'had previously possessed the greatest power.' See N. to p. 49, 2. **22**. **obsides**: appositive. **23**. **sese repetituros, etc.**: appositive of *iureiurando;* A. 329; H. 539 II.; the meaning is, 'and to make the citizens pledge themselves that they' (*sese*). **25**. **quo minus essent sub**: 'to be under.' A. 317 *b*; G. 545, 2; H. 497 II. 2. In cases like this, *quo minus* is more polite than *quin*. **illorum**: = *Sequanorum*. **26**. **Unum se esse**: 'that he (Divitiacus) was the only one.' **27**. **potuerit**: would be subj. in direct disc. A. 320 *b*; G. 633; H. 503 II. 1. **ut iuraret**: 'to take the oath.' A. 331 *e*; G. 546; H. 498 II. **28**. **Romam**: A. 258 *b*; G. 410; H. 380 II. **29**. **postulatum**: A. 302; G. 436; H. 546. Divitiacus visited Rome B.C. 63. See N. to p. 56, 12. **30**. **peius**: 'a worse fate.' **victoribus**: here an adj. A. 88 *c*; H. 441, 3. **31**. **Ariovistus**: the meaning of the name is uncertain. It was formerly thought to mean 'Leader of the Hosts'; later scholars translate it 'Eagle-eyry.' **34**. **altera parte tertia**: 'a second third-part.' **35**. **mensibus**: A. 250, 259 *d*; G. 400 R.3; H. 430. **Harudum**: a German tribe south of the headwaters of the Danube; see map. **36**. **eum**: = *Ariovistum*.

Page 63. **1**. **Futurum esse**: 'it would come about.' The subject is the clause introduced by *uti;* does this clause express purpose or result? **annis**: A. 256; G. 392; H. 429. **omnes**: = *Galli*. **3**. **Gallicum**: sc. *agrum*. **4**. **hanc**: refers to the Gauls, **illa** to the Germans. A. 102 *a* and *b*; G. 290, 292; H. 450 I. At this time the civilization of the Gauls was far in advance of that of the Germans. **victus**: not a participle. **5**. **Ariovistum**: subject of the infinitives below. **ut semel**: 'as soon as' (lit. 'when once'). **6**. **vicerit**: in dir. disc. would be *vicit*. **proelium**: A. 200 *a*; G. 617; H. 445, 8. **Admagetobrigae**: the word means, 'The great mountain'; where the place was is not known. A. 258 *c*; G. 412; H. 425 II. **7**. **nobilissimi cuiusque**: 'of all of the highest rank.' A. 93 *c*; G. 305; H. 458, 1. **8**. **exempla cruciatusque**: 'all kinds of tortures'; a hendiadys. A. p. 298; H. 636 III. 2. **edere**: implies publicity; 'inflicted publicly.' **10**. **posse**: sc. *se*, = *Gallos*. **11**. **quid**: indef. pron. **12**. **auxilii**: A. 216 *a* 3; G. 371; H. 397, 3. **Gallis**: A. 232; G. 353; H. 388; 'all the Gauls would have to do the same thing.' **idem**: subject of *faciendum esse*, explained by the appositive clause introduced by *ut*. A. 332 *f*; G. 554; H. 501 III. **14**. **quaecumque**: indefinite relative, referring to *fortunam;* 'endure whatever fortune might befall them.' **16**. **dubitare**: sc. *se*, = *Divitiacum*. **de**: 'on.' **17**. **sumat**: A. 332 *g*; G. 551, 2; H. 501 II. 2. **18**. **exercitus**: sc. *auctoritate*. **19**. **deterrere, etc.**: 'prevent a larger

population of Germans from crossing the Rhine.' **20. Rhenum**: A. 239 *b*; G. 330 R.1; H. 376 N. See N. to p. 106, 4. **traducatur**: A. 331 *e*; G. 546; H. 498 II.

XXXII. 23. fletu: A. 248 R.; G. 401; H. 419 III. **24. unos**: 'alone.' A. 94 *a*; H. 175 N. I. **nihil**: 'none.' **25. facerent**: A. 336; G. 653; H. 524. **26. quae**: from the interrogative adj. pron. *qui*, in pred., hence agreeing with *causa*, 'what the reason was.' **esset**: A. 334; G. 469; H. 529, I. The clause stands as object of *miratus*. **27. respondere**: A. 275; G. 650; H. 536, I. **28. quaereret**: A. 325; G. 586; H. 521 II. 2. **neque**: = *et non*. A. 156 *a*; G. 482; H. 554 I. 2. **29. idem**: masculine. **30. Hoc**: abl. of degree of difference and cause; 'all the more wretched on this account'; explained by the following *quod*-clause. **31. ne — quidem**: 'not even.' A. 151 *e*; H. 569 III. 2. **33. adesset**; would be subj. also in direct disc.; *velut* (*horrerent*), *si* (*Ariovistus*) *coram adesset*. A. 312; G. 604; H. 513 II. **34. reliquis**: 'to the rest' of the Gauls. **tamen**: 'at any rate.' **Sequanis essent perferendi**: 'the Sequani must endure' (lit. 'by the Sequani must be endured'). A. 232; G. 353; H. 388.

Page 64. — XXXIII. 4. sibi, etc.: 'that he would look after that matter' (lit. 'that that matter would be a care to him'). A. 233; G. 350; H. 390 I. **5. se habere spem**: = *se sperare*. **6. iniuriis**: A. 235 *a*; H. 384 II. 4 N. 2. **7. secundum**: prep.; 'besides those (considerations).' **8. cogitandam** [esse]: 'ought to be taken into consideration.' **9. putaret**: A. 320 *a*; G. 633, 634; H. 503 I.; **quare** here = *propter quas* = *ut propter eas*. **fratres**: A. 185; G. 324; H. 362. **consanguineos**: the Aedui claimed kinship with the Romans, who flattered them by admitting it. **12. quod**: 'a state of things which'; the antecedent lies in the clauses dep. on *videbat* and *intellegebat*. **in**: 'in the case of'; trans. freely, 'in view of the fact that the dominion of the Roman people was so vast.' **14. Germanos consuescere**: 'for the Germans to become accustomed.' This infin. clause and the following one (*multitudinem venire*) form the subject of *esse* (understood after *videbat*). **16. periculosum**: 'a thing dangerous'; appositive of *consuescere* and *venire*. **sibi**: A. 227; G. 345; H. 385 I. **17. quin — exirent**: 'from going out.' **18. ut**: 'as.' **ante**: B.C. 102. See p. 41. **19. exirent**: what mode in dir. disc.? A. 319 *d*; G. 554; H. 500 II. **20. divideret**: A. 326; G. 587; H. 517; trans. the Latin impf. here by an English pres., 'only the Rhone divides.' **21. rebus**: 'that he ought to attend to these things.' A. 230; G. 208; H. 384, 5. **quam maturrime**: 'as early as possible.' A. 93 *b*; G. 317; H. 170, 2 (2). **24. non ferendus**: 'unbearable.'

XXXIV. **24. placuit ei, ut**: 'he (Caesar) resolved to.' **ut . . . mitteret**: subject of *placuit*. **25. qui postularent**: 'to ask.' A. 317; G. 632; H. 497, I. **medium utriusque**: 'midway between both.' A. 218; G. 373; H. 399. **26. velle sese**: in trans. supply 'stating.' **27. Ei legationi**: = *eis legatis*; see N. to p. 50, 18. **28. Si . . . esset**: 'If he himself (Ariovistus) should want anything of Caesar.' A. 243 *e* R.; G. 390; H. 414 IV. N. 4. What is the usual construction with *opus est?* **29. venturum fuisse**: A. 308 *d*; G. 659 2, 662; H. 527 III. **ille**: Caesar. **quid se**: A. 239 *c*; G. 333; H. 374; for **velit** = *velit poscere*. **30. sine, etc.**: Ariovistus was a long distance from Caesar, probably over near the Rhine. **33. mirum**: agrees with the clause *quid . . . esset*. **quid negotii, etc.**: 'what business either Caesar or the Roman people had,' etc., indirect question, subject of *videri*. **34. vicisset**: A. 341 *a*; G. 653; H. 524. **Caesari, populo**: A. 231; G. 349; H. 387. **35. negotii**: A. 216 *a* 1; G. 371; H. 397, 3.

Page 65.—XXXV. **3. affectus**: 'although treated.' **consulatu suo**: Caesar was consul B.C. 59. See p. 3. **4. rex atque amicus**: N. to p. 48, 29. The Roman Senate had played a double part. After the battle of Admagetobriga (see p. 63, 6), fearing the great power of Ariovistus, and perhaps foreseeing the possibility of an alliance hostile to the Romans between him and the Helvetii, the Senate had secretly recognized him as a "ruler" and conferred upon him the title of "friend." But at this very time it was proclaiming its regard for the Aedui, and claiming to maintain their cause against Ariovistus. **5. gratiam referret**: see IDIOMS. **6. neque**: 'and did not consider himself under obligation to discuss and investigate a matter of common interest.' **7. haec esse, quae**: 'these were (the things) which'; explained by the following clauses. **8. quam**: 'any'; N. to p. 50, 29, *quid*. **amplius**: 'afterwards' (lit. 'any more'). **9. traduceret, redderet, permitteret, lacesseret, inferret**: A. 339; G. 655; H. 523 III. **11. illi**: = *Sequani*. **liceret**: hardly necessary to the sense; trans. as if *ut illi* (= *Sequani*) *obsides redderent*. A. 331 *a*; G. 546; H. 498, I. **12. iniuria**: A. 248 R.; G. 401; H. 419 III. N. 2. **13. fecisset—futuram** [esse]: in dir. disc., *feceris* (fut. pf.)—*erit*. A. 337; G. 659; H. 527 I. **sibi, etc.**: 'he himself and the Roman people would cherish uninterrupted kindly feeling and friendship with him.' **14. impetraret**: sc. *Caesar*; i. e., *si non impetrabo,—non neglegam*. **15. M. Messala, etc.**: = B C. 61. See N. to p. 48, 2. **16. provinciam**: 'as a province.' A. 239 *a*; G 334; H. 373 I. **quod**: 'as far as.' A. 320 *d*; G. 629 R.; H. 503 I. N. I. **commodo**: A. 248 R.; G. 401; H. 419 III.; *reipublicae*, objective gen. See IDIOMS. **18. se**: repetition of *sese* above, so as to bring *neglecturum* into close relation with its subject.

XXXVI. 21. qui: the antecedent is the implied subject of *imperarent;* 'they who had conquered should command those,' etc. **vellent**: subj. for what two reasons? **22. victis**: A. 188; G. 195 R.1; H. 441. **alterius**: 'of a second person,' 'of another.' **24. suo**: 'its own,' referring to *populo Romano.* **25. suo**: 'his own,' referring to Ariovistus. **27. stipendiarios**: obliged to pay the *stipendium,* which was a fixed tax, not regulated according to the produce of each year. **28. Magnam**: emphatic. A. 344 *i*; G. 675, 1; H. 561 I. **qui**: 'since he.' A. 320 *e*; G. 636; H. 517. **suo**: refers to Caesar; **sibi**, to Ariovistus. **29. vectigalia**: N. to p. 56, 1. **deteriora**: 'less profitable.' **30. iniuria**: 'wrongfully.' A. 248 R.; G. 401; H. 419 III. N.2. **31. in eo, quod convenisset**: 'in that (relation) which had been agreed upon.' **32. penderent**: the use of this word points back to the time when money was weighed out in uncoined metal; compare the English "pound sterling."

longe eis afuturum: 'would be of little avail to them,' 'far from helping them.' **eis**: A. 229; G. 344 R. 2; H. 385 II. 2. **fraternum**: 'of brethren.' A. 190; G. 360 R.2; H. 395 N.2. **33. Quod**: 'in regard to the fact that,' 'whereas.' A. 333 *a*; G. 525; H. 516 II. 2 N. Freely, 'as far as Caesar's threat was concerned.' **34. se**: = *Caesarem.* In l. 35 *secum* refers to Ariovistus, *sua* to the imaginary opponent implied in *neminem.* **neminem**: '(he would simply say,) that no one.' **35. congrederetur**: 'let him come on!' A. 339; G. 655; H. 523 III. **36. intellecturum**: i. e., *Caesarem intellecturum esse.* **quid — possent**: 'what strength the Germans had.' A. 240 *a*, 238; G. 331 R.2; H. 371 II. (2). **37. inter**: 'during'; stronger than the simple acc. of time.

Page 66. — XXXVII., XXXVIII. 2. Aedui questum: sc. *veniebant.* A. 302; G. 436; H. 546. **3. transportati essent**: i. e., by Ariovistus. A. 340; G. 630; H. 528 I. **4. popularentur**: A. 341 *d*; G. 630; H. 516 II. **ne, etc.**: 'not even by the giving of hostages'; *obsidibus,* abl. abs.; N. to p. 51, 21. **5. Treveri**: sc. *veniebant questum.* **6. Sueborum**: see Bk. IV., Chap. I and notes. **10. veteribus copiis**: the forces of Ariovistus already in Gaul. **coniunxisset**: A. 342; G. 631; H. 529 II **11. resisti**: impers.; 'resistance could be made less easily.' A. 146 *c*; H. 301 I. **12. magnis itineribus**: see p. 30. **13. tridui**: = *trium dierum.* A. 215 *b*; G. 364; H. 396 V. N.1. **viam**: A. 238; G. 331; H. 371 II. N. Caesar was marching eastward from the country of the Senones, where he had caught up with the fleeing Helvetii. Trace his route on the map. **14. occupandum**: gerundive. The gerund in the acc. does not take a direct object. **15. quod**: why not *qui*? A. 199; G. 616 3 II.; H. 445, 4. **16. suis finibus**: probably the territory ceded to Ariovistus by the Sequani, west of the Rhine and south of the Vosges mountains. **Id**: emphatic. **17. sibi**

praecavendum: 'that he ought to take every precaution.' **18. ad bellum**: = *bello*. A. 233; G. 350; H. 390 II. N.2. **usui**: dat. of purpose. **19. facultas**: 'abundance.' **id**: = *oppidum*. **loci**: 'situation.' **20. ad ducendum bellum**: 'for prolonging the war,' i. e., till the arrival of the Suebi. **21. ut**: 'as though,' 'just as if.' **circumductum**: with *flumen*. The Dubis (modern *Doubs*, 'Black River') here bends into the form of a loop, leaving only one side of the town (*reliquum spatium*) not surrounded by it; and this space is taken up by a high hill. **23. pedum**: A. 215 *b*; G. 364; H. 396 V. Why not abl.? A. 247 *c*; G. 311 R.4; H. 417, I, N.2. As a matter of fact the distance not defended by the river is 1600 feet. **24. altitudine**: A. 251; G. 402; H. 419 II. **radices**: object of *contingant*. **25. Hunc** (montem) **arcem**: A. 239 *a*; G. 334; H. 373 and 373, I. Some remains of the wall which 'made this mountain a stronghold' are still to be seen. Numerous excavations made at Besançon within a few years have brought to light many traces of the Gallic city of Vesontio; and recently the foundations of several structures of the Roman period — among them an amphitheatre — have been discovered. **26. nocturnis**, etc.: 'by night and by day.'

XXXIX. 30. moratur: sc. *Caesar*. A. 276 *e*; G. 220 R.1; H. 467 III. 4. **ex percontatione**: 'in consequence of the questions.' **31. vocibus**: 'remarks.' **mercatorum**: there were always many traders around the army. See p. 28. **magnitudine**: A. 251; G. 402; H. 419 II. Other ancient writers speak of the great frame of the Germans. We must remember, however, that the Romans, like the modern Italians, were as a rule of smaller size than the average Englishman or American. This is shown by the measurement of the foot; the Roman *pes* = .97 of the English foot. Doubtless the barbarians of northern Europe seemed larger to the Romans than they would have appeared to us.

Page 67. 1. aciem: 'keen look.' **2. timor**: 'panic,' a shrinking, cowardly fear; while *metus* is a well-grounded dread of impending evil. **3. mentes animosque**: 'minds and spirits.' **4. praefectis**: these were not the *praefecti equitum* (see p. 23, and compare l. 15 below), but probably officers in command of the light-armed troops. Little is known about them. Caesar left Rome heavily in debt. As it was quite the fashion for young men of means to get some experience in military life, he no doubt filled many secondary positions with the relatives of creditors and others whose favor he wished to retain. In the campaign these proved always a hindrance, as in this instance; and they were given as little to do as possible. We see here why Caesar's military tribunes were of so little account; compare p. 22. **5. urbe**: = *Roma*. **amicitiae causā**: Caesar is politic as well as polite in ascribing the presence of these

worthless men in his army to personal attachment to himself. **6. alius alia causa ill.**: '(each) one presenting a different excuse.' A. 203 *c*, 344 *g*; G. 306, 683; H. 459, 1, and 563; *causa* is abl. abs. **8. diceret**: A. 341 *d*; G. 630; H. 528, 1; 'which, as he said, made it imperative.' **petebat ut — liceret**: 'asked permission.' **10. vultum fingere**: 'put on a cheerful expression,' 'control their features.' **11. abditi**: 'hiding themselves.' A. 111 *b* N.1; G. 209; H. 465. What kind of tents did the Romans have? See p. 32. **13. castris**: A. 258 *f*; G. 386; H. 425 II. 2. **testamenta**: formal documents, written and sealed, as shown by *obsignabantur*. **15. milites**: the private soldiers. **centuriones**: generally the bravest men in the army, promoted from the ranks on account of efficient service. **qui, etc.**: *praefecti equitum* and *decuriones*. See pp. 22, 23. **17. vereri**: implies a fear arising from a worthy cause. **19. rem**: acc. of anticipation; a nominative subject of *posset*, would have been the ordinary construction. A. 334 *c*; G. 470. Cf. the scriptural "I know thee, who thou art." **ut**: 'that not.' A. 331 *f*; G. 552; H. 498 III. N. 1. **21. signa ferri**: i. e., 'advance.' **iussisset**: 'should give the order.' A. 336; G. 666; H. 525, 2. **22. fore audientes dicto**: 'obey the command.' A. 234 *a*; G. 356; H. 391 I. Like the scriptural "Ye will not hearken unto me." Cf. the derivation of "obedient" from *obediens*, which = *ob-audiens*.

XL. 25. ordinum: how many *ordines*, and how many *centuriones* in a legion? See pp. 21, 22. How many centurions in the council? Caesar at this time had six legions. Usually only the six centurions of the first cohort took part in the council of war. **26. quam in partem**: 'in what direction'? This indirect question stands as subject of *quaerendum* [*esse*] and *cogitandum* [*esse*]. **28. putarent**: A. 341 *d*; G. 630; H. 516 II. **se**: A. 255 *a*; G. 408; H. 431, 4. The rest of the address is in indir. disc. **30. ab officio**: 'from his obligation' of allegiance. **iudicaret**: in dir. disc., *iudicet*. A. 268, 338 R.; G. 654 R.2; H. 523 II. 1.N. **Sibi . . . persuaderi**: 'he at least was persuaded.' A. 230; G. 208; H. 384 II. 5. **31. cognitis, etc.**: trans. by a clause beginning with 'after.' **32. eum**: = *Ariovistum*. **33. Quod**: 'but.' A. 240 *b*; G. 612 R.1; H. 453, 6. **34. quid tandem**: 'what, pray.' H. 351, 4. **vererentur, desperarent**: A. 338, 334; G 654; H. 523 II. 1. What mood in dir. disc.? **sua**: 'their own.' **35. Factum (esse) periculum**: 'trial had been made.' **hostis**: = *Germanorum*. **36. memoria**: A. 256; G. 392; H. 429. **Cimbris et Teutonis**: the Cimbri and Teutones formed a vast horde of barbarians, mainly of Germanic origin, that in the latter part of the second century B. C. set out to invade Italy. They were well-nigh annihilated in two great battles, at Aquae Sextiae (Aix, see p. 41) in Transalpine Gaul, B. C. 102; and at Vercellae, in Cisalpine

Gaul, the following year. See Mommsen's History of Rome, vol. iii., pp. 232–235; Liddell's History of Rome, pp. 557–562. **38. meritus**: sc. *esse*. A. 272 *b*; H. 536, 2, 1) N. **videbatur**: the subj. would have been more regular; the indic. is emphatic, making prominent the fact. A. 336 *b*; G. 630 R.1; H. 524, 2, 2).

Page 68. 1. servili tumultu: 'at the time of the uprising of the slaves.' The gladiators, who were for the most part slaves captured in war, rebelled under Spartacus, and, with other slaves that flocked to their standards, resisted the Roman arms for three years, B.C. 73–71. As many of these were of Germanic origin, Caesar here speaks of the Romans having become familiar with the prowess of the Germans in the Servile War. The word *tumultus* is used instead of *bellum* in case of any sudden war within the limits of Italy. **quos**: the antecedent is implied in *servili*, = *servorum*. A. 199 *b*; H. 445, 6. **aliquid**: adv. acc., 'somewhat,' 'considerably.' **usus**: although barbarians, yet (*tamen*) the slaves had had the benefit of acquaintance with the Roman methods of warfare, and of gladiatorial training. **2. quae**: A. 187 *b*; G. 616 R.5, 282; H. 445, 3 N.1 and 439, 2 and 3. **3. quantum**, etc.: 'how much advantage there is in steadfast courage' (lit. 'how much of good firmness has'). A. 287 *d*, 334; G. 469; H. 529 I., 495 V. **4. inermos**: referring to the lack of weapons among the followers of Spartacus at the beginning of the insurrection. **5. hos**: i. e., *Germanos*. **7. superarint**: sc. *eos*. **8. qui**: 'and they,' the Helvetii. **pares esse**: see IDIOMS. **9. Si quos**, etc.: 'If the defeat (of the Gauls by the Germans) and the rout of the Gauls alarmed any' of the Romans, etc.

10. Order: *hos posse reperire, si quaererent, Ariovistum, Gallis defetigatis diuturnitate belli, cum multos menses se castris ac paludibus tenuisset neque sui potestatem fecisset* ('and had given them no chance of attacking him,' lit., 'no chance at himself'), *subito adortum* (*eos*) *desperantes iam de pugna* ('giving up hope of battle') *et dispersos, vicisse* (*eos*) *ratione et consilio* ('by skill and strategy') *magis quam virtute*. **14. rationi**: A. 200 *b*; G. 618; H. 445, 9. Trans. *Cui rationi, hac* as though it were *Hac ratione, cui*. Ariovistus himself knew that for the clever tactics with which he had defeated the Gauls there would be no chance against the Romans. **16. Qui**: '(Those) who assigned their fear to a pretence (of anxiety, i. e., a pretended anxiety) about the grain supply.' **19. praescribere**: sc. *officium*. **viderentur**: subj. in dir. disc. A. 326; G. 587; H. 517. **sibi curae**: A. 233; G. 350; H. 390 I. **22. Quod**: A. 333 *a*; G. 525; H. 516 II. 2 N. **dicto**: N. to p. 67, 22. **laturi**: A. 272 *b*; H. 536, 2, 1) N. **23. dicantur**: sc. *milites*; trans. 'it is said that.' A. 330 *b*; G. 528; H. 534, 1, N.1 (2). **nihil**: has the force of an emphatic *non*, 'not at all.' A. 240 *a*; G. 331 R.3; H. 378, 2. **scire**: sc. *se*. **quibuscumque**: the antecedent is *eis* (understood) depending on *defuisse* and

esse convictam. **24. dicto audiens**: = *obediens,* hence followed by the dat. *quibuscumque.* The constr. of *dicto* (references to p. 67, 22) is like a wheel within a wheel. **25. fortunam**: in all concerns of life the Romans avoided any undertaking which bad luck seemed to follow, thinking that a curse rested on it, or that a deity was against them. Ill-luck and wrong-doing on the part of commanders Caesar considers the chief causes of mutiny. **26. vita**: A. 256; G. 392; H. 429. **28. longiorem**: 'more distant.' **repraesentaturum**: 'he would at once do.' **29. de vigilia**: p. 33 and N. to p. 52, 31. **quam primum**: see IDIOMS under *quam.* A. 93 *b*; H. 170, 2 (2). **30. utrum—an**: A. 211; G. 460; H. 353, 1. **pudor**: properly 'feeling of shame' at doing something dishonorable; hence 'sense of honor.' **31. Quod si**: 'moreover, though.' **32. non dubitaret**: 'had no doubts.' **33. praetoriam cohortem**: 'body guard.' The tenth legion always remained Caesar's favorite. Make an analysis of this speech of Caesar's, showing the motives and feelings of his men appealed to, and the oratorical skill with which it is brought to a climax.

Page 69.—XLI. 3. princeps: A. 191; G. 324 R.6; H. 443 N.1. **4. ei gratias egit**: 'thanked him.' See IDIOMS. **fecisset**: A. 341 *d*; G. 541; H. 516 II. **6. primorum ordinum centurionibus**: the centurions of the first cohort in each legion. **7. egerunt**: 'made an arrangement.' **satisfacerent**: 'apologize.' **se,** etc.: sc. *dixerunt.* **8. de summa belli**: 'on the general management of the campaign,' to be taken closely with *iudicium; suum* and *imperatoris* are in pred. with *esse.* A. 214 *c*; G. 365; H. 402. **suum, sed imperatoris**: 'not theirs, but the general's.' **11. ex aliis**: = *ex ceteris omnibus;* i. e., 'more confidence in him than in all the others.' **milium**: sc. *passuum;* dep. on *circuitu.* Could it have been in the abl.? A. 215 *b*; G. 364; H. 396 V. Why not abl.? A. 247 *c*; G. 311 R.4; H. 417, 1, N.2. **12. locis apertis**: 'through (lit. 'in' or 'by') open country,' i. e., free from mountains and forests. He was marching to the northeast from Vesontio. Follow his course on the map. **duceret**: this subj. of result explains *itinere,* but follows *exquisito.* **15. milibus**: A. 257 *b*; G. 400 R.1; H. 379, 2. **xx**: = *viginti.* In Latin phrases expressing number, words and symbols are often connected

XLII. 18. quod: indir. disc. to *existimare.* Notice that the relative clause is before the antecedent (*id*). **per se**: 'so far as he was concerned.' **19. accessisset**: sc. *Caesar.* **21. ad sanitatem**: 'to his senses.' **22. petenti**: sc. *Caesari.* **denegasset**: A. 336; G. 653; H. 524; would be subj. in dir. disc. Why? **in spem veniebat**: has the force of *sperabat,* and is followed by the infin. *fore,* of which the subject is *uti*

. . . *desisteret.* A. 330, 3; G. 527; H. 535 I. 3. **23. pro**: 'in return for.' **in eum**: 'toward (i. e., bestowed on) him.' **24. beneficiis**: Ariovistus understood as well as any one the hollowness of these 'favors.' See N. to p. 65, 4. **pertinacia**: A. 243; G. 388; H. 414. **25. colloquio**: dat. of purpose. **ex**: 'after.' **26. ultro citroque**: 'back and forth,' between the two generals. **28. vereri**: sc. *dixit.* How are *ne* and *ut* rendered after verbs of fearing? **29. veniret**: *veniat* in dir. disc. A. 339; G. 655; H. 523 III. **alia ratione**: 'on any other condition.' **30. interposita causa**: 'by the pretext that had been alleged.' **31. Gallorum equitatui**: Caesar's cavalry was drawn mainly from the Aedui and their allies. See Chap. 15 and p. 22. **32. commodissimum**: agrees with *imponere.* Why neut.? **33 equitibus**: A. 229; G. 344 R.2; H. 385 II. 2. **eo**: 'thereon,' i. e., on the horses, = *in eos.* Cf. "Hath not w h e r e to lay his head." **35. si . . . esset**: 'if there should be any need of action.' **quid**: adv. acc. A. 240 *a*; G. 331 R.3; H. 378, 2. **facto**: A. 243 *e* R.; G. 390; H. 414 IV. N.3. **Quod cum fieret**: 'while this was being done.' **36. cum**: why does *cum* not stand first? *Quod* is emphatic, because the rel. pron. regularly precedes other connectives than *cum.* **ex militibus**: why not genitive? Because *quidam* is here not wholly indefinite, but refers to a particular person.

Page 70. 1. plus facere: i. e., for the legion. **2. pollicitum**: is *esse* to be supplied? **in loco habiturum**: 'would regard as.' **3. ad equum rescribere**: The phrase has a double meaning,—'enroll as cavalrymen,' or 'enroll as knights,' a rank of nobility. In this lies the point of the joke.

XLIII. 4. tumulus: this lay doubtless in the plain between the southern part of the Vosges Mountains and the Rhine. In Alsace, about eight miles from Mühlhausen, there is a large (*satis grandis*) hill free from rocks (*terrenus*), generally thought to be the one here referred to. See Plan III., in which the hill is marked **b**. Caesar was the first Roman general to enter the valley of the Rhine. **6. ut erat dictum**: 'as agreed upon.' **7. equis**: abl. of means; 'on horse-back.' **passibus**: A. 257 *b*; G. 400 R.1; H. 379, 2. What distance in English feet? Cf. N. to p. 48, 16. **9. constiterunt**: how different in meaning from *constituerunt?* **ex equis**: 'on horseback' (lit. 'from horses'). **10. se**: pl. **denos**: 'ten apiece.' **11. ventum est**: impers.; trans. 'when they had come thither.' A. 146 *c*; H. 301 I. **12. appellatus esset**: A. 341 *d*; G. 541; H. 528 I. **13. munera**: such as embroidered robes, an ivory chair of state, and the like. **missa**: sc. *essent.* **quam rem**: 'this distinction,' 'this honor.' **14. pro magnis officiis**: 'in return for distinguished services.' **15. aditum**: 'ground

of approach,' 'access.' **16. sua, etc.**: see N. to p. 65, 3. **17. consecutum**: the word implies that Ariovistus had sought after the favors shown, — no doubt an unjust insinuation. **18. necessitudinis**: 'alliance.' **ipsis**: i. e., *Romanis*. A. 228; G. 346; H. 386. **ipsis cum Aeduis intercederent**: 'existed between themselves and the Aedui.' **20. honorifica**: how compared? A. 89 *c*; G. 88, 3; H. 164. **in eos facta essent**: 'had been passed in their behalf.' **ut**: 'how'; interrogative. **21. prius, quam**: = *priusquam*. A. 327, 341 *a*; G. 579, 653; H. 524, 520 II. **23. ut . . . velit**: 'to desire.' **sui nihil**: 'none of their standing.' A. 188, 216 *a* 1; G. 371, 195 R.1; H. 441 and 397 1. **25. quod vero, etc.**: order, *quis posset pati id, quod . . . attulissent, eripi eis*, etc. **eis**: A. 229; G. 344 R.2; H. 385 II. 2. What would be the mode of *posset* in dir. disc.? A. 268, 338 R.; G. 251, 654; H. 486 II., 523 II. 1 N. **quod . . . attulissent**: spoken by way of compliment to the Aedui, referring to their independence and power (*principatum*, l. 21). **26. Postulavit eadem**: 'made the same demands'; the following clauses are in apposition with *eadem*. **28. inferret, redderet, pateretur**: A. 339; G. 655; H. 523 III. **29. at**: 'at any rate.' **quos**: A. 105 *d*; G. 302; H. 455 1. **amplius**: N. to p. 65, 8.

XLIV. 31. pauca: object of *respondit*. **32. Transisse**: the direct form is in part given, G. 664, 1, and H. 531. **33. rogatum, arcessitum**: 'because he had been,' etc. (lit. 'having been'). A. 292; G. 669; H. 549, 1. **34. spe magnisque praemiis**: trans. as if *spe magnorum praemiorum*; hendiadys. A. p. 298; G. 695; H. 636 III. 2. **35. concessas**: 'which had been,' etc. A. 292; G. 671; H. 549, 4. **ipsis**: *Gallis*. **obsides**: like *sedes*, object of *habere*. **36. stipendium . . . belli**: just so in 1871, as a result of the Franco-German War, France was obliged to pay her conqueror an indemnity of a thousand million dollars.

Page 71. 2. sibi: i. e., *Ariovisto*. **3. castra habuisse**: = *pugnavisse*. **5. decertare**: 'fight it out.' **6. uti**: 'enjoy'; followed by what case? **iniquum**: agrees with *recusare*, 'it was unfair to refuse (to pay) the indemnity.' **7. sua**: 'their own,' i. e., the Gauls; they, however, told a different story. See Chapters 31, 37. **8. sibi ornamento, etc.**: A. 233; G. 350; H. 390 I. **9. oportere**: the subject is *amicitiam . . . esse*. **id**: refers to the thought of the preceding clause (= *ut amicus esset*), not to *amicitiam* alone; 'this relation.' **per**: A. 246 *b*; G. 403; H. 415, I. N. 1. **12. Quod, etc.**: 'in regard to his bringing over.' A. 333 *a*; G. 525, R.2; H. 516 II. 2 N. **14. nisi rogatus**: 'without being asked.' **15. defenderit**: 'had acted on the defensive.' **16. populum**: *populus* [*venisset*] might have been expected. A. 336 *a* R.; H. 524, 1, 2). **18. Quid sibi vellet**: 'what

then did he (Caesar) mean'? **19. hanc Galliam**: 'this part of Gaul,' i. e., towards the Rhine. **20. illam**: 'that part over there.' **Ut**: 'as.' **ipsi**: = sibi, i. e, *Ariovisto*. **concedi non oporteret**: 'no concession should be made.' **21. nos**: = *Romanos*. **23. diceret**: sc. *Caesar*. **Quod . . . diceret**: 'as to his saying,' 'as to his harping on the fact.' **se esse**: '(he would like to inform him) that he,' etc. **24. rerum**: A. 218 *a*; G. 373; H. 399 I. 2. **ut non sciret**: 'as not to know' (lit. 'that he,' etc.) **bello**: B.C. 62. **25. ipsos**: i. e. *Aeduos*. **27. Debere suspicari**: 'had good reason to suspect.' **28. quod**: conj., 'in that.' **29. habere**: 'has (it) there,' sc. *eum* (*exercitum*); the subject is *Caesarem*. **Qui nisi decedat**: 'Now if he does not (should not) withdraw.' **31. hoste**: sc. *pro*. **Quod, etc.**: *Quod* ('moreover'; N. to p. 53, 36) *si te interfecero, faciam gratum* ('a thing pleasing'). **32. gratum**: here used as a noun. **33. compertum habere**: almost = *comperisse*. A. 292 *c*; G. 230; H. 388, I N. **34. eius**: = *Caesaris*. Whether Ariovistus here spoke the truth or not, he was evidently familiar with the party strifes and jealousies at this time in Roman politics. Caesar's enemies at Rome heard the reports of his successes with ill-concealed alarm. See p. 1 et seq. **35. Quod**: 'on the other hand.' **37. eius**: 'on his part.' **38. confecturum**: the subject is *se* (= *Ariovistum*). In case Caesar will withdraw, the German king will fight his battles for him. The replies of Ariovistus throughout are spirited and brave. See Duruy's History of Rome, vol. iii. pp. 149–150.

Page 72. XLV. 1. in eam sententiam: 'to this effect,' i. e., 'to show.' **2. quare**: = *quibus de causis*. **negotio**: A. 243; G. 388; H. 414. Derivation? **posset**: A. 334; G. 469; H. 529 I. **4. neque**: = *et non*. **esse Ariovisti**: 'belonged to Ariovistus.' A. 214 *c*; G. 365; H. 402. **5. Arvernos et Rutenos**: conquered B.C. 121; in the campaign 120,000 Gauls were slain. **7. ignovisset**: the Romans with good reason had 'pardoned' them, — their country, lying beyond the Cévennes Mts., could have been held only with the greatest difficulty. **8. antiquissimum quodque tempus**: 'priority of time' (lit. 'each earliest period' of possession). A. 93 *c*; G. 305; H. 458, I. **11. suis**: 'its own,' referring to the subject of *uti*.

XLVI. 13. geruntur: A. 276 *e*; G. 220 R. I; H. 467, 4. **14. tumulum**: A. 234 *e*; G. 356, 4; H. 437, I. **17. quod omnino**: 'any (weapon) at all.' **18. legionis**: 'to the legion.' A. 217; G. 361, 2; H. 396 III. **19. committendum** [esse]: 'that occasion ought to be given'; the subject is *ut . . . posset*. A. 332 *a*; G. 558, 3; H. 501 I. **20. per fidem**: 'through confidence' in his pledge. **22. qua arro-**

gantia usus: 'with what arrogance.' **Gallia**: A. 243; G. 388; H. 414. **23. Romanis**: A. 228; G. 346; H. 386. **interdixisset**: indir. question. **24. ut**: 'how.' **diremisset**: A. 334; G. 469; H. 529 I.

XLVII. 26. Biduo: A. 250; G. 400 R. 3; H. 423, 430. **27. coeptae**: why passive? **28. uti**: 'asking that.' **29. constitueret**: A. 331 *b*; G. 546; H. 498 I. **minus**: = *non*. **suis**: *Caesaris*. **30. se**: = *Ariovistum*. **visa non est**: 'seemed unreasonable.' **eo magis**: 'all the more for this reason.' **31. diei**: A. 214 *g*; H. 398, 5. **32. quin conicerent**: 'from hurling.' A. 319 *d*; G. 551, 1, examples; H. 504, 1 N. **Legatum**: an 'envoy,' not a lieutenant, from 'his own' staff. **sese cum periculo missurum**: i. e., it would be a hazardous thing for him to send, etc.

Page 73. 2. visum est: *mittere* (l. 8) is subject. **3. C. Valeri Caburi**: see p. 215, N. to *C. Iuli Caesaris*. **4. civitate**: 'citizenship.' A. 225 *d*; G. 348; H. 384 II. 2. The Romans often conferred the distinction of citizenship upon foreigners who had been useful to them. In such cases, frequently the person honored became a client of the Roman through whom citizenship was bestowed, and adopted his gentile name. A. 80 *a*; H. 649. Thus Procillus took the name of Flaccus. Flaccus was governor of Gaul B.C. 83. **6. qua multa utebatur**: 'which Ariovistus spoke fluently.' **7. in eo**: 'in his case.' **peccandi causa**: 'temptation to do wrong.' Procillus being a Gaul, the Germans would neither feel so harshly towards him as towards a Roman, nor have the same object in getting possession of his person. **esset**: A. 341 *d* R.; G. 630; H. 516 II. **12. Quid**: = *cur*; adv. acc. A. 240 *a*; H. 454, 2. **venirent**: A. 338, 334; G. 654; H. 523 II. 1. **an**: 'or (was it) . . .'? A. 211 *b*; G. 459; H. 353, 2 N. 4. **Conantis**: acc.; sc. *eos*. Ariovistus apparently wished to convey to his army the impression that these men were spies; hence he 'called out loudly' (*con-clamavit*) and would not let them speak, in order to forestall any explanation on their part.

XLVIII. 14. milibus: distance expressed as degree of difference. **15. Caesaris castris**: Caesar's camp is thought to have been several miles northwest of Mühlhausen. See N. to p. 70, 4, and Plan III. **d**. **16. diei**: N. to p. 72, 31. **17. castra**: this, the second camp of Ariovistus, is marked **c** on the plan; the first camp, where his forces were stationed previous to the parleying with Caesar, is marked **a**. **frumento**: A. 243; G. 388; H. 414. Ariovistus thought to force an engagement on his own ground by cutting off Caesar's supplies. **18. supportaretur**: subj. by attraction. A. 342; G. 631; H. 529 II. and 529, II. N. 1, 1). **21. vellet**: A. 342; G. 631; H. 529 II. **22. ei . . . deesset**: 'he might not lack opportunity.' **diebus**: A. 256 *b*; G. 392 R. 2; H. 379 I.

23. **castris**: 'within the camp.' A. 258 *f*; G. 387; H. 425 II. 1, 1). **25.** **numero**: A. 253; G. 398; H. 424. **26.** **quos,** etc.: 'whom they (the cavalrymen) had chosen from the entire force (selecting) a man apiece.' A. 95, 95 *a*; G. 95; H. 174, 2, 1) and 172, 3. **27.** **versabantur**: 'were associated.' **28.** **hi**: the foot-soldiers. **si quid,** etc.: 'if there was any serious difficulty'; *durius* is nom. neut. **concurrebant**: 'rushed to their assistance.' **29.** **si qui**: = *si quis*; N. to p. 50, 29. **equo**: A. 243 *b*; G. 388; H. 414 I. **30.** **si quo erat,** etc.: 'if it was necessary to advance or retreat to any place.' **32.** **sublevati**: 'supporting themselves.' A. 111 N. 1; G. 209; H. 465. **cursum**: taken lit., 'running,' 'galloping.'

XLIX. **33.** **eum**: = *Ariovistum*; *se* is object of *tenere*. **35.** **castris**: A. 234 *a*; G. 356; H. 391 I. **36.** **locum**: the camp placed here (marked e in the plan) is called *castra minora*, to distinguish it from Caesar's first camp, which is called *castra maiora* (marked d), and which lay almost directly north of it. The two camps were about two miles apart; the smaller camp not over half a mile from Ariovistus. **acie triplici**: see pp. 33, 34.

Page 74. **2.** **castra munire**: see p. 31. "Caesar's main object in forming two different camps was to gain possession of the roads both north and south; so that Ariovistus could not escape without fighting. Besides this, such an arrangement tempted the Germans strongly to an attack on the intrenchments, which would be sure to give an advantage to the Romans." Moberly. **3.** **hominum . . . expedita** = *sedecim milia hominum expeditorum*. **5.** **quae copiae**: 'in order that these forces'; *copiae* takes the place of the antecedent repeated (*milia*; A. 201 *d*; G. 618; H. 445, 9), the relative being equivalent to *ut eae*. A. 317; G. 632; H. 497, I. **6.** **Nihilo secius**: 'none the less.' A. 250; G. 400; H. 417, 2.

L. **10.** **instituto suo**: 'in accordance with his usual practice.' A. 253; G. 407; H. 416 and 416 N. 2. **12.** **potestatem fecit**: 'gave an opportunity.' **15.** **quae**: *ut ea*. **20.** **esset**: A. 341 *d*; G. 630; H. 516 II. **21.** **sortibus**: the early Germans drew lots in this way. Having lopped off a bough from a fruit-bearing tree, they cut it up into small pieces, which were marked in different ways and scattered at random over a white cloth. The person drawing the lot looked upward, took up each bit of wood three times, and found in it a meaning according to the mark previously impressed. **vaticinationibus**: these 'predictions' were drawn from the noise of water-eddies, the rippling of streams, and the like. **declararent**: A. 332 *f*; G. 559, 4; H. 501 III. **22.** **utrum . . . necne**: A. 211; G. 460, 461; H. 353 N. 3. **ex usu**:

'expedient.' **23. fas**: 'the divine will.' **ante novam lunam**: a few of the old German superstitions still linger. Some people still will not commence certain kinds of work "in the old of the moon."

LI. 25. diei: N. to p. 72, 31. **praesidium quod**: 'such a garrison as.' **26. omnis**: acc. **alarios**: = *auxilia*, the cavalry and light-armed troops, called *alarii* because usually stationed on the wings (*alae*). **27. minus valebat**: 'was weaker.' **29. ad speciem**: 'for show,' in order to hide from the enemy his real weakness in infantry. How many men in his six legions? See p. 21. **32. intervallis**: A. 248 R.; G. 401; H. 419 III. **Harudes, etc.**: locate all these from the map. **34. redis**: the *reda* had four wheels, and was usually provided with a strong leather covering, much resembling the gipsy wagons of to-day. Cf. N. to p. 48, 20, *carrorum*. **35. Eo**: 'thereon' (see N. to p. 69, 33), i. e., upon the wagons and carts.

Page 75. LII. 3. singulos . . . quaestorem: Caesar put a lieutenant over each of the six legions, then had the quartermaster (*quaestor*) keep a general view of the whole, with the special purpose of noting and encouraging praiseworthy conduct; he himself was confined closely with the right wing. **6. Ita**: modifies *acriter*. **8. spatium**: = *tempus*. **9. coniciendi**: dep. on *spatium*. If this were changed to the gerundive, what form would *pila* take? **11. phalange**: see N. to p. 59, 9. **12. complures**: 'in many cases.' A. 191; G. 324 R. 6; H. 443. **phalangas**: plural, because the warriors of each tribe formed a phalanx by themselves. A. 63 *f*; G. 73; H. 68. **insilirent**: A. 320 *a*; G. 633, 634; H. 503 I. **13. desuper**: in hand-to-hand fighting the Roman soldiers, usually stooping slightly, ran one edge of their shields under the shields of the enemy and wounded him from underneath, as they could do while still protected by their arms. But in this case Caesar's men, in their eagerness, rushed on the foe, sprang up and pulled back the enemy's shields from the top, and stabbed with their short swords from above. **14. a sinistro cornu**: 'on the left wing,' i. e., of the Germans. **16. Publius Crassus**: son of the triumvir (see p. 4); hence called *adulescens*, as we say "junior," to distinguish him from his father. **17. expeditior**: 'more disengaged,' so that he had an opportunity to look about and see where help was most needed. **18. inter aciem**: 'at the front.' **tertiam aciem**: the rear line waited as a reserve force till called into action. **nostris subsidio**: A. 233; G. 350; H. 390 II.

LIII. 21. prius, quam: = *priusquam*. **22. Rhenum, etc.**: the Rhine in the direction of the dotted line on the plan is about five miles

from the battle-field. Some texts, instead of *quinque*, have *quinquaginta*, which may be correct; in that case the Germans probably followed the valley of the river Ill, and came to the Rhine about fifty miles northeast of the scene of battle. **23. viribus**: A. 254 *b*; G. 345 R.1 end; H. 425 II. 1 1), N. **26. ea**: 'in it,' *not* 'with it.' **equitatu**: what were the principal uses of cavalry in the Roman army? See pp. 29, 30. **interfecerunt**: the slain were said to number 80,000. **27. Duae uxores**: the Germans generally had but one wife. **Sueba**: nom. See Bk. IV. Chap. 1, and notes. **natione**: A. 253; G. 398; H. 424. **29. duxerat**: = *in matrimonium duxerat* (see IDIOMS); but *duxerat* (l. 28) means 'had brought.' **30. filiae**: nominative plural. **harum**: *uxorum*. **altera**: A. 203 *a*; G. 321; H. 459. **31. Procillus**: Chap. 47 and N. **trinis**: why not *tribus?* Because *catenae* is a pl. word; 'three sets of chains.' A. 95 *b*; G. 95; H. 172, 3. **32. vinctus**: principal parts of *vincio*, *vinco*, and *vivo?* **hostis**: acc. **33. incidit in**: 'fell in the way of.' **quidem**: what is its regular position? **34. honestissimum**: 'most honorable'; never trans. *honestus* (from *honor*) by "honest." **35. hospitem**: the relation of host and guest was considered a more firm and lasting bond by the ancients than by us. **36. ereptum, restitutum**: is *esse* understood?

Page 76. 1. eius: *Procilli*. **calamitate**: i. e., *morte*. **2. fortuna**: nominative. **ter**: a sacred number. **consultum**: sc. *esse;* impers. **3. utrum**: '(to decide) whether.' **5. eum**: = *Caesarem*.

LIV. 8. Rhenum: A. 234 *e*; G. 356, 4; H. 437, 1. **9. una aestate**: the defeat of Ariovistus took place about Sept. 10; that of the Helvetii, the last of June or the earlier part of July. Thus, with not over 35,000 soldiers, including the cavalry and light-armed troops, Caesar had overwhelmed several hundred thousand Gauls and Germans, whose fighting force must have been several times as large as his. There is in history no more marked instance of the victory of organization, discipline, and generalship, over numbers, barbaric courage, and brute force. Read pp. 8–12. **11. hiberna**: see p. 33. **in Sequanos**: how rendered here? **12. citeriorem**: = *Cisalpinam*. Caesar's standpoint is Rome. **ad conventus agendos**: 'to hold court.' In how many ways in Latin may a purpose be expressed? The governor of a province from time to time visited the principal cities to administer justice. Caesar's chief object in going up into Cisalpine Gaul, however, was doubtless to get as near Rome as the law allowed, in order to watch the course of events there.

BOOK II.

i. THE CONSPIRACY OF THE BELGAE; THE WAR. I–XXXIII. B.C. 57.

Page 77. Chapter I. 1. esset: A. 323, 325; G. 586; H. 521 II. 2. **citeriore Gallia**: = *Gallia Cisalpina*, for which see p. 38, and N. to p. 76, 12. A. 152 *c*; G. 419; H. 435 N. 1. **in hibernis**: not the winter quarters of the army, but the place where Caesar was spending the winter,—a rare use of *hiberna*. **ita uti**: 'just as.' **2. supra**: i. e., in Book I. Chap. 54; so we use the word "above" when referring to the preceding part of a work. **demonstravimus**: the "editorial" *we*. A. 98 *d*; G. 195 R.7; H. 446, N. 2. Caesar the *writer* sometimes speaks in the first person, but always presents Caesar the *doer* in the third. **crebri**: 'frequently,' agrees with *rumores*, but has the force of an adverb. A. 191; G. 324 R.6; H. 443. **afferebantur**: force of the imperfect? A. 115, 2 *b*; G. 222; H. 469 II. **3. litteris**: A. 248; G. 403; H. 420. **Labieni**: see N. to p. 51, 31. **certior fiebat**: see IDIOMS, just before the vocabulary. **Belgas**: see p. 39 and map; also, Motley's "Rise of the Dutch Republic," Introd. §§ II. and III. **quam**: subject of *esse*, = *quos*, being attracted to the fem. sing. to agree with *partem*. A. 199; G. 616, 3 II.; H. 445, 4. Trans., 'who, we had said, form (lit. 'are') the third part of Gaul.' Caesar puts the name of the people for that of their country. **4. tertiam partem**: why acc.? A. 185; G. 324; H. 362. Study pp. 38, 39. **esse**: A. 330, 1; G. 527; H. 535 I., 535 I. 2. **dixeramus**: plup., because Caesar looks upon the preceding book, in which the statement occurs (Chap. 1), as a finished work. **5. coniurare, dare**: in dir. disc. *coniurant*, *dant*, the subject being *Belgas*. A. 336; G. 653; H. 523 I. **obsides**: N. to p. 51, 21. **inter se dare**: 'were exchanging.' **Coniurandi**: dep. on *causas*. A. 297, 298; G. 429; H. 542 I. This uprising of the Belgae, looked upon by Caesar as a "conspiracy," was in reality the noble effort of a spirited people to maintain their rights and defend their liberties. They saw clearly that Caesar would seize upon the first pretext to invade their country; and they were perfectly

justified in preparing to meet the aggressor. They fought heroically, and it was by no means to their discredit that they were finally conquered; for, barbarians as they were, they were pitted against the best discipline and generalship of the age. **6. causas**: with *esse*, in indir. disc. after *certior fiebat*; 'the causes were as follows' (lit. 'these'), the different causes being introduced by *primum*, *deinde*, and *etiam*. **vererentur, (8) sollicitarentur**: the subj. indicates that the reasons are given on the authority of the Belgae, 'because (as they said) they were afraid,' etc. A. 341 *d*; G. 541; H. 528, I and 516 II. **ne**: 'that.' A. 331 *f*; G. 552; H. 498 III. N. I. **omni pacata Gallia**: = *si Gallia omnis pacata esset.* A. 255, 310; G. 408 and 594, 2; H. 431, 507 III. N. 7. By **Gallia**, not 'Gaul,' but only the central part, *Gallia Celtica*, the land of the *Galli*, is meant. See p. 38. **7. noster**: see N. to p. 47, 3. **adduceretur**: A. 317; G. 552; H. 497 II. **8. nonnullis Gallis**: 'some of the Gauls.' A. 193; G. 287 R.; H. 440, 2 N. I. **qui**: subject of *ferebant*; for antecedent sc. *eis*, in apposition with *Gallis*, 'partly (those) who.' **ut — ita**: 'as — so.' **Germanos versari**: A. 330, 3 and R.; G. 527; H. 535 II. On the Germans in Gaul, see N. to p. 106, 4, *Rhenus*. **10. inveterascere**: 'become settled,' 'fixed.' **moleste ferebant**: see IDIOMS, p. 385. In *ferebant*, as in the following indicatives, the subj. might have been expected, as embodying part of the information conveyed by Labienus, and hence following the rule for subordinate clauses in indir. disc. The indic. is more emphatic, and shows that the statements reported were accepted by Caesar as true. **11. mobilitate, levitate**: A. 245; G. 407; H. 416. **novis imperiis**: 'a change of rule'; see IDIOMS. A. 227; G. 345; H. 385. **12. nonnullis**: i. e., powerful nobles; sc. *sollicitarentur*. **a potentioribus**: 'by the more powerful.' A. 188; G. 195 R. I; H. 441. **13. ad conducendos homines**: 'for hiring men,' i. e., mercenary soldiers. A. 296; G. 428; H. 543 and 544, I. **14. occupabantur**: 'were seized upon.' On the state of Gaul at this time, see p. 40. **minus facile**: 'not so easily.' **imperio nostro**: 'under our sovereignty,' abl. of time and cause. **15. poterant**: 'would be able.'

II. 16. nuntiis, litteris: A. 245 *b*; G. 407, I; H. 416 I. 2) N. I. **duas legiones**: the XIIIth and XIVth. Caesar had now eight legions, numbering VII. to XIV., inclusive. Study pp. 21–23. **17. inita aestate**: A. 255; G. 408; H. 431. See IDIOMS. **interiorem Galliam**: 'the central part of Gaul.' A. 193; G. 287 R.; H. 440, 2 N. I. **18. qui deduceret**: sc. *eas*, 'in order to conduct (them).' A. 317; G. 632; H. 497 I. **legatum**: A. 184; G. 319; H. 363. Pedius was a nephew of Caesar. **19. cum primum**: see IDIOMS. **pabuli copia**: for the numerous beasts of burden that carried the military stores, as well as for

the horses of the cavalry and the officers. **inciperet**: A. 325, 323; G. 586; H. 521 II. 2. **20. exercitum**: the army was probably at Vesontio, the chief city of the Sequani, for which see N. to p. 66, 25, and map. **Dat negotium**: 'directs.' **Dat**: what kind of present? A. 276 *d*; G. 220; H. 467 III. **Senonibus**: an important people about the upper part of the Seine. See map. **reliquis**: N. to p. 47, 12. **21. Belgis**: A. 234 *a*; G. 356; H. 391 I. **ea**: acc. **gerantur**: subj. for two reasons. A. 320 *a*, 342; G. 633, 634, 631; H. 529 II., 503 I. **22. cognoscant, faciant**: A. 331 *a*; G. 546; H. 498 I. **se certiorem faciant**: 'inform him.' Why is **se** used? A. 196 *a*; G. 521; H. 449, I. **constanter**: 'consistently,' 'uniformly,' without disagreement in their reports. **23. manus**: 'bodies of troops,' i. e., among the Belgae. **24. locum**: why not abl.? **dubitandum**, etc.: sc. *esse sibi*, 'that he ought not to delay about setting out.' The infin. of the pass. periphrastic conj. is often used impersonally, and in such cases *esse* is usually omitted. A. 113 *d*; G. 243 R.2; H. 234. **25. eos**: i. e., *Belgas*. **proficisceretur**: A. 319 *d*; G. 554; H. 500 II. **Re comparata**: abl. abs., 'having provided for,' etc. **26. castra movet**: see IDIOMS. **diebus**: abl. of time within which. A. 256; G. 392; H. 429. **circiter**: adv. with *quindecim*.

Page 78. III. 1. Eo: = *ad fines Belgarum*. **improviso**: abl. sing. neut. of the adj. used as a noun, with **de** forming an adverbial phrase like the English colloquial phrase "of a sudden," "all of a sudden," i. e., 'unexpectedly.' **celerius omni opinione**: 'more quickly than any one had expected' (lit. 'than every expectation'). A. 247; G. 399; H. 417. **2. venisset**: A. 326; G. 587; H. 517. **Remi**: see p. 39 and map. **Galliae**: A. 234 *a*; G. 356; H. 391 I.; N. to p. 47, 10. The land of the *Galli* is here meant; see p. 38. **ex Belgis**: = *inter Belgas*. **3. legatos**: notice that *legatus* sometimes means 'lieutenant,' and sometimes, as here, 'envoy,' 'ambassador.' **primos**: 'the chief men.' A. 188; G. 195 R.1; H. 441. **civitatis**: i. e., of the Remi. **4. qui dicerent**: 'to say.' A. 317; G. 632; H. 497 I. **se**, etc.: indir. disc. to the end of the chapter, dep. on *dicerent*. Remember that in changing declarative sentences from dir. to indir. disc., I. principal clauses are expressed by means of the acc. and infin.; II. subordinate clauses take the subj. A. 336, 337; G. 653; H. 523, 524. CAUTION. Never render an infin. representing a principal clause of dir. disc. by the English infin., but always by an independent clause or one introduced by "that." **se suaque**: see IDIOMS. **in fidem**: 'to the protection.' **5. permittere**: sc. *se* as subject of this and the following infin. **neque**: trans. as if *et non*. A. 156 *a*; G. 482; H. 554 I. 2. **6. coniurasse**: = *coniuravisse*. A. 128 *a*; G. 151, 1; H. 235. **7. paratos**: adj., in pred. **et — et**: 'both — and.'

dare, facere, recipere, iuvare: after *esse paratos.* A. 273 *b*; G. 424; H. 533 II. 3. **oppidis:** A. 258 *f*; G. 387; H. 425, 2 N.2. How were *oppida* different from *vici?* See N. to p. 49, 20. **8. recipere, iuvare:** sc. *eum,* i. e., Caesar. **frumento, rebus:** A. 248; G. 403; H. 420. **9. cis Rhenum:** the west side of the Rhine; Caesar writes from the standpoint of the Roman Province. See N. to p. 106, 4. **incolant:** what mood in dir. disc.? **10. his:** = *Belgis.* **eorum omnium:** i. e., *Belgarum et Germanorum.* **11. ne — quidem:** 'not even.' A. 151 *e*; H. 569 III. 2. Notice that the emphatic word always stands between *ne* and *quidem.* **Suessiones:** object of *deterrere;* see N. to p. 82, 21. **fratres:** case? A. 184; G. 319; H. 363. **12. iure, legibus:** A. 249; G. 405; H. 421 I. *Ius* means 'principles of justice,' as distinguished from *leges,* enacted 'laws.' **isdem:** = *eisdem.* **utantur, habeant:** subj. for two reasons. A. 342, 336; G. 631, 653; H. 529 II., 524. **14. potuerint, consentirent:** A. 319 *d*; G. 554; H. 500 II. **quin consentirent:** 'from uniting.'

IV. 15. Cum: temporal, causal, or concessive? **his:** i. e., the chief men of the Remi, who had given Caesar the information stated in the preceding chapter. **quae:** A. 104 *a*; G. 104; H. 188 II. 1. **16. essent, possent:** A. 334; G. 469; H. 529 I. **quid possent:** 'what power they had' (lit. 'to what extent they were able'); quid is an adverbial acc., strictly speaking, a cognate acc. A. 148 *d,* 240 *a*; G. 331 R.3; H. 304 I. 3, 371 II. (2). **plerosque:** indir. disc. to *sumerent* (l. 23), dep. on *reperiebat.* The infinitives representing principal clauses of dir. disc., are *esse ortos, consedisse, expulisse, esse* (l. 19), *fieri.* **17. Belgas,** etc.: the name is said to mean 'plunderers.' The origin of the Belgae has been much discussed, but remains uncertain. It seems probable, however, that they were originally and at bottom a Gallic, or Keltic, people; but that because of nearness to the Germans, gradually Germanic elements were to a considerable extent infused into the race and speech. The tradition here given by Caesar may perhaps be accepted as trustworthy for a small part of the Belgae, but not for the people as a whole. **Germanis:** A. 244 *a* R.; G. 395; H. 413. **Rhenum:** dep. on *tra(ns)* in *tra-ductos.* A. 239 *b*; G. 330 R.1; H. 376 N. **ibi:** i. e., west of the Rhine, in Gaul. **19. incolerent:** why subj.? See N. to *se,* l. 4 above. **solos:** in pred., 'the only (people of Gaul), who.' **20. memoria:** abl. of time within which. Cf. IDIOMS. **Gallia vexata:** A. 255; G. 408; H. 431; trans. by a clause beginning with 'when.' **Teutonos, Cimbros:** see N. to p. 67, 36. **21. prohibuerint:** subj. also in dir. disc. A. 320 *b*; G. 633, 634; H. 503 II. 1; 'prevented the Teutons and Cimbri from entering.' What is the usual construction after verbs of *hindering?* **qua ex re:** 'from this fact,' 'by reason of this.' A. 180 *f*; G. 612 R. 1;

H. 453. **fieri**: the subject is the clause *uti . . . sumerent*. A. 319, 332 *a*; G. 588, 3; H. 501 I. 1. **22. memoria**: A. 245; G. 407; H. 416. **23. re militari**: 'the art of war.' **sumerent**: *sumant* in dir. disc.; the sequence of tenses here requires the impf. A. 284, 286; G. 510; H. 525, 491. **De**: indir. disc. to the end of the chapter. **eorum**: i. e., *Belgarum*. **24. omnia habere explorata**: almost = *omnia exploravisse*; 'had found out everything.' **propterea quod**: N. to p. 47, 6. **25. propinquitatibus, affinitatibus**: 'relations arising from nearness and from intermarriage.' **quisque**: i. e., each member of the war-council, each delegate or representative. **27. pollicitus sit**: subj. also in dir. disc. A. 334; G. 469; H. 529 I. **cognoverint**: A. 336; G. 653; H. 524. **Plurimum — valere**: cf. N. to p. 49, 2; see IDIOMS. **28. virtute, etc.**: A. 253; G. 398; H. 424. **29. conficere**: 'muster.' **armata milia**: = *milia hominum armatorum*. **30. electa sexaginta**: sc. *milia*, 'sixty thousand picked men.' **totius**: how declined? **sibi**: refers to the *Bellovaci*; but **suos** in l. 31 refers back to the subject of *dicebant*, the *Remi*. A. 196; G. 295; H. 449, 1. **32. possidere**: sc. *eos* (*Suessiones*). **33. cum — tum**: 'not only — but also.' A. 155 A; G. 589; H. 554 I. 5. **34. regionum**: dep. on *partis*, which limits *imperium*. **Britanniae**: not the whole of Britain, probably only a portion of the island along the southeast coast. **35. obtinuerit**: why subj.? **esse regem Galbam**: 'there was a king (by the name of) Galba'; N. to p. 49, 31. **36. summam belli**: see IDIOMS.

Page 79. 1. habere: sc. *Suessiones*. **numero**: A. 253; G. 398; H. 424. XII: = *duodecim*; always read figures in the text with Latin words. **2. totidem**: sc. *armata milia polliceri*. **Nervios, etc.**: for the Nervii, Bellovaci, Ambiani, Morini, Menapii, and Aduatuci, see p. 39 and map. **maxime feri**: in pred. A. 89 *d*; G. 317; H. 170. **3. habeantur, absint**: A. 336; G. 653; H. 524. Caesar here uses the pres. tense where the impf. would have been more regular. In vivid narration the tenses that the speaker used are sometimes retained in indir. disc. **4. Atrebates**: sc. *polliceri*. See map, south of the Morini. The name means 'dwellers,' 'possessors,' and survives in the modern town of A r r a s, in Artois. **5. Caletos**: the Calēti (or Calētes) and Veliocasses were along the lower course of the Seine (Sequăna) and west of the Bellovăci; the Viromandui were east of the Bellovaci. **6. decem et novem**: in what other ways may 'nineteen' be expressed in Latin? A. 94; G. 93; H. 174. **Condrusos, Eburones, Caeroesos, Paemanos**: small states (or tribes) in the Ardennes (Arduenna) region; see map. **7. uno**: 'common.' **Germani**: A. 185; G. 197, 334 R.; H. 373, 362. The word is thought to mean here *not* 'Germans,' but 'men of the hills,' 'hill-men.' **8. appellantur**: why indic.? **arbitrari**: sc. (from p. 78, 29) *se posse conficere*.

V. 9. liberaliter, etc.: 'having sought (to strengthen their attachment) by a gracious speech.' **10. senatum**: Caesar applies the name of a Roman institution to a Gallic body of counsellors. A. 330, 2; G. 532; H. 535 II. **11. obsides**: what case? A. 184; G. 319; H. 363. See N. to p. 51, 21. **Quae**: 'these things.' A. 180 *f*; G. 612 R. 1; H. 453. **12. ad diem**: 'at the appointed time,' as we say 'to a day,' 'to the minute.' **Divitiacum**: a different person from the Divitiacus mentioned p. 78, 33. See N. to p. 56, 12. This Divitiacus was one of the most prominent men among the Aedui, who were now in alliance with the Romans. Cf. N. to p. 65, 4. **13. quanto opere intersit**: 'how important it is.' **rei publicae** [i. e., Romanae], **salutis**: A. 222; G. 381, 382; H. 406 III.; indir. disc. to *coeperint*, dep. on *docet*. **communis**: i. e., of the Romans and the Belgae. **14. intersit**: A. 334; G. 469; H. 529 I. The subject is *manus distineri*. **ne confligendum sit**: 'that they might not be obliged to fight.' A. 317; G. 545; H. 497 II.

15. Id: refers to *manus distineri*. **posse — introduxerint, coeperint**: A. 337; G. 659; H. 527 I. **17. populari**: complementary infin. A. 271; G. 424; H. 533 I. 1. **18. copias**: difference in meaning between the sing. and the pl. of this word? **19. vidit**: = *intellexit*, just as we often use the word "see" of things we *understand*, but do not really *see* with the eyes. A. 324; G. 567; H. 518. **neque**: = *et non*. **abesse**: dep. on *cognovit*; sc. *eas* (*copias*). **eis**: with *exploratoribus*. **20. flumen, exercitum**: A. 239 *b*; G. 330 R. 1; H. 376. **Axonam**: see map; the name survives in the modern Aisne. **21. extremis finibus**: 'the farthest part of the territory.' A. 193; G. 287 R.; H. 440, 2 N. 1. **22. ibi**: the camp was on the north bank of the Aisne, about a mile northeast of the village of Berry-au-Bac. See Plan IV. **castra posuit**: see IDIOMS, and study pp. 31–33. **Quae res**: 'This position' or 'location.' A. 200 *e*. **23. ripis**: A. 248; G. 403; H. 420. **post . . . reddebat**: = 'strengthened the rear.' **quae**: supply *ea loca* as object of *reddebat*. **essent**: A. 320 *a*; G. 633, 634; H. 503 I.

24. commeatus: pl., because the supplies were furnished by more than one state. **25. efficiebat, ut,** etc.: 'made it possible for supplies to be brought,' etc. A. 331 *e*; G. 546; H. 501 II. 1. **26. in**: 'over.' **erat**: 'there was'; N. to p. 49, 31. **praesidium**: marked **G** on the plan; traces of fortifications have been discovered at Berry-au-Bac. **in altera parte**: 'on the other side,' i. e., on the south bank of the Aisne, opposite Berry-au-Bac. See Plan IV., **C**. Caesar now had both ends of the bridge well guarded, thus being able to get provisions from his allies across the river without trouble, to set a watch on the movements of the Remi, the sincerity of whose professions of loyalty was hardly beyond question, and to keep open an avenue of retreat in case of disaster. **27. legatum**: what were the officers in Caesar's army? See p. 22. **28. pedum**: A.

215 *b*; G. 364; H. 396 v. **29. vallo, fossa**: why abl.? **duodeviginti**: eighteen feet broad, measured across the top; the trench was probably about ten feet deep. Excavations, carried on during the reign of Napoleon III, brought to light many remains of this rampart and trench, so that the outline of the camp can be clearly traced.

VI. 30. his castris: 'this camp'; why pl.? **nomine**: A. 253; G. 398; H. 424. **Bibrax**: A. 184; G. 319; H. 363. See map. **31. milia passuum**: see N. to p. 48, 16, and A. 257; G. 335, 2; H. 379. **ex itinere**: see IDIOMS; on their way to Caesar the Belgae stopped to attack Bibrax. **32. aegre . . . est**: see IDIOMS, p. 389. **die**: A. 256; G. 392; H. 429. When is *dies* fem.? A. 73; G. 70; H. 123, exception. **33. eadem atque**: 'just the same as.' G. 296 R.1; H. 451, 5. **oppugnatio**: how different from *obsidio?* Study pp. 34, 36. **haec**: 'as follows.' G. 290, 6; H. 450, 3. **34. circumiecta multitudine**: A. 255; G. 408; H. 431. **totis moenibus**: abl. of place, 'along the entire (extent of the) fortifications.' A. 258 *f*; G. 387; H. 425 II. 2. **35. iaci**: give the principal parts of *iaceo*, *iacio*, and *iacto*. **coepti sunt**: why passive? **murus**: how different in meaning from *moenia?* **defensoribus**: A. 243; G. 388; H. 413. **36. testudine facta**: abl. abs., 'having formed a testudo,' by holding their shields close together above their heads, just as the Romans were accustomed to do in storming a town. See p. 36, and Plate V, 6. **succendunt**: this is the reading of the MSS.; many editions however have *succedunt*. **Trans.** 'attempt to burn the gates and undermine,' etc.; the present tense is sometimes used of actions attempted but never completed. A. 276 *b*; H. 467, 6.

Page 80. 1. Quod: 'This.' In the preceding sentence Caesar spoke of the Gallic mode of conducting an attack on a city in general; he now applies the general statement to the particular instance at hand, the storming of Bibrax. **2. conicerent**: pl. from the idea of *homines* in *multitudo*. A. 326; G. 587; H. 517. **consistendi**: A. 298; G. 429; H. 542 I. **3. nulli**: A. 231; G. 349; H. 387. How declined? A. 83; G. 35; H. 151, 1. Trans. 'no one was able to stand' (lit. 'no one had the power of standing'). **fecisset**: A. 325; G. 586; H. 521 II. 2. **4. summa nobilitate**: A. 251; G. 402; H. 419 II. **gratia**: 'popularity.' **inter suos**: 'among his people.' A. 188; G. 195 R.1; H. 441 and 449, 4. **oppido**: A. 228; G. 346; H. 386. **5. praefuerat**: with *tum* = *praepositus erat et tum praeerat*. G. 233, 2; H. 471, 3. **ex eis** = *eorum*. A. 216 *c*; G. 371 R.5; H. 397, 3 N.3. **legati**: appositive, 'as envoys.' **6. eum**: i. e., *Caesarem*. **sibi, sese**: refer to whom? A. 196; G. 295; H. 449. **submittatur**: force of *sub* in composition? **7. sustinere**: here intrans.

VII. 8. Eo: i. e., to Bibrax. **de media nocte**: 'about midnight.' **isdem** (= *eisdem*): here used as a noun. A. 249; G. 405; H. 421 I. **ducibus**: 'as guides'; why abl.? **9. nuntii**: cf. n. to *legati*, l. 5. **Numidas**: derived from a Greek word meaning 'wanderer,' from which our word "nomad" comes; see vocab. The Numidians and the people of Crete were famous for their archery, and with the skilful Balearic slingers were employed by the Romans as light-armed troops. See p. 21. **10. subsidio, oppidanis**: A. 233; G. 350; H. 390 II. Which is the dat. of purpose (end for which)? **mittit**: what kind of pres.? A. 276 *d*; G. 220; 467 III. **adventu**: abl. of time and cause. **11. et — et**: A. 155 A; G. 478; H. 554 I. 5. **cum spe defensionis**: 'together with the hope of being able to hold the town' (lit. 'hope of defence'). **propugnandi**: A. 298; G. 429; H. 542 I. **12. accessit**: = *auctum est*. **hostibus**: A. 229; G. 344 R.2; H. 385 II. 2. **eadem de causa**: 'for the same reason.' **potiundi** = *potiendi*. G. 151, 5; H. 239. **potiundi oppidi**: A. 296; G. 428; H. 544, 2 N.5. Notice the difference of meaning with similarity of sound in *accessit*, *discessit*. **13. morati, etc.**: sc. *hostes*. **14. vicis, etc.**: A. 255; G. 408; H. 431. Difference between *vici*, *oppida*, and *aedificia*? See N. to p. 49, 20 and 21. **quos**: Why masc.? G. 616 R.5; H. 445, 3 N.1 and 439, 2. **15. copiis**: A. 248 *a*; G. 391 R.1; H. 419 III. 1 1). **16. ab**: adv., 'off,' i. e., distant from Caesar's camp. **milibus**: A. 247; G. 399; H. 417. **castra**: See Plan IV., where the centre of the camp of the Belgae is marked **D D D**, that of Caesar, **A**. **17. quae**: 'and this.' A. 180 *f*; G. 612 R.1; H. 453. **ut**: what does *ut* mean with the indic.? What with the subj.? **fumo**: abl. of manner, cause, or means? **18. milibus**: abl. of measure. A. 247 *c*; G. 311 R. 4; H. 417, 1 N.2.

VIII. 19. primo: what difference in meaning and use between *primo*, *primum*, and *primus*? **20. opinionem virtutis**: see IDIOMS, and A. 217; G. 361, 2; H. 396 III. **proelio**: a regular engagement, as distinguished from skirmishing. A. 243; G. 388; H. 414 I. **21. equestribus proeliis**: 'skirmishes with cavalry,' 'cavalry skirmishes.' **quid . . . posset**: 'what mettle the enemy had,' 'the mettle of the enemy' (lit. 'what the enemy could in the way of valor'). **quid**: neut. acc. used adverbially; strictly speaking, a cognate acc. A. 148 *d*, 240 *a*; G. 331 R.3; H. 378, 2. and 371 II. (2). **posset, auderent**: A. 334; G. 469; H. 529 I. **22. periclitabatur**: 'kept trying (to find out)'. A. 115 *b*; G. 222; H. 469 II. **esse**: never trans. an infin. after a verb of seeing or knowing by the English infin. with "to." **23. loco opportuno atque idoneo**: = *cum* ('since') *locus opportunus atque idoneus esset*. A. 255 *b* N.; G. 409; H. 431, 2, (3). **aciem instruendam**: A. 296; G. 428; H. 544, 1. **24. atque**: did Caesar consider *opportuno* or *idoneo* the

stronger word? A. 156 *a*; G. 479; H. 554 I. 2. **ubi**: = *in quo*. The clause **quod . . . redibat** explains the reason implied in the preceding abl. abs. **castra**: see N. to p. 79, 22 and 28; and Plan IV, **A**. One side of the camp was guarded by the river Aisne (see chap. 5), the bed of which in Caesar's time is indicated on the plan by dotted lines. Northwest of the camp, on the opposite side of a marsh, through which the Miette brook runs, was a chain of heights on which the Belgae were encamped. Directly in front of the Roman camp, the hill on which it was situated extended out just far enough to give room to draw up the army, then sloped down gently to the plain. On the side of the camp lying toward the river, and the side opposite to this, the slope of the hill was steep. Starting therefore from opposite corners of the camp, Caesar prolonged two lines of intrenchment at right angles to the sides, each about a third of a mile in length. One ran down the south slope of the hill, toward the Aisne, the other down the north slope toward the Miette brook; they are indicated on the plan by red lines. At the ends of these intrenchments he constructed redoubts (marked **B B** on the plan), where he stationed troops, with military engines. His purpose was to guard against a flank movement on the part of the enemy, by which they might reach the rear of the camp and attack from behind while his forces were engaged in front. **25. tantum**: acc. sing. neut. of the adj. used adverbially, strictly speaking; acc. of extent of space. **26. quantum**: object of *occupare*. **adversus**: 'in front' (lit. 'turned toward' the enemy). **loci**: A. 216 *a* 3; G. 371; H. 397, 3.

27. ex utraque parte: 'on each side.' **lateris deiectus**: = 'a steep slope' (lit. 'down-sinkings of the side'). **28. leniter . . . redibat**: i. e., that the slope was gradual down to the plain. **29. transversam fossam**: 'an intrenchment at right angles' to the direction of the hill. The greatest length of the hill was in the general direction of east to west; see Plan IV. **30. ad extremas fossas**: 'at the ends of the intrenchments.' A. 193; G. 287 R.; H. 440, 2 N. I. **31. tormenta**: what were the principal military engines of the Romans? Study p. 35. **instruxisset**: A. 325; G. 586; H. 521 II. 2. **32. quod . . . poterant**: 'because they were so strong in numbers.' **tantum**: see N. to *quid*, l. 21. **multitudine**: abl. of cause. **ab lateribus**: 'on the flanks.' **33. suos**: i. e., *milites Romanos*. **34. legionibus**: with *relictis*. The XIIIth and XIVth legions had been enrolled the previous spring in Cisalpine Gaul. See chap. 2. Caesar generally exposed his veterans to the brunt of the battle, leaving recruits, whose powers had not been fully tested, as a reserve force. **35. si quo**: 'if anywhere.' **opus esset**: see IDIOMS. **esset**: why not *sit*? **subsidio**: dat. of purpose, 'as a reserve force.' **duci**: noun or verb? **possent**: how is *ut* translated in purpose clauses? in result clauses? **36. pro castris**: the line of

battle was drawn up on the northwest slope of the hill, facing the marsh and the Miette brook. See Plan IV. **in acie**: what was the usual battle order of the Romans? See pp. 33, 34. **37. eductas instruxerant**: 'had led forth and drawn up.' A. 292 R.; G. 667 R.1; H. 549, 5. See Plan IV., where the forces of the Belgae are indicated by black lines.

Page 81. IX. 1. Palus: the low ground through which the Miette flows. See Plan IV. **erat**: 'there was'; N. to p. 49, 31. **2. Hanc**: i. e. *paludem*. **si**: '(to see) whether.' A. 334 *f*; G. 462, 2; H. 529 II. I N. I. What word might have been expected? **transirent**: subj. of indir. question. **3.** Order: *nostri autem parati in armis erant, ut, si ab illis initium transeundi* (*paludem*) *fieret*, (*eos*, i. e. the enemy engaged in crossing over, hence in disorder and at a disadvantage) *aggrederentur*. **fieret**: A. 342; G. 631; H. 529 II. **4. aggrederentur**: A. 317; G. 545; H. 497 II. **5. contendebatur**: see IDIOMS, p. 389. **neutri**: i.e., neither the Romans nor the Belgae; each side was waiting for the other to assume the offensive. **6. secundiore proelio**: A. 255 *a*; G. 408; H. 431, 4. **nostris**: why dat.? **7. reduxit**: force of *re-*? **8. demonstratum est**: see p. 79, 22–25. **10. eo consilio**: 'with this design,' abl. of cause. **possent, expugnarent**: N. to *fieret*, *aggrederentur* above. **castellum**: on the south bank of the Aisne; see Chap. 5 and Plan IV. C. **11. pontem**: the bridge across the Aisne, guarded at the north end by a garrison (*praesidium*, Plan IV. G), and at the south end by the redoubt under the command of Q. Titurius Sabinus. The Belgae wished to destroy this bridge in order to cut off Caesar's supplies and make retreat difficult for him. **12. minus**: = *non*. Notice the distinction of time in **possent**, 'if they should be able,' and **potuissent**, 'if (having made the attempt) they should have been unable.' **13. popularentur, prohiberent**: sc. *ut*. **nobis usui**: A. 233; G. 350; H. 390 I. **14. commeatu**: A. 243; G. 388; H. 414 I.

X. 15. certior factus: 'on being informed.' The cavalry of the Belgae were trying to cross the Aisne, probably a mile or two west of the bridge, in order to avoid the marsh and the Miette brook. See Plan IV. **equitatum, pontem**: A. 239 *b*; G. 330 R.1; H. 376. As Caesar's camp was south of the Miette and east of the bridge, he could send his cavalry across the bridge without danger of interference, and from the south side of the Aisne attack the enemy in the act of crossing. See Plan. **16. Numidas**: N. to p. 80, 9. **17. eo loco**: the engagement took place between the mouth of the Miette and the site of the modern village of Pontavert; see the mark of crossed swords on the Plan. Those of the Belgae who had already crossed were cut down where they were; many were slain in the stream; the rest were driven back to their camp. **pugnatum est**: see IDIOMS,

p. 389. **19. per**: 'over'; read N. to p. 77, 5, *Coniurandi*. **21. equitatu**: looked upon as instrument; how is agency expressed in Latin? **circumventos interfecerunt**: 'surrounded and killed.' A. 292 R.; G. 667 R. I; H. 549, 5. **22. Hostes**: i. e., the main body of the enemy, that had remained in battle array facing the Roman legions, while a detachment (*partem suarum copiarum*, l. 9) having tried to cross the river, were being destroyed by Caesar's cavalry and light-armed troops. **oppido**: i. e., Bibrax. A. 301; G. 434; H. 544, 2. **23. spem se fefellisse**: 'that they had been disappointed in their expectation' (lit. 'that their expectation had cheated them'). **neque**: = *et non*. **24. iniquiorem**: 'quite unfavorable position,' or 'less favorable position' than that where the legions were drawn up. Caesar's aggressive movement had the desired effect of checking the enemy. **causa**: abl., 'for the sake of.' **25. ipsos**: i. e., *hostes*. As the Gauls for the most part engaged only in short campaigns, their arrangements for supplies were very defective. It is a maxim of modern warfare that "the way to victory lies through the soldier's stomach." Caesar, as all great generals, paid the most careful attention to the provisioning of his army; see p. 10. **26. optimum**: in pred. Why neut.? A. 29 *c*; H. 42 II. 2 N. How compared? The subject of **esse** is *quemque reverti*. **domum**: A. 258 *b*; G. 410; H. 380 II. 2 1). **28. introduxissent**: A. 336; G. 653; H. 524. **convenirent**: in dir. disc., *convenite*, or *conveniamus*; sc. *ut*. A. 339; G. 655; H. 523 III. The clause (*ut*) . . . *convenirent* follows *constituerunt* as embodying the decree, and is made co-ordinate with *esse*, etc., by *et*. *Constituo* is followed sometimes by the infin., sometimes by the subj.; rarely, as here, by both in the same sentence. **29. alienis**: = *aliorum*, 'of others,' as opposed to *domesticis*, 'their own.' **decertarent, uterentur**: in how many ways may a purpose be expressed in Latin? A. 318; G. 544 R. 2. **30. copiis**: *not* 'forces' here. A. 249; G. 405; H. 421 I. **31. Divitiacum**: N. to p. 79, 12. **32. finibus**: A. 228; G. 346; H. 386. **cognoverant**: trans. as if impf. G. 233, 2; H. 471, 3. **33. His**: A. 230; G. 208; H. 384, 5. The Bellovaci (100,000 strong; see p. 78, 27–30) are meant, who 'could not be prevailed upon to stay longer' with the united host 'and not' go to the defence of their own country, now in danger of invasion. Caesar's plan of separating the forces of the Belgae (see p. 79, 14) was thus successful.

XI. 35. re: what 'matter'? Trans. this abl. abs. by a clause beginning with 'After.' **secunda vigilia**: from 9 to 12 P. M.; see p. 33. **strepitu**: A. 248 R.; G. 401; H. 419 III. **36. castris**: what preposition might be expected here? **nullo . . . imperio**: abl. abs., explaining *magno . . . tumultu*, and in turn explained by the causal clause *cum . . . properaret*. Trans., 'without any definite arrangement,' etc.

Page 82. **1. quisque . . . peteret**: i. e., each one wished to be the first to get under way, to be at the head of the retreating forces. A. 326; G. 587; H. 517. **2. fecerunt, ut,** etc.: 'they gave their departure the appearance of a rout.' A. 332 *e*; G. 557; H. 498 II. N. 2. **fugae**: A. 234 *a*; G. 356; H. 391 I. **3. per**: difference in meaning between *per* and *ab* denoting agency? A. 246 *b*; G. 356; H. 415 I. I N. I. **cognita**: with *re*; why abl.? **4. discederent**: why are indirect questions put in the subj.? H. 528, 2. **5. exercitum equitatumque**: force of *-que?* A. 156 *a*; G. 478; H. 554 I. 2. The cavalry was of less account than the 'army' proper, made up of legions. See p. 22. **castris**: what preposition might be expected here? **Prima luce**: 'at day-break.' A. 193; G. 287 R.; H. 440, 2 N. I. **6. re**: i. e., the fact that the Belgae had really retreated; previously Caesar had thought their departure only a feint, to cover up some stratagem. **7. novissimum agmen**: 'the rear' of the retreating Belgae. **moraretur**: A. 317; G. 632; H. 497 I. **His**: pl., from the idea of *equites* in *equitatum*. Why dat.? **9. Labienum**: N. to p. 51, 31. **10. novissimos**: sc. *hostes*; 'the rear.' **milia**: A. 257; G. 335, 2; H. 379. **11. eorum fugientium**: 'of them as they fled.' **12. cum . . . consisterent**: 'since (those) on the rear of the line of march, to whom (the Romans) had come, were making a stand.' **ventum erat**: A. 146 *c*; H. 301, 1. See IDIOMS, p. 389. **13. priores**: sc. *hostes*, subject of *ponerent*; refers to those at the head of the retreating column. **14. abesse a periculo**: 'to be out of danger.' **viderentur, continerentur**: subj. by attraction. A. 342; G. 631; H. 529 II. **neque**: 'and not.' **necessitate**: 'compulsion.' **15. clamore**: the 'shouting,' 'din,' of the combatants at the rear. **perturbatis**: force of *per-?* Cf. English *through* and *thoroughly*, which are only different forms of one original word. **16. ordinibus**: 'ranks.' Notice that the time of the second abl. abs. is later than that of the first. **praesidium**: '(hope of) refuge.' **ponerent**: after *cum*, above, co-ordinate with the compound pred., *consisterent sustinerent -que*. A. 326; G. 587; H. 517. **18. quantum . . . spatium**: 'as the duration of daylight permitted' (lit. 'as the length of the day was'). **sub**: 'about,' 'towards.' **19. erat imperatum**: why not a form with *ei* as subject?

XII. 20. diei: A. 214 *g*; G. 371 R. 4; H. 398, 5. **priusquam se—reciperent**: = *ne se prius—reciperent*. Having now scattered the forces of the Belgae by the defeat at the Aisne and the invasion of their territory by the Aedui (see N. to p. 81, 33), Caesar proceeds to reduce the different states one by one. **se reciperent**: 'could recover themselves.' A. 327; G. 579; H. 520 II. **21. Suessionum**: see map; the name survives in the city of Soissons. **22. Remis**: A. 234 *a*; G. 356;

H. 391, 1. **magno itinere confecto**: 'by making a forced march.' See p. 30. **23. Noviodunum**: thought to have been on the site of Soissons, nearly thirty miles west of Berry-au-Bac; see map. The name Noviodunum means 'new town'; cf. Newtown, Newcastle, Naples (from Neapolis, νεὰ πόλις), Neuville, Neufchateau, Neustadt, etc. **ex itinere**: 'immediately after his arrival' (lit. 'on the march,' 'after the march'). **24. vacuum**: sometimes followed by the abl. without a preposition. **esse**: sc. *id* (*oppidum*). **25. latitudinem**, etc.: if the wall of a town was high, an attacking party must fill up the moat in order to make their ladders reach to the top; if the moat was deep and wide, the filling of it was a hard matter, and the difficulty of scaling the wall was greatly increased. **fossae**: goes with *latitudinem*, while *muri* dep. on *altitudinem*, an arrangement known as *chiasmus*. A. 344 *f*; G. 684; H. 636 V. 4. **paucis defendentibus**: abl. abs., concessive; 'though there were but few defenders.' **26. expugnare**: how did the storming of a city differ from a siege? See pp. 34–36. **vineas agere**: see Vocab. **quae**: as antecedent supply *ea* with *comparare*. **27. usui**: A. 233, 300; G. 350, 433; H. 390 II. N. 2, 542 III. Could *oppugnando* have been used instead of *ad oppugnandum?* **28. proxima nocte**: Caesar in one day had marched from Berry-au-Bac to Soissons, and begun to get ready his military engines. In the mean time the fleeing hosts had paused in their flight, and now by night stealthily entered the town. **29. vineis**, etc.: on the various operations of the siege, see pp. 34–36. **30. iacto**: 'thrown up,' 'constructed.' **magnitudine, celeritate**: A. 245 *b*; G. 407, 1; H. 416 I. 2) N. 1. **operum**: 'siege-works.' **31. Galli**: appositive, 'which they ('being,' 'since they were'), Gauls, had,' etc. **33. petentibus Remis**: 'at the request of the Remi.' **ut conservarentur**: after *petentibus*. A. 331 *a*; G. 546; H. 498 I.

XIII. 34. primis: = *principibus*. A. 188; G. 195 R. 1; H. 441. Rule for appositives? **civitatis**: = *civium*; kind of gen.? **35. Galbae**: see p. 78, 35.

Page 83. 2. Qui: 'they.' A. 180 *f*; G. 612 R. 1; H. 453. See N. to p. 69, 36. **se suaque**: see IDIOMS. **3. Bratuspantium**: to-day Breteuil, about fifty miles northwest of Noviodunum. See map. **contulissent**: when is *cum* temporal used with the subj.? **4. circiter**: adv., with *quinque*. **milia**: how is extent of space expressed in Latin? How should the change of tense from **contulissent** to **abesset**, and from **accessisset** (l. 8) to **poneret**, be brought out in trans.? **maiores natu**: see IDIOMS, and A. 253; G. 398; H. 424. **6. in eius fidem**: 'under his protection.' **7. neque**: = *et non*. **9. pueri**: 'children,' not 'boys' merely. **passis manibus**: abl. abs., 'with outspread hands,' expressing humiliation and entreaty. What are the principal parts of

pando and *patior?* **more**: abl. of manner, with *passis*. **10. petierunt**: A. 128 *a*; G. 151, 1; H. 235.

XIV. 11. Pro: 'On behalf of.' **his**: i. e., *Bellovăcis*. **Divitiacus**: the Aeduan; N. to p. 79, 12. **12. eum**: Caesar. **facit verba**: 'pleads.' **13. Bellovacos,** etc.: indir. disc. to the end of the chapter, dep. on the idea of *saying* in *facit verba*. Study N. to p. 78, 4. A. 330, 3 *e*; G. 652 R.2; H. 523 I. N. **14. fuisse**: 'had been'; *fuerunt* in dir. disc. A. 336; G. 653; H. 523 I. **qui dicerent**: 'who kept saying.' A. 336; G. 653; H. 524. What meaning would *dixerint* have had in this connection? **15. Aeduos . . . perferre**: indir. disc. dep. on *dicerent*, like a wheel within a wheel. **omnes indignitates contumeliasque**: 'every kind of ill-treatment and insult.' What force has the pl. of abstract nouns? A. 75 *c*; G. 195 R.5; H. 130, 2. **16. et — et**: 'both — and.' **17. Qui**: as antecedent sc. *eos* with *profugisse*. **principes**: here = *auctores*, 'advisers.' **18. civitati**: why dat.? **intulissent**: subj. also in dir. disc. A. 334; G. 469; H. 529 I. **19. Britanniam**: see p. 43. **20. sua**: emphatic, 'his usual' (i. e., 'his own'). **clementia**: why abl.? **Clementia** is the 'mercy' with which a man treats those helpless and entirely in his power, while **mansuetudo** is the 'compassion' common to all men of feeling at the sight of those in trouble. **21. eos**: i. e., *Bellovacos*; could *se* have been used here? **Quod**: 'this,' referring to the request of the preceding sentence. **si fecerit — [eum] amplificaturum [esse]**: in dir. disc., *si feceris* (fut. pf. indic.), *amplificabis*. A. 337; G. 659; H. 527 I. **22. auxiliis, opibus**: abl. of manner, means, or cause? **23. si,** etc.: in dir. disc., *si qua bella inciderunt*, (*Aedui*) *sustentare* ('hold out') *consuerunt* (= *solent*). **si qua bella**: trans. as if *quaecumque bella*, 'whatever wars.'

XV. 24. honoris, etc.: 'out of regard for Divitiacus' (lit. 'for the sake of honor to Divitiacus'). **Divitiaci**: how does the objective differ from the subjective genitive? See N. to p. 61, 23, *iniuriis*. **causa**: A. 245; G. 407; H. 416. **25. in fidem**: N. to l. 6 above. **recepturum, conservaturum**: why must *esse* be supplied? **26. auctoritate**: A. 251; G. 402; H. 419 II. **multitudine**: A. 253; G. 398; H. 424. **27. sexcentos obsides**: an unusual number. The fact that for Divitiacus's sake Caesar had spared the Bellovaci their lives did not prevent him from demanding enough hostages to bind them securely in their pledge of submission. **28. eo loco**: i. e., Bratuspantium. Caesar's route lay to the north, probably by way of Samarobriva (now Amiens). See map. **30. Nervii**: considered the most savage of all the Belgae; see p. 79, 2, and map. **31. cum**: temporal, causal, or concessive? **32. Nullum,** etc.: indir. disc. to the end of the chapter. A. 330, 3 *e*;

G. 652 R.2; H. 523 I. N. Study N. to p. 78, 4. **esse mercatoribus**: 'traders have.' **nihil pati vini**: = *(eos) non pati quicquam vini;* the force of the negative goes with the verb. Prohibition is not an entirely new thing! **nihil vini**: A. 216 *a* 1; G. 371; H. 397, 1. **33. inferri**: A. 330; G. 527; H. 535. **34. rebus**: why abl.? **animos**: 'spirit,' 'courage,' as a quality of character, while **virtus**, 'valor,' has reference rather to the manifestation of courage in brave deeds. **existimarent**: why subj.? Why not pres. tense? A. 336, 286, 286 R.1; G. 653, 510; H. 524, and 493, 1. **35. -que**: connects *feros* with a gen. of quality (characteristic), which takes the place of an adj. **increpitare**: 'rebuke;' **incusare**: 'find fault with,' 'blame.' **36. reliquos**: N. to p. 47, 12. **qui**: 'since they'; would be used with subj. in dir. disc. A. 320 *e*; G. 636; H. 517. **37. patriam**: is this a noun or adjective? **sese . . . accepturos** [esse]: indir. disc. dep. on *confirmare;* see N. to l. 15 above. **sese**: refers to *eos* understood, subject of *confirmare*.

Page 84. XVI. 1. eorum: i. e., *Nerviorum*. Trace Caesar's route on the map. **triduum**: = *tres dies*. A. 256; G. 337; H. 379. **iter fecisset**: 'had advanced.' Why subj.? **inveniebat**: = *quaerendo cognoscebat*. **2. Sabim**: A. 56 *a* 1; G. 60, 2 *a*; H. 62 II. 2 (1). From *Sabis* comes the modern name of the river, S a m b r e. See map. **milia**: A. 257; G. 335, 2; H. 379. Why not abl.? A. 247 *c*; G. 311 R.4; H. 417, 1 N.2. **5. Atrebatis**: of the second declension only here. Cf. N. to p. 79, 4. **Viromanduis**: also spelled *Veromanduis*. See map. **his**: A. 227; G. 345, 2; H. 385 II. **6. experirentur**: subj. of purpose or result? **7. in itinere**: '(already) on the way.' **8. per aetatem**: 'by reason of (old) age.' **9. viderentur**: why subj.? **eum locum**: we would say '*a* place.' Perhaps the spot here referred to was in the marshy country about Thuin, on the south bank of the Sambre, some miles northeast of Hautmont. **coniecisse**: the object is *mulieres*, and the unexpressed antecedent of *qui;* for subject supply *eos*, from *ab his* above. **10. exercitui . . . esset**: trans. freely, 'an army could not go.'

XVII. 11. centuriones: see p. 22. **12. qui—deligant**: 'in order to choose.' A. 317; G. 632; H. 497 I. On the choice of a location for encampment, see p. 31. **ex . . . Gallis**: with *complures*. A. 216 *c*; G. 371 R.5; H. 397, 3 N.3. **dediticiis**: i. e., the Ambiani, Suessiones, and Bellovaci. **14. facerent**: when is *cum* temporal used with the subj.? **quidam**: be careful never to confuse *quidam* with *quidem*. **15. dierum**: grammatically dep. on *itineris*, in thought dep. on the expression *consuetudine itineris*, 'the usual marching order of those days.' Study pp. 29–31. **17. impedimentorum**: here = the beasts of burden that carried the *impedimenta*. Difference between *impedimenta* and

sarcinae? See p. 23. **18. quicquam negotii**: see IDIOMS, p. 388. **19. in castra**: i. e., to the place chosen for encampment. **venisset, abessent**: fut. pf. and fut. indic. in dir. disc. Why subj.? **20. spatium**: A. 257; G. 335, 2; H. 379. **sub sarcinis**, etc.: the plan was to attack the first legion to come up, just as it reached the place chosen for encampment, before the soldiers could throw off their luggage and get themselves in fighting trim. **21. futurum** [esse]: dep. on *demonstrarunt;* the subject is *ut . . . auderent*, — 'it would come about, that.' A. 332 *e*; G. 558 and R.; H. 500 I. 1. **reliquae**: sc. *legiones*. **contra** (adv.) **consistere**: = 'to withstand the attack.' **22. Adiuvabat**: the subject is the clause *quod . . . effecerant*, 'the fact that the Nervii,' etc. **23. antiquitus**: 'long ago.' **cum . . . possent**: 'since they could do nothing with cavalry.' **nihil, quicquid**: N. to p. 49, 2, *plurimum*. **24. ei rei**: 'this branch of the service.' Why dat.? **quicquid . . . copiis**: freely, 'all the military power they have lies in infantry.' **quo**: A. 317 *b*; G. 545, 2; H. 497 II. 2. **26. causa**: see IDIOMS. **venissent**: A. 342; G. 631; H. 529 II. **27. teneris**, etc.: by cutting into young trees near the root they were able to bend these down to a horizontal position. The stem of the tree would then increase in size very little, but along the trunk branches would grow out, above and on the sides (*in latitudinem*). In the spaces along the line of defence not filled by trees thus trained, thorn bushes were planted. The whole formed a living and impenetrable hedge. **28. effecerant, ut**, etc.: A. 332; G. 557; H. 500 II. **instar muri**: 'like a wall' (lit. 'the appearance of a wall,' *instar* being in apposition with *munimentum*). **29. quo**: = *in quod* (*munimentum*). **30. intrari, perspici posset**: trans. as if active and personal, 'one could not enter, look into.' Force of *per-* in **perspici**? **cum**: temporal, causal, or concessive? **31. omittendum**: why must *esse* be supplied? **consilium**: 'the plan' of attack, described above.

XVIII. 33. haec: 'as follows.' G. 290, 6; H. 450, 3. **locum**: A. 200 *b*; G. 618; H. 445, 9. The site here described lies on the river Sambre (Sabis) in France, near the Belgian frontier, about two miles southwest of the city of Maubeuge. See Plan V. **34. Collis**: the hill on which the Roman camp was laid out; it was on the north side of the Sambre. See Plan V. **ab . . . declivis**: 'sloping down uniformly from the top.' **35. supra**: l. 2, above. See N. to p. 77, 2. **36. acclivitate**: 'upward slope.' **nascebatur . . . contrarius**: 'rose up, facing this (hill) and opposite to it,' i. e., on the south side of the Sambre. See Plan V.

Page 85. 1. passus: acc. of extent of space. **infimus**: 'at the bottom,' opposed in meaning to **ab superiore parte**, 'on the upper parts.' **apertus**: i. e., free from woods. **2. ut**: 'so that.' **3. aper-**

to loco: the space indicated on the plan between the river and the dotted line running parallel with it, which marks the northern limit of the woods. **4. Secundum**: a preposition. **5. pedum**: kind of gen.?

XIX. 7. copiis: A. 248 *a*; G. 391 R.1; H. 419 III. 1, 1). **ratio ordoque**: 'system and arrangement.' **aliter se habebat ac**: 'were different from what,' 'were otherwise than.' **habebat**: sing. because *ratio* and *ordo* express *one* idea. A. 205 *b*; G. 202 R.1; H. 463 II. 3. **ac**: A. 156 *a*; G. 646; H. 554 I. 2 N. **8. ad hostis**: could *hostibus* have been used? **9. consuetudine sua**: i. e., 'his usual practice' when in the vicinity of the enemy. See p. 30. **expeditas**: predicative. See p. 23, 3. **10. collocarat**: *not* 'collect.' A. 128 *a*; G. 151, 1; H. 235. **duae legiones**: the XIIIth and XIVth; see Chap. 2. **11. proxume** = *proxime*; the MSS. vary between the two spellings. **agmen claudebant**: see IDIOMS. **12. praesidio impedimentis**: A. 233; G. 350; H. 390 I. Study pp. 29–31, and the arrangement of the legions on Plan V. **14. identidem**: 'repeatedly.' Notice that repeated action is implied also in the imperfects **reciperent, facerent, auderent**. **16. neque**: = *et non*. **quem ad finem**: = *ad eum finem ad quem* = *usque eo quo*. A. 200 *b*; G. 617; H. 445, 8. **17. cedentes**: sc. *eos* (*hostes*). **18. quae primae venerant**: 'which had been the first to come up.' A. 191; G. 324 R.6; H. 443. **opere**: 'the work' on the fortifications of the camp. See pp. 31–33. **dimenso**: here with passive sense. A. 135 *b*; H. 231, 2. **19. prima**: 'the first part of.' A. 193; G. 287 R.; H. 440, 2 N. 2. **20. visa sunt**: here passive in meaning. **quod**: in apposition with the clause *ubi . . . visa sunt*. **21. tempus**: in pred. after *convenerat*, 'which had been agreed upon as the time,' etc. **committendi proelii**: how may the gerundive be changed to the gerund constr.? **ut**: 'just as.' **22. ipsi sese confirmaverant**: 'had made up their minds.' **23. copiis**: what is omitted? Why? **provolaverunt**: force of *pro-*? **26. in manibus nostris**: 'close at hand.' **27. adverso colle**: abl. abs.; trans. with *contenderunt*, 'dashed up the hill,' i. e., the hill on the north side of the river, where the Roman camp had been laid out.

XX. 30. Caesari: A. 232, 344 *i*; G. 353 and 675, 1; H. 388, 561 I. **vexillum**: see p. 25. **31. proponendum, dandum, etc.**: sc. *erat, erant*. **concurri**: force of *con-*? **32. signum tuba dandum**: as a command to "fall in." What were the musical instruments of the Roman army? See p. 26. **opere**: what 'work'? **33. qui**: as antecedent sc. *ei* (*milites*) with *arcessendi*. **aggeris**: i. e., 'material' for constructing the rampart, an unusual meaning of *agger*. **34. signum**: i. e., *signum proelii committendi*. **35. successus**: 'approach' of the enemy from below.

Page 86. **1. difficultatibus, subsidio**: see IDIOMS, and A. 233; G. 350; H. 390 I. **2. scientia atque usus**: which does Caesar consider as more important, the 'skill' (lit. 'theory') or the 'experience'? A. 156 *a*; G. 479; H. 554 I. 2. The discipline of Caesar's army won for him many a battle. **5. singulis . . . legatos**: 'their respective legions, the different lieutenants.' A. 95 *a*; G. 95; H. 174, 2 1). Caesar frequently placed a lieutenant in command of each legion, a plan the wisdom of which was evident in cases of emergency. **7. nihil**: = emphatic *non*. A. 240 *a*; G. 331 R.3; H. 378, 2. **8. videbantur**: sc. *administranda*, 'seemed necessary to be done,' 'ought evidently to be attended to.'

XXI. **9. necessariis, etc.**: 'having given (only) the indispensable orders.' **10. quam in partem**: = *in eam partem, in quam*. A. 200 *b*; G. 618; H. 445, 9. **12. suae**: 'their usual,' 'their well-known.' **retinerent, perturbarentur, sustinerent, posset**: A. 332 *b*; G. 554; H. 502, 2. **13. animo**: A. 253; G. 398; H. 424. **14. quod . . . aberant**: gives the reason for *signum dedit*. **quam quo**: = *quam ut eo*. **15. in alteram partem**: 'in the opposite direction,' i. e., from the xth and ixth legions over to the xiith and viith. See Plan V. **16. profectus**: principal parts of *proficiscor* and *proficio*? **pugnantibus occurrit**: 'finds them (already) fighting.' **17. hostiumque**: notice that the word to which *-que* is attached always belongs after it in constr.; thus *hostium* must go with *animus*, not with *exiguitas*. **18. ad insignia accommodanda**: 'for putting on their decorations,' particularly the crests, which were taken off from the helmets on the march. In battle it was important that the crests be in place, for by differences of these in form and color the different legions and cohorts could be distinguished. **19. galeas**: see pp. 24, 30, 31. **scutis**: A. 243; G. 388; H. 414. **20. tegimenta**: some shields were made with a heavy leather covering, which was not taken off; others were covered with leather on the march in order to protect them from the weather; for exposure to wet would rust the metal and warp the wood-work out of place. **Quam**: with *in partem*: 'into whatever part (of the field).' **21. devenit**: 'happened to come.' **22. ad haec constitit**: 'by these he took his stand.' Under ordinary circumstances it was a serious offence for a soldier to be found in a maniple where he did not belong. **in quaerendis suis**: = *in quaerendo sua* (*signa*). Rule for changing gerundive to gerund constr.?

XXII. **25. quam ut**: why not with subj. as in l. 12 above? **rei . . . ordo**: = 'the arrangement approved by military science.' **26. diversis legionibus**: abl. abs., 'as the legions were scattered.' **aliae alia in parte**: 'different legions in different places.' A. 203 *c*; G. 306; H.

459, 1. **27. resisterent, impediretur**: A. 326; G. 587; H. 517. **sepibus interiectis**: A. 255, 93 *b*; G. 408; H. 431 and 444, 1. **ante**: = *supra*; see Chap. 17, 18. **28. certa subsidia collocari—poterant**: 'reserves could be definitely stationed'; i. e., the movements of the enemy were so obscured by the thicket that Caesar could not tell where reserve forces could be advantageously posted. **certa**: A. 191; G. 324 R.6; H. 443. **29. quaque**: from *quisque*. **opus esset**: see IDIOMS. **30. provideri**: sc. *poterat*. **31. fortunae**: dep. on *eventus*, 'issues.'

XXIII. 34. acie: gen. A. 74 *a*; G. 69 R.2; H. 120. For the position of the legions here mentioned and the Atrebates, see Plan V. **pilis emissis**: 'having hurled their pikes.' What were the weapons of the Roman soldier? See pp. 23, 24. **35. vulneribus confectos**: see IDIOMS, p. 382. **Atrebates**: acc. See N. to p. 79, 4. **ea pars**: i. e., the left of the Roman line. **36. ex loco superiore**: the slope of the hill on which the Roman legions were posted, up which the Atrebates, having crossed the river, rushed. **compulerunt**: derivation and force of *com-*? **37. conantes**: sc. *eos* (*Atrebates*). **38. Ipsi**: the soldiers of the IXth and Xth legions.

Page 87. 1. locum iniquum: the ground south of the Sambre, sloping back from the river and covered with woods. **resistentes hostes**: acc. **2. alia in parte**: i. e., in front of the camp; see Plan V. **3. diversae**: 'separately.' A. 191; G. 324 R.6; H. 443. **4. quibuscum**: A. 104 *e*; G. 414 R.1; H. 187, 2. **erant congressi**: sc. *milites*, from *legiones*. **ex loco superiore**: closely connected with *profligatis Viromanduis*; the Viromandui, like the Atrebates, had crossed the river, and were now driven back. **5. proeliabantur**: force of the imperfect? **totis**: A. 344 *e*; G. 675, 1, 3; H. 561 III. **a, ab**: 'on.' **a . . . nudatis castris**: the VIIIth and XIth legions in front, the IXth and Xth legions on the left of the camp, had abandoned their positions to pursue the enemy, leaving the camp unprotected except on the right, where the XIIth and VIIth legions stood. See Plan V. **7. non**: with *magno*. **intervallo**: A. 257 *b*; G. 400 R.1; H. 379, 2. **8. constitisset**: why sing.? why subj.? **duce Boduognato**: A. 255 *a*; G. 408; H. 431, 4. **9. summam imperii**: see IDIOMS. **10. aperto latere**: A. 258 *f*; G. 387; H. 425 II. 2 N.2. The 'unprotected flank' was in this case the left, whence the other legions had withdrawn. **legiones**: the XIIth and the VIIth. **11. summum castrorum locum**: 'the height occupied by the camp.'

XXIV. 12. levis armaturae pedites: see p. 21. **13. cum eis una**: 'together with them.' **14. dixeram**: Chap. 19. **reciperent, respexissent** (l. 18): force of *re-*? **adversis**: 'face to face.' The

Nervii came up so rapidly that they were already entering the Roman camp at the time when Caesar's cavalry and light-armed troops that had been routed on the other side of the Sambre (see Chap. 19), were just getting back to it again. Notice the descriptive force of the imperfects in this chapter. **hostibus**: why dat.? **16. ab decumana porta,** etc.: study pp. 31–33. As the hill on which the camp was, sloped a little toward the Sambre, the rear of the camp was slightly elevated above the front, and hence the *calones*, who were stationed there, could perceive what was going on along the river. Seeing the legions at the left and in front rush across the stream, they started to follow; but on looking back they saw, to their dismay, that the Nervii by a flank movement on the right had gained possession of the camp. **18. respexissent, vidissent**: A. 325, 323; G. 586; H. 521 II. 2. **19. praecipites**: 'head over heels.' A. 191; G. 324 R. 6; H. 443. **eorum**: the drivers and attendants of the baggage-train, of which the XIIIth and XIVth legions were bringing up the rear. See Plan V. **20. clamor**: 'shouting'; as distinguished from **fremitus**, general 'uproar,' 'hubbub.' **alii aliam in partem**: see IDIOMS. **21. ferebantur**: 'rushed off.' **rebus**: A. 245 *b*; G. 407, 1; H. 416 I. 2.) N.I. **22. virtutis opinio**: 'reputation for courage.' **23. civitate**: personified, hence with **ab**. **24. cum**: with *vidissent*, expressing time and cause. **25. legiones**: the VIIth and XIIth. **26. Numidas**: N. to p. 80, 9; the slingers and bowmen were included in the *levis armaturae* mentioned in l. 12. Notice the omission of conjunctions. **diversos**: participle. **27. domum**: why acc.? **28. pulsos,** etc.: is *esse* to be supplied? Why infin.? **castris, impedimentis**: A. 249; G. 405; H. 421 I.

XXV. 30. Caesar to possent (p. 88, 11), forms a single complex sentence. The principal clause has for its subject *Caesar*, with which the participles *profectus* and *cohortatus* (p. 88, 10) agree; for its predicate it has the verbs *processit*, *iussit* (p. 88, 9 and 11). The most important subordinate clause is *ubi . . . vidit*, which is so long that *vidit* is repeated for the sake of clearness. Several infinitives with subject-accusatives depend upon *vidit*; and there are several abl. abs. worthy of particular attention. **ab . . . cohortatione**: = *ab decima legione quam cohortatus erat.* **31. signis**: the standards of the maniples; see p. 25. So fierce had been the onset of the Nervii that the Roman soldiers could not keep their places in the ranks, but were crowded together and hence at the mercy of the enemy. **32. sibi esse impedimento**: 'were a hindrance to themselves,' = 'were in one another's way.' A. 233; G. 350; H. 390 I. **34. signifero**: here the one who carried the standard of the first maniple of the cohort, which was looked upon as the standard of the cohort. See p. 25.

Page 88. **1. primipilo**: with *confecto*, abl. abs. See p. 22. **fortissimo**: A. 93 *b*; H. 444, 1. **2. vulneribus confecto**: see IDIOMS. The brave Baculus did not die, but lived to fight several battles. See Book III. Chap. 5; VI. 38. **ut**: 'so that.' **3. ab novissimis**: 'towards the rear.' **4. deserto proelio**: this is the reading of the MSS., but does not make good sense. Supply *loco* with *deserto*, 'quitting their posts.' **proelio**: A. 243; G. 388; H. 414. **hostis, etc.**: 'that both in front the enemy did not cease coming up, — and on both flanks,' etc. **5. ex inferiore loco**: from the low ground along the river. **6. rem . . . angusto**: see IDIOMS, p. 382. **7. subsidium**: 'reserve force'; the XIIIth and XIVth legions were not yet available, because too far off. **posset**: A. 320 *a*; G. 633, 634; H. 503 I. **8. uni**: here = 'a'; cf. the French *un*, 'one,' which comes from *unus*. The English "an" and "one" were originally the same word. **militi**: A. 229; G. 344 R. 2; H. 385 II. 2. **eo**: adv. **9. nominatim**: Caesar's personal knowledge of his men was an important element in his success as a general. Read pp. 8, 9. **10. signa inferre**: see IDIOMS. **manipulos laxare**: 'to spread out the ranks,' in order to give each soldier more room for action, and to lessen the deadly effect of the enemy's missiles. **11. quo**: why not *ut?* **uti**: what other verbs are followed by the abl.? **possent**: A. 317 *b*; G. 545, 2; H. 497 II. 2. **adventu**: abl. of time and cause. **12. militibus**: why dat.? **13. in extremis rebus**: 'in the most perilous crisis,' 'in extreme peril.' **14. operam navare**: see IDIOMS. **paulum**: how different in meaning from *paululum*, *paulatim*, *paulisper?*

XXVI. 16. iuxta: i. e., next to the XIIth legion. See Plan V. **17. tribunos militum**: see p. 22. **18. ut . . . inferrent**: 'that the (two) legions gradually draw together, face about, and charge against the enemy.' Probably one legion simply took up a position behind the other, facing in the opposite direction, so that the rear of both was secure. **conversa signa**: A. 292 R.; G. 671, 667 R.; H. 549, 5. See p. 26. **20. ferret, timerent**: A. 326; G. 587; H. 517. **neque**: = *et non*. **timerent**: sc. *milites*. How are *ut* and *ne* translated after a verb of fearing? **aversi**: 'in the rear.' **22. legionum duarum**: the XIIIth and XIVth; see Plan V. **23. cursu incitato**: 'having quickened their pace.' What relation of time between this and the preceding abl. abs.? **24. summo colle**: 'the top of the hill' on which the Roman camp was laid out. **25. castris**: A. 249; G. 405; H. 421 I. Labienus, with the IXth and Xth legions, had driven the Atrebates in confusion across the river and gained possession of the camp of the enemy. **ex loco superiore**: how was the enemy's camp situated? See Chap. 18, and Plan V. **26. gererentur, (28) esset, (29) versaretur**: A. 334; G. 469; H. 529 I. **subsidio nostris**: with what verbs

may two datives be used? **27. Qui**: pl. from the idea of **milites** in *legionem*. **quo . . . esset**: 'in what condition the matter was,' = 'how matters stood.' **29. versaretur**: agrees with the nearest, in this case the most important, subject. A. 205 *d*; H. 463 I. Trans. 'were.' **nihil . . . fecerunt**: 'they came up as fast as they could' (lit. 'left nothing undone in regard to speed'). **nihil reliqui**: A. 216 *a* 1, 214 *c*; H. 401 N.4.

XXVII. 31. adventu: N. to l. 11 above. **32. qui**: 'even such as.' **procubuissent**: A. 320 *a*; G. 633, 634; H. 503 I. **scutis**: A. 254 *b*; G. 403 R.3; H. 425 II. 1 1) N. **33. perterritos**: with *hostes*. **34. inermes**: with *calones*. Notice the nearness of *inermes* to *armatis* (*hostibus*). A. 344 *g*; G. 683; H. 563. **36. quo . . . praeferrent**: 'in order that they might show themselves better than the legion-soldiers,' and thus atone for their cowardice in the earlier part of the battle. **37. etiam . . . salutis**: 'even in utter despair of safety.' **38. primi**: 'the foremost,' 'those in the front ranks.' **cecidissent**: subj. for what two reasons?' **iacentibus**: 'those that had fallen.' A. 228; G. 346; H. 386. **insisterent**, etc.: what is the force of the imperfect?

Page 89. 1. ex: 'on.' **2. superessent: why** subj.? **ut ex tumulo**: 'as from a hillock.' **3. intercepta**: 'that had been caught,' 'that they had caught.' **conicerent, remitterent**: sc. *ut*. **ut non**, etc.: order, *ut iudicari deberet, homines tantae virtutis non nequiquam ausos esse*, etc.; a result clause, following as a sort of conclusion from the preceding description. **6. quae**, etc.: 'things which, in themselves most difficult (lit. 'from being most difficult'), their greatness of courage had made easy (of accomplishment).' Caesar often bears witness to the courage of his foes. **quae**: refers to the deeds just mentioned. **facilia**: predicative. How compared? A. 89 *b*; G. 88, 2; H. 163, 2.

XXVIII. 8. Hoc proelio facto: = *post hoc proelium*. Give a connected and accurate description of this battle, from a study of the text, the notes, and Plan V. **ad internicionem**: the Nervii so far regained their ancient strength, however, that they were able to send a contingent of warriors to join in the great uprising of Gaul against Caesar, B.C. 52. See Book VII., Chap. 75. **10. pueris**: 'children.' **aestuaria**: inlets of the sea where the tide ebbed and flowed. **11. dixeramus**: see N. to p. 77, 2, and Chap. 16. **nihil impeditum**: sc. *esse*, 'that nothing stood in the way of,' 'was a hindrance.' **12. omnium**: dep. on *consensu*. **15. milibus lx**: the Nervii had promised for the war only 50,000 men. See Chap. 4. **vix**: with *quingentos*. The ambassadors perhaps exaggerated the losses of the Nervii in order to excite Caesar's compassion. **16. possent**: A. 336; G. 653; H. 524. **17. usus**: sc. *esse*. A. 272 *b*; H. 536, 2 1). **misericordia**: N. to p. 83, 20. **19. imperavit**: meaning. when followed by the dat.? by the acc.? See IDIOMS. **ut . . .**

prohiberent: i. e., from 'wrong and harm' to the weak remnant of the Nervii.

XXIX. 21. supra: see N. to p. 77, 2, and Chap. 16. **22. copiis**: A. 248 *a*; G. 391 R.1; H. 419 III. 1 1). **auxilio Nerviis**: A. 233; G. 350; H. 390 I. **venirent**: = *in itinere essent*. Why subj.? **24. oppidum**: situated probably on the hill at the junction of the Meuse and the Sambre, across the Sambre from Namur; see Plan VI. Goeler, however, an eminent German authority, thinks the site of the *oppidum* is to be found on the hill Falhize, which lies on the north bank of the Meuse, opposite the town of Huy, some miles below Namur. **25. Quod**: 'this.' **cum**: concessive, 'although'; N. to p. 69, 36. **partibus**: 'sides.' **26. despectus**: pl., '(uninterrupted) views' over all the surrounding country, owing to the height of the hill. **27. pedum**: A. 247 *c*, 214 *c*; G. 311 R.4, 365; H. 402 and 417, 1 N.2. This narrow slope, leading up to the top of the plateau on which the town stood, was on the west side. See Plan VI. **29. magni ponderis**: A. 215 *b*; G. 364; H. 396 V. **praeacutas**: 'sharpened' at the end. Notice the change of tense from **munierant**, completed past action, to **collocabant**, continued past action. **30. Cimbris, Teutonis**: N. to p. 67, 36. **32. agere, portare**: to what kind of *impedimenta* does each verb refer? **33. citra**: i. e., on the west side. **depositis**: with *impedimentis*. **custodiam** (= *custodes*), **praesidium**: appositive. **34. Hi**: the 6,000 Aduatuci. **eorum**: the great throng of Cimbri and Teutones, who perished at Aquae Sextiae (102 B.C.) and at Vercellae (101 B.C.). **35. cum**: causal. **alias, alias**: adverbs.

Page 90. 1. illatum: sc. *bellum*; see IDIOMS, p. 382. **2. sibi domicilio**: rule for two datives?

XXX. 3. adventu: N. to p. 88, 11. **4. parvulis proeliis**: 'skirmishes.' **5. vallo, castellis**: these formed the line of circumvallation; see Plan VI. Some have thought it strange that in this description no mention is made of the Meuse or the Sambre. The brow of the hill itself on which the town stood was so steep and high that probably the rivers hardly entered into Caesar's calculations in planning the attack and siege. **6. oppido**: sc. *in*. **7. vineis, etc.**: for the various siege operations, see pp. 34–36. **aggere**: marked **A** on the plan. **turrim procul**: the tower was constructed out of reach of the enemy's missiles. See Plan VI., **B**. **8. irridere, increpitare**: historical infinitives. **vocibus**: 'remarks,' 'taunts.' **quod . . . instrueretur**: the reason assigned by the Gauls, not by Caesar. A. 341 *d*; G. 539; H. 516 II. **9. ab**: 'off.' **spatio**: abl. of degree of difference. **quibusnam**: the *-nam* implies contempt, 'what hands, pray.' **10. praesertim, etc.**: 'especially (being) men of so small size,' 'such little chaps,' spoken contemptuously.

11. Gallis contemptui: 'an object of ridicule on the part of the Gauls.' **12. brevitas nostra**: see N. to p. 66, 31, *magnitudine*. **13. confiderent**: A. 338, 334; G. 654; H. 523 II. I. The Aduatuci thought the Romans would have to pick the tower up and carry it in order to move it. This indicates their ignorance of mechanical contrivances, and gives an insight into their stage of civilization.

XXXI. 14. moveri, etc.: 'moving,' sc. *turrim*. **15. specie**: 'sight.' **16. qui**: subject of *dixerunt*. **17. Romanos sine ope divina**: so the American Indians, it is said, thought the first steamboats and railway trains real gods, or demons. **qui**: 'because they.' A. 320 *e*; G. 636; H. 517. **19. Unum**: 'one thing' (i. e., *ne — despoliaret*); indir. disc. to the end of the chapter. Study N. to p. 78, 4. **20. clementia ac mansuetudine**: N. to p. 83, 20. **21. audirent**: i. e., by report. **22. ne despoliaret**: A. 339; G. 655; H. 523 III. **23. a**: 'against.' **24. traditis armis**: = *si arma tradita essent*. A. 310; G. 594, 2; H. 507, 3 N. 7. **praestare**: the subject is *pati*, 'that it would be better for them to endure any lot whatever.' **25. eum casum**: 'such a condition,' i. e., of choosing between the mercy of the Romans and of the surrounding Gauls.

XXXII. 28. consuetudine sua: 'in accordance with his habit,' of treating a prostrate foe mercifully. A. 245; G. 407; H. 416. **29. conservaturum** [esse], **dedissent**: in dir. disc., *conservabo*, *dederint* (fut. perf.). A. 337; G. 659; H. 527 I. **30. attigisset**: subj. for what two reasons? **aries**: see p. 35. In antiquity it was a rule of war that those besieged cities which did not capitulate before the battering-ram touched the walls, when captured should be given over to destruction. **31. armis traditis**: abl. abs. **32. quam**: 'any.' See N. to p. 50, 29. Cf. p. 89, 18–20. **34. imperarentur**: why subj.? **facere**: sc. *eos* (*Aduatucos*). The pres. tense is used instead of the fut. to express the immediate carrying out of Caesar's orders. **35. iacta**: with *multitudine*, abl. abs. **36. summam, etc.**: the *agger* had been prolonged as far as the edge of the moat. The deep space between the end of the *agger* and the wall, from the bottom of the moat up, was filled with darts.

Page 91. 3. pace sunt usi: 'they enjoyed peace,' 'kept quiet.'

XXXIII. 4. Sub: 'Towards.' **6. inito consilio**: 'having formed a plot.' **7. praesidia deducturos** [esse]: 'would withdraw the outposts,' from the redoubts and the line of circumvallation, where the Roman sentries kept careful watch. **8. denique**: 'at any rate.' **10. viminibus intextis**: 'by weaving in twigs.' **11. tertia vigilia**: abl. of time. What time of night was designated as 'the third watch'? See p. 33. **12. ascensus, etc.**: from this it would seem that the Roman

line of circumvallation was on ground somewhat above the level of the plain, so that the enemy, after rushing down from the town, must advance up a height in order to storm the Roman works. **14. ignibus**: 'fire-signals.' See Plate V. 2. **15. concursum est**: see IDIOMS, p. 389. **16. ut . . . debuit**: 'as brave men were bound to fight.' **in . . . salutis**: N. to p. 88, 37. **17. vallo**: the Roman line of circumvallation. **18. iacerent**: A. 320 *a*; G. 633, 634; H. 503 I. **una**: 'alone.' **19. ad**: adv., 'about.' **20. diei**: A. 214 *g*; G. 371 R.4; H. 398, 5. **21. cum**: temporal, causal, or concessive? **22. sectionem**: 'the booty' in this case included all the possessions of the inhabitants of the town, as well as the people themselves, who were sold into slavery. See p. 11. **23. milium quinquaginta trium**: pred. gen. of characteristic.

ii. EXPEDITION OF PUBLIUS CRASSUS TO THE WESTERN COAST. XXXIV. B.C. 57.

XXXIV. 26. Venetos: see N. to p. 96, 7. **Venellos**: better spelling than *Unellos*, found in many editions. For the location of this and the following tribes, see map. **Curiosolitas**: Greek acc. of a Keltic word. A. 63 *b*; G. 73; H. 68. The name survives in the town of Corseult, in Brittany, near which the ruins of a Roman temple, dedicated to Mars, have been discovered. **27. Esubios**: this name has been found on Gallic coins, and survives in Essey. **Aulercos**: = *Aulercos Eburovices*; see N. to p. 100, 25. **Redones**: from this tribe comes the name of the town Rennes. **28. Oceanum**: the Atlantic.

iii. EVENTS AFTER THE REDUCTION OF THE BELGAE. XXXV. B.C. 57.

XXXV. 33. incolerent: subj. by attraction. A. 342; G. 631; H. 529 II.

Page 92. 1. se: refers to *nationes*; hence *daturas*, etc., are fem. **2. legationes**: for *legatos*; see N. to p. 50, 18. **Illyricum**: this also was a part of Caesar's "province"; see p. 4. **3. Carnutes**: in their country was the sacred spot where once a year Druids from all parts of Gaul assembled; see p. 40. The name survives in the diocese Chartres, and in Chartrain, a division of France before the French Revolution. **4. Andes**: hence the name Anjou. **Turones**: a modified form of the name remains in the city of Tours and the department Touraine. **5. hibernacula**: how did the winter-quarters differ from the ordinary camp? See p. 33. **6. Italiam**: see N. to p. 51, 31. **7. supplicatio**: usually a 'solemn thanksgiving' lasted only three or four days. **quod**: sc. *id*. A. 200 *e*; H. 445, 7. **8. nulli**: emphatic position.

BOOK III.

i. The War in the Alps. I–VI. B.C. 57.

Page 93. Chapter I. 1. proficisceretur: = *in itinere esset*. A. 325, 323; G. 586; H. 521 II. 2. The events of Book III., as a whole, belong to the year 56 B.C. (see pp. 4, 46); but the uprising of the Alpine tribes, narrated in Chapters 1–6, took place in the latter part of the autumn and early winter of B.C. 57. **Italiam**: see N. to p. 51, 31. **Servium Galbam**: great-grandfather of the emperor Galba; he was one of the conspirators that murdered Caesar, B.C. 44. **2. legione duodecima**: Caesar had now eight legions, numbering VII. to XIV. inclusive. **Nantuatis**: acc. Locate the Nantuates and the other tribes mentioned, on the map. **4. summas Alpes**: 'the highest part of the Alps.' **5. mittendi**: sc. *legionem*, or *milites*. **iter per Alpes**: the pass now known as the Great St. Bernard, where the famous hospice is. By this route Napoleon I. made his venturesome "crossing of the Alps," with an army of 30,000 men, in May, 1800. **6. periculo**: the danger arose not so much from the precipitous and perilous way over the mountains as from the hostility of the natives. These lived partly by mining and grazing, partly by levying tolls on the goods of traders going through the pass, and partly by plundering wayfarers. **portoriis**: see N. to p. 56, 1. **7. Huic**: i. e., *Servio Galbae*. **opus esse**: see IDIOMS, p. 385. **9. proeliis factis**: the following ablatives absolute indicate successive events, and should be rendered by clauses. First come the engagements, then the taking of strongholds; later, the sending of envoys, then the giving of hostages; finally, the ratification of peace. **castellis**: derivation? How different in meaning from *castris?* **12. vico**: if this had been a fortified town what word would have been used? See N. to p. 49, 20. **14. adiecta**: 'adjoining.' **15. continetur**: 'hemmed in.' **flumen**: to-day called the Drance; it flows into a great bend of the Rhone not far from Martigny, which is thought to occupy the site of Octodurus. **17. alteram . . . relictam**: 'the other part left free

from them.' Galba drove the inhabitants out of one portion of the town and turned the dwellings into winter-quarters. **18. Eum locum**: the part occupied by Galba.

II. 19. hibernorum: 'of their wintering.' **transissent**: what is the ordinary meaning of *cum?* when is it used with the subj.? **20. eo**: = *in eum locum*, i. e., *in eam partem vici Octoduri*. **21. concesserat**: why not subj.? **22. impenderent**: A. 342; G. 631; H. 529 II. **23. multitudine**: abl. of agent, because of the idea of *homines* in *multitudo*. **Id**: neut. because referring to the following *ut*-clause, and nom. because taking the place of that clause as subject of the impers. *acciderat*. **24. ut . . . caperent**: explains *id*. A. 332 *f*; G. 559; H. 501 III. **25. consilium caperent**: see IDIOMS. **26. neque eam plenissimam**: 'and that not entirely complete,' 'not having its full number of men'; the reason *why* is explained by the following abl. abs. **compluribus singillatim**: sc. *detractis*, 'because a great many had been drawn off individually,' not in cohorts or maniples. **27. commeatus**: case? A. 296; G. 428; H. 544. In how many ways may a purpose be expressed in Latin? **28. tum etiam**: a sort of "secondly"; cf. *primum* above.

Page 94. 1. ipsi: i. e., the natives, the mountaineers. **decurrerent**: 'should rush down'; = *decurrent* of dir. disc. **2. ne — quidem**: why not written together? **3. Accedebat, quod**: 'there was the additional fact, that,' = 'and, moreover', the *quod*-clause is subject of *accedebat*. **4. abstractos**: sc. *esse*. **nomine**: 'under the name.' A. 248 R.; G. 401; H. 419 III. **6. provinciae**: see p. 38 and map. **7. sibi persuasum habebant**: A. 292 *c*; G. 230; H. 388 I N.; 'had (it = the fact) persuaded (to) themselves,' 'were convinced.' **persuasum**: neut. acc., agreeing with the clause *Romanos — occupare ei adiungere conari*.

III. 8. opus hibernorum: 'the work on the winter quarters,' i. e., the laying out of streets, the adapting of the buildings already standing to the use of the soldiers, the erection of huts, etc.; while **munitiones** refers to the construction of fortifications, alluded to on p. 93, 18. See pp. 31–33. **9. perfectae**: agrees with what? A. 187 *a*; H. 439. **neque satis esset provisum**: 'nor had sufficient provision been made.' **12. consilio**: probably composed of the military tribunes and the centurions of the first order of the eight cohorts in camp. **13. Quo**: A. 180 *f*; G. 612 R. 1; H. 453. **tantum periculi**: see IDIOMS, p. 388. **praeter opinionem**: 'contrary to expectation.' **15. subsidio**: A. 233; G. 350; H. 384, 1, 3). **16. veniri**: sc. *posset*. G. 199 R. 1; H. 465, 1; 'help could not come.' **19. itineribus**:

A. 258 *g*; G. 403; H. 420 and 420, 1, 3). **isdem**: = *eisdem*. **ad salutem**: 'to a place of safety.' **20. Maiori parti placuit**: 'the majority decided.'

IV. 23. Brevi spatio interiecto: = *post breve spatium*. **spatio**: = *tempore*. **ut**: 'so that.' **constituissent**: subj. by attraction. A. 342; G. 631; H. 529 II. **25. decurrere, conicere**: A. 275; G. 650; H. 536 I. **gaesa**: Gallic javelins, long and heavy, sometimes made entirely of iron. **26. integris**: 'unimpaired.' **27. neque ullum**: = *et nullum*. **loco superiore**: the rampart of the camp; see p. 93, 18. **28. ut**: when does *ut* mean 'as'? **defensoribus**: A. 243; G. 388; H. 414, I. **29. eo**: = *in eam partem*. **hoc superari**: 'in this (respect) they were at a disadvantage.' **30. alii**: i. e., *hostes*. **31. viribus**: abl. of quality. **succedebant**: 'relieved them.' **rerum**: dep. on *nihil;* what kind of gen.? **a nostris**: 'on our side.' **32. non modo**: = *non modo non*. A. 149 *e*; G. 484, 3 R. 1.; H. 552, 2. **defesso**: i. e., on the side of the Romans. A. 188; G. 195 R. 1; H. 441. Why dat.? **33. excedendi**: dep. on *potestas*. **loci**: what case would this be in if *relinquendi* were a gerund? Rule for changing from gerund to gerundive?

V. 35. pugnaretur: A. 277 *b*; G. 225; H. 469 II. 2.

Page 95. 1. nostris: A. 255 *a*; G. 408; H. 431, 4. Trans. by 'while' with 'were.' **vallum scindere**: i. e., by pulling up the stakes of the rampart (*valli;* see p. 31) and thus making an opening into the camp. **2. fossas**: pl., although there was probably but one moat, running clear around the camp. Such plurals are not uncommon. **ad extremum casum**: 'to the last crisis.' **3. primi pili**: see p. 22. **4. Nervico**: i. e., *cum Nerviis*, *Nerviorum*. A. 190; G. 360 R. 1; H. 395 N. 2. The battle took place in the earlier part of the same year of which Caesar is writing; see Book II., Chapters 19–28. **6. consilii**: 'presence of mind.' **7. unam**: 'only one.' **extremum auxilium**: 'the last resource.' **8. experirentur**: imperfect, because *docent* is hist. present. A. 287 *e*, 337; G. 511 R. 1, 659; H. 495 II., 527 I. **centurionibus**: how many in the eight cohorts? See p. 22. **9. certiores facit**: here almost = *mandat*. **intermitterent**: 'to stop.' A. 331 *f* R.; G. 655; H. 523 III. **10. tela missa exciperent**: 'should receive (on their shields) the darts hurled' at them, i. e., should act simply on the defensive, 'and not hurl weapons in return.'

VI. 13. Quod: = *id quod*. **iussi sunt**: sc. *facere*. **portis**: abl. of the place *whence* or *by which*. A. 258 *a*; G. 388; H. 412 II. 2. **14. sui colligendi**: 'of recovering themselves'; *sui* is probably pl. and dep. on

the gerund; by some, however, it is regarded as an idiomatic use of the gen. sing. of *suum*. A. 298 *a*; G. 429 R. I; H. 542 I. N. I. **16. potiundorum**: older form for *potiendorum*. G. 151, 5; H. 239 **17. circumventos interficiunt**: 'they surround and slay them.' A. 292 R.; G. 667 R. I; H 549, 5 **20. locis superioribus**: the surrounding heights, spoken of p. 93, 14, 15. **21. armis**: A. 243; G. 388; H. 414 I.; *exutis* goes with *copiis*. **22. Quo proelio facto**: 'when this battle was over.' **23.** Order: *Galba, quod — nolebat*, etc. **alio se**, etc.: 'remembered that he had come into winter-quarters with one design, (but) saw that he had found the situation different (from what he had expected).' **alio — aliis**: A. 203 *c*; G. 306; H. 459, I. The omission of a conjunction is called Asyndeton. **26. eius vici**: i. e., *Octoduri*. **27. nullo**, etc.: 'as no enemy checked,' etc. **28. Nantuatis**: why acc.?

ii. CAMPAIGN AGAINST THE VENETI. VII–XVI. B. C. 56.

VII. 30. cum: 'although.' **omnibus de causis existimaret**: 'he had every reason to think.' **31. superatis Belgis**: see Book II., Chapters 1–33. **expulsis Germanis**: see Book I., 30–54. **32. Sedunis**: of the Alpine tribes the Seduni, as the most important, are alone mentioned. **inita**: trans. as if *prima*. **Illyricum**: this also was under Caesar's authority. See p. 4. **35. haec**: 'as follows.' **P. Crassus**: see N. to p. 75, 16. **36. proximus mare**: 'very near the Ocean.' A. 261 *a*; G. 356 R. 4; H. 391, 2; cf. N. to p. 47, 10. **Andibus**: N. to p. 92, 4. **hiemarat**: A. 128 *a*; G. 151, 1; H. 235.

Page 96. 1. praefectos: officers of the *auxilia*; see N. to p. 67, 4. **2. complures**: goes with *civitates*. **3. Esubios**, etc.: see map.

VIII. 6. omnis orae maritimae: = *omnium orae maritimae civitatum*. **7. regionum earum**: limits *orae*. **Veneti**: because of the wild and rugged nature of their country and their sea-faring life, the Veneti were a very hardy people, whose power was felt far and wide. In Caesar's time, Britain was the centre of Druidism (see p. 40) and its relations with Gaul were very intimate, so that the Veneti developed a great carrying business by transporting men and goods from one country to the other. The Veneti, with the adjoining peoples, formed the Armorican States, *civitates Armoricae* (see vocab. for derivation of *Armoricae*). This name remained till the influx of fugitives from Britain, driven out by invading Germans (see p. 44), caused the name *Britannia Minor* (now Bretagne, Brittany) to be given to the whole region. Traces of the original Keltic language spoken in Caesar's time are still found in the dialect of the inhabitants of Brittany, who are at the present day the

most secluded and old-fashioned people in France. The name of the Veneti survives in Vannes.

8. scientia, usu: A. 253; G. 398; H. 424. **10. magno . . . aperto**: = *magno impetu* ('violence') *aperti maris;* hendiadys. A. p. 298; G. 695; H. 636 III. 2. Because of the violence of the ocean and the fewness of ports, many ships were obliged to take refuge in the harbors of the Veneti, and were forced to pay tribute. **11. omnes**: object of *habent*. **12. vectigales**: A. 186 *c*; G. 334 R.; H. 373, 1 N. 2. **Ab his,** etc.: 'These took the first step by detaining.' **13. suos se**: A. 344 *g*; G. 683; H. 563. **dedissent**: dep. clause in indir. disc. **15. Gallorum . . . consilia**: Caesar not infrequently alludes to the fickleness of the Gauls. The same national characteristic now and then reveals itself among the French of to-day. **18. acturos, laturos esse**: sc. *se*. **20. acceperant**: the indic. is unusual, and emphatic. A. 342, 336 *b*; G. 666, 630 R.1; H. 529 II. N.1, 2) and 524, 2, 2). **23. si — remittat**: what would this be in dir. disc.? **remittat**: A. 339; G. 655; H. 523 III.

IX. 25. longius: 'too far away.' Caesar was in Cisalpine Gaul. **naves longas**: see pp. 36, 37. **28. cum primum**: see IDIOMS. **29. ad exercitum contendit**: Caesar probably reached the army in May; we learn elsewhere that he was at Luca, in Cisalpine Gaul, in April. **30. in se admisissent**: for *commisissent; se* refers to the subject of *admisissent*, not to *Caesar*. A. 334; G. 469; H. 529 I. See IDIOMS, p. 383. **31. legatos . . . coniectos** [esse] explains *quod . . . admisissent;* 'in that envoys had been.' **quod nomen**: 'a title which,' i. e., the title of envoy or ambassador. **32. ad**: 'among.' **fuisset**: A. 342; G. 631; H. 529 II. **35. instituunt**: = *incipiunt*. **hoc**: 'on this account.' **Spe**: abl. abs. **multum**: = *magnopere*. **natura loci**: N. to p. 48, 7. A. 254 *b*; G. 345 R.1, end; H. 425 II. 1, 1) N. **36. Pedestria**: 'by land.' **aestuariis**: the coast of Brittany is indented with many inlets.

Page 97. 1. inscientiam: i. e., *Romanorum*. **2. neque**: = *et non*. **4. ut,** etc.: 'although everything might turn out contrary to their expectation.' A. 266 *c*; G. 610; H. 515 III. **se posse**: dep. on what verb? **plurimum**: N. to p. 49, 2. **5. facultatem**: 'supply.' **6. ubi**: = *in quibus*. **gesturi essent**: why periphrastic? See N. to p. 49, 1. **7. longe aliam atque**: see IDIOMS. **8. in concluso mari**: 'on a sea shut in,' like the Mediterranean, with which the Romans were naturally most familiar. **10. frumenta**: why pl.? **11. quam plurimas**: see IDIOMS. **12. Socios**: 'as allies.' **Osismos,** etc.: see map. From the Namnetes comes the name of the city Nantes; from the Lexovii, Lisieux. **14. auxilia**: Caesar afterwards made the help

thus rendered by the Britons a pretext for invading their island. See Book IV., Chap. 20.

X. 18. iniuriae . . . Romanorum: 'the wrong done by the detention of the Roman knights,' referring to the ambassadors (see p. 96, 12-14), who in this case at least had the rank of *equites*. A. 292 *a*; G. 667 R.2; H. 549, 5 N.2. **20. ne . . arbitrarentur**: like the preceding nouns, appositive of *multa*; '(the fear) that,' etc. **idem**: subject of *licere*, 'the same thing.' **22. novis rebus studere**: see IDIOMS. **23. homines**: why could not *viros* be used here? **natura**: abl.; 'have a natural desire for liberty' **24. conspirarent**: dep. clause in indir. disc.; what other reason for the mood? A. 327; G. 579; H. 520 I. 2. **25. sibi**: does the dat. with the pass. periphrastic conjugation properly express agency? How is the direct agent expressed in Latin?

XI. 27. Treveros: the name of this powerful people survives in the town Trèves. **28. flumini**: what other construction with *proximi*? See p. 95, 36. **29. adeat, contineat, prohibeat**: A. 339; G. 655; H. 523 III. **in officio**: 'in allegiance.' **30. auxilio**: dat. of purpose. **arcessiti** [esse]: A. 272 *b*, 330 *b*; G. 528; H. 534, I N.I (2) and 536, 2, 1) N. **31. conentur**: why subj.? **34. Galliam**: here the land of the *Galli*; see p. 38. The Aquitani, being of different stock from the rest of the Gauls (see p. 40) had very little to do with them. **36. Venellos**: often spelled Unellos. See map. **37. qui — curet**: 'in order to keep their forces away,' i. e., so that they should not join the Veneti. Mood of curet, and why? **Decimum Brutum**: served with Caesar also in the Civil War, and received from him many tokens of confidence and esteem. Brutus joined the conspiracy against Caesar, however, and accompanied him to the Senate-house the day he was assassinated. There is no more striking instance of dastardly treachery in history; whatever the motives of Brutus, the baseness of his action admits of no palliation. He plays a prominent part in Shakspere's "Julius Caesar." **38. Pictonibus**: the name survives in the town of Poitiers, and the province of Poitou.

Page 98. 1. Santonis: see N. to p. 51, 25. **2. posset**: for indic. fut. of dir. disc. **3. eo**: = *in Venetos*.

XII. 4. fere: 'as a rule,' 'as a general thing.' **5. lingulis**: low tongues of land; the *promunturia* were often rocky and high. **pedibus**: 'on the land side.' **aditum haberent**: = *adiri possent*. **6. cum . . . incitavisset**: 'when the tide had run in from the deep.' **is accedit**: 'it rises,' 'it runs in'; most MSS. and editions have *quod bis accidit*, 'which happens twice,' a reading inconsistent with *horarum* XII *spatio*;

for there is only one tide every twelve hours. Some editors change XII to XXIV. **7. spatio**: A. 256; G. 392; H. 429. **navibus**: corresponds to *pedibus* above, 'by sea.' **rursus minuente, etc.**: at high tide a town thus situated became an island; when the tide ebbed ships that had come up near to it were stranded. Notice that *afflictarentur* is subj., while *accedit* is indic.; for *accedit* expresses a fact true at all times, *afflictarentur* a fact conditionally true, 'would be stranded in the shallows' (in case they should happen to be there at ebb-tide). **minuente, etc.**: 'at ebb-tide.' **8. utraque re**: 'by both circumstances,' i. e., both the flowing and the ebbing of the tide. **10. operis**: = *munitionum*. **extruso mari**: abl. abs. **aggere ac molibus**: 'by massive dikes'; hendiadys; see A. p. 298; G. 695; H. 636 III 2. **11. adaequatis**: abl. abs. with *his*; 'built up to a level with.' Starting from the nearest point of land that at high tide remained above water, the Romans prolonged toward the town two massive parallel embankments, or dikes, working whenever the tide would allow, as at high tide the enclosed space would be under water. Having prolonged their dikes almost to the city, quickly, when the tide was low, they filled in the last stretch and shut out the water from both sides, thus giving a dry avenue of approach from the adjacent country to the town. But by the time they were ready to attack, using each embankment as an *agger* (see pp. 35–36), the townspeople had already taken ship and departed with "bag and baggage." In some cases probably the Romans found it necessary to construct but one dike. See the small plan in Plan VII.

fortunis: A. 229; G. 345; H. 386, 4. **coeperant**: sc. *oppidani*. **12. cuius rei**: 'and for this operation'; objective gen. **15. eo facilius**: 'all the more easily.' **16. summa**: A. 344 *e*; G. 675, 1, 3; H. 561 III. **17. vasto, aperto mari, etc.**: expressing *cause*. A. 255 *a*; G. 408; H. 431, 1, 4. In all these phrases there is an implied contrast with the sheltered and comparatively still waters of the Mediterranean.

XIII. 19. Namque, etc.: closely connected with the preceding. '(But the Veneti have not the same difficulty in navigating these waters as we) for.' Such an omission with *namque* is very common. **ipsorum**: i. e., *Venetorum*. **hunc**: 'the following'; the particulars extend to l. 32. **armatae**: 'equipped.' **20. aliquanto**: 'somewhat.' A. 250 R.; G. 400; H. 423. **planiores**: 'more flat-bottomed'; sc. *fuerunt*. **21. quo**: = *ut eo*; why is *quo* here used for *ut?* **22. prorae erectae**: in this and the following clauses sc. *erant*, to be rendered 'were,' 'were used,' 'they had,' etc., according to the connection. **24. quamvis**: 'any you please,' i. e., 'no matter how great.' **vim et contumeliam**: 'violence and buffeting' of the sea. **25. transtra, etc.**: 'the cross-timbers, made of beams, a foot in thickness [*altitudinem* here = *crassitudinem*], were

fastened (to the sides of the ship) with iron bolts of the thickness of a thumb.' As *pollex* means also "great toe," *digitus* is added for the sake of clearness. **26. pro funibus**: as the Romans used only cables of rope, the chain-cables of the Veneti seemed worthy of remark. **27. alutae tenuiter confectae**: 'leather worked thin,' 'thinly dressed.' **28. hae**: for *et hae quidem* [*eis erant*]. **eius**: i. e., *lini*. **29. eo**: 'on this account,' a sort of correlative of *propter — inopiam*. **31. tanta onera navium**: = *tam graves naves*, 'so cumbersome vessels,' the abstract being put for the concrete. So we speak of "ships of great burden," though in a different sense. **velis**: i. e., 'by sails of canvas.' **32. classi**: A. 231; G. 349; H. 387. **nostrae classi congressus**: 'the encounter of our fleet.' **33. ut una celeritate — praestaret**: 'that it (the Roman fleet) excelled in quickness only.' **34. reliqua**: nom. neut. pl. **pro**: 'such as.' **illis**: i. e., *Venetis*. **35. his**: why dat.? **nostrae**: sc. *naves*. **rostro**: see p. 36, and the figure of the Roman war-ship. **36. propter altitudinem**: the ships of the Veneti stood too high out of water to be easily boarded.

Page 99. 1. adigebatur: = *adigi poterat*. **2. copulis**: = *manibus ferreis, harpaginibus*, the 'grappling-hooks' by which the Roman seamen caught hold of an enemy's vessel and drew alongside. See pp. 36, 37. **Accedebat, ut**: see IDIOMS. **3. se vento dedissent**: = 'ran before the wind,' a nautical phrase. **4. consisterent**: 'rode.' **aestu**: personified, hence **ab**. A. 246; G. 403 R.1; H. 415 I. 2. **relictae**: the ships, being flat-bottomed, when left by the tide settled easily and safely on the ground. **nihil**: = emphatic *non*. A. 240 *a*; G. 331 R.3; H. 378, 2. **5. navibus**: A. 232; G. 353; H. 388. The dat. in cases like this denotes "that upon which the necessity rests."

XIV. 8. captis oppidis: 'by taking the towns.' **9. eis noceri**: 'could harm be done them.' A. 230; G. 208; H. 384, 5. **12. armorum**: here includes not simply the weapons, but also the ship's tackling, the complete equipment of a vessel ready for battle. **ex portu, etc.**: see Plan VII., and map. Trace out the courses of the fleets. The battle took place in the Bay of Quiberon, Caesar's army being drawn up in sight on the heights of St. Gildas. **13. neque satis Bruto — constabat**: 'Brutus, however, did not clearly understand.' **15. quid agerent**: 'what to do.' **17. turribus excitatis**: 'even though the towers should be erected,' i. e., on the Roman ships. **ex**: 'on.' **18. inferiore loco**: i. e., the decks and towers of the Roman vessels. **19. missa**: sc. *tela*. **gravius**: 'with greater force,' because falling from a considerable height. **20. magno usui**: 'very useful,' dat. of purpose. **falces**: appositive of *res*. The Romans fastened sharp-edged hooks to long poles, by which they could reach and cut the ropes of the enemy's rig-

ging. The ships of the Veneti, propelled by sails only, were thus rendered unmanageable. **21. non . . . falcium**: 'of a shape not unlike that of,' etc. **22. muralium falcium**: see N. to Book VII., Chap. 22, and Plate V. fig. 5. **cum**: 'whenever.' **23. comprehensi — erant**: the plup. implies repeated action. A. 280; G. 569; H. 472, 2. **navigio**: the Roman ship, which had caught hold of the enemy's rigging. **25. Gallicis navibus**: 'on the part of the Gallic ships.' A. 235; G. 343; H. 384, 4 N. 2. **26. armamentis**: the same as *armorum* above. **usus**: 'control.' **27. uno**: trans. as if *eodem*. **Reliquum**: emphatic. A. 344 *i*; G. 675, 1; H. 561 I. **28. eo magis**: 'all the more.' **30. paulo fortius**: 'a little braver (than usual),' 'unusually brave.' **32. in mare**: why *in* with acc. rather than abl.?

XV. 33. singulas, etc.: i. e., single ships of the enemy were surrounded by two or three Roman vessels 'at a time' (*binae, ternae*). A. 95 *a*; G. 95 R. 1; H. 174, 2, 1). We are not to suppose that Caesar's fleet outnumbered that of the Veneti; the Romans simply concentrated their forces on one vessel at a time, instead of engaging the whole line of the enemy at once. **34. transcendere in**: 'to board,' in the nautical sense. **35. contendebant**: A. 277; G. 222; H. 469 II. **Quod** = *hoc*, i. e., such tactics, or such a stratagem.

Page 100. 2. cum . . . auxilium: 'when no remedy (i. e. counter movement) was discovered against this,' i. e., the boarding of their vessels. **4. malacia ac tranquillitas**: in early autumn a morning wind in these regions is usually followed by a calm in the afternoon. **6. negotium**: 'engagement.' **8. ab hora fere quarta**: about 10 A.M.; see N. to p. 59, 35. The date of the sea-fight is nowhere indicated. But from the time that must have been consumed in the building of the ships and in the previous military operations, we may assume that the engagement took place in the early fall, perhaps (as Long suggests) near the autumnal equinox.

XVI. 11. cum — tum: 'not only — but also.' A. 155 A.; G. 589; H. 554 I. 5. **12. gravioris**: 'more advanced.' **aliquid consilii**: 'any good judgment.' **13. navium quod**: 'whatever ships.' A. 216 *a* 3; G. 371; H. 397, 3. **15. habebant**: 'knew,' followed by the indir. questions introduced by *quo* and *quemadmodum*. **16. eo — quo**: 'on this account — in order that.' **17. in reliquum tempus**: 'for the future.' **18. ius**: 'inviolability,' 'sacred rights.' In all ages the persons of ambassadors have been considered sacred, and insults to ambassadors the gravest affronts that could be offered to the nation sending them. **19. sub corona**: see IDIOMS, p. 383. The expression arose from the custom of placing wreaths on the heads of captives exposed for

sale at auction, as a sign that they were for sale. On Caesar's treatment of the conquered, see p. 11; in this case he was certainly severe. We can hardly suppose that the entire population was sold into slavery; yet these maritime states were so far reduced in strength that they afterwards gave Caesar no trouble.

iii. THE REDUCTION OF THE VENELLI. XVII–XIX. B.C. 56.

XVII. **20. geruntur**: A. 276 *e*; G. 220 R.; H. 467 III. 4. **21. copiis**: three legions; see Chap. II. **22. summam imperii**: 'the chief authority.' **24. exercitum**: an army composed of regular soldiers; **copias** refers to special 'forces' pressed into service for the campaign. **his paucis diebus**: i. e., shortly after the arrival of Sabinus. **25. Aulerci Eburovices**: one name; on the map abbreviated to AUL. EBUROVICES. **26. nolebant**: supply *senatores*, from *senatu*. **portas clauserunt**: the shutting of the city gates on the approach of an army was a virtual declaration of war. **29. spes praedandi,** etc.: this was the third year of warfare with the Romans, so that the primitive life of the people was becoming demoralized. **30. omnibus rebus**: abl., 'in every respect.' **31. loco**: sc. *in*. **castris**: with *tenebat;* see N. to p. 73, 23. **32. duum**: = *duorum*. **spatio**: why abl.? **33. ut**: 'so that.' **hostibus**: = *hostium*, 'in the eyes of the enemy.' A. 235 *a*; G. 343; H. 384 II. 4 N. 2. **35. nonnihil**: 'to some extent.' A. 240 *a*; G. 331 R. 3; H. 378, 2. **carperetur**: 'criticised.' **opinionem timoris**: see IDIOMS. **36. timoris**: what kind of fear? See N. to p. 67, 2. **praebuit**: 'produced.'

Page 101. **2. eo absente, qui**: 'in the absence of him (i. e., Caesar) who.' **3. teneret**: A. 336; G. 653; H. 524. **legato dimicandum non**: impers., 'a lieutenant ought not,' etc.

XVIII. **6. ex eis**: = *unum ex eis*. **9. Qui**: A. 180 *f*; G. 612 R. 1; H. 453. **pro perfuga**: 'as if a deserter.' **11. prematur**: A. 334; G. 469; H. 529 I. **neque,** etc.: 'and that no later than the next night Sabinus would lead out.' **14. occasionem,** etc.: see IDIOMS, p. 387. **15. iri**: A. 146 *c*; G. 199 R.; H. 465, I. **16. superiorum**: 'former.' **19. quod . . . credunt**: causal clause, appositive of *res*. Caesar had a keen insight into human nature. **homines**: what men? **20. prius, quam**: = *priusquam*. **21. concessum sit**: A. 327; G. 579; H. 520 I. 2. **22. laeti**: A. 191; G. 324 R. 6; H. 443. **ut explorata victoria**: abl. abs., 'as (they would have done) if victory had (already) been secured.' A. 310; G. 594, 2; H. 507 III N. 7. **23. sarmentis**: 'branches.' **virgultis**: 'brush,' 'bundles of twigs.' **quibus**: = *ut eis*.

XIX. **25. ab imo**: 'from the foot' of the slope. **26. passus**: A. 257; G. 335, 2; H. 379; closely connected with *acclivis*. **magno cursu**: 'at full speed.' **27. spatii**: = *temporis*, dep. on *minimum*, the subject of *daretur*. **29. cupientibus**: sc. *eis*. **30. portis**: i. e., *castrorum*. **31. Factum est**: 'it came about,' 'the result was.' **opportunitate**, etc.: abl. of cause. **33. ferrent**: sc. *hostes*. **34. ac**: 'but.' When a negative statement is followed by an affirmative introduced by *et*, *que*, or *ac*, the conjunction should be rendered 'but.' See Madvig, Latin Grammar, § 433, obs. 2. **36. equites**: = *equites nostri*.

Page 102. **2. animus**: 'disposition.' **3. resistens**: adj. **minime resistens**: 'not at all resolute.' They had spirit enough (*animus*), but were lacking in determination, in grit (*mens*).

iv. THE OPERATIONS OF PUBLIUS CRASSUS IN AQUITANIA. XX–XXVII. B. C. 56.

XX. **5. Publius Crassus**: with twelve cohorts and a large body of cavalry; see Chap. 11. The cavalry would have been of no use to Caesar in the campaign against the Veneti, but were employed by Crassus to great advantage in the mountainous regions of the south. Caesar had really no excuse for sending an army into Aquitania, except desire of conquest. See N. to p. 97, 34. **6. quae pars**: 'a division, which.' **dictum est**: see Book I., Chap. I. **7. ex tertia parte**: 'as forming a third part.' **8. gerendum**: is *esse* to be supplied? **9. ubi**: = *in quibus*. **unde** = *e quibus*. **paucis ante annis**: A. 259 *d*; G. 400 R.3; H. 430. The defeat referred to occurred twenty-two years before, B. C. 78. In that year Praeconinus, mentioned only here, and Lucius Mallius (whose name as it stands is probably a wrong spelling for Lucius Manlius Nepos), were routed in Aquitania by the lieutenants of the rebellious Sertorius. See N. to p. 103, 24. **14. Tolosa**: an ancient city of the Volcae Tectosăges, now Toulouse. **Narbone**: a Roman colony, founded B. C. 118, now Narbonne. **15. finitimae**: agrees with *civitates*. **regionibus**: i. e., *Aquitaniae*. A. 234 *a*; G. 356; H. 391 I. **nominatim**: states subject to Rome kept muster-rolls (*tabulae*), containing the names of the men fit for service, so that in case of emergency these could be called out without delay. **16. Sontiatum**: see pp. 39, 40, and map.

XXI. **24. victoriis**: A. 254 *b*; G. 373 R.1; H. 425 II. 1, 1) N. **25. putarent**: A. 326; G. 587; H. 517. **quid . . . possent**: subject of *perspici*. **26. adulescentulo**: referring to the youth of Crassus; see N. to p. 75, 16. **28. vertēre**: = *verterunt*. **ex itinere**: 'leaving his line of march,' 'off his line of march.' **29. oppidum Sontiatum**: to-

day Sôs, a name derived from *Sontiates*. **Quibus**: 'since they,' etc. **30. vineas, turres**: see pp. 34–36. **alias — alias**: adverbs: see IDIOMS. **31. cuniculis**: underground passages, from which the Roman works could be undermined or set on fire. What is the literal meaning of the word? **cuius rei**: 'a device in which.' **33. locis**: why is *in* omitted? A. 258 *f*; G. 387; H. 425 II. 2. **secturae**: 'excavations,' referring perhaps to the digging of pits for obtaining iron ore, as distinguished from the more regularly constructed 'copper mines,' *aerariae*. Some editions have *structurae* instead of *secturae*. **diligentia**: abl. of cause. **36. faciunt**: sc. *id, quod facere iussi sunt*.

XXII. Page 103. 2. Adiatunnus: the name is said to mean 'The One Desired.' **summam imperii**: N. to p. 100, 22. **3. soldurios**: much uncertainty hangs about the institution of the *soldurii*. It is known, however, that they bound themselves to live and die with their chief, and that in case he died a natural death they committed suicide. **quorum . . . condicio**: 'the terms of whose association (lit. 'of whom') are these.' **4. commodis**: A. 249; G. 405; H. 421 I. **5. amicitiae**: dat. **si quid accidat**: *accidat* is generally used of the happening of something unfavorable, as our corresponding English phrase, 'if anything should happen to them.' **6. eundem casum una**: 'the same fate at the same time.' **mortem consciscant**: see IDIOMS, p. 382. **7. memoria**: A. 256; G. 392; H. 429. **8. devovisset**: A. 342; G. 631; H. 529 II. **9. recusaret**: A. 320 *a*; G. 633, 634; H. 503 I. **cum his**: = *cum devotis* in l. 3, resuming the construction interrupted by the long parenthetical sentence *quos . . . recusaret*; cf. the repetition of *se* in Book I., Chap. 35. **12. tamen**: what is the force of this word here? Where is the corresponding "although" implied? **eadem**: i. e., as the rest.

XXIII. 16. natura loci: N. to p. 48, 7, and IDIOMS, p. 385. **17. quibus**: 'after;' abl. of time within which. **expugnatum**: sc. *esse*. **18. quoque versum**: = *quoqueversum*. **20. citerioris**: i. e., from the standpoint of Rome. **Hispaniae**: A. 214 *c*; G. 365; H. 402, 403. **finitimae**: agrees with *quae*. **Aquitaniae**: A. 234 *a*; G. 356; H. 391 I. **21. adventu**: abl. of time. **cum auctoritate, etc.**: with *adventu*. **23. Duces**: A. 185; G. 334 R., 197; H. 373, 2. **24. omnes annos**: i. e., during the whole period of the war with Sertorius, B. C. 82–72. In the First Civil War (between Marius and Sulla) Sertorius was a prominent general of the popular party. After the death of Marius, and Sulla's return to Rome, he organized an army in Spain, and held his own against the government for ten years, till at length he was treacherously assassinated (B. C. 72). **26. loca capere**: 'to choose

locations' for encampments. See p. 31. **27. Quod**: 'this (fact),' explained by the following infinitive clauses. **28. diduci**: 'spread out' so as to command the different avenues of approach, and prevent being surrounded on all sides by the enemy. **29. et**: 'and still.' **satis praesidii**: see IDIOMS, under part. gen. **31. in dies**: 'every day.' How different from *cotidie?* **augeri**: why not *crescere* here? **non cunctandum, quin**: 'there must be no delay about.' **33. idem**: object of *sentire;* see IDIOMS.

XXIV. 35. duplici acie: by arranging his men in a 'double line,' Crassus could present a longer front to the enemy than with the customary triple line. **36. auxiliis**: the auxiliary troops, usually stationed upon the wings, here were placed in the centre of the line, because Crassus had little confidence in their loyalty or courage; they had been lately levied. **quid consilii**: see IDIOMS, p. 388. **37. exspectabat**: 'was waiting to see.'

Page 104. 2. tutius: in pred., agrees with *potiri.* Why is an infinitive or clause neuter? **3. obsessis viis**: 'having blockaded the roads.' **4. sese recipere**: see IDIOMS. **5. impeditos**: sc. *eos* [*Romanos*]; see pp. 23, 30. **infirmiore animo**: refers to the Romans. A. 251; G. 402; H. 419 II. **7. castris**: why no preposition? **8. opinione timoris**: 'impression of fear' conveyed by the enemy's hesitancy to attack. **9. hostes**: nom. **10. omnium**: sc. *militum.* **exspectari**: impers.; '(saying) that there should be no delay about going to the camp.' **12. ad hostium castra**: this is the only attack of the Romans on a fortified camp mentioned in the 'Gallic War.'

XXV. 14. vallo, munitionibus: A. 243; G. 388; H. 414 I. **15. quibus**: A. 254 *b*; G. 345 R. 1; H. 425 II. 1, 1) N. **16. lapidibus, etc.**: abl. of means. **aggerem**: the rampart of the enemy's camp was so high that the Romans began to make a sloping mound up to it, like the *agger* used in besieging a town. **17. speciem . . . pugnantium**: 'the appearance and impression of combatants.' **19. loco superiore**: the top of the rampart of the camp. **20. circumitis hostium castris**: 'having ridden about the enemy's camp.' **21. ab**: 'on the side of.' Where was the *porta decumana?* See p. 32 and Plate IV., fig. 10.

XXVI. 25. erat imperatum: are all verbs of this sort impers. in the pass.? A. 146 *c*; H. 301, 1. **26. praesidio castris**: A. 233; G. 350; H. 390 II. N. 1, 2). **ab**: 'from.' **28. omnium**: sc. *hostium.* **oculis — intentis**: abl. abs. **29. diximus**: in l. 14. **30. prius, quam**: = *priusquam.* **videri**· pass., 'be seen'; sc. *possent.* **31. quid rei gereretur**: 'what was going on.' **posset**: A. 327; G. 579; H. 520

II. **32. quod**: refers to the thought in *redintegratis viribus*, i. e., renewal of strength. **35. per**: 'over.' **36. campis**: abl. abs., expressing cause. **37. quae**: notice the neut. pl, referring to *milium*, and subject of *venisse*. **38. multa nocte**: 'late at night'; see IDIOMS.

Page 105. XXVII. 3. Tarbelli, etc.: see map. The Tarbelli have left a trace of their name in modern T a r b e s ; the Bigerriones, in Bagnères de B i g o r r e, a watering-place in the Pyrenees; the Elusates, in E a u z e ; the Ausci, in A u c h ; the Sibuzates, in S a u b u s s e ; and the name of the river Garumna (whence the name Garumni) still survives in G a r o n n e. **5. tempore**: A. 254 *b*; G. 345 R.1 *end;* H. 425 II. 1, 1) N.

V. THE EXPEDITION OF CAESAR AGAINST THE MORINI AND THE MENAPII. XXVIII., XXIX. B. C. 56.

XXVIII. 7. Eodem fere tempore: i. e., about the same time that Crassus completed the reduction of Aquitania. The narrative of Caesar's own military operations, interrupted at Chap. 16, is here resumed. **prope exacta**: see N. to p. 100, 8. **9. supererant,** etc.: 'were the only remaining tribes that were.' A. 320 *a*; G. 636; H. 503 I. Compare Book II., Chap. 4. **neque**: = *et non*. **11. longe . . . ac**: 'in a way far different from' (lit. 'in a far other manner than'). A. 156 *a*; G. 646; H. 459, 2, and 554 I. 2 N. **13. contendissent**: why subj.? **15. eo**: = *in eas* [*silvas ac paludes*]. **16. initium**: 'entrance.' **20. reppulerunt**: better spelling than *repulerunt*. **longius**: 'too far,' i. e., further than they should. **locis**: way by which, 'through places,' etc.

XXIX. 23. quis: N. to p. 50, 29. **imprudentibus**: 'off their guard,' because engaged in cutting timber, etc. **militibus**: *in milites* is more often found in this connection. **25. pro vallo**: see IDIOMS, under *pro*. **27. confecto**: 'cleared.' **extrema impedimenta**: 'the rear of their baggage-train.' **28. tenerentur**: notice the force of the impf, 'were coming within reach.' **ipsi,** etc.: as Caesar cut his way through the woods, the enemy retreated further and further into the forest fastnesses. **densiores silvas**: = *densiores partes silvae*. **30. sub pellibus**: i. e., in the tents, which were made of leather; see p. 32. **33. Aulercis**: the Aulerci Eburovices; see N. to p. 100, 25. **34. proxime**: refers to time.

BOOK IV.

i. THE WAR WITH THE USIPETES AND THE TENCTERI. I.–XV. B.C. 55.

Page 106. Chapter I. 1. qui: A. 199; G. 616, 3 II.; H. 445, 4. The clause *qui . . . consulibus* shows that by *ea hieme* 55 B.C. is meant; for Pompey and Crassus entered upon their consulship on the first of January in that year. **2. consulibus**: see N. to p. 48, 2, and p. 45. **Usipetes, Tencteri**: from the region of the river Lupia (now Lippe), which flows into the Rhine about fifty miles below Cologne. **Germani**: in apposition with both *Usipetes* and *Tencteri.* **4. a mari**: 'from (that part of) the ocean.' **quo**: = *in quod.* **Rhenus**: the Rhine has always been the natural boundary between the Germanic and the Keltic peoples. Previous to Caesar's time the Gauls had occupied territory east of the Rhine; but in his day they had long since been driven back, and hordes of Germans were settling in Gaul. (See Book II. Chap. 4.) The conquest of Gaul by the Romans, however, held the German invaders in check till the fifth century of our era; see p. 42. To-day the most stirring of the German national anthems ("The Watch on the Rhine") has for its theme the defence of the Rhine. **5. Suebis**: the name is said to mean "The Rangers," and comprised several powerful tribes. *Suebi* (from which comes the German word *Schwaben,* i. e., Swabia, or Suabia, the name of an old Duchy in the southwestern part of Germany) is better spelling than *Suevi,* which is found in many editions. **annos**: to be taken with *exagitati.* A. 256; G. 337; H. 379. **6. agricultura**: A. 243; G. 388; H. 414. **8. dicuntur**: A. 330 *b*; G. 528; H. 534, I N.I. **9. singula milia**: A. 95 *a*; G. 95; H. 174, 2, 1). As the cantons furnished 1,000 warriors each, the armed force of the Suebi must have been not far from 100,000 men. **10. qui domi manserunt**: 'who (each year) have remained at home.' **illos**: 'the others'; i. e., those in the field. **11. hi, illi**: 'the latter,' 'the former.' **anno**: give the syntax of *anno* in *anno post,* and *postero anno.* **12. ratio atque usus**: 'the science and practice.' **13. privati ac separati**:

i. e., belonging to an individual and marked off, or fenced off, from the possessions of others. Like many other barbarous peoples, the early Germans tilled their land in common, and did not recognize individual ownership. **agri**: partitive gen. **14. neque longius**, etc.: they changed their location every year in order to get from fresh ground the best results of their imperfect cultivation. **anno**: why abl.? **15. frumento**: *vivo*, like *vescor*, is sometimes used with an ablative: 'live on grain,' etc. An ancient Greek writer tells us that when the Germans could obtain no other food they ate grass. **maximam partem**: 'for the most part.' A. 240 *a*; G. 331 R.3; H. 378, 2. **16. sunt in**: = *versantur in*, 'occupy themselves with.' **venationibus**: 'hunting expeditions.' **17. genere**, etc.: abl. of cause. **18. a pueris**: see IDIOMS. **officio, disciplina**: trans. as if dat. **19. faciant**: A. 341 *d*; G. 541; H. 516 II. **20. homines**: in apposition with *eos* (understood), the object of *efficit*. **eam**: = *talem*. **21. locis frigidissimis**: abl. abs., 'though the climate is very cold.' Caesar was writing from the standpoint of one used to the mild winters of Italy. To one from the northern states of America Germany does not seem extremely cold in winter. **vestitus**: why gen.? **22. pellis**: acc. **haberent**: trans. as if pres. A. 287 *a*; H. 495 I. In cases like this the English idiom differs from the Latin. **23. aperta**: 'exposed.' **lavarentur**: A. 111 *b* N. 1; G. 209; H. 465. Trans. as if *se lavant*.

II. 25. Mercatoribus, etc.: i. e., *Mercatoribus est aditus* (*ad Germanos*) *magis eo* (*consilio*), *ut habeant* (*eos*) *quibus vendant* (*ea*), *quae bello ceperint*. **26. quam quo** = *quam eo, quod*, 'than for the reason that.' **27. desiderent**: A. 341 *d*; G. 541 R.1; H. 516 II. 2. **Quin etiam**: 'Moreover.' **iumentis**: A. 249; G. 405; H. 421 I. **28. pretio**: abl. of price. **29. prava**, 'ill-shaped'; *deformia*, 'unsightly.'

Page 107. 1. summi laboris: A. 214 *c*; G. 365; H. 402. See IDIOMS, p. 390. **3. eodem vestigio**: 'on the same spot,' i. e., where they leave them. A. 258 *f*; G. 387; H. 425 II. 2 N. 2. **4. cum usus est**: 'when it is necessary.' **5. eorum moribus**: 'according to their customs,' almost = 'in their judgment.' **turpius, inertius**: in pred. **6. habetur**: 'is regarded.' **ephippiis**: from two Greek words meaning 'on a horse'; with *ep*-hippia cf. hippo-potamus. **quemvis, quamvis**: notice the difference in meaning and use; force of *-vis?* **quamvis pauci**: 'no matter how few.'

III. 11. Publice: 'as a state,' in meaning the opposite of *privatim*, 'in matters pertaining to the individual,' 'as an individual.' **12. significari**: the subject is the clause *magnum . . . posse*. **14. una ex parte**: 'on one side.' **a**: 'from the (country of)'; the desolate

waste spoken of probably lay east of the Suebi, but it could hardly have been 600 miles wide. **agri**: nom. **15. Ubii**: west of the Suebi, and bordering on the Rhine opposite Cologne. See map. **16. ut est captus**: 'considering the capacity for development.' **17. eiusdem generis ceteris**: i. e., than the rest of the Germans. **19. moribus**: what case? cf. p. 106, 18. Caesar compares the customs of the Gauls and the Germans in Book VI., Chapters 11–24. **20. multis . . . experti**: concessive, 'although they had tried.' **21. gravitatem**: 'importance,' on account of military power. **civitatis finibus**: i. e., of the Ubii. **22. vectigales**: sc. *eos* (i. e., Ubios). A. 186 *c*; G. 334 R.; H. 373, 1 N.2.

IV. 24. causa: = *condicione*. **25. supra**: Chap. 1. **26. ad extremum**: 'finally.' **27. triennium**: how different from *tres annos?* **29. aedificia, vicos**: see N. to p. 49, 20. **multitudinis**: in Chap. 15 the number is given as 430,000. **30. trans flumen, cis Rhenum**: i. e., from the standpoint of the Roman province. **32. transire**: are verbs of hindering usually followed by the infin.? **vi contendere**: 'use violence.' **34. se, suas**: A. 344 *g*; G. 683; H. 563. **35. tridui viam**: N. to p. 66, 13. **36. equitatu**: abl. of means.

Page 108. 3. trans Rhenum: i. e., to the east side of the Rhine. **5. fieret**: A. 327; G. 579; H. 520 II. **6. eorum**: i. e., of the Menapii on the west side of the Rhine. **partem**: acc. of time.

V. 8. infirmitatem: 'fickleness,' see N. to p. 96, 15. **10. nihil his committendum**: 'that no confidence ought to be placed in them.' **nihil**: = emphatic *non*. A. 240 *a*; G. 331 R.3; H. 378, 2. **committendum**: how used? **11. consuetudinis**: A. 214 *c*; G. 365; H. 402, 403. Trans., 'For it is a custom of the Gauls to compel,' etc. **12. invitos**: 'against their will.' **cogant, quaerant, circumsistat, cogant**, explain *hoc*. A. 332 *f*; G. 559; H. 501 III. **15. veniant, cognoverint**: Why subj.? **16. cogant**: the subject is *vulgus*. A. 205 *c*; G. 202 *exc.* 1; H. 461, 1. Caesar first thinks of the crowd as a whole (hence the sing. *circumsistat*), then as composed of eager questioners (hence the pl. *cogant*). Gender and declension of **vulgus**? **rebus**: 'facts,' as distinguished from **auditionibus**, 'reports,' 'hearsays.' **17. consilia ineunt**: see IDIOMS. **quorum**: A. 221 *b*; G. 376; H. 409 III. Construction of *eos?* **in vestigio**: 'on the spot,' here, 'at once.' **18. serviant**: 'are slaves to.' **plerique**: i. e., *viatores*. **ad . . . respondeant**: 'make replies invented to (suit) their wishes.'

VI. 20. ne occurreret: Caesar feared that the fickle Gauls would unite with the Germans in an attack upon him, and that the war would

thus become unmanageable. **graviori**: A. 93 *a*; H. 444. **21. maturius**: 'earlier' in the season. What time Caesar usually came from Cisalpine Gaul (where he spent his winters) to the army, we do not know. He entered upon the Helvetian campaign in March, and upon that against the Belgae in June. **ad exercitum**: the army was now among the Aulerci and the Lexovii, between the Loire and the Seine; see Book III., Chap. 29. **22. Eo**: = *ad exercitum*. **23. facta**: is *esse* to be supplied? **missas** [esse] **legationes, invitatos** [esse] **eos**: in apposition with *ea*. **24. ab Rheno discederent**: i. e., to proceed toward the interior of Gaul, in order to help throw off the Roman yoke. **25. omniaque**: 'and (with the promise) that everything.' **postulassent**: represents the fut. perfect indic. of dir. disc. **fore parata**: a substitute for the fut. infin. pass. What other expression could have been used? **Qua spe**: = *huius rei spe*. **26. Eburonum, Condrusorum**: see map. **27. pervenerant**: i. e., at the time when Caesar resolved to make war upon them. **30. imperato**: 'levied.' **31. constituit**: not 'determined,' but declared his intention = *se velle ostendit*.

VII. 32. iter — facere: see IDIOMS, p. 384. **33. locis**: N. to p. 49, 31. **34. quibus**: i. e., *locis*. **iter**: A. 257; G. 335, 2; H. 379. Cf. "a Sabbath day's journey." **35. quorum . . . oratio**: 'whose plea was as follows.' G. 290, 6; H. 450, 3. **Germanos neque priores inferre**: 'that the Germans were neither the first to make.' Had more than two peoples been referred to, *primos* would have been used. A. 191; G. 324 R.6; H. 443 N.I. **36. neque recusare quin**: 'nor refuse to.'

Page 109. 3. resistere: sc. *eis*, as antecedent of *quicumque*. **4. dicere**: constr.? object? **venisse, (5) posse**: sc. *se*. **5. iis**: the Romans. **attribuant, patiantur**: A. 339; G. 655; H. 523 III. **6. eos**: i. e., *agros*; supply *se* with *tenere*. **possederint**: from *possīdo*. **7. unis**: A. 94 *a*; H. 175 N.I. **concedere**: 'yielded,' 'confessed inferiority. **8. reliquum**: 'else.' **9. possint**: what mood in dir. disc.? A. 320 *a*; G. 633, 634; H. 503 I.

VIII. 10. visum est: sc. *respondere*. Caesar does not give the whole of his answer, which must have followed much the same line of argument as his messages to Ariovistus, in Book I. **11. Sibi**, etc.: see IDIOMS, p. 390. **12. verum**: 'a fair thing.' **qui**: the antecedent is *eos* (understood), subject of *occupare*. **13. alienos**: sc. *agros*, 'of others.' Difference in meaning between *alius*, *alter*, *alienus*? **15. licere**: sc. *eis*. **16. apud se**: how different in meaning from *secum*? **17. hoc**, etc.: 'would command the Ubii to do so' (lit., 'would order this to the Ubii'). Caesar could *command* the Ubii because he held hostages from that nation.

IX. 20. post diem tertium: = *tertio die*, 'the third day after,' 'the next day but one.' In cases like this the Romans reckoned in the days with which a given period began and ended, instead of taking only the first, as we do. **21. propius se**: A. 234 *e*; G. 356, 4; H. 437, 1. **22. ab**: 'from.' **23. diebus ante**: A. 259 *d*; G. 400 R.3; H. 430. **24. trans Mosam**: i. e., on the left bank, while the rest remained between the Meuse and the Rhine. **25. exspectari**, etc.: i. e., in order to make an attack on the Romans with all their forces.

X. 27. Mosa, etc: for the proper names in this Chapter see pp. 38, 39, and map. **28. parte**: i. e., 'branch,' 'tributary.' **parte . . . influit**: the meaning is that the Meuse (Mosa), after being joined by the Waal (Vacalus, Vahalis), flows into the Rhine below, eighty miles from the ocean, forming the island of the Batavians; the implication is that the Meuse does not flow into the sea by any mouth of its own. At present, however, the Meuse empties directly into the North Sea. Some scholars think that the text here is corrupt; others, that Caesar made a mistake in regard to the facts; others still, that the bed of the Meuse, or of the Waal, or of both, has changed since Caesar's time. Which explanation is the correct one, it is now impossible to determine. **29. Vacalus**: also spelled Vahălis. **Batavorum**: their capital was afterwards called *Lugdūnum* (now Leyden), which should never be confused with the *Lugdūnum* in Gaul (now Lyons). The Batavi were of Germanic origin; their name comes from a word meaning 'good meadow.' See Motley's "Rise of the Dutch Republic," Historical Introduction, § 11. **30. Rhenus**: the name is said to mean "the Runner." See N. to Chap. 1, l. 4. **31. ex**: 'from the country of,' 'among.' **longo spatio**: 'in a long course.' **33. citatus fertur**: 'flows swiftly.' A. 191; G. 324 R.6; H. 443. **36. sunt qui**: 'there are some, who.' **piscibus**: N. to p. 106, 15.

Page 110. 1. capitibus: 'mouths,' we would say. In Caesar's time, as now, there seem to have been two principal mouths of the Rhine, with several of less importance.

XI. 3. passuum XII milibus: abl., after a comp., with *quam* omitted; *amplius* has here no influence on the constr. A few days previous Caesar was a considerable distance from the Germans; see p. 108, 34. He had evidently not heeded the request mentioned p. 109, 21. **4. ut erat constitutum**: i. e., that the envoys should return the next day but one; see p. 109, 20. **5. congressi**: sc. *cum eo*, 'meeting him.' **7. antecessissent**: A. 342; G. 631; H. 529 II. Why were the cavalry usually in the van of the line of march? See pp. 29, 30. **praemitteret**: here used without an object. **8. sibi**: i. e., *Germanis*, not simply *legatis*.

9. mittendi: what would be the form if the gerundive were used? **10. fidem fecisset**: see IDIOMS, p. 383. **ea condicione**: 'the terms'; see Chap. 8, and A. 249; G. 405; H. 421 I. **11. usuros** [esse]; 'would accept.' **12. daret**: why subj.? sc. *petebant ut*. **eodem illo**: adverbs, 'to the same end.' **15. aquationis causa**: 'for the sake of procuring water.' **16. quam frequentissimi**: 'in as great numbers as possible.' **convenirent**: *convenite* in dir. disc. **18. qui nuntiarent**: '(men) to command.' A. 317; G. 632; H. 497 I. **19. sustinerent**: i. e., act on the defensive. **20. accessisset**: what mood in dir. disc.? A. 328; G. 574; H. 519 II. 2.

XII. 21. ubi primum = *cum primum*, for which see IDIOMS. **22. cum**: 'although.' **23. equites**: A. 247 *c*; G. 311 R.4; H. 417, I N.2. **ii, qui . . . Mosam**: see Chap. 9. **26. indutiis**: dat. of purpose. **27. resistentibus**: sc. *nostris*. **28. desiluerunt**: i. e., from their horses. **subfossis**: 'stabbed underneath.' **equis**: i. e., of Caesar's cavalry. **29. deiectis**: 'dismounted.' **reliquos**: sc. *nostros*. **31. agminis**: the main force; see p. 30. **venissent**: subj. for two reasons, — by attraction, and past tense after *prius quam*. **ex equitibus**: why not partitive gen.? Because dep. on a *definite number*. **33. Piso**: A Roman name, probably conferred on some Aquitanian with the right of citizenship. See N. to p. 73, 4. The result of the skirmish showed the great superiority of the German over the Gallic cavalry. Caesar afterwards made much use of German horsemen. **genere**: A. 244 *a*; G. 395; H. 415 II. **34. amicus**, etc.: N. to p. 48, 29. **36. equo vulnerato**: abl. abs. expressing time and cause. **37. potuit**: why not subj., like *accessisset*, l. 20? **38. id**: 'this mishap.'

Page 111. XIII. 3. Hoc proelio facto: N. to p. 53, II. **5. intulissent**: subj. of characteristic and indir. disc.; 'by such men as.' **6. dum**: 'until,' with subj. also in dir. disc. A. 328; G. 574; H. 519 II. 2. **7. dementiae**: pred. gen. after *esse*, whose subject is *exspectare*. Cf. IDIOMS, p. 390. **8. quantum auctoritatis**: 'how great prestige.' **9. essent consecuti**: subj. of indir. question. **quibus**: = *eis*. **10. nihil spatii**: cf. IDIOMS, p. 388. **11. quaestore**: see Vocab., and cf. N. to p. 75, 3. **12. quem**: N. to p. 50, 29. **pugnae**: gen., 'not to pass by any day of battle' = 'not to let slip any chance of bringing on an engagement.' **13. diei**: A. 214 *g*; G. 371 R.4; H. 398, 5. **eadem**: i. e., as before. **14. perfidia**, etc.: to justify his own unjustifiable course Caesar accuses the Germans of bad faith. But if they did not mean what they said, why did so many of them trust themselves in Caesar's power? **15. maioribus natu**: see IDIOMS. **16. simul — simul**: 'both — and.'

sui: A. 298 *a*; G. 429.R.1; H. 542 I. N.1. Trans. as if *se*. **quod . . . dictum**: 'because, contrary to what had been said.' **17. atque**: A. 156 *a*; G. 646; H. 554 I. 2 N.; *contra* is an adv. **commisissent**: when is *quod* used with the subj.? **18. si quid possent**: 'whatever they could.' **quid**: A. 240 *a*; G. 331 R.3; H. 378, 2; see also N. to p. 50, 29. **de**: 'in the matter of.' **fallendo**: 'by playing false.' **19. Quos**: A. 180 *f*; G. 612 R.1; H. 453. **oblatos**: sc. *esse*. **gavisus**: principal parts?

XIV. 23. Acie triplici: see pp. 30, 33. **25. possent**: A. 327; G. 579; H. 520 II. **26. et — et**: 'both — and.' **suorum**: i. e., the German chiefs in Caesar's power. **27. spatio**: = *tempore*. **28. -ne, an, an**: 'whether, or, or.' A. 211, 334; G. 460, 462; H. 353, 1; 529, II, 3, 1). **29. praestaret**: impers. **30. pristini diei**: 'of the day before'; limits *perfidia*. **31. Quo loco**: i. e., *castris*. **33. inter carros, etc.**: just as the Helvetii did; see Book I. Chap. 26. **34. puerorum**: *not* 'boys,' but 'children.' **36. ad quos, etc.**: Caesar's conduct in this whole matter seems treacherous and cruel; it was severely censured at Rome. He had evidently resolved to exterminate these Germans at all hazards; and he suffered no scruple to stand in the way.

Page 112. XV. 3. confluentem Mosae et Rheni: probably Caesar means the confluence of the Meuse and the Waal (Vacalus or Vahalis, Chap. 10), which was regarded as a part of the Rhine. The Waal now, however, is thought to have a different channel from what it had in Caesar's time. **6. ad unum**: see IDIOMS. **7. ex — timore**: 'after the dread.' **8. cum**: 'although.' **capitum**: *not* 'heads'; N. to p. 61, 14. **9. iis . . . fecit**: if Caesar believed these 'chiefs and old men' really guilty of perfidy, why did he not put them to the sword, as he did the faithless senate of the Veneti (Book III. Chap. 16)? **12. libertatem**: 'leave (to do so).'

ii. CAESAR'S FIRST EXPEDITION INTO GERMANY. XVI–XIX. B.C. 55.

XVI. 15. iustissima: 'the best grounded,' 'strongest.' **quod . . . voluit**: explains *illa* [*causa*]. **16. suis quoque rebus**: 'for their own affairs also.' **18. Accessit quod**: see IDIOMS. **19. supra**: Chap. 9. **commemoravi**: Caesar uses the first person parenthetically only when referring to himself as the writer. See p. 18. **22. quos**: = *Sugambros*. **24. intulissent**: subj. by attraction. **dederent**: A. 331 *f* R.; G. 546 R.3; H. 499, 2. **25. imperium Rhenum finire**: = *Rhenum esse finem* ('limit') *imperii*; see N. to p. 106, 4. **se invito**: N. to p. 51, 2. **26. non aequum**: = *iniquum* 'an unfair thing';

aequum agrees with the clause *Germanos transire.* **27**. **sui imperii, potestatis**: A. 214 *c*; G. 365; H. 402; cf. IDIOMS, p. 390. **postularet**: 'claim'; would this be subj. in dir. disc.? A. 268; G. 251; H. 486 II. **28**. **uni**: meaning in pl.? **Transrhenanis**; i. e., Germans. **29**. **miserant, fecerant, dederant**: ásyndeton. A. page 298; G. 475 R.; H. 636 I. I. **30**. **premerentur**: reason assigned on whose authority? **31**. **id facere**: supplementary infinitive after a passive verb, = *quo minus id faceret*, 'from doing that.' **32**. **exercitum, Rhenum**: A. 239 *b*; G. 330 R.1; H. 376. **transportaret**: sc. *ut*. **id**: 'that movement.' **33**. **auxilium . . . temporis**: 'present aid, and hope for the future.' **34**. **opinionem**: 'reputation.' **eius**: 'his,' *not* 'that.' **Ariovisto pulso**: where is the account of this given?

Page 113. **XVII**. **4**. **satis tutum**: when in a hostile region Caesar was always careful to keep the country behind him well secured. See p. 10. **5**. **dignitatis esse**: see IDIOMS, p. 390. **9**. **Rationem**: 'plan.' Though the exact spot cannot be determined, there are good reasons for supposing that Caesar's bridge was built near Bonn. The average depth of the Rhine there is from 14 to 16 ft., the width from 1500 to 1600 ft. **10**. **Tigna bina sesquipedalia**: pairs of logs, a foot and a half thick, were driven into the bed of the stream. The two logs of each pair were two feet apart, fastened together, and sharpened at the lower end (*ab imo*). They did not stand perpendicularly in the stream, but slanted a little in the direction of the current. See Plan IX. **a a**. **11**. **ad**: 'according to.' **intervallo**: abl. of degree of difference. **12**. **inter se**: 'apart.' **machinationibus**: here probably 'rafts.' **13**. **adegerat**: as we say, 'had driven (them) home'; the pluperfect implies repeated action. A. 280; G. 569; H. 472, 2. **non sublicae modo**: 'not like a pile,' because a pile is driven in perpendicularly, while these beams slanted a little. **14**. **secundum naturam fluminis**: 'with (according to) the current.' **15**. **his item contraria, etc.**: 'opposite these also,' forty feet down the stream (*ab inferiore parte* = 'on the lower side'), similar pairs of logs fastened together were driven, but slanting against the current (*contra . . . conversa*). See Plan IX., opposite **a a**. **16**. **quadragenum**: contracted for *quadragenorum*. A. 40 *e*; G. 29 R.3; H. 52, 3. Notice the distributive force,—forty feet in each case, with each pair of *tigna sesquipedalia*. A. 95 *a*; G. 95; H. 174, 2, 1). The distance 40 ft. was probably reckoned between the lower ends of the posts, along the river bed. If so, since the pairs of posts slanted towards each other, the bridge may not have been more than 24 ft. wide.

18. **Haec**: subject of *distinebantur*. **bipedalibus trabibus**: these beams, lying in the direction of the current, in each case connected a pair of *tigna sesquipedalia* with the corresponding pair of posts driven in

below. See Plan IX. **b b**, Plan VIII. **b**. Being two feet wide, they fitted exactly the space between the two posts at each end. **19. quantum . . . distabat**: 'the space between the posts (of each pair).' **quantum** is acc. of extent, referring to *bipedalibus*. **binis utrimque fibulis**: what these 'pairs of braces' at each end were, it is not easy to understand. They were probably something like those represented in the plans, marked **c c**. A glance shows that such braces would have brought about the result of which Caesar speaks — the greater the pressure the more closely the structure would have been bound together. Some think that the *fibulae* were bolts, or wooden pins. **20. utrimque, ab extrema parte**: 'at both ends' of the pier formed by laying a beam across (in the direction of the current), connecting two sets of posts. **disclusis**: sc. *tignis*, 'now that these (the slanting posts) were kept (at the proper distance) apart, and had been braced in opposite directions,' i. e., the lower posts slanting up stream, the upper posts slanting down stream. The piers were now ready for the laying of cross-pieces and covering. Supposing that the piers were thirty feet apart, there must have been at least fifty of them. **22. ea rerum natura**: = 'such the character of (the structure as) a whole.' **quo maior — hoc artius**: 'the greater — the more closely.' A. 250 R.; G. 400; H. 417, 2. **23. incitavisset**: A. 342; G. 631; H. 529 II. **Haec**: i. e., the *bipedales trabes*. **directa materia iniecta**: 'by laying timber on straight,' i. e., by laying girders in the direction of the bridge (at right angles with the current), joining the piers; see **d d** on the Plans. **directa**: A. 191; G. 324 R.6.; H. 443. **24. longuriis**: 'joists,' laid on the girders, in the direction of the current; marked **h h** on the Plans. **cratibus**: sections of wicker-work, woven probably of supple branches, were laid over the joists, to take the place of planks; marked **i** on the Plans. **25. sublicae ad . . . fluminis**: marked **e** on the plans; these posts, driven so as to slant up stream, braced the piers against the force of the current. **26. pro ariete**: '(serving) as a buttress.' **27. exciperent**: A. 317; G. 632; H. 497 I. **aliae** [sublicae]: marked **f f** in the plans; they protected the bridge against floating logs or other objects in the current liable to do damage. **28. spatio**: abl. of measure of difference, because *supra pontem* has the force of a comparative. **29. deiciendi operis**: 'for overthrowing the structure.' The gen. of the gerundive sometimes expresses purpose, as if dep. on *causā*. A. 298 R.; G. 429 R.2; H. 544, 2 N. 2. **his defensoribus**: abl. abs. expressing cause, = *his defendentibus*, *his* being personified. **30. rerum**: i. e., *trunci*, *naves*. **neu**: = *neve*, 'and not' (lit. 'or not').

XVIII. 31. quibus: 'from the time that,' 'after.' The rapidity and skill with which the bridge was built are a sufficient testimony to Caesar's

genius in practical affairs. Even now there are only a few bridges across the Rhine (at Cologne, Maintz, Mannheim, etc.), and these with one exception are built upon pontoons. **33. praesidio**: see Plan IX. g. **35. quibus pacem petentibus**: 'to their request for peace.' **37. ex**: 'ever since.' **coeptus est**: pass. because followed by pass. infin. **38. hortantibus iis**: 'at the instigation of those.' From Chap. 15 we see that only a few of the Tencteri and the Usipetes escaped.

Page 114. XIX. 4. vicis, etc.: N. to p. 49, 20. **6. premerentur**: why subj.? **8. uti . . . demigrarent**: sc. *hortantes*, 'urging them to,' etc. A. 331 *a*; G. 546; H. 498 I. **11. medium**: in pred. agreeing with *locum* understood, = *in medio*; '(as being) about the centre of the territory, which.' A. 193; G. 287 R.6; H. 440, 2 N.2. **13. Quod**: 'this fact.' **14. rebus**: explained by the appositive *ut-* clauses. A. 329, 2; H. 363, 5, and 499, 3. In reality Caesar accomplished very little by this march into Germany. The following formal enumeration seems intended to justify an expedition barren of results. **16. obsidione**: A. 243; G. 388; H. 414 I. The Ubii are spoken of as if in a 'state of siege' because overcome by the Suebi and forced to become tributary to them; see Chap. 3. **18. profectum** [esse]: from *proficio;* the subject is *satis*.

iii. CAESAR'S FIRST CROSSING OVER TO BRITAIN. XX–XXXVI. B.C. 55.

XX. Exigua . . . reliqua: abl. abs., 'as a,' etc. **21. vergit**: 'slopes.' **22. Britanniam**: see p 43. **quod . . . intellegebat**: the aid given to the Gauls by the Britains seems to have been of little account. Caesar's design was to extend the Roman power wherever possible; he was not scrupulous about the absence of pretexts sufficient to justify a course of conquest. Caesar was the first Roman to set foot on British soil, and the first ancient author to write about Britain from personal knowledge. **23. inde**: i. e., *e Britannia*. **24. deficeret**: 'be insufficient.' **25. sibi usui fore**: see IDIOMS, p. 390; the following *si-* clauses stand as subject of *fore*. **26. adisset, perspexisset, cognovisset**: usually after a historical tense a fut. condition is put in the imperfect. But Caesar here looks on the expedition as already an accomplished fact; hence the pluperfect. Trans 'should have,' etc. **27 quae omnia fere**: 'and nearly all of these things.' A. 216 *e*; G. 368 R.2; H. 397, 2 N. **Gallis erant incognita**: the Veneti, whom Caesar had so nearly exterminated, must have been informed about Britain; see N. to p. 96, 7. **Neque enim — quisquam**: 'for no one.' **28. illo**: why not *eo?* **29. iis**: i. e., *mercatoribus*. A. 232 *a*; G. 352; H. 388, I.

30. Gallias: pl. because referring to the chief divisions of Gaul, mentioned Book I., Chap. 1; see p. 38. **32. incolerent**: sc. *eam*. **33. quem usum belli**: 'what skill in war.'

XXI. 36. priusquam . . . faceret: 'before making the trial.' When are *antequam* and *priusquam* used with the subj.?

Page 115. 1. navi longa: 'a war-ship,' 'galley'; see pp. 36–37, and figure. **2. praemittit**: sc. *eum*. **3. quam primum**: see IDIOMS. **Morinos**: see map. **4. in Britanniam**: acc. with *in* because of the verbal force in *traiectus*. **5. Huc**: i. e., to the coast of the Morini. **6. quam — classem**: = *eam classem, quam*. A. 200 *b*; G. 618; H. 445, 9. **ad Veneticum bellum**: see Book III., Chap. 9. **9. polliceantur**: A. 317; G. 632; H. 497 I. **dare**: for *se daturos esse*. A. 330 *f*; G. 527 R.3; H. 537 N.1). **13. Atrebatibus**: conquered by Caesar in the battle at the Sambre, B.C. 57; see Book II., Chap. 23. **ibi**: i. e., *apud Atrebates*. **14. virtutem et consilium**: 'courage and tact.' **15. regionibus**: i. e, of Gaul, not of Britain, as shown by *his*. **magni**: in pred. after *habebatur*, 'in high esteem.' A. 252 *a*; G. 378, 379; H. 404. **16. possit**: sc. *adire*. **adeat**: A. 331 *f* R.; G. 546 R.3; H. 499, 2. **17. fidem sequantur**: see IDIOMS, under *fidem*. **18. eo**: i. e., *ad Britanniam*. **19. quantum facultatis**: partitive gen., 'so far as opportunity.' **qui**: 'since he.' A. 320 *e*; G. 636; H. 517. Or, *ei — qui* may be taken indefinitely, 'to one, who,' and *auderet* will then be explained by A. 320 *a*; G. 633, 634; H. 503 I. With either explanation *qui . . . auderet* is ironical. **21. perspexisset**: indir. question.

XXII. 22. in his locis: i. e., among the Morini, probably in the vicinity of modern Boulogne. **23. moratur**: A. 276 *e*; G. 220 R.1; H. 467 III. 4. **24. qui — excusarent, pollicerentur**: 'in order to,' etc. A. 317; G. 632; H. 497 I. **de . . . consilio**: 'for their conduct the previous season,' B. C. 56; see Book III., Chap. 28. **quod homines barbari**: 'because (as they said, being) foreigners,' etc. **consuetudinis**: (A. 218 *a*; G. 373; H. 399 I. 2), the custom the Romans had of receiving kindly and taking under their protection a people that of its own will trusted itself to their power. **26. fecissent**: A. 341 *d*; G. 541; H. 516 II. **imperasset**: what would be the full form? Why subj.? **28. post tergum, etc.**: N. to p. 113, 4. **29. anni tempus**: it was now August; cf. p. 114, 20. **30. tantularum**: how different in meaning from *tantarum?* A. 164 *a*; G. 786, 9 *b*); H. 332. **Britanniae anteponendas**: 'ought to be placed before (the invasion of) Britain.' **32. eos**: = *Morinos*. **Navibus onerariis**: cf. IDIOMS, p. 385. **33. coactis**: 'forced into service'; **contractis**, 'brought together,' 'collected,' in the harbor of portus Itius, now Boulogne. **duas legi-**

ones: reckoning 3600 men to a legion, there would be 90 men to a ship. These coasting-vessels were not large; and the channel steamers to-day are small and flat-bottomed, because of the shallowness of the harbors. The two legions taken over were the VIIth and the Xth. **quod**: rel. pron., neut. acc., referring to *navibus . . . onerariis* as a whole; '(a number) which he thought sufficient,' etc. **34. quod navium**: see IDIOMS, p. 388; 'whatever galleys' = 'the galleys, which.' **35. praefectis**: probably = *praefectis equitum*, who would naturally go with the other officers of higher rank. **Huc accedebant**: 'in addition to this number there were.' **36. eo loco**: probably *portus Itius*, Boulogne; the other harbor, eight miles up the coast, where the eighteen transports were detained, was Ambleteuse. **ab**: 'off.' **37. tenebantur**: when followed by *quo minus*, = *retinebantur*, 'detained from being able.' **38. equitibus**: the number of the cavalry is not stated; it was probably between 500 and 600.

Page 116. 3. legati non: trans. as if *nulli legati*. **ducendum**: is *esse* to be supplied? **4. eo praesidio, quod**: = *tanto praesidio, quantum*.

XXIII. 7. tempestatem: 'weather'; notice the derivation from *tempus*, the fundamental idea being *time*, so that *tempestas* may mean good or bad weather, according to the connection. **tertia vigilia**: what time? see p. 33, and N. to p. 52, 31. The date was Aug. 26. **solvit**: sc. *naves*, 'weighed anchor,' from Boulogne. **8. ulteriorem portum**: i. e., Ambleteuse. **progredi**: i. e., by land. **naves conscendere**: see IDIOMS. **9. tardius, etc.**: the cavalry did not get off till the fourth day after; see Chap. 28. **esset administratum**: 'the order was carried out.' **10. hora quarta**: in the latitude of the English Channel the sun during the last week of August rises about 5 and sets about 7. As the Romans, without regard to season, divided the day into 12 hours, the beginning of the fourth hour, Aug. 26, would be about 8.30 A. M. [5 A. M. to 7 P. M. = 14 hours, of 60 min. each; $14 \div 12 = 1\frac{1}{6} \times 3 = 3\frac{1}{2} + 5 = 8\frac{1}{2} = 8$ hrs. 30 min. = 8.30 A. M.]. **Britanniam attigit**: doubtless near Dover (see map); here Caesar lay at anchor till the ninth hour, 3.30 P. M. [$1\frac{1}{6} \times 9 = 10\frac{1}{2} + 5 = 15\frac{1}{2} - 12 = 3\frac{1}{2} = 3$ hrs. 30 min. = 3.30 P. M.]. **13. angustis**: 'steep' (lit. 'contracted,' 'drawn together'). **continebatur**: 'was closely bordered,' i. e., the cliffs ran straight up from the water's edge, — an exact description of the coast near Dover. **uti . . . posset**: from the top of the cliffs a missile could be hurled to the water line, — a great advantage to the enemy. **16. convenirent**: A. 328; G. 574; H. 519 II. 2. **18. cognosset, vellet**: indir. question. **monuit**: followed by the clause *ut postularent* (A. 331 *a*; G. 546; H. 498 I.), which in turn is followed by (*ut*) . . . *administrarentur*, 'that every order

be carried out,' etc. **19. rei militaris ratio**: 'the science of war.' **ut quae**: 'since they' (i. e., the conditions of navigation). A. 320 *e*; G. 636; H. 517, 3, 1). **20. haberent**: trans. as if pres.; the tense is determined by the tense of *postularent*, which takes its time from *monuit*. A. 287 *a*; H. 495 I. Propositions true at all times in English are expressed in the present tense, but in Latin conform to the laws of the sequence of tenses. H. 495 V. **ad nutum**: 'at the signal.' **21. administrarentur**: A. 331 *f* R.; G. 546 R.3; H. 499, 2. **22. secundum**: notice the development of meaning; the word first meant 'following' (*sequor*), then (because a tide or wind moving in the direction of a ship helps it on), 'favorable,' etc. **23. ab eo loco**: i. e., from Dover, probably toward the northeast. **24. aperto ac plano litore**: between Walmer and Deal, seven miles northeast of Dover. Some think that Caesar sailed seven miles west, but the balance of argument is greatly in favor of the other view.

XXIV. **25. barbari**: i. e., *Britanni*. **26. essedariis**: see Chap. 33. **quo genere**: 'a means (of warfare) that.' **27. copiis**: A. 248 *a*; G. 391 R.1; H. 419 III. 1, 1), (1). The Britons followed by land, along the tops of the cliffs. **navibus egredi**: trans. as if *quo minus navibus egrederentur*, 'from disembarking.' **28. Erat**: N. to p. 49, 31. **29. in alto**: 'in deep (water).' **30. militibus**: A. 232; G. 353; H. 388. See IDIOMS, p. 389. **locis**: A. 258 *f*; G. 385 R.; H. 425 II. 2. **31. oppressis**: agrees with *militibus*, 'weighed down.' **33. cum**: 'although,' 'while.' **illi**: *hostes, Britanni*. **ex arido**: 'from dry land.' **paulum**: difference in meaning between *paulum*, *paulatim*, *paululum*, *paulisper*? **34. expeditis**: 'unincumbered by armor.' **notissimis**: 'perfectly familiar.' **35. insuefactos**: 'trained' to go into the water.

Page 117. **1. generis**: A. 218 *a*; G. 373; H. 399 I. 2. **2. pedestribus**: = *terrestribus*, 'on land.' **3. utebantur**: 'were displaying.'

XXV. **4. Quod**: 'this,' or 'that.' A. 180 *f*; G. 612 R.1; H. 453. **5. species**: 'appearance.' **inusitatior**: 'less familiar.' The Britons, like the Veneti (see Book III., Chap. 14), were unaccustomed to see large vessels propelled by oars. **ad usum**: = *ad navigandum*. **7. latus apertum**: 'unprotected flank.' **inde**: = *e navibus longis*. **8. tormentis**: great machines for hurling missiles, corresponding to cannon on our men-of-war, were often placed on the Roman galleys. For the kinds of *tormenta*, see p. 35. **9. usui nostris**: see IDIOMS, p. 390. **11. paulum modo**: 'just a little.' **pedem retulerunt**: see IDIOMS. **Atque**: 'and now.' **13. qui aquilam ferebat**: (sc. *is*) *aquilifer*; see p. 25. **contestatus deos**: the Romans entered upon every important work or undertaking with an appropriate formula of prayer, to the gods

in general or to a particular deity. **14. ea res**: 'his undertaking.' **16. officium praestitero**: see IDIOMS. A. 281 R.; G. 236; H. 473, 1. **17. magna**: 'loud.' **18. inter se**: = 'one another.' **19. dedecus**: i. e., the loss of the eagle of the legion. **universi**: 'in a body,' 'to a man.' **20. Hos . . . conspexissent**: shortened expression for *ii, qui in proximis navibus erant, ex iis (navibus) cum hos conspexissent.*

XXVI. 22. Pugnatum est: see IDIOMS, p. 389. **23. ordines servare**: 'keep the ranks,' 'remain in line.' **firmiter insistere**: 'get a firm footing.' **24. signa subsequi**: i. e., to keep with their own maniples, each in the maniple where he belonged. See p. 26. **alius alia**: A. 203 *c*; G. 306; H. 459, 1. Trans. as if *aggregabat* were pl., 'men from different ships were,' etc. (lit. 'one man from one ship, another from another'). **quibuscumque . . . aggregabat**: = *aggregabat se (eis signis) quibus*, etc. **28. plures paucos**: i. e., *plures hostes paucos Romanos.* **29. alii**: the use resembles that on p. 51, 7, on which see N. **ab**: 'on,' referring to the side of the Romans towards the land. **in universos**: opposed in meaning to *aliquos singulares* above. **coniciebant**: 'kept hurling'; notice throughout the description the vivid use of the imperfects, implying continued or repeated action, as distinguished from the perfects portraying something that took place but once. A. 115, 2 *b*; G. 222; H. 469. **30. scaphas**: small boats, carried on all vessels and used for various purposes; while the 'spy-boats' (*speculatoria navigia*, or *speculatoriae*) were built specially for rapid movement, and belonged with the war-ships. **33. simul**: = *simulatque.* **arido**: N. to p. 116, 33. **34. neque**: = *et tamen non.* **36. insulam capere**: see IDIOMS, under *capere;* the cavalry were still at Ambleteuse; see N. to p. 116, 9. **ad pristinam, etc.**: i. e., his success was incomplete in this respect only.

Page 118. XXVII. 1. receperunt: with *se;* see IDIOMS. **2. daturos** [esse], **facturos esse**: sc. *se.* **quaeque**: = *et ea, quae.* **imperasset**: *imperaveris* in dir. disc. **4. supra**: see Chap. 21. **demonstraveram**: N. to p. 112, 19. **5. cum**: temporal, causal, or concessive? **oratoris modo**: 'in the character of an ambassador.' **7. proelio facto**: = *post proelium.* **remiserunt**: sc. *eum.* **8. eius rei**: i. e., *quod Commium in vincula coniecerant.* **9. ignosceretur**: sc. *sibi*, 'that pardon might be granted them'; used impersonally. Why not used personally, with *they* as subject? **10. quod — intulissent**: 'because (as he said) they had,' etc. Caesar the writer states the reason assigned by Caesar the commander as if it were the thought of some other person. A. 341 *d*; G. 541; H. 528, 1, and 516 II. **11. sine causa**: but the Romans would have lauded the defence of their own

shores against an armed force as a most noble action. Thus circumstances alter opinions. The Romans thought the rest of the world was theirs by right. **ignoscere**: sc. *se*. **12. imperavit**: meaning when followed by dat.? see IDIOMS. **13. arcessitam**: = *cum arcessiti essent*. A. 292; G. 668; H. 549 I. **14. suos**: = *multitudinem*.

XXVIII. 17. post . . . quam: = *quarto die postquam*. **18. est ventum**: see IDIOMS, p. 389. A. 262 N., 324; G. 567; H. 518. **supra**: Chap. 22. **19. sustulerant**: 'had taken on board.' **superiore portu**: Ambleteuse. **20. solverunt**: 'sailed'; cf. N. to p. 116, 7. **21. ex castris**: Caesar's camp was probably on an elevated spot, not far from the shore. **tempestas**: 'storm'; see N. to p. 116, 7. **23. inferiorem partem insulae**: southwest from Deal, where Caesar was encamped. **24. occasum**: A. 234 *e*; G. 356, 4; H. 437, I. **sui**: 'to themselves.' A. 217; G. 361; H. 396 III. **25. deicerentur**: 'were driven from their course.' **quae cum**: 'since they.' **tamen**: with *ancoris iactis*, 'in spite of the fact that anchors had been thrown out.' **26. adversa nocte**: abl. abs. 'as the night was coming on' (lit. 'in the face of the night'). **provectae**: 'putting out.'

XXIX. 28. accidit . . . plena: 'the moon happened to be full.' **qui dies**: 'and this period (of the month).' Careful calculation has shown that the full moon mentioned here, with the accompanying high tide, must have been about 3 A. M., Aug. 31. **29. aestus maximos**: the rise and fall of the tide in the Mediterranean, as in our great lakes, is hardly perceptible (cf. N. to p. 98, 17); hence the Romans were entirely unprepared for what happened here. At Dover the highest tide rises about 19 ft.; at Boulogne, 25 ft. **31. exercitum transportandum curaverat**: 'had had the army brought over.' **32. aestus**: subject. **34. administrandi**: 'of managing' the vessels. **35. funibus**: the Roman cables were made of rope; see N. to p. 98, 26.

Page 119. 1. magna: A. 344 *e*; G. 675, 1 and 3; H. 561 III. **id quod**: A. 200 *e*; G. 616 R.2; H. 445, 7. **3. possent**: subj. of characteristic result. **4. usui**: dat. of purpose, = *utilia*. **hiemari, etc.**: see IDIOMS, p. 389. **quod omnibus constabat**: 'because it was clear to all.' **5. in hiemem**: 'for the winter,' or, as we say, 'against the winter.'

XXX. 8. inter se: 'with one another.' A. 196 *f*; G. 212; H. 448 N. **11. quae erant**: 'which was'; why pl.? **hoc angustiora**: 'all the smaller on this account'; abl. of cause and degree of difference. **sine impedimentis**: the baggage had been left in Gaul. **12. optimum factu**: in pred., agrees with *prohibere, producere*. A. 303 R.; G.

437; H. 547. **duxerunt**: 'thought'; the subject is *principes* above. **13. rebellione facta**: abl. abs., 'renewing hostilities.' **frumento, commeatu, reditu**: A. 243 *a*; G. 388; H. 414 I. **14. rem**: 'their operations.' **in hiemem**: *not* as in l. 5. **quod . . . confidebant**: is this the reason assigned by the natives, or by Caesar? **15. postea**: 'in the future.' **16. rursus**: 'back' from peace to war, *not* 'again.' **17. castris**: the chiefs had assembled at the Roman camp; see l. 8. **suos**: N. to p. 118, 14. **deducere**: i. e., to the place where they were going to commence the war.

XXXI. 19. cognoverat: trans. as if imperfect, 'was familiar with.' A. 143 *c* N.; G. 228, 2 R. I; H. 297 I. 2. **20. ex eventu navium**: 'from what had happened to the ships.' **ex eo, quod**: 'from the fact that.' **21. fore**: what other form of the fut. infin. of *esse?* **22. ad . . . comparabat**: 'he was providing for every emergency.' **23. quae naves, earum**: = *earum navium, quae*. **naves**: A. 200 *b*; G. 618; H. 445, 9. **25. quae**: for antecedent supply *ea* with *comparari*. **ad eas res**: for *eis rebus* (two dat. with *esse*). **continenti**: 'the mainland,' just as the people of Great Britain to-day speak of "the continent." **27. administraretur**: 'his directions were carried out.' **reliquis**: sc. *navibus*. A. 248; G. 403; H. 420. **ut . . . effecit**: 'he brought it about that the voyage could be made.'

XXXII. 29. geruntur: hist. pres. with *dum*. **30. frumentatum**: 'on a foraging expedition.' A. 302; G. 436: H. 546. **31. hominum**: = *Britannorum*, the natives. **32. ventitaret**: A. 326; G. 587; H. 517. How different in meaning from *veniret?* **ii**: i. e. *milites Romani*. **33. portis castrorum**: see p. 32. **in statione**: 'on guard.' **34. quam consuetudo ferret**: 'than usual'; see IDIOMS. A. 332 *b*; H. 502, 2. What other reason for subj. here? **parte**: 'direction.' **videri**: passive. **35. partem**: N. to p. 49, 31. **quod erat**: 'which was really the case.' **36. aliquid novi consilii**: see IDIOMS, p. 388. **initum**: sc. *esse*. **cohortes, etc.**: the soldiers of the seventh legion were out foraging. Of the tenth legion four cohorts were on guard at the four gates of the camp; these Caesar at once ordered out; of the remaining six cohorts he ordered two to mount guard, and bade the other four arm and follow him immediately.

Page 120. 1. stationibus: why pl.? **2. in stationem succedere**: 'to relieve guard.' **3. armari**: A. 111 *b* N. I; G. 209; H. 465. **4. suos**: i. e., the soldiers of the seventh legion. **5. conferta**: 'crowded together' (abl. abs.); the men were probably trying to form a hollow square (see p. 34), but the more compactly they stood the more effective the missiles of the enemy 'from all sides.' **7. demesso fru-**

mento: abl. abs.; trans. by 'as,' etc. **una**: 'only one.' **9. dispersos, occupatos**: sc. *nostros*, object of *adorti*. **10. incertis ordinibus**: abl. abs.; in the confusion the ranks could not be regularly formed.

XXXIII. 12. ex essedis: attributive of *pugnae*, like an adj. or a gen. A. 217 R.; H. 359 N.1, 4). The war-chariots of the Britons do not seem to have been provided with scythes, like those of oriental peoples. They were two-wheeled, and carried several men, perhaps six besides the driver. In the battle-line they seem to have alternated sometimes with bodies of horsemen. The tactics were simple. The drivers dashed against the enemy, the men in the chariots sprang out and fought on foot. The chariots meanwhile withdrew a little from the thick of the fight, so that the drivers could see how the battle was going. If they saw their warriors defeated in any part of the line they swiftly drove thither, took on board those hard pressed, and quickly passed beyond the reach of danger. **13. terrore equorum**: 'fright caused by the horses.' Is **equorum** subjective or objective gen.? **14. ordines**: i.e., of the enemy. **15. equitum turmas**: i.e., of the Britons. **17. illi**: the warriors from the chariots. **18. receptum**: a noun. **20. praestant**: 'exhibit'; sc. *essedarii*. **tantum efficiunt**: 'become so expert.' **21. incitatos equos sustinere**: 'check their horses when at full speed.' **22. brevi**: sc. *tempore*, 'in a moment.'

XXXIV. 25. rebus: abl. of means, while *nostris* is dat. after *tulit*, and *novitate* abl. of cause. **28. Quo facto**: concessive. **lacessendum**: without an object. **29. alienum, suo**: opposed in meaning, 'unfavorable,' 'favorable to himself' (lit. 'his own'; A. 197 *b*; G. 299 R.; H. 449, 2). **30. reduxit**: force of *re-* in composition? **31. occupatis**, etc.: while the Romans were busy in fortifying their camp, etc., the Britons 'withdrew' from the open country, probably into strongholds. **qui**: = *ei qui*. **33. quae**: = *tales ut*. A. 319; G. 633; H. 500 I. **36. faciendae**: 'of securing.' **in perpetuum**: 'forever.'

Page 121. 1. sui: see N. to p. 95, 14, and A. 298 *a*; G. 429 R.; H. 542 I. N.1. **2. rebus**: abl. of means.

XXXV. 4. idem: subject of *fore*, explained by the appositive clause *ut . . . effugerent*. **7. ante**: in chap. 21. The thirty horsemen were too few to be of any use except to follow up a fleeing foe; see p. 34. **10. ac**: 'but.' **secuti**: sc. *nostri*. **tanto spatio . . . potuerunt**: A. 257 *b*; G. 400; H. 379, 2; 'so far as speed and strength allowed.'

XXXVI. 15. quem ante imperaverat: see chap. 27. **16. in**: 'to.' **17. propinqua die aequinoctii**: 'as the equinox (or 'equinoctial

season') was drawing near,' a time when storms are unusually prevalent. The equinox fell on Sept. 24. It is thought that Caesar left the island at least a week before that date. Thus, as Moberly suggests, he "had been nearly a month in Britain without being able to advance a mile from the shore." **hiemi . . . subiciendam**: 'the voyage ought not to be exposed to the bad weather.' **21. eosdem portus**: probably Boulogne and Ambleteuse. **quos reliqui**: 'as the rest'; sc. *milites ceperunt; reliqui* is for *reliquae*, those in the ships being taken by *synesis* instead of the ships themselves. A. 187 *d*; G. 202 exc. 2); H. 438, 6. **portus capere**: see IDIOMS under *capere*. **22. paulo infra**: whether the two transports made some harbor or were stranded on the beach Caesar does not say. If the main part of the fleet reached Boulogne, they must have been carried southwest. A current along the French coast sets to the west while in the middle of the Channel it is still running east.

iv. THE UPRISING OF THE MORINI AND THE MENAPII. XXXVII–XXXVIII. B.C. 55.

XXXVII. 23. Quibus navibus: the two transports mentioned above. **24. circiter trecenti**; about 150 men to a ship, in case the ships carried each the same number. This passage has been thought to give a clue to the number of men in a legion; for at the rate of 150 men to a ship, in the 68 ships (12 out of the 80 had been lost, see chap. 22 and 31) there would be 10,200 men, i. e. about 5,000 to a legion. But the whole reasoning rests on an unwarrantable assumption; for most of the ships were forced into service and gathered from different quarters, and therefore probably differed much in size and sea-going qualities; moreover, it would be precisely the two largest and most heavily loaded ships that would be apt to become unmanageable in a strong current. No estimate of the number of men in the 68 ships can therefore be justly based on this passage. See Vocab. under *legio*. **castra**: perhaps a camp constructed by P. Sulpicius Rufus for the defence of the harbor; see p. 116, 4. **26. non ita magno**: 'not very large.' **circumsteterunt**: sc. *eos*, the three hundred. **27. nollent**: A. 337; G. 659; H. 527 I. **ponere**: = *deponere*. **28. orbe facto**: 'having formed a circle' a common manœuvre. See p. 34. **ad clamorem**: 'at the shouting.' i. e., 'on hearing the shouting.' **30. suis auxilio**: A. 233: G. 350: H. 390 II. **33. postea vero quam**: = *posteăquam vero*.

Page 122. XXXVIII. 3. Qui cum: 'since they.' **siccitates paludum**: the pl. indicates that there was dryness in many different marshes. A. 75 *c*; G. 195 R.5; H. 130, 2. **4. reciperent**: subj. for two reasons, — characteristic result, by attraction. **quo**: cf. N. to p. 69, 33,

eo. **quo perfugio**: = *perfugium, quo.* A. 200 *b*; G. 618; H. 445, 9. **superiore anno**: B. C. 56; see Book III. chap. 28. **9. in silvas abdiderant**: see N. to p. 52, 35. **10. hiberna**: see p. 33. **12. reliquae neglexerunt**: sc. *obsides mittere.* The expedition to Britain, as that into Germany (see N. to p. 114, 14), was followed by no tangible results; but great fame was thereby won by the daring general for having opened up to his fellow-countrymen new and vast regions for conquest and supremacy. Hence the thanksgiving decreed at Rome, obtained by his friends for him in the face of all the opposition that his enemies could arouse. **13. supplicatio**: cf. p. 92, 6–8.

BOOK V.

i. Caesar's Second Expedition to Britain. i.–xxiii. B. C. 54.

Page 123. Chapter I. 1. consulibus: see N. to p. 48, 2, and p. 45. **hibernis**: i.e., among the Belgae; see p. 122, 10. **2. in Italiam**: = *in Cisalpinam Galliam*; see N. to p. 51, 31. **consuerat**: what peculiarity in form and meaning? **legatis,** etc.: Caesar frequently placed a lieutenant over each legion. Cf. p. 75, 3; p. 86, 5. **3. quam plurimas** [naves]; see N. to p. 48, 20, *quam*. **4. possent**: A. 342; G. 631; H. 529 II. **aedificandas, reficiendas**: is *esse* to be supplied? **curarent**: 'should have ships built,' etc. A. 331 *a*; G. 546; H. 498 I. **5. Earum**: does not include *veteres* [*naves*] above. **modum, formam**: the 'plan' of the vessels in general, the 'shape' in particular. **6. subductiones**: trans. as if sing.; the pl. is used because more than one ship is referred to. Caesar's experience on the British coast the preceding summer (see Book IV., chap. 29) led him to take every precaution against the violence of storms and tides. Cf. N. to p. 128, 19. **humiliores**: sc. *naves*. The vessels were made more flat than usual, with less elevation above the water and with less depth of hold. Cf. p. 98, 20–22. **quam quibus**: = *quam eae sunt, quibus*. **7. nostro mari**: the Mediterranean. **uti**: what verbs are followed by the abl.? **atque . . . magis**: 'and that, too, all the more on this account.' **9. ibi**: i.e., in the English Channel, where the "choppy" waves are shorter than those in mid-ocean, and of less height. The cause of this does not lie wholly in the frequent changes of the tides, as Caesar thinks, but is rather to be found in the narrowness of the Channel, the irregularity of the coast-line, and the constant meeting of opposing currents of both air and water. **10. transportandam**: why fem.? **latiores**: sc. *facit eas*. Cf. N. to p. 115, 33, *duas legiones*. **11. maribus**: the only instance of the abl. pl. of *mare*. **actuarias**: in pred. The equipment of the ships with oars gave them the advantage over adverse winds and currents. **fieri**: what mood is usually employed after *impero?* **12. ad armandas naves**: 'for rigging out

the ships.' Cf. N. to. p. 98, 19 and p. 99, 12. **13. Hispania**: in Spain there was an abundance of the broom plant for cables and of metal for anchors, etc. **conventibus**: N. to p. 76, 12. **14. Galliae citerioris**: = [illegible] *Cisalpinae*, for which see p. 38. **Illyricum**: N. to p. 92, 2. **15.** [illegible] **is**: of this barbarous people little is known, except that the Ro- [illegible] declared them free of taxes because of the help they rendered against [illegible] Illyrian king, Gentius, B.C. 167. **16. civitatibus . . . imperat**: [illegible]ee IDIOMS, p. 384. **18. qui doceant**: A. 317; G. 632; H. 497 I. What other uses of *qui* with the subj.? **19. omnibus rationibus**: 'in every way.' Why abl.? **20. Percepta**: force of *per-*? 'having heard *through*,' 'to the end.' **22. nisi, etc.**: give rules for the change of conditional sentences to indir. disc. **24. arbitros . . . aestiment**: 'appoints commissioners to assess the damage.'

II. 27. inde: i. e., *ex Gallia citeriore*, for which see p. 38. **exercitum**: Caesar, as Long remarks, had left his army in Belgium early in the year (see l. 2 above), had passed through Transalpine Gaul, held court in Cisalpine Gaul, passed over into Illyricum, settled disturbances and held court there, and now returned to his army in Belgium, in May or early in June; in five months, besides attending to so many important matters, he had travelled at least 2000 miles. **28. cum**: when used with the subj.? When with the indic.? **circuitis**: participle.

Page 124. 1. studio: A. 245; G. 407; H. 416. **in . . . inopia**: concessive, 'although in,' etc. **2. cuius**: i. e., *cuius generis naves*; trans. as if *cuius* were *quod*. **supra**: in Chap. I. **3. neque, etc.**: 'and that they were not far from being ready to launch in a few days.' **4. Collaudatis**: how different from *laudatis*? **6. portum Itium**: Boulogne, whence Caesar set out on his first expedition to Britain; cf. N. to p. 115, 36. **7. milium**: A. 215 *b*; G. 364; H. 396 V. Thirty Roman miles = nearly 27¾ English miles; see N. to p. 48, 16. **8. huic rei**: 'for this purpose.' **quod militum**: 'whatever soldiers,' = 'as many soldiers as.' A. 216 *a* 3; G. 371; H. 397, 3 N.5. **11. concilia**: 'assemblies,' appointed by Caesar for the adjustment of various matters with conquered tribes and the settlement of difficulties between states or individuals. **-que**: 'but'; see N. to p. 101, 34. **12. dicebantur**: A. 330 *b*; G. 528; H. 534, 1 N.1 (2).

III. 13. Haec civitas: i. e., of the Treveri. **plurimum — valet**: see IDIOMS, and N. to p. 49, 2. **14. supra**: see p. 87, 21–23; p. 97, 27, 28. **15. demonstravimus**: N. to p. 77, 2. **duo . . . contendebant**: more than once Caesar gained the advantage over his enemies by taking sides with a state or a faction in a quarrel. Cf. pp. 40, 41. **17. simulatque**: also written *simulac*. **18. officio**: 'allegiance.'

20. gererentur: why not *gerebantur?* **21. iis — in silvam abditis**: N. to p. 52, 35. **per aetatem**: 'by reason of (old) age.' **in armis esse**: = *arma ferre*. **22. Arduennam**: the word is said to mean 'The Deep,' and survives in the name of the forest-covered range of hills in the northeastern part of France and in Belgium, the Ardennes. **26. adventu**: abl. of time and cause. **28. consulere**: see IDIOMS. **30. Sese**, etc.: see N. to p. 78, 4, and A. 330, 3 *e*; G. 652 R.2; H. 523 I. N. **31. quo**: A. 317 *b*; G. 545, 2; H. 497 II. 2. **32. imprudentiam**: 'lack of foresight.' **laberetur**: 'fall away,' i. e., 'give up allegiance.' **33. si**, etc.: it was necessary to get Caesar's permission, because he had reason to treat Indutiomarus as an enemy, and might do so unless Indutiomarus in approaching him gave some evidence of friendly intent.

Page 125. IV. 2. filio, propinquis: why abl.? **3. evocaverat**: sc. *Caesar*. **consolatus**: i. e., both for his own loss of power and for the lot of those chiefs that were to be taken over to Britain. Is *est* to be supplied? **5. nihilo**: why abl.? **6. quod**: 'and this (favor).' **cum — tum**: see IDIOMS; 'and he not only was considering that this favor was being conferred by himself,' etc. **eius**: i. e., Cingetorix **7. magni**: A. 252 *a*; G. 379; H. 404. **10. graviter tulit**: see IDIOMS. **gratiam**: 'popularity.' **11. qui**: 'since he.' A. 320 *e*; G. 636; H. 517. **12. hoc dolore**: 'at this grievance.'

V. 13. Itium: see Vocab. **14. Meldis**: on the Marne, near its junction with the Seine. See map. **21. obsidum loco**: 'as hostages.' Why is loco abl.? **22. abesset**: A. 325, 323; G. 586; H. 521 II. 2.

VI. 23. Erat: N. to p. 49, 31. **una cum**: 'along with.' **Dumnorix**: brother of Divitiacus; he had been unfriendly to Caesar from the first. **ante**: see Book I., Chap. 16–20. **24. in primis**: = *imprimis*. **25. eum**: sc. *esse*. **26. animi, auctoritatis**: A. 214 *c*; G. 365; H. 402. **27. Accedebat huc, quod**: 'There was the further consideration, that.' **29. graviter ferebant**: see IDIOMS. The Aedui elected a magistrate annually (see Book I., Chap. 16), and were naturally vexed at the report that the supreme power had been offered to any man. **neque**: 'and yet — not.' **33. quod . . . timeret**: 'because, as he said, he was afraid of the water.' A. 341 *d*; G. 541; H. 516 II. **navigandi**: A. 298; G. 429; H. 542 I. **religionibus**: 'by religious scruples.' This pretext was not wholly without justification; for Britain was now the centre of Druidism (see p. 40), and Caesar was preparing to invade the island as an enemy.

Page 126. **2. territare**: historical infin. **fieri, etc.**: sc. *dixit.* **3. nobilitate**: A. 243; G. 388; H. 414. **4. interficere**: verbs of fearing with the infin. have the meaning, 'be afraid,' 'not have the courage,' to do anything. **5. fidem, etc.**: 'to the rest (i. e., those not in Caesar's custody) he gave his pledge.' **6. Galliae**: A. 217; G. 361, 2; H. 396 III.

VII. **11. posset**: sc. (*Caesar*) *eum coercere et deterrere.* **12. prospiciendum**: sc. *esse statuebat.* **quid**: acc. of degree or extent. **13. dies**: When are expressions of time put in the acc.? **eo loco**: *portus Itius*, Boulogne. **14. Corus ventus**: a wind from the northwest, hence highly unfavorable to setting out from Boulogne. **15. omnis temporis**: 'of every season.' The traveller in Holland notices that the windmills are built so as to receive the northwest wind. **16. dabat operam, etc.**: 'he was giving his attention to keeping Dumnorix in allegiance.' **contineret, cognosceret**: subj. of purpose. **18. tempestatem**: N. to p. 116, 7. **conscendere in naves**: see IDIOMS. **19. impeditis**: = *occupatis.* **20. a**: what different meaning would *ex* have here? **insciente Caesare**: 'without Caesar's knowledge.' **discedere**: force of *dis-*? **23. retrahi**: cf. N. to p. 123, 11, *fieri.* **24. faciat, interfici**: A. 337; G. 659; H. 527 I. **neque**: = *et non.* **se absente**: see IDIOMS. **25. pro sano**: 'like a man in his senses.' **praesentis**: sc. *Caesaris;* cf. p. 63, 31–33. **neglexisset**: would this be subj. in dir. disc.? **26. revocatus**: force of *re-*? 'called *back*.' **28. liberae, etc.**: see IDIOMS, p. 390.

VIII. **31. continente**: N. to p. 119, 25. **34. consilium caperet**: see IDIOMS. **pro tempore**: 'according to the emergency.' **35. pari numero quem**: = *eodem numero quem*, i. e., 2000; see l. 32, and p. 125, 18–19. **36. ad solis occasum**: 'about sunset.' Careful calculations, based on the references in this chapter to the tides, indicate that Caesar sailed from Boulogne on the 18th or the 20th of July. **naves solvit**: see IDIOMS.

Page 127. **1. Africo**: a glance at the map shows that the southwest wind was highly favorable. **2. orta luce**: 'at day-break.' The troops were carried by the tide to the northeast, out into the German Ocean; then, taking advantage of the change of tide, they rowed back to the place near Dover (Deal), where Caesar had landed the preceding year (B.C. 55). Trace the route on the map; cf. Book IV., Chap. 23, and notes. **5. caperet**: see IDIOMS. **6. admodum laudanda**: 'highly praiseworthy.' **7. navigiis**: abl. of means. **8. longarum navium**: see pp. 36, 37. **Accessum est**: see IDIOMS, p. 389. **11. cum**: 'although.' **12. annotinis** [navibus]: called *veteres naves* in Chap. 1,

referring to the galleys and transport vessels used in the first expedition. Cf. Book IV., Chap. 22. **privatis** [navibus]: vessels belonging to the traders and speculators who accompanied the expedition. **13. sui commodi**: sc. *causā*. **octingentae**: A. 247 *c*; G. 311 R.4; H. 417, 1 N.2. Trans., with **quae**, 'of which more than eight hundred.'

IX. 16. exposito: force of *ex-*? **castris**: why dat.? **18. cohortibus decem**: from different legions, perhaps two cohorts from each. **19. qui . . . essent**: 'to guard the vessels.' A. 317, 233; G. 350, 632; H. 497 I., 390 I. **de tertia vigilia**: N. to p. 52, 31, and p. 33. **20. navibus**: dat. of advantage. **molli**: 'sandy.' **21. aperto**: 'open,' free from rocks or other obstructions. **deligatas ad ancoram**: see IDIOMS. **24. equitatu**: A. 248 *a*; G. 391 R.1; H. 419 III. 1 1). **essedis**: see Book IV., Chap. 33 and N. **flumen**: the Stour. About twelve miles from Deal, near which Caesar landed, the east bank of the river is low, but on the opposite side there is high ground. This locality, as Long suggests, fits the description here; for Caesar would naturally approach the river from the east. **ex loco superiore**: i. e., the elevation on the west bank of the stream. **27. natura et opere**: see IDIOMS. **29. ex . . . propugnabant**: 'came out of the woods in small bodies to fight.' **31. testudine, aggere**: see pp. 35, 36. **35. munitioni**: notice the verbal force, the process rather than the result being referred to; 'for fortifying the camp.'

Page 128. X 1. diei: why gen.? **2. fugerant**: why not subj. (by attraction)? G. 631 R.2; H. 529 II. N.1, 2). **3. aliquantum itineris**: cf. IDIOMS, p. 388. **extremi**: 'the rear' of the detachment sent out by Caesar was still visible to those remaining in the camp. **5. nuntiarent**: subj. of purpose or result? **6. afflictas**: 'shattered.' **7. funes**: see N. to p. 98, 26. **subsisterent, possent**: A. 341 *d*; G. 541; H. 516 II. **8. concursu**: 'dashing together.'

XI. 10. revocari, resistere, etc.: the command was to march back to the camp in battle order; and in case of an attack by the enemy, not to stop the retreat but to beat them off without interrupting the march. **11. revertitur**: see N. to l. 23 below. **12. coram perspicit**: 'sees with his own eyes.' **13. sic**: 'namely,' sums up the preceding thought, *eadem . . . perspicit*. **amissis, etc.**: concessive abl. abs., 'although,' etc. **14. negotio**: 'trouble.' **15. fabros**: a body of artisans regularly accompanied the army (see p. 23); but as these in this case were insufficient for the work at hand, Caesar drew from the ranks the soldiers that were skilled workmen. **continenti**: N. to p. 119, 25. **Labieno**: on the

mainland, near Boulogne. See Chap. 8. **16. legionibus**: 'with (the aid of) the legions.' **17. etsi . . . laboris**: 'although it was a wearisome and laborious undertaking.' A. 214 *c*; G. 365; H. 402. **18. commodissimum**: why neut.? **19. subduci**: the custom of hauling ships up on the shore, when not in use or when repairs were necessary, is referred to by Homer, and was universal in antiquity. For this operation Caesar's vessels were specially adapted; see p. 123, 5–9. **22. ante**: see p. 127, 19. **23. eodem**: i. e., to the fortified place lately taken from the enemy; see Chap. 9. It was from this place, rather than (as some think) from the camp, that Caesar went down to the coast on hearing of the wreck of the fleet, as stated above l. 11. While he was absent there, the natives again collected in their stronghold. **25. summa** (abl.) **imperii**: see IDIOMS. **27. Tamesis**: what is the acc.? **28. a mari**: i. e., from the sea where Caesar landed, near Deal. He had no accurate notion about the course of the Thames. **29. intercesserant**: = *fuerant*.

XII. **33. proditum** [esse]: 'that there is a tradition.' The subject is *quos natos* (*esse*), 'that they originated.' Nothing is known of the history of Britain before Caesar's time. There is, however, sufficient evidence to prove that the aboriginal inhabitants belonged to the Keltic branch of the Indo-European family, and hence were kindred with the Gauls, some tribes of whom early obtained possessions along the southern and eastern coasts. Cf. N. to p. 96, 7, and p. 78, 34, etc. Many ancient peoples besides the Britons thought themselves "autochthones," i. e., sprung from the soil, brought into being in the region they occupied.

Page 129. **1. nominibus, etc.**: e. g., there were tribes in Britain called Atrebates, Belgae, and Parisii. **3. Hominum**: 'population.' **4. Gallicis** [aedificiis]: The only characteristics of Gallic houses referred to by Caesar are the thatched roofs (p. 141, 33), and the surrounding shade-trees (p. 162, 33–35); but we learn from the Greek geographer Strabo that they were often of good size, round in shape, constructed of timber and wicker-work, with a high roof. **5. pecorum**: how connected in derivation with *pecunia*? **6. taleis ferreis**: 'iron bars.' The primitive money of the Romans also was uncoined metal; cf. N. to p. 65, 32. **7. Nascitur**: 'is found.' **plumbum album**: not 'white-lead,' but 'tin.' The tin-mines of Cornwall were worked, and tin exported thence, as early as 900 B. C., some say 1000 B. C. **8. ferrum**: Long suggests that "the iron of the maritime tracts may have been that of Sussex, where the making of iron has not long been discontinued." **aere**: the copper mines of England were not much worked till about two centuries ago. **9. cuiusque**: = *omnis*. **10. fagum, abietem**: the beech and the fir are both said to be native in Britain; Caesar, not happening

to hear of them, inferred that they were not found there. **Leporem . . . putant**: the reason underlying these scruples is not known; perhaps the hare, etc., had a place in the system of transmigration taught by the Druids. Cf. Levit. 11, 6: "And the hare, because he cheweth the cud, but divideth not the hoof; he is unclean unto you." **11. animi causa**: 'for pastime.' **12. temperatiora**: in England the extremes of both heat and cold vary less from the mean temperature than in France, on account of its insular position and the influence of the Gulf Stream.

XIII. 14. natura: 'by nature,' here = 'in shape.' A. 245; G. 407; H. 416. **contra**: 'opposite.' The following description is not exact, as Caesar had no opportunity to make careful investigations, but was obliged to rely upon the reports of traders and others. His most important mistake lies in the statement that the west side of Britain faces Spain. The British Isles were not sailed around by any Roman till Agricola was governor there, over a hundred years after the expeditions of Caesar. **15. Cantium**: now called Kent; the word is said to mean 'corner.' **16. appelluntur**: principal parts? 'for which almost all the ships from Gaul make.' **17. inferior**: corresponds to *alter*, l. 15. **Hoc, Alterum**: sc. *latus*. **18. vergit ad**: 'faces.' **19. qua ex parte**: 'on this side.' **dimidio minor**: see IDIOMS. **20. Britannia**: case? **pari spatio**: abl. of characteristic, made co-ordinate with *minor* by *sed*. **transmissus**: gen., dep. on *spatio*. **21. atque**: after *pari*, 'the same —as.' A. 156 *a*; G. 646; H. 554 I. 2 N. **In hoc** [latere]: 'on this side.' **medio cursu**: = *in medio transmissu*, 'half-way across.' **22. Mona**: doubtless Anglesea, which by some of the inhabitants is still called Mon. The name Mona is sometimes incorrectly applied to the Isle of Man, the Latin name of which was Monopia. **23. subiectae** [esse]: 'to be near by'; rule for agreement of *subiectae?* **insulae**: probably the islands lying off the west coast of Scotland are referred to. **24. nonnulli**: what writers Caesar had in mind is not known; they were likely Greek geographers, whose works have perished. **sub bruma**: see IDIOMS, under *sub;* the statement about the long night is not true of any part of Britain. **25. Nos**: why pl.? **26. nisi**: = *nisi quod*, 'except that.' **certis, etc.**: 'by exact (measurements made by means of) water-clocks.' One or more water-clocks (*clepsydrae*) were always in use in the Roman camp, for the purpose of marking the watches (*vigiliae*, p. 33). The different kinds are described in Smith's Dictionary of Antiquities, pp. 615, 616. **ex aqua**: attributive. A. 217 R.; H. 359 N. 1, 4). **breviores**: in the northern parts of Scotland one can see to read by daylight till nearly 10 P.M. **27. ut . . . opinio**: see IDIOMS, p. 383. **28. Tertium** [latus]: corresponds to *unum* (l. 14), and *Alterum* (l. 18). **32. vicies**: the circuit of Britain is in reality much over 2000 miles.

XIV. **33. Ex his**: i. e., of the inhabitants of Britain. **humanissimi**: 'most civilized.' **34. omnis**: N. to p. 47, 1. **35. Gallica consuetudine**: the customs of the Gauls are described in Book VI. Chap. 11–20. **plerique**: to be taken with the pred., 'for the most part.' **frumenta**: how does the pl. of this word differ in meaning from the sing.? See Vocab. That the Britons near the south coast had cultivated crops is evident from several expressions (such as *ex agris*, *frumentatum*, etc.) in Book IV. Chap. 30–32. **36. lacte, carne**: N. to p. 106, 15. **37. caeruleum**: 'bluish.' The color given by woad is like that of indigo. **38. capillo**, etc.: see IDIOMS, p. 390.

Page 130. **2. deni duodenique**: 'ten, and (sometimes) twelve.' **4. habentur**: 'are considered.' **5. quo**: = *ad quos*. **deducta est** (sc. *domum*) is a common expression, referring to the conducting of a bride to the house of her husband. The truth of the statements here made has been questioned.

XV. **7. tamen ut**: = *ita tamen, ut.* **8. partibus**: A. 258 *f*; G. 386; H. 425 II. 2. **10. intermisso spatio**: = *post intervallum* (*temporis*), *post aliquod tempus.* **11. munitione castrorum**: the Romans had halted for the night. **14. primis** [cohortibus]: the first cohort of the legion was composed of the heaviest and most hardy men. **16. inter se**: 'apart.' **novo genere**: these two cohorts had evidently not been on the first expedition. **17. per medios**: the Britons dashed into the space between the two cohorts, in the manner described in the N. to p. 120, 12.

XVI. **20. sub oculis**: = *in conspectu.* **21. intellectum est**: 'it became evident.' **nostros**: i. e., *milites legionarios.* **22. possent, auderent**: why subj.? **23. neque**, etc.: the Roman infantry could not fight well except in ranks. **26. cederent**: 'fell back.' **27. pedibus**: 'on foot'; see N. to p. 120, 12. **28. Equestris . . . inferebat**: the best explanation of this obscure sentence is given by Peskett: "Caesar means that when the British and the Roman cavalry were engaged, the danger was equalized, whereas the Britons, when they used chariots, were at an advantage." **cedentibus**, etc.: see IDIOMS. **29. Accedebat huc, ut**: see IDIOMS. **rari**: see IDIOMS. **31. stationes dispositas**: 'outposts here and there.' **alios . . . exciperent**: 'were relieving one another at different points.'

XVII. **35. rari**: 'infrequently.' A. 191; G. 324 R.6; H. 443. **lenius**: = *minus acriter.*

Page 131. **1. tres legiones**: an unusual number of troops for a foraging party. **3. sic uti**, etc.: 'the enemy dashed against those that

had ventured outside the ranks to forage, so that they came up close to the standards,' etc. They did not dare to commence a regular engagement with the three legions. **5. subsidio**: 'on the support (of the legions).' A. 254 *b*; G. 345 R., end; H. 425, I, I) N. **6. praecipites**: acc., 'head over heels.' **7. sui colligendi**: N. to p. 95, 14. **9. Ex**: 'after.' **10. auxilia**: i. e., *Britannorum*. **summis copiis**: see IDIOMS.

XVIII. 12. consilio: the 'plan' of the Britons is explained in Chap. 19. **13. fines Cassivellauni**: to-day Midddlesex and Buckinghamshire. Caesar probably crossed the Thames near Kingston, above London. The river is fordable in many places in the upper part of its course; Caesar means that there was only one ford in the region in which he came to the Thames. Follow his route on the map. **14. hoc**: sc. *loco*. **17. praefixis**: i. e., driven into the bank where it sloped down to the water, and projecting forward toward the middle of the stream. **18. defixae**: driven into the bed of the stream. Till a century ago there were remains of some very ancient stakes in the Thames, near Walton bridge. Bede, a writer of the earlier part of the seventh century, speaks of them, and identifies them with the stakes set to oppose Caesar's progress. Most authorities, however, reject this explanation, and consider them a relic of an old fishing weir. **19. praemisso**: sent up and down the south bank of the Thames, to guard the advance of the legions, and dislodge any force that might be lying in wait for them. **21. cum**: 'although.' **capite, etc.**: see IDIOMS, p. 382. The pluck and endurance of Caesar's men overcame every obstacle. **23. -que**: 'but'; see N. to p. 101, 34.

XIX. 25. contentionis: 'of continuing (the war).' **amplioribus**: 'most of.' **milibus quattuor**: if each chariot contained six men (see N. to p. 120, 12), there must have been over 600 chariots. **26. servabat**: = *observabat*. **31. eiecerat**: why not subj.? **32. equitum**: subjective or objective gen.? **33. hoc metu**: 'from fear of this.' **34. Relinquebatur, ut**: 'The only alternative left to Caesar was to.' **36. noceretur**: cf. IDIOMS, p. 389. **labore atque itinere**: 'by toilsome marching'; hendiadys. A. p. 298; G. 695; H. 636 III. 2. The cavalry did not dare to go far from the legions, and their activity in destroying was thus limited by the endurance of the foot-soldiers in marching about.

Page 132. XX. 1. Trinobantes: in Essex and Suffolk; see map. **2. Caesaris . . . secutus**: see IDIOMS. **3. venerat**: Caesar nowhere else refers to this visit of Mandubracius. **5. ipse**: i. e., Mandubracius. **7. Cassivellauni**: 'at the hands of Caswallon'; kind of gen.? **8. praesit, obtineat**: A. 317; G. 632; H. 497 I.

XXI. **13. Trinobantibus,** etc.: by his kind treatment of the Trinobantes, Caesar made the other tribes willing to submit. Read p. 11. **14. Cenimagni**: north of the Trinobantes; for the other tribes mentioned, see map and Vocab. **16. eo loco**: the place where Caesar had received the embassies; he gives no clue by which to determine the exact locality. **oppidum**: generally thought to have been near St. Albans. **17. satis**: 'quite.' **18. Oppidum vocant**: 'call (it) a town.' **19. cum**: 'whenever.' **20. incursionis . . . causa**: i. e., not for permanent residence. Remains of several such strongholds have been discovered in England. **21. natura . . . opere**: see IDIOMS. **24. tulerunt**: 'could not stand.' **-que**: 'but.' **25. multi**: 'a great many of the Britons.'

XXII. **27. in his locis**: about St. Albans. **geruntur**: why pres.? **28. supra**: in Chap. 14. See N. to p. 77, 2. **29. Cingetorix**: of course a different person from the Cingetorix mentioned in Chap. 3. **31. castra navalia**: see Chap. 11. **de improviso**: N. to p. 78, 1.

Page 133. **2. continenti**: N. to p. 119, 25. Notice the force of the tenses in **constituisset, superesset, intellegeret.** Reason for subj.? **repentinos**: N. to p. 96, 15. **4. id . . . posse**: the remaining part of the season 'might easily be wasted' in needless delays. **5. in annos singulos**: 'yearly.' **vectigalis**: partitive gen.; cf. N. to p. 56, 1. As Caesar stationed no garrisons in Britain, the tribute was never paid. He left the independence of the country virtually unimpaired. The conquest of Britain was seriously commenced under the emperor Claudius (A. D. 43), but not completed till the reign of Domitian, about the year 81. Cf. N. to p. 121, 17, and pp. 43, 44. **6. interdicit atque imperat**: 'he lays the strictest injunctions on Cassivellaunus.'

XXIII. **9. refectas**: cf. Chap. 10, 11. **deductis**: 'drawn down' to the water, 'launched'; the ships had been beached and enclosed within the line of fortifications (see p. 128, 19, and N.). **11. duobus commeatibus**: 'in two trips'; abl. of manner. **13. hoc**: sc. *anno*. **superiore anno**: B. C. 55; see Book IV., Chap. 20–34. **14. portaret**: subj. by attraction, also of characteristic. **15. inanes,** etc.: the empty vessels were of two kinds, both those used in the first trip returning for another load, and those made on the continent and sent across by Labienus. **17. locum caperent**: 'reached their destination,' i. e., Britain. **20. aequinoctium suberat**: Caesar left Britain, therefore, shortly after the middle of September, having been in the island two months or over. Cf. N. to p. 121, 17. **necessario angustius**: 'of necessity quite closely.' **21. consecuta**: abl. abs., a rare use of this word. **inita**: cf. IDIOMS, p. 384.

ii. THE WAR WITH AMBIORIX. XXIV–LIV. B.C. 54.

XXIV. **24. subductis**: N. to p. 128, 19. **Samarobrivae**: the word means 'Bridge across the Samara.' See map. **26. siccitates**: N. to p. 122, 3. **aliter ac**: see IDIOMS, and A. 156 *a*; G. 646; H. 554 I. 2 N. **28. civitates**: why not abl.? **Ex quibus unam**: of Caesar's principle of arrangement in distributing his troops, Moberly well says: "Durocortŏrum (now Rheims) was their central point. The legion there was supported in the rear by the three at Samarobriva (Amiens) and elsewhere. Labienus was out in the Ardennes (Arduenna) direction, Cicero pushed forward to the Sambre (Sabis) near modern Waterloo, and Sabinus and Cotta still further, probably to Tongres (Aduatuca) in the Meuse (Mosa) valley." See map, where the probable locations of the different camps are indicated. **30. Esubios**: often spelled *Esuvios*. **32. Belgis**: perhaps Caesar here wrote *Bellovacis;* at any rate this tribe seems to have been the one meant. **34. trans Padum**: i. e., north of the Po, in Cisalpine Gaul; Caesar writes from the standpoint of Rome.

Page 134. **8. milibus . . . centum**: the expression is obscure; it probably means that all the camps were situated within a circle having a radius of 100 miles, i. e., so that no two camps were over 200 miles apart. **9. quoad**: A. 328; G. 574; H. 519 II. 2.

XXV. **11. Erat**: N. p. 49, 31. **summo loco**: 'the highest rank.' **13. benevolentia**: how different from *beneficium?* **15. Tertium . . . regnantem**: 'In the third year of his reign.' **17. quod . . . pertinebat**: 'because a great many were involved.' **21. comprehensos ad se mittere**: 'to take into custody and send to himself,' etc. A. 292 R.; G. 667 R. 1; H. 549, 5.

XXVI. **25. Diebus . . . quibus**: 'About fifteen days after.' **hiberna**: see p. 33. **26. Ambiorige, Catuvolco**: see l. 2 above. **28. praesto,** etc.: see IDIOMS. The two chiefs had come to the borders of their territory in order to receive the Roman lieutenants. **29. Indutiomari**: he now becomes a formidable enemy. Cf. p. 41. **Treveri**: gen. **30. manu**: abl. of accompaniment; N. to p. 77, 23. **31. oppugnatum**: when may the acc. of the supine be used? **35. aliqui**: what form might be expected here?

Page 135. **XXVII.** **5. missu Caesaris**: see IDIOMS. **7. Sese,** etc.: the indir. disc. extends to l. 35; review N. to p. 78, 4, and A. 336–339; G. 651–654; H. 523–527. Order: *Sese confiteri, pro beneficiis Caesaris in se, (se) debere plurimum ei,* etc. This cleverly contrived and

wily speech had the desired effect of luring the Romans on to their destruction. **9. quod**: rel. pron. **10. ei**: for *sibi*, i. e., *Ambiorigi*. A. 235 *a*; G. 343 R.2; H. 384 II. 4 N.2. **12. de**: 'in regard to.' The attack on the camp referred to is that mentioned on p. 134, 31. **13. coactu civitatis**: 'forced by his state.' **14. suaque**, etc.: 'and that the conditions of his authority were such.' **ut . . . multitudo**: the normal form of the tribal government in Gaul was democratic, and important offices were filled by election. Cf. p. 40. **15. in se**: 'over him.' Why is *se* acc.? **21. oppugnandis**: A. 299 *a*; G. 430; H. 544, 2. **esse**, etc.: see IDIOMS under *diem*. **qua**: N. to p. 50, 29. **22. alterae**: a rare form, = *alteri*. A. p. 38, foot-note; G. 35 R., end; H. 151, 1 N.1. **legioni, subsidio**: rule for two dat.? **24. initum**: is *esse* to be supplied? Why neut.? **Quibus . . . satisfecerit**: 'since he had done his duty by them,' in attacking the Roman camp. A. 227 *e*; G. 345; H. 384 II. 4 N.1. **25. habere**, etc.: 'considered the claims of duty.' **27. hospitio**: N. to p. 75, 35. **28. conductam** (mercede): hired for pay.' **29. biduo**: how different from *diebus duobus*? **Ipsorum esse consilium**: 'They (the Romans) were to consider.' **velintne**: sc. *an non*. **30. sentiant**: what mood in dir. disc.? A. 327; G. 579; H. 520. **eductos, deducere**: 'to take the soldiers out of, . . . and conduct (them).' A. 292 R.; G. 667 R.1; H. 549, 5. **34. Quod cum faciat**: 'In doing this.'

XXVIII. 37. audierunt: why not subj.? **38. etsi . . . dicebantur**: this clause implies Caesar's disapproval of the course adopted.

Page 136. 3. ausam [esse]: principal parts? **4. vix erat credendum**: = *vix poterat credi*, 'it was scarcely credible.' **5. eos**: those in the council. **6. primorum ordinum centuriones**: N. to p. 69, 6. **9. rem**: 'this fact,' referring to the following *quod*-clause. **11. re . . . premi**: 'that there was no trouble about supplies.' **13. quid esse**: subj. of rhetorical question in dir. disc. A. 338; G. 654 R.2; H. 523 II. 2. **14. auctore hoste**: abl. abs. 'on the advice of an enemy.' **capere consilium**: see IDIOMS.

XXIX. 15. Contra ea: = *contra*. **sero**: 'too late.' **facturos** [esse]: sc. *se*. **clamitabat**: 'kept shouting.' The use of this word implies an improper manner on the part of Titurius. **17. aliquid calamitatis**: see IDIOMS, p. 388. **19. arbitrari**: sc. *se*. **21. si . . . esse**: what form of conditional sentence would this be in dir. disc.? A. 308 *d*; G. 659, 2 and 662; H. 527 III. **ad castra venturos esse**: = *castra oppugnaturos esse*. **22. spectare**: sc. *se*. 'He had in view not the advice of the enemy (lit. 'the enemy as adviser'), but the real state of the case.' **23. magno dolori**: cf. IDIOMS, p. 390. **Ariovisti**

mortem: Caesar nowhere tells us when or how Ariovistus died. Cf. Book I., Chap. 53. **26. persuaderet:** A. 338; G. 654 R.2; H. 523 II. 1. **28. in utramque partem:** 'for either emergency.' **29. si . . . durius:** cf. IDIOMS, under *si*. **30. omnis:** N. to p. 47, 1. **31. unam salutem:** 'their only hope of safety.' A. 344 *e*; G. 675, 1 and 3; H. 561 III. **32. quem habere exitum:** N. to l. 13 above.

XXX. 35. in utramque partem: 'on both sides,' as we say, "pro and con." **36. ordinibus:** for *centurionibus*. **resisteretur:** 'the opposition was maintained.' **Vincite:** 'Have your own way.' **38. is:** = *talis*, 'and I am not the one to be,' etc.

Page 137. 1. terrear: A. 320 *a*; G. 633, 634; H. 503 I. **hi:** the soldiers, to whom while speaking he probably pointed. **2. quid:** N. to p. 50, 29. **acciderit:** N. to p. 103, 5; why not subj.? **4. non — intereant:** '(and) they would not be perishing.'

XXXI. 6. Consurgitur: cf. IDIOMS, p. 389. **comprehendunt:** i. e., by the hand. **9. unum:** 'one (and the same) thing.' **11. dat manus:** see IDIOMS. **12. Pronuntiatur:** see IDIOMS, p. 389. **14. quid:** '(to see) what.' **15. instrumento:** 'furniture.' **16. Omnia,** etc.: 'Every reason is thought of, (to prove) both why there would be no remaining without danger, and why the danger would be increased by the wearisome watchings of the soldiers,' in case they should remain. Thus all unite in trying to justify the course resolved upon. **18. ut . . . persuasum:** 'like men convinced'; in full, *ut* ('as') *ei proficiscerentur, quibus esset persuasum* (subj. of characteristic). The merciless irony of this sentence seems not entirely creditable to a commander writing of officers that had lost their lives in his service.

XXXII. 23. bipertito: 'at two points.' **a:** 'off.' **25. se demisisset:** 'had descended.' **convallem:** force of *con-*? ('a valley shut in on all sides'). **27. novissimos:** for *novissimum agmen*; see p. 29.

XXXIII. 29. qui: 'since he.' A. 320 *e*; G. 636; H. 517. **30. trepidare,** etc.: these inf. are historical. **31. ut,** etc.: '(in such a way) that all (resources) seemed to fail him.' **quod:** for *id, quod*. **32. negotio:** 'crisis.' **33. qui:** as in l. 29. **34. auctor:** 'adviser.' **35. communi:** with *saluti*.

Page 138. 1. officia praestabat: see IDIOMS, under *praestare*. **2. obire:** 'attend to.' **quoque:** how declined? **3. possent, iusserunt:** i. e., Cotta and Titurius; as subject of *pronuntiare* sc. *tribunos militum et centuriones*. **4. in orbem,** etc.: see IDIOMS. To-day under such circumstances the forming of a hollow square is the usual

manœuvre. Cf. p. 34. **5. reprehendendum non est**: 'is not to be criticised.' **6. militibus**: A. 235 *a*; G. 343 R.2; H. 384 II. 4 N.2. **8. non sine**: = emphatic *cum*, an instance of *litotes*. A. 209 *c*; H. 637 VIII. **10. quaeque**: the *-que* connects *discederent* and *properaret*, which together form one member of the sentence, the second member having for its verb *complerentur*. **12. properaret**: for the subject refer back to *quisque*. **fletu**: Peskett well remarks that "when we read of soldiers weeping, it should be remembered that the southern nations of Europe are naturally more emotional in character than the northern, and that the tendency of modern education and habits of thought is to check all outward expression of strong feeling, whether in the way of joy or grief."

XXXIV. 13. consilium: 'presence of mind.' **15. illorum esse praedam**: 'that the booty belonged to them.' **quaecumque**: as antecedent supply *ea* with *reservari*. **17. existimarent**: imp. mood in dir. disc. **pugnandi**: trans. as if *pugnantium*, 'fighting men.' **18. fortuna**: personified, the goddess of fortune. **24. nihil**: (A. 240 *a*; G. 331 R.3; H. 378, 2) (saying that) 'no hurt could be done them.' **se**: object of *recipientes*, which agrees with *nostros* (understood).

XXXV. 26. iis: i. e., *barbaris*. **27. cum**: 'whenever,' 'as often as' with the pluperfect indicating repeated action. A. 280; G. 569; H. 472, 2. **28. refugiebant**: force of the imperfect? **eam partem**: i. e., that part of the troops which left the circle to charge against the enemy, was on all sides exposed to attack. **30. eum locum**: i. e., in the circle. **35. conflictati**: 'though overwhelmed.' **36. horam octavam**: N. to p. 59, 35. **37. pugnaretur**: see IDIOMS, p. 389, and A. 326; G. 588; H. 515 III. **esset**: A. 320 *a*; G. 633, 634; H. 503 I. **ipsis**: why abl.? **38. Tito Balventio**: A. 235 *a*; G. 343 R.2; H. 384, 4 N.2. **superiore anno, etc.**: Balventius had been *primipilus* (see p. 22), and was probably now serving as an *evocatus* (see p. 21).

Page 139. 1. auctoritatis: be careful not to translate this word as 'authority.' **2. eiusdem ordinis**: i. e., primipilus. **3. circumvento**: 'who had been surrounded.' G. 671; H. 549, 4. **5. in adversum os**: see IDIOMS, under *adversum*.

XXXVI. 6. rebus: A. 245 *b*; G. 407 R.1.; A. 416 N.1. **7. cohortantem**: why not *cohortari?* A. 292 *e*; G. 536; H. 535, I. 4. **9. si . . . interponere**: change this sentence to the dir. disc. according to A. 336–339; G. 664; H. 531. **10. impetrari . . . pertineat**: 'that the request might be granted, so far as the safety of the soldiers was concerned.'

A. 320 *d*; G. 629 R.; H. 503 I. N.I. **11. ipsi**: i. e., *Titurio.* **nocitum iri**: fut. infin. pass. What idiom is commonly used instead of this? **12. fidem interponere**: see IDIOMS. **ille**: Titurius. **13. si videatur**: A. 334 *f*; G. 462, 2; H. 529 II. I N.I. **14. de . . . posse**: 'that the request might be obtained for (both) their own safety, and that of the soldiers.'

XXXVII. **17. quos tribunos**: = *eos tribunos, quos.* **in praesentia**: 'at the time.' **19. Ambiorigem**: A. 234 *e*; G. 356, 4; H. 437, I. **21. condicionibus**: 'terms.' **24. ululatum**: suggestive of the war-whoop of the American Indians. **28. cum**: 'although.' **31. ad unum**: see IDIOMS. This disaster, and that before Gergovia (see Book VII., Chap. 44–51), were the most serious reverses which Caesar experienced in the entire Gallic War. In the fifteen cohorts under Titurius and Cotta at least 5400 men must have perished. Suetonius tells us that when Caesar heard of the massacre he vowed that he would cut neither hair nor beard till he had wreaked vengeance on Ambiorix and the Eburones.

Page 140. **XXXVIII.** **3. hortatur**: sc. *eos.* **ne . . . dimittant**: 'not to let slip.' **4. sui**: A. 298 *a*; G. 429 R.I; 542 I. N.I. **in perpetuum**: 'forever.' **6. legatos duos**: Cotta and Titurius Sabinus. **7. nihil negotii**: see IDIOMS, p. 388. **oppressam legionem interfici**: 'for the legion to be overpowered and destroyed.' **8. cum**: = 'under the command of.' **hiemet**: mood, and why?

XXXIX. **11. Ceutrones**: a small state north of the Grudii (not given on the map), of course a different people from the Ceutrones in the Alps, mentioned Book I., Chap. 10. **12. Grudios, etc.**: see map. **13. eorum**: i. e., *Nerviorum* (understood from l. 9, above). **14. de improviso**: N. to p. 78, I. **15. Huic**: i. e., Cicero, whose camp was in the territory of the Nervii: see map. **16. quod**: for *id, quod.* **lignationis munitionisque**: i. e., of getting timber for the fortifying of the camp. **21. vallum conscendunt**: the soldiers stood on the rampart, behind the palisades (*valli*); see p. 31. **22. adepti**: = *si adepti essent.* A. 292; G. 670; H. 549, 2. **23. in perpetuum**: 'ever after.'

XL. **24. Mittuntur**: the *sending* is emphasized. A. 344 *i*; G. 675, I; H. 561 I. **25. pertulissent**: sc. *eas nuntii*; force of *per?* **26. missi**: 'those sent,' a part. used as a noun. **27. admodum**: 'fully,' modifies CXX. The calculation has been made that 120 towers, placed at equal intervals around the camp of a legion (assumed to be 4600 feet in circumference), would give a distance of about 40 feet from tower to

tower. As this space could be readily covered with the missiles of those in the towers, the practical advantage of the structures becomes apparent. **excitantur**: 'were erected.' **34. opus**: equivalent to what part of speech? **35. praeustae sudes**: 'stakes charred at the end'; the attack was so long continued that the ordinary supply of weapons gave out. **muralium pilorum**: much larger than the common pikes, and hurled from walls, or perhaps used only to thrust with. **36. contabulantur**: 'are built up in stories'; see Plate VI., figure 6, where the representation of a rampart with palisades, towers, and trench, is given. **37. pinnae**: wooden battlements, or projecting points, above the palisades and towers, behind which the soldier could find shelter after having hurled his dart through one of the intervening spaces. **loricae ex cratibus**: (A. 217 R.; H. 359 N.1, 4)), breastworks, made of branches woven together, used to strengthen the exposed sides of the palisades and towers. **38. cum**: 'although.' **tenuissima valetudine**: abl. of characteristic, 'in very delicate health.'

Page 141. 1. ut, etc.: 'so that by the rushing together of soldiers (about him) of their own accord, and their pleadings, he was forced to spare himself.' He was, as it were, "waited on by a committee of the whole."

XLI. 4. sermonis aditum: 'pretext for an interview.' **causam**: 'ground.' **9. ostentant**: 'point to.' **faciundae**: =*faciendae*. G. 151, 5; H. 239. **10. eos**: i. e., Cicero and his men. **quicquam praesidii**: see IDIOMS, p. 388. **his**: i. e., the Romans in the other camps, which, they said, were all being attacked. **11. rebus**: A. 254 *b*; G. 344 R.1, end; H. 425, 1, 1) N. **hoc**: with *animo*, abl. of characteristic, 'had this feeling.' **13. consuetudinem**: i. e., *hibernorum*. **14. per se**: 'as far as they were concerned,' i. e., the Nervii. **18. armato**: 'in arms.' **utantur, mittant**: represent imperatives of dir. disc. **se adiutore utantur**: in dir. disc., 'employ me as a mediator.' **19. sperare**: sc. *se* (Cicero).

XLII. 20. spe: the hope of deceiving Cicero as Titurius Sabinus had been deceived. **pedum ix**: in height. **21. pedum xv**: in breadth at the top. **22. quosdam**: probably an error of the MSS.; trans. as if *quos*. **exercitu**: the Roman army. **23. nulla copia**: abl. abs. **24. quae**: = *talis, ut* (*ea*). A. 320 *a*; G. 633, 634; H. 503 I. **27. milium passuum xv**: as this distance seems unnecessarily long, it has been suggested that we should read *pedum* (as some MSS. have it) instead of *passuum*; 15,000 feet (a little less than three miles) seems far more likely to be correct than 15,000 paces (15 Roman miles). **28. turres**: movable towers after the Roman fashion, for

which see p. 35. **ad**: 'according to.' **29. falces**: N. to p. 179, 35. **testudines**: see p. 36.

XLIII. 32. ferventes . . . glandes: balls made of kneaded clay, heated red-hot, and thrown by means of slings. They retained their heat long enough to ignite inflammable material, such as straw. **ex argilla**: A. 217 R.; H. 359 N.1, 4). **fervefacta iacula**: javelins, either themselves on fire, or wrapped about with burning stuff. **33. casas**: 'barracks'; the winter quarters were provided with huts instead of tents. See p. 33. **34. ignem comprehenderunt**: 'caught fire.' **35. distulerunt**: sc. *ignem*; the subject is *Hae*, the huts being looked upon as agents in spreading the flames. The fire leaped from roof to roof, or perhaps fragments of burning straw were carried by the wind all over the camp. **36. sicuti**: = *tamquam, quasi*. **37. agere**: 'to move up.' **38. ea**: = *tanta*. **praesentia animi**: 'firmness of resolution,' 'firm resolution.'

Page 142. 1. cum: causal, or concessive? **4. ne — quidem**: where is the word made emphatic by *ne — quidem* placed? **8. ut**: 'just as'; just as they stood, crowded together, so they fell. **9. recessum**: 'a chance to draw back.' **non dabant**: 'would not give.' **10. loco**: why abl.? **13. si**: 'whether.' A. 334 *f*; G. 462, 2; H. 529 II. 1 N.1. **14. quorum**: *sed eorum*.

XLIV. 16. Erant: N. to p. 49, 31. **qui . . . appropinquarent**: A. 320 *a*; G. 633, 634; H. 503 I. The men were soon to become centurions of the first rank. **19. quinam**: for *uter*. **anteferretur**: A. 334; G. 469; H. 529 I. **omnibus annis**: 'year in and year out.' **de . . . simultatibus**: 'about military honors (*locis*) with the keenest rivalry.' **21. Quid**: trans. as if *Cur*. A. 240 *a*; G. 331 R.3; H. 378, 2. **22. locum**: 'opportunity.' **25. irrumpit**: 'thither he directed his attack.' **26. Mediocri spatio**: i. e., between Pulio and the enemy. **28. quo, (29) hunc**: both refer to the fallen Gaul. **29. in hostem**: = *in Pulionem*. **30. Pulioni**: A. 235 *a*; G. 343 R.2; H. 384 II. 4 N.2. **31. Avertit . . . vaginam**: 'This mishap turned the scabbard from (its place).' **32. conanti**: sc. *ei*, dat. of disadvantage, 'as he was trying to draw his sword.' A. 290 *a*; G. 668; H. 549, 1. **33. Succurrit**: why are *Transfigitur, Avertit*, and *Succurrit* placed at the beginning of the sentences? **inimicus**: how different in meaning from *hostis*? **35. veruto**: i. e., the dart that had pierced his shield and stuck in his sword-belt. **38. deiectus, etc.**: 'stumbling (lit. 'being carried down') into a hollow, he fell.'

Page 143. 3. utrumque versavit: 'changed the positions (or 'relations') of both.' **5. utri**: 'to the other.' **anteferendus**: 'worthy to be considered superior.'

XLV. **6.** **Quanto, etc.**: see IDIOMS. A. 250; G. 400; H. 417, 2. **7.** **et maxime quod**: 'and chiefly because.' **confecta vulneribus**: see IDIOMS. **8.** **res**: 'the garrison' or 'force.' **11.** **intus**: in the camp. **12.** **honesto**: N. to p. 75, 34. **prima**: as in *prima hieme*. **15.** **illigatas**: the *in-* (*il-*) makes it probable that the dart was hollow and the letter concealed within. **inter Gallos versatus**: 'mingling with Gauls.' **17.** **Ab eo cognoscitur**: = (*Caesar*) *ab eo cognoscit*.

XLVI. **18.** **hora undecima**: 5 P.M.; see N. to p. 59, 35. **20.** **ab eo**: Caesar was at Amiens, Crassus at Montdidier. See map. **24.** **Labieno**: at Lavacherie. See map. **reipublicae commodo**: see IDIOMS. Labienus was stationed at an important point near the country of the rebellious Nervii. **25.** **veniat, etc.**: in dir. disc., *si . . . poteris, veni*. A. 339; G. 655; H. 523 III. **Reliquam partem exercitus**: under L. Roscius and L. Plancus; see Chap. 24.

XLVII. **29.** **antecursoribus**: i. e., of Crassus. **31.** **Crassum, etc.**: Caesar was already on the march when Crassus reached Amiens, and sent orders to him to take charge of the troops and stores there. **attribuit**: sc. *ei*. **32.** **impedimenta**: see p. 23. **litteras publicas**: 'state documents,' the quartermaster's accounts, despatches, and the like. **34.** **non . . . moratus**: 'with tolerable haste.' **35.** **occurrit**: sc. *Caesari*. **38.** **ut**: how rendered after expressions of fearing? A. 331 *f*; G. 552; H. 498 III. N.I.

Page 144. **1.** **quos . . . sciret**: 'since he knew that they.' A. 320 *e*; G. 636; H. 517. **2.** **remittit**: the *re-* implies an answer to Caesar's message. **3.** **rem**: refers to the destruction of Titurius Sabinus and Cotta. **perscribit**: force of *per-*? ('writes at length' or 'in detail').

XLVIII. **6.** **opinione . . . deiectus**: 'disappointed in his expectation of (having) three legions'; since Labienus could not join him, Caesar had with him only the legion of Fabius and that previously at Samarobriva. **7.** **redierat**: = *redactus erat*, 'had been reduced.' **8.** **celeritate**: on the rapidity of Caesar's movements see pp. 9, 10. **magnis itineribus**: see p. 30. **12.** **Graecis litteris**: in Greek characters, not necessarily in the Greek language. All educated Romans understood Greek; and some of the Gauls were familiar at least with the Greek alphabet (see Book I. Chap. 29). It is said that at times Caesar "used a somewhat simple cipher, each letter being the fourth from its true place in the alphabet." **15.** **amentum**: a strap or thong attached to a javelin and used in throwing; it imparted to the weapon a whirling

motion, thus insuring accuracy, on the same principle that rifle balls are made to whirl. **19. neque**: = *et tamen non*. **21. perlectam**: sc. *epistolam*. Force of *per-*? **22. afficit**: 'fills.'

XLIX. 25. per: A. 246 *b*; G. 403; H. 415 I. 1 N.1. **27. Gallum repetit**: 'gets another Gaul' (lit. 'seeks again a Gaul'). The Gaul that took Cicero's first message had seemingly not returned or was not disposed to make a second venture. **28. supra**: see p. 143, 11. **demonstravimus**: N. to p. 77, 2. **29. deferat**: in how many ways may a purpose be expressed in Latin? **30. faciat**: A. 331 *f* R.; G. 546 R.3: H. 499, 2. **35. trans . . . hostium**: trans. after *conspicatur;* Caesar did not cross the stream. **36. Erat . . . res**: 'it was a very dangerous thing.' **38. aequo . . . celeritate**: 'that without anxiety he might slacken his pace.'

Page 145. 2. haec, etsi erant: 'this, although it was.' Why is *castra* pl. in form? **hominum milium septem**: 'consisting of' or 'containing,' etc.; as Caesar had two legions with him (p. 144, 7), these words give a olue to the number of men in a legion. See Vocab. under *legio;* N. to p. 121, 24; and p. 21. **3. angustiis viarum**: i. e., by making the streets and lanes of the camp narrower than usual. **5. hostibus**: = *hostium*. A. 235 *a*; G. 343 R.2, H. 384, 4 N.2.

L. 8. ad aquam: i. e., at the stream, which flowed through the valley. **9. Galli**: sc. *continent*, etc. **10. Caesar**, etc.: Order, *Caesar* (*se continet in suo loco*) *ut, si . . . posset, citra vallem*, etc. **11. suum locum**: 'a position favorable to himself,' that is, on his side of the stream, on the sloping ground leading up to his camp. A. 197 *b*; G. 299 R.; H. 449, 2. **18. concursari, agi**: impers., 'that there be rushing about,' 'that they act.'

LI. 20. traducunt: i. e., across the stream, over to the side on which Caesar was. **21. nostris . . . deductis**: in order to heighten the enemy's feeling of contempt Caesar even withdrew his men from the ramparts. **23. pronuntiari**: cf. IDIOMS, p. 389. **24. horam tertiam**: N. to p. 59, 35. **27. in speciem**: = *ad speciem*, 'for show.' Caesar's men had blocked up the entrances of the camp with barriers of sod, as high as the rampart but of the breadth of only a single sod. The enemy, thinking that the entrances were firmly barricaded, despaired of forcing admission through them and began to destroy the fortifications. **28. eā**: i. e., through the gates; adv. **30. portis eruptione facta**: the soldiers as they rushed out easily threw down the thin barriers of turf. **31. omnino nemo**: 'no one at all.' In what *two* ways is *nemo* made emphatic here? **32. armis**: case, and why?

LII. **35. neque . . . relinqui** 'and that no opportunity for inflicting even a trifling damage upon them was left.' **38. producta**: i. e., drawn up for review.

Page 146. **1. non,** etc.: 'that not one soldier in ten had escaped unwounded.' **4. merito**: the ability and courage displayed by Cicero in the face of such overwhelming odds have won for this defence a place of honor in military annals. **5. appellat**: 'addresses.' **7. certius**: Caesar had previously received an account of the disaster from Labienus (see p. 144, 3), who had learned of the circumstances from survivors (see p. 139, 32). **8. quod**: 'in that.' **9. legati**: Titurius Sabinus. **hoc**: 'this (misfortune).' **10. beneficio**: abl. of means.

LIII. **13. per Remos**: 'through the country of the Remi,' on the border of which the camp of Labienus was situated. **15. abesset**: sc. *Labienus*. A. 326; G. 610; H. 515 III. **eo**: to Cicero's camp. **16. ante mediam noctem**: from the ninth hour (about 2.30 P. M., for it was now autumn) to midnight would be less than ten hours. The way messages were transmitted so rapidly is explained in Book VII., Chap. 3: 'When anything unusually important and striking takes place men pass the news over fields and districts by shouting; different persons in turn receive the message, and pass it on to their neighbors.' **19. Indutiomarus**: he had prompted the attack on Titurius Sabinus and Cotta; see p. 134, 29. **21. reducit, remittit**: force of *re-?* **Fabium**: he had guarded the stores at Amiens (Samarobriva) in Caesar's absence. **22. tribus legionibus**: Caesar now had the legion of Cicero with him, in addition to the two legions mentioned p. 144, 7. **23. trinis**: why is the distributive numeral used instead of the cardinal? A. 95 *b*; G. 95 R.2; H. 174, 2, 3). **27. quid consilii**: see IDIOMS, p. 388. **reliqui**: (sc. *Galli*), nom. **28. explorabant**: 'were trying to find out.' **30. quin — acciperet**: 'without his receiving.' **32. In his**: we should say, 'among others.' **Lucio Roscio**: see Chap. 24 and map. **34. Aremoricae**: derivation? See Vocab., and N. to p. 96, 7. **sui** refers not to the subject, but to the agent, *Lucio Roscio*. **35. milia**: A. 247 *c*; G. 311 R.4; H. 417, 1 N.2.

Page 147. **LIV.** **4. alias — alias**: see IDIOMS. **cum . . . denuntiaret**: causal, 'giving them to understand,' etc. The verb *denuntio* is used of an important, solemn, or threatening announcement. **5. in officio**: 'in allegiance.' **8. frater Moritasgus**: sc. *regnum obtinebat.* **adventu**: abl. of time. **in Galliam**: why not *in Gallia?* **10. publico consilio**: i. e., through the decision of some tribunal that tried those guilty of crimes against the state. **12. satisfaciundi**: = *satisfaciendi.* G. 151, 5; H. 239. **omnem**: 'as a body.' **13. senatum**: a council con-

sisting of the chief men of the tribe, to whom Caesar applies the name of the corresponding body at Rome. **dicto audientes**: n. to p. 67, 22. **14. Tantum . . . valuit**: 'so great influence had the fact,' etc. The subject of *valuit* is the following infin. clause. **15. principes**: 'the leaders in making war.' **17. alteros — alteros**: 'the one people — the other.' **19. Gallici belli**: 'in the Gallic war.' **non suspecta nobis**: 'beyond suspicion in our view.' A. 232 *a*; G. 352; H. 388, I. **20. Idque . . . cum**: 'and this (the fact last stated) I am inclined to think is so far remarkable, not only,' etc. The indir. question is the object of *scio*, a constr. which, with *haud* preceding *scio*, generally implies an affirmative point of view. G. 459 R.: H. 529 II. 3 2) N.2. **22. tantum eius opinionis**: 'so much of that reputation.'

iii. THE REVOLT OF THE TREVERI. LV.–LVIII. B. C. 54.

LV. 29. persuaderi: G. 199 R.; H. 465, I; 'but no state could be persuaded.' **30. cum . . . dicerent**: 'since, as they (the Germans) said, they had tried it twice.' A. 341 *d* R.; G. 541; H. 516 II. I. **31. Ariovisti bello**: see Book I., Chap. 30–54. **Tencterorum transitu**: see Book IV., Chap. 1–15. **32. lapsus**: 'disappointed.' **34. tota Gallia**: 'throughout Gaul.' What classes of words are put in the locative abl. without a preposition? **37. publice, privatim**: N. to p. 107, 11.

Page 148. LVI. 1. intellexit: sc. *Indutiomarus*. **ultro**: 'of their own accord.' **veniri**: 'that (they) were coming'; cf. p. 94, 16, and N. **2. facinoris**: the uprising of a conquered people to recover their former liberties Caesar naturally regards as a crime! **5. Hoc**: = *armatum concilium indicere*. **6. quo**: = *ad quod*, 'to this.' **7. convēnit**: not *convĕnit*; what tense? **8. cruciatibus**: cf. N. to p. 157, 30. **10. supra**: in Chap. 3. **secutum fidem**; see IDIOMS under *fidem*. **11. ab eo non discessisse**: = *in eius fide mansisse*. **14. huc**: = *ad eas civitates*. On the way to the Senones he would need to pass through the territory of the Remi. See map.

LVII. 17. loci natura: cf. N. to p. 48, 7, and IDIOMS. **18. nihil**: a kind of cognate acc, 'was feeling no anxiety.' **19. quam**: N. to p. 50, 29, *quid*. **occasionem . . . gerendae**: see IDIOMS, under *res*. **27. timoris opinionem**: 'the impression of fear.' Labienus was trying the same tactics that Caesar had lately made use of with so great success; cf. Chap. 51.

LVIII. 29. in dies: see IDIOMS. **30. intromissis**: i. e., introduced into the camp. Labienus had no cavalry of his own with which to

carry out his design against the Treveri. **31. quos . . . curaverat**: 'that he had caused to be collected.' **tanta diligentia**: 'with so great carefulness'; **custodiis**: 'by keeping guard.' Once having conveyed the cavalry into his camp, Labienus took care that the fact should not become known to the enemy. **37. visum est**: 'they thought best'; sc. *discedere.*

Page 149. 1. dispersi, dissipati, discedunt: notice the alliteration. A. p. 299: H. 637 XI. 1. **2. praecipit**: followed by *unum . . . peterent;* **interdicit**: belongs before *neu . . . vulneret.* **6. mora . . . nactum**: gaining time in the delay caused by the cavalry following up the others. **7. occiderint**: sc. *eum.* A. 320 *a*; G. 633, 634; H. 503 I. **8. Comprobat**: 'justifies.' **9. unum** [illum]: 'him alone.' **fluminis**: the Ourthe. **11. possunt**: sc. *consectari et occidere.* **13. pauloque . . . Galliam**: notice the brevity and force of this closing sentence. **habuit**: 'found.'

BOOK VI.

I. General Uprising in Gaul. I–VIII. B.C. 53.

Page 150. Chapter I. 1. causis: well stated by Moberly: "the death of Dumnorix, the comparative failure in Britain, the loss of the entire division of Cotta and Sabinus, the hostility stirred up among the Treveri by Indutiomarus, and, above all, the general longing for freedom felt throughout Gaul." **3. delectum**: cf. p. 22. **4. Gneo Pompeio**: Pompey had been consul B.C. 70, and a second time B.C. 55. As proconsul of Spain, he had at this time six legions under his command; instead of administering the affairs of his province himself, however, he remained near Rome, watching the course of events, and left the governing of Spain to his lieutenants. He was yet on good terms with Caesar. Cf. pp. 3, 14, 15. **ad urbem**: see Idioms, and N. to p. 50, 12. A general having a military command (*imperium*) was by law prohibited from entering Rome. **5. reipublicae causa**: 'in public service.' Pompey was nominally superintending the supply of grain to Rome, but in reality giving far more attention to politics, and making every effort to win for himself a position of undisputed supremacy as a political leader. **remaneret**: 'since (as Caesar said) he (Pompey) was staying.' A. 341 *d*; G. 541; H. 516 II. **6. consulis . . . rogavisset**: 'had enlisted under the consul.' **rogavisset**: subj. by attraction. **ad signa convenire**: see p. 26. **7. iuberet**: why subj., and why impf. tense? **magni**: A. 252 *a*; G. 379; H. 404. **8. opinionem**: i. e, the opinion of the Roman power entertained by Gaul. **9. quid detrimenti**: 'any loss.' **11. reipublicae**: 'for the public good.' **amicitiae**: between Pompey and Caesar. **12. tribus, etc.**: as the three new legions contained 30 cohorts, the number of the 15 cohorts lost under Cotta and Sabinus was doubled. One of the legions took the place of the XIVth that had perished; the other two were numbered I and XV. Caesar had now ten legions. **13. ante exactam hiemem**: see Idioms. **15. quid — possent**: N. to p. 78, 16.

II. 17. docuimus: cf. Book v., Chap. 58. **20. ulteriores**: 'those further off.' **21. inter se confirmant**: 'bind one another.' **22. obsidibus**: abl.; 'exchange hostages as a guarantee (for the payment) of money.' **25. Cisrhenanis**: in Gaul; cf. N. to p. 106, 4. **Senones, etc.**: see Book v., Chap. 54. **28. maturius**: 'earlier (than usual)'; cf. N. to p. 108, 21.

Page 151. III. 1. proximis . . . legionibus: probably the three legions that had been placed in winter quarters about Samarobriva (Book v., Chap. 53), and that under Fabius among the Morini (v. 24). **2. de improviso**: N. to p. 78, 1. **3. possent**: when is *priusquam* followed by the subj.? **4. ea . . . concessa**: = *eis loco praedae* ('as booty') *militibus concessis*. **7. hiberna**: at Samarobriva (Amiens). **primo vere**: 'at the beginning of spring,' probably the earlier part of March. **ut instituerat**: = *ut facere consuerat*, 'according to his practice.' **9. venissent**: i. e., to the council. **initium**: in pred.; emphatic position. **10. omnia postponere**: 'to make everything (else) second.' **Lutetiam Parisiorum**: "the first mention of Paris in history." Lutetia occupied only the island in the Seine, which forms but a small part of the modern city. Paris did not become an important town till the sixth century. **12. consilio**: = *consilio belli*. The political union between the Senones and the Parisii could not have been very close or binding.

IV. 16. princeps eius consilii: 'the leader in that scheme.' **17. Conantibus** [eis]: dat. or abl.? **18. posset**: why not indic.? **19. sententia desistunt**: see IDIOMS. **20. per Aeduos**: 'with the support of the Aedui.' **21. fide**: 'protection.' **Aeduis**: why abl.? Cf. p. 61, 6, where *petentibus Aeduis* is dat., and N. to p. 82, 33. The Aedui were eager in every way to extend their sway and regain the headship among the states of Gaul that they had once possessed. Cf. Book I., Chap. 31. **22. aestivum . . . belli**: see IDIOMS, p. 390. **24. custodiendos**: why is *esse* not to be supplied? A. 294 *d*; G. 431; H. 544, 2 N.2. **Eodem**: probably Agedincum. **25. Remis**: the Remi, as the Aedui, were on friendly terms with Caesar.

V. 28. totus . . . animo: 'with all his heart and soul,' 'with his entire attention.' **30. quis**: N. to p. 50, 29. **huius**: objective gen., 'at him.' **31. ex . . . odio**: these petty tyrants among the Gauls seem generally to have been capricious and cruel. **32. pro explorato**: 'as certain.' **33. reliqua eius consilia**: i. e., 'what other plans he might have on foot.' **35. perpetuis**: 'continuous'; cf. Book III., Chap. 28. **36. uni**: difference in meaning between sing. and pl of this word? **37. hospitium**: N. to p. 75, 35. **38. venisse**: sc. *eum*. **Germanis**: A. 235 *a*; G. 343 R.2; H. 384 II. 4 N.2.

Page 152. **1. prius, quam**: when followed by the indic.? **3. congredi**: = *se coniungere, coire.* **cogeretur**: = *necessitate coactus conaretur*; sc. *Ambiorix.* **4. mittit**: sc. *Caesar.* **7. praesidio**: why is *fretus* followed by the abl.?

VI. **10. pontibus**: bridges across the streams, and causeways over the marshes. **14. hostium numero**: 'as enemies.' **16. Commium**: one of Caesar's puppet-kings. See p. 115, 13. **custodis loco**: 'as a guard.'

VII. **18. geruntur**: why pres.? A. 276 *e*; G. 220 R.1; H. 467, 4. **20. in eorum finibus**: probably at or near Lavacherie; see Book v., Chap. 24. **hiemaverat**: plup., because it was now summer (p. 151, 22). **21. via**: why abl.? **22. missu Caesaris**: see IDIOMS. **23. a**: 'off'; constr. of **milibus**? **27. equitatu**: 'body of cavalry.' **28. mille**: here a noun. A. 94 *e* N.; G. 308; H. 178. **Erat**: N. to p. 49, 31. **29. flumen**: perhaps the Ourthe. **30. habebat in animo**: see IDIOMS. **31. Augebatur**: sc. *enim hostibus.* **32. in consilio**: 'as a part of his plan.' Labienus prepares a ruse for the enemy. **33. in dubium devocaturum**: = *in discrimen vocaturum* [*esse*]. **36. equitum**: the cavalry of Caesar's army was largely composed of Gauls. **nonnullos**, etc.: 'from force of nature some were favoring the Gallic cause.' **natura**: nom.

Page 153. **1. ordinibus**: = *centurionibus.* **2. quid . . . consilii**: 'what his plan is.' **3. suspicionem**: 'impression.' **4. quam . . . consuetudo**: 'than is customary for Romans.' **6. in . . . castrorum**: causal, 'because the camps were so near each other.'

VIII. **9. cohortati inter se**: 'urging one another on.' **10. longum esse**: '(saying) that it would be wearisome.' Read N. to p. 78, 4, *se.* **16. simulatione itineris**: = *simulato itinere*, 'feigned march.' **20. nobis ducibus**: dat., the "editorial" *we.* A. 98 *d*; G. 195 R.7; H. 446 N.2. **imperatori**: i. e., Caesar. **22. signa . . . converti**: 'face about towards the enemy.' **26. impetum modo**: 'the bare onset.' **30. civitatem recepit**: 'recovered the state' of the Treveri from its condition of insurrection. **32. comitati eos**: not a repetition of the thought in *cum his;* they not only went off at the same time as the Germans, but accompanied these into Germany. **34. demonstravimus**: in Book v., Chapters 3 and 56.

ii. THE SECOND EXPEDITION INTO GERMANY. IX–XXVIII. B.C. 53.

IX. **36. Caesar . . . venit**: the narrative refers back to Chap. 6, Chapters 7 and 8 being a digression to describe the operations of La-

bienus. **37. causis**: the reasons here assigned by Caesar hardly seem adequate (cf. Book IV., Chap. 16). The first expedition had certainly been barren of results (see N. to p. 114, 14), and could raise no great hopes of brilliant conquest. Perhaps Caesar wished to show both his enemies and his friends that, notwithstanding the rebellions in Gaul, he had the country so well in hand that he could well leave it to engage in military enterprises elsewhere.

Page 154. 1. miserant: sc. *Germani*. **4. pontem**: the bridge was probably situated not far above Bonn. Cf. Book IV., Chap. 17 and Notes. **Nota . . . studio**: 'since the plan (of such a bridge) was familiar and had been tried, (and) the soldiers worked with much enthusiasm.' **8. purgandi sui**: cf. N. to p. 95, 14, and p. 111, 16. **9. qui**: when used with the subj.? **12. poenas pendant**: see IDIOMS. **13. amplius obsidum**: see IDIOMS, p. 388, under Partitive Genitives.

X. 18. denuntiare: N. to p. 147, 4. **29. silvam**: the Bacenis wood appears to have formed a part of the great Hercynian forest (Chap. 24), which extended over a large portion of Germany. It is mentioned by Caesar only, and is thought by some to have been in the region of the Hartz Mountains, or perhaps identical with the Thuringian Forest. See map. **31. ab**: 'on the part of.' **32. ad eius initium silvae**: in Meiningen, the western part of Saxony, Goeler thinks.

XI. 35. perventum est ad: 'since we have reached.' **alienum**: 'foreign to the subject,' 'out of place.' This interesting and valuable digression on the customs of the Gauls and Germans is probably introduced to draw attention from the fact that Caesar, from a military point of view, utterly failed to accomplish anything by his second expedition into Germany. He marched over the Rhine, and marched back again, without fighting a battle or taking a prisoner. The *moral* effect of the expedition, however, upon the Gauls and his fellow-countrymen was doubtless great.

Page 155. 2. partibus: 'districts.' On the state of society here described, see p. 40. **4. eorum**: = *Gallorum*. **5. quorum**: refers to *qui . . . existimantur*, not to *eorum*. **summa**: 'control,' 'final decision.' **6. redeat**: subj. of characteristic. **eius rei causa**: 'with this object in view,' referring to the clause *ne — egeret*. **institutum videtur**: '(that practice) seems to have become established.' **7. auxilii**: A. 223; G. 389 R.2; H. 410 V. 1. **8. quisque**: i. e., each patron, or party leader. **9. habet**: *habeat* would have been more regular. A. 309 *a*; H. 511, 1. **10. Galliae**: dep. on *ratio*; 'There is this same state of affairs throughout Gaul as a whole.' **11. divisae**: N. to p. 47, 1.

XII. **12. Cum**: = *quo tempore*, 'at the time when.' **13. Hi**: 'the latter.' Before the Sequani, the Arverni had held a position of leadership; see Book I., Chap. 31. **15. clientelae**: 'dependent states.' **16. iacturis**: 'sacrifices'; cf. N. to p. 62, 12, and read Book I., Chap. 32. **21. publice**: 'as a state.' **23. occupatam possiderent**: 'had seized upon, and were in possession of.' A. 292 R.; G. 667 R.1; H. 549, 5. **24. Divitiacus**: N. to p. 56, 12. **25. imperfecta re**: 'before the matter was settled.' **26. Adventu**: abl. of time and cause. **commutatione rerum**: 'a change of relations.' **Aeduis**: why dat.? **28. comparatis**: i. e., for the Aedui. **30. reliquis rebus**: 'by all other means.' **32. quos . . . intellegebatur**: 'and since it was understood that these enjoyed Caesar's favor equally (with the Aedui).' **gratia**: abl. of specification. **34. Remis**: trans. as if *Remorum*. A. 235 *a*; G. 343 R.2; H. 384 II. 4 N.2.

Page 156. **XIII.** **1. aliquo numero**: 'in any consideration,' 'of any account.' Read pp. 40, 41. **3. servorum loco**: 'as slaves.' **nullo**: old form, = *nulli*. **4. consilio**: dat.; 'is invited to (share in) no deliberation.' **6. in . . servos**: 'these (the nobles) have over them all the same rights as masters over slaves.' **7. duobus**: refers back to l. 2. **8. Illi . . . intersunt**: 'The former preside over the services of religion.' **9. procurant**: *not* 'procure.' **religiones**: such as, questions concerning atonement for wrong committed, interpretation of omens and signs, rites and ceremonies. See IDIOMS. **10. disciplinae**: = *discendi*. **11. hi**: the Druids. **eos**: = *Gallos*. **13. quod**: why not *quid*? **14. idem**: nom pl., 'also.' **16. sacrificiis, etc.**: see IDIOMS, under *interdicere*. **18. his**: why dat.? 'from these all withdraw,' 'these all avoid.' **21. honos**: old form of *honor*. **23. Hoc mortuo**: 'When he dies.' **27. loco consecrato**: probably a sacred grove, near modern Dreux. **29. Disciplina**: 'system,' i. e., of the Druids. **30. reperta, translata**: A. 272 *b*; H. 536, 2, 1). The truth seems to be that, in Caesar's time, Druidism in Gaul, affected by the general degeneracy of society, had long been declining; but that in Britain, owing to the isolated situation of the island and the backwardness of the inhabitants, it was still flourishing with undiminished vigor. It probably originated in Gaul. **31. diligentius**: 'with special thoroughness.' **eam rem**: = *eam*.

XIV. **34. pendunt**: N. to p. 65, 32. **36. disciplinam**: 'training.' **37. versuum**: 'lines,' probably composed in metrical form to facilitate memorizing.

Page 157. **1. litteris**: 'to writing,' we should say. **cum**: 'although.' **2. rationibus**: 'accounts.' **litteris**: 'characters.' See N. to p. 61, 10,

and p. 144, 12. **3. quod . . . velint**: 'because (as they claim), they do not wish to have their system spread abroad,' etc. A. 341 *d*; G. 541; H. 516 II. **5. litteris**: why abl.? **quod**: = *id quod* = *nam id.* The truth of Caesar's statement is beyond question. **8. animas**: 'the life,' 'the soul' as life-principle; the Latin often uses the pl. where the English prefers the sing. The doctrine to which Caesar alludes is that known as Metempsychosis, or transmigration of souls. It was believed in by the ancient Egyptians, by Plato and Pythagoras and their followers, and is held to-day by the Buddhists. **9. hoc**: i. e., this belief in the soul's immortality. **10. metu . . . neglecto**: causal abl. abs., 'since,' etc. **11. terrarum**: = *orbis terrarum* = 'the earth' (lit. 'the circle of lands'). **de rerum natura**: 'about nature.' The mystic, half-poetic teachings of the Druids have awakened great interest among scholars; but very little is known about them. Read the article on Druidism in the Encyclopædia Britannica, last edition.

XV. 14. Alterum: cf. p. 156, 7–8. **cum**: 'whenever.' **15. incidit**: 'breaks out.' **17. versantur**: 'engage.' **18. genere**: 'family,' = 'position.' **plurimos, etc.**: owing to the feudal organization of society, members of the nobility could acquire vast power. Orgetorix had 10,000 retainers, besides many others under obligations to him; see Book I., Chap. 4. **19. Hanc, etc.**: 'This is the only source of influence and power that they are familiar with.' **20. noverunt**: A. 143 *c* N.; G. 228, 2 R.1; H. 297 I. 2.

XVI. 21. dedita: 'devoted.' A. 291 *b*; G. 439; H. 550 N.2. **23. pro**: 'as.' The Romans in their early history sometimes resorted to human sacrifices, as did also the Persians. **25. pro . . . reddatur**: suggestive of the ancient Hebrew principle, "whoso sheddeth man's blood, by man shall his blood be shed." **28. habent instituta**: almost equals *instituerunt.* A. 292 *c*; G. 230; H. 388, 1 N. **simulacra**: rude cages of wickerwork, having in shape some resemblance to the human form. **30. quibus**: the antecedent is *simulacra.* Several practices of the Gauls point to a vein of extreme cruelty in the Gallic character; cf. Book V. Chap. 56, Book VII. Chap. 4. This may serve to throw light on the statement, sometimes made, that the horrible excesses of the French Revolution could have occurred in no other civilized country than France. Cf. pp. 42, 43.

XVII. 35. Deum: gen. pl., = *deorum.* **Mercurium**: Caesar applies the names of Roman gods to the divinities of the Gauls; the Gallic names cannot in all cases be determined. Mercury probably corresponds to the Gallic Teutātes, Apollo to Belĕnus (or Belen), Mars to Hesus (or

Esus), Jupiter to Tarănis (or Taran, = 'Thunderer). **37. itinerum:** 'of journeys.' Mercury is *dux viarum* in that he points out the road, and *dux itinerum* because he accompanies the traveller on the way.

Page 158. 2. Apollinem: for the beliefs about Apollo and the other deities mentioned, see Vocab., and Murray's "Manual of Mythology." **6. ceperint:** pf. subj. instead of the fut. pf. indic.; for *devovent* in meaning looks forward to the future. **cum superaverunt:** = *post victoriam*. **9. neque:** = *et non*. **10. capta:** acc. **11. posita tollere:** i. e., to take up and carry off things set aside as votive offerings to the gods.

XVIII. 13. patre: not a regular title of Pluto, but a term suggested by the relationship of children claimed by the Galli. **14. ob eam causam:** i. e., because sprung from the god of the Lower World, the realm of darkness and night. **15. numero . . . noctium:** the early Germans also reckoned periods of time by nights instead of by days. A survival of this custom is found in our words *fortnight* (= fourteen nights), *sennight* (= seven nights), *twelfth night*, etc. **16. ut . . . subsequatur:** i. e., instead of saying, "the first day of the month," "the first day of the year," as we do, they said "the first night of the month," or "of the year." The practice probably originated in the measuring of time by the courses of the moon, in which the night would naturally form the starting-point of reckoning. **18. ab reliquis:** i. e., from all other peoples. **21. turpe ducunt:** 'consider it disgraceful.'

XIX. 22. Viri: 'husbands'; the Germans use the word *Mann* in the same way. **pecunias:** not necessarily money, but 'property' in general. Derivation of *pecunia?* **dotis nomine:** 'by way of dowry.' **23. tantas, etc.:** from his own property the husband set aside an amount equal to the dower received with the wife. The income from this common fund, or estate, was saved up, and when the husband or wife died went to the survivor. This custom could have been in vogue only among the higher classes; for the common people were very poor. **25. uter:** 'whichever,' husband or wife. **vita:** why abl.? **26. eum:** why masc.? **27. in:** 'over.' **vitae necisque potestatem:** among the early Romans also the father had the power of life and death over wife, children, and slaves. **28. illustriore loco:** 'of higher rank.' **29. de . . . venit:** 'if suspicion has arisen in regard to (the cause of) death.' **30. uxoribus:** the pl. implies the practice of polygamy among the higher classes of Gaul. **30. in servilem modum:** see IDIOMS, under *in*. **32. excruciatas interficiunt:** 'they torture and kill.' See N. to p. 157, 30, and A. 292 R.; G. 667 R. 1; H. 549, 5. **pro cultu:** 'considering the civilization.' Showy parades and brilliant *fêtes* are a marked character-

istic of French life. In view of the fact that the ancient Gauls to so great a degree (as we learn elsewhere) loved pomp and finery, is it not significant that modern Paris is the leader of the world's fashions? Cf. pp. 42, 43. **33. vivis cordi fuisse**: cf. IDIOMS, under *Esse with two datives*. **35. supra hanc memoriam**: = 'before our time.' **36. iustis**: 'proper,' 'complete.'

XX. 37. Quae civitates: = *eae civitates, quae*. **rempublicam**: 'public affairs.' **38. habent sanctum**: 'have enacted'; cf. N. to p. 157, 28. The singular provision mentioned was established as a check upon the rashness and impetuosity of the Gauls. Cf. N. to p. 96, 15. **quis, quid**: N. to p. 50, 29.

Page 159. 1. rumore: a vague, unauthenticated, perhaps secretly circulated saying, a 'rumor'; while **fama** is rather the open and definite 'report' of news having some basis of truth. **5. visa sunt** [occultanda]: 'which they have thought best to conceal.' **6. ex usu**: see N. to p. 61, 25. **7. per concilium**: 'at a council.' No "Freedom of the Press" among the ancient Gauls!

XXI. 9. druides, etc.: though the Germans had no Druids, we learn elsewhere that there was a regular priesthood among them. **praesint**: A. 320 *a*; G. 633, 634; H. 503 I. Cf. p. 156, 8. **10. student**: 'pay heed.' **Deorum,** etc.: the religion of the early Germans was a kind of nature-worship, but hardly so simple as here represented. They worshipped several gods besides the three that Caesar mentions; and the prophetic utterances of women were considered inspired. Cf. Book I., Chap. 50, and notes; read Murray's "Manual of Mythology," pp. 309–325. **13. venationibus**: N. to p. 106, 16. **in . . . militaris**: 'in warlike pursuits.' **ab parvulis**: 'from early childhood.' Cf. Book IV., Chap. I. **19. renonum**: 'reindeer-skins.'

XXII. 22. in: we would say 'of.' **24. in annos singulos**: 'each year,' 'yearly.' **gentibus cognationibusque**: 'families and clans.' **26. agri**: dep. on *quantum*. See N. to p. 106, 13 and 14. **27. consuetudine**: 'residence.' **28. agricultura**: A. 252 *c*; G. 404 R.; H. 422 N.2. **30. accuratius**: 'with greater care.' **frigora, aestus**: force of the pl.? '*seasons* of cold and heat,' not cold and heat in the abstract. A. 75 *c*; G. 195 R.5; H. 130, 2. **vitandos**: why not neut.? **32. animi aequitate**: 'contentment of mind,' freedom from jealousy and ambition. **33. cum (causal) quisque videat**: 'each one seeing.' **potentissimis**: i. e., *potentissimorum opibus*. Implanted in these early Germans was a spirit of independence and love of freedom that rendered impossible among them marked class distinctions or despotic rule.

XXIII. **35. maxima laus**: see IDIOMS. In connection with this chapter review Book IV., Chap. 3. **36. proprium virtutis**: 'a proof of courage.' **37. neque quemquam**: = *et neminem*.

Page 160. 1. bellum illatum defendit: 'repels an invasion.' **3. praesint**: A. 320 *a*; G. 633, 634; H. 503 I. **ut — habeant**: 'to the extent of having.' Notice that military power is conferred by election, *deliguntur*. **4. communis**: i. e., common to a whole tribe or people. **5. ius dicunt**: see IDIOMS. **6. Latrocinia**, etc.: barbarous peoples in all ages of the world have considered freebooting and piracy outside their own borders as not simply legitimate but even praiseworthy. **habent**: 'involve.' **9. quis**; indefinite. **10. profiteantur**: 'that they are to give in their names.' A. 339; G. 655; H. 523 III. **hominem**: 'person'; could *virum* have been used here? **12. ex his**: i. e., of those who have promised to follow. In this voluntary relation between leader, or chieftain, and followers, lies the origin of the peculiar relations between lord and vassal in the middle ages. **13. his**: A. 229; G. 344 R.2; H. 385 II. 2. **15. prohibent**: sc. *eos*, unexpressed antecedent of *qui*.

The statements in Chapters 22 and 23 about the institutions of the early Germans are of the highest interest and value; for they point to principles of government the fuller outworking of which in the feudal system and in the English Constitution have had much to do with shaping the political history of Europe and even of America. Those who wish to pursue the subject farther may read Stubbs, "Constitutional History of England," Vol. I., Chap. 1 and 2; Stillé, "Studies in Mediæval History," Chap. 2; Hallam, "View of the State of Europe during the Middle Ages," Chap. 2; Robertson, "History of the Reign of Charles V.," *A View of the State of Europe*, and notes.

XXIV. 19. inferrent, mitterent: asyndeton. See A. p. 298; G. 475 R.; H. 636 I. 1. **20. trans Rhenum**: i. e., into Germany. Cf. N. to p. 106, 4 *Rhenus*. **22. Eratostheni**: see Vocab. **Graecis**: what Greek writers are referred to it is impossible now to determine. **23. video**: used instead of *intellego* or *cognovi* because Caesar obtained his information in regard to the matter by reading. **Volcae Tectosages**: a widely scattered Gallic people, the tribal home of whom in Caesar's time was in the Province, near the Pyrenees. A large body of them, however, early settled in the countries now known as Bavaria and Bohemia, where they long held their own against the Germans. Another portion of them joined the great Gallic migration to the east, and formed a part of the Galatians (cf. p. 41). **24. occupaverunt**: *not* 'occupied.' **quae . . . tempus**: 'and that people up to the present time.' **25. sese continet**: 'has maintained itself' (lit. 'keeps itself together').

26. **opinionem**: 'reputation (for).' **27.** **inopia**: lack of resources, 'poverty'; while **egestas**, 'want,' 'need,' refers rather to the condition resulting from poverty. **patientia**: *not* 'patience.' **28.** **provinciarum**: the two provinces, Cisalpine Gaul and the 'Province' in Transalpine Gaul. **30.** **usus**: pl., because of the number and variety of things made use of. **assuefacti superari**: 'getting used to being beaten.' **31.** **ipsi**: *Galli.* **illis**: *Germanis.*

XXV. **33.** **supra**: l. 21. **demonstrata**: 'mentioned.' **34.** **latitudo**: 'breadth,' from north to south. **iter**: see N. to p. 108, 34. A 'nine days' journey' 'for a rapid traveller' would perhaps be 175 to 200 miles. **35.** **mensuras itinerum**: i. e., by means of milestones such as the Romans had along all of their highways. **noverunt**: (A. 143 *c*, N.; G. 228, 2 R.1; H. 297 I. 2) sc. *Germani.* **Oritur**: sc. *Hercynia Silva.* **36.** **Helvetiorum,** etc.: look out the boundaries here given on the map. The Hercynian Forest covered the region of the Black Forest, the Thuringian Forest, the Erzgebirge, the Giant Mountains (Riesengebirge), and the great Carpathians. **recta . . . regione**: 'along the line of the Danube,' 'parallel with the Danube.'

Page 161. **2.** **sinistrorsus**: 'to the left' of the Danube, towards the Carpathian mountains. **4.** **huius**: 'of this (part of),' i. e., the western part of Germany. **5.** **initium**: i. e., the eastern boundary. **dicat**: A. 320 *a*; G. 633, 634; H. 503 I. **dierum iter lx.**: perhaps 600 miles. **7.** **quae**: 'such as.' **reliquis locis**: 'in other parts' of Germany. **8.** **sint, differant**: subj. of characteristic.

XXVI. **10.** **Est**: N. to p. 49, 31. **bos,** etc.: Caesar seems to refer to the reindeer. He had evidently never seen the animal that he is trying to describe. **media**: A. 193; G. 287 R.; H. 440, 2 N.1. **11.** **unum cornu**: it has been suggested that Caesar may have fallen into the error of attributing but one horn to the reindeer from having seen a profile sketch of the animal, in which the two horns would appear as one. **12.** **sicut**: 'as it were.' **palmae**: i. e., of the hand when the fingers are extended. **14.** **natura**: 'natural characteristics.' In point of fact the horns of the female reindeer are shorter than those of the male.

XXVII. **15.** **alces**: the word is of Germanic origin, and connected in derivation with our word "elk." **16.** **capris**: =*figurae* (dat.) *caprarum.* **varietas**: 'mottled appearance.' **17.** **antecedunt**: 'fall below (the reindeer).' **crura sine nodis,** etc.: it is difficult to account for so absurd an error as this in a writer so careful and averse to the marvellous as Caesar. The belief was long current that the legs of the elephant also are without joints. **20.** **ad . . . applicant**: 'they lean up against these.' **23.** **omnes**: acc. A. 344 *e*; G. 675, 1, 3; H.

561 III. **ab**: 'at' (lit. 'starting from'). **24. subruunt**: 'undermine.' **ut . . . relinquatur**: 'that the upper parts have (only) the appearance of standing (firmly).' **25. consuetudine**: 'in accordance with their habit'; kind of abl.? This wonderful story may have originated in a distorted account of a kind of pitfall, made by covering a deep hole with timber so weakened by notches that a heavy animal passing above would break through.

XXVIII. 29. specie . . . tauri: See IDIOMS, p. 390. The kind of bison here described has become extinct; but the skeletons of several have been found. Peskett remarks that "There is little doubt that the Wild Bull and Unicorn of the Authorized Version of the Bible refer to the same animal." **32. captos interficiunt**: 'catch and kill.' A. 292 R.; G. 667 R.1; H. 549, 5. **se durant**: 'harden themselves.' **34. qui,** etc.: just so the hunting of the wild boar was formerly in great repute. **35. quae**: = *ut eae.* **36. parvuli excepti**: 'caught when very young.'

Page 162. 1. ab labris: 'at the brim,' i.e., the rim about the large end of the horn. Drinking horns of a somewhat similar pattern were in use in the Middle Ages. **2. utuntur**: sc. *his* or *eis.* The early Germans were hard drinkers. They had both beer and wine.

iii. CHASTISEMENT OF THE EBURONES. XXIX–XLIV. B.C. 53.

XXIX. 3. Caesar, etc.: the narrative, broken off at Chap. 10, is here resumed. **5. supra**: Chap. 22; cf. Book IV., Chap. 1. **demonstravimus**: N. to p. 77, 2. **6. student**: N. to p. 159, 10. **8. auxilia**: forces that the Germans would send to help the rebellious Gauls. Cf. p. 154, 13–19. **10. in extremo ponte**: 'on the end of the bridge' in the stream; the garrison (*praesidium*) was probably stationed on the west bank, at the other end of the bridge. **14. frumenta**: N. to p. 54, 35. It was now the latter part of July, or early in August. **15. Arduennam**: see N. to p. 124, 22. **17. milibus**: sc. *passuum.* The distance is doubtless greatly exaggerated. **19. si**: 'to see whether.' A. 334 *f*; G. 462, 2; H. 529 II. 1 N.1. **celeritate**: cf. pp. 9, 10. **22. subsequi**: cf. N. to p. 90, 34, *facere.*

XXX. 26. quo in loco: = *ad eum locum, in quo.* **27. Multum — potest**: 'has great influence;' cf. N. to p. 49, 2, *plurimum.* **29. incideret**: sc. *Basilus;* cf. IDIOMS, under *incidit.* **prius, quam**: rule for mood after *priusquam?* **31. magnae fuit fortunae**: see IDIOMS, p. 390. The clause corresponds to *sicut . . . casu* above; the power of fortune was manifested both by the way that Ambiorix fell into danger, and by the way he got out of it. **34. domicilia Gallorum**: N. to p. 129, 4.

Page 163. **XXXI.** **6. iudicio**: ablative of cause, 'purposely, *designedly*. A. 211 *a*; G. 460; H. 529, 3, 2). **7. tempore exclusus**: 'shut off, prevented (from gathering his forces) by (the shortness of) time.' **8. cum**: 'since'; why with subj.? **11. continentes**: 'continuous.' **12. insulis**: low tracts of land that became islands when the tide ran in. **16. cum**: causal or concessive? **17. omnibus . . . Ambiorigem**: 'calling down on Ambiorix all manner of curses.' More likely (as Long suggests) he cursed Caesar. **18. qui**: 'since he.' A. 320 *e*; G. 636; H. 517. **taxo**: the juice of yew-leaves is said to be poisonous; the ancients considered the berries also poisonous.

XXXII. **20. Segni, Condrusi**: see map. The name of the former survives in the town of Sègne, that of the latter in the district of Condroz. **24. unam**: 'one and the same.' **27. si . . . violaturum**: in dir. disc., *si ita feceritis, . . . non violabo*. A. 337; G. 659; H. 527 I. **32. probarat**: explain the contraction. **33. munitiones**: the fortifications of the camp abandoned by Cotta and Sabinus. See Book v., Chap. 26–37. **34. sublevaret**: sc. *Caesar*. The soldiers could occupy the old camp and be spared the labor of fortifying. **35. tribus**: N. to p. 150, 12.

Page 164. **XXXIII.** **5. tribus**: as one legion was left at Aduatuca (Tongres) under Cicero, and Labienus, Trebonius, and Caesar had each three, the ten legions were all disposed of. We must suppose, therefore, that Caesar had now withdrawn the twelve cohorts left to guard the bridge over the Rhine (Chap. 29), or that these were auxiliary troops outside the regular legions. **6. Scaldem**: in point of fact the Schelde does not flow into the Meuse; and its distance from Tongres seems too great to be twice traversed, as Caesar travelled, in seven days. Some think that *Scaldem* is a mistake in the MSS. for *Sabim*. **7. partis**: acc. If Caesar really went to the Schelde, the region referred to lay between Brussels and Antwerp. **8. post diem septimum**: 'on (lit. 'during') the seventh day after.' **9. quam diem**: notice the change of gender from the preceding line, because '(limit of) time' or 'period' rather than 'day' is meant. A. 73; G. 70; H. 123, exception. **in praesidio**: at Aduatuca. **10. frumentum**: see p. 28. **11. reipublicae commodo**: see IDIOMS, under *commodo*.

XXXIV. **15. Erat**: N. to p. 49, 31. **supra**: in Chap. 31. **certa**: 'definite,' i. e., among the Gauls. **16. defenderet**: 'was able to defend'; subj. of characteristic. **17. omnis**: acc. with *partis*. **18. abdita**: 'secluded.' **19. vicinitatibus**: abstract for concrete; 'neighbors.' **21. in . . tuenda**: 'in protecting the army as a

whole.' **23. quae . . . res**: 'a circumstance which, nevertheless, in a degree.' **25. confertos**: i. e., in masses, in divisions, for mutual protection. **27. sceleratorum**: referring to the Eburones, for whom on account of their destroying the fifteen cohorts under Cotta and Sabinus Caesar felt the most bitter hatred; cf. N. to p. 139, 31. Their *wickedness* in Caesar's eyes lay in the fact that they had fought bravely for their freedom, and had inflicted a most telling blow upon him. **32. Ut . . . difficultatibus**: 'Considering the nature of the difficulties.' **diligentia**: abl. **33. ut, etc.**: that he might rather do less damage to the foe than cause any hurt to his soldiers. Caesar let loose upon the Eburones their savage neighbors, just as the French and English used to get the help of Indian tribes in the early wars in this country.

Page 165. XXXV. 4. diem: cf. N. to p. 164, 8, and A. 200 *a*; G. 617; H. 445, 8. **5. legionem**: 'the XIVth, under Cicero, with the military stores at Aduatuca (Tongres). **6. fortuna, etc.**: cf. p. 163, 5. **8. afferret**: why subj.? **12. supra docuimus**: in Book IV., Chap. 16. **14. pons, praesidium**: see Chap. 9 and 29, and N. to p. 113, 9 **16. ex fuga**: 'in flight.' **numero**: what other case is sometimes found after *potior?* **18. latrociniis natos**: see p. 160, 6, and N. **22. tenuem**: 'trifling.' **23. fortunatissimis**: in pred. after *esse*, attracted from the acc. to agree with *quibus; fortunatissimos* would have been more regular. **25. praesidii tantum**: 'so small a garrison.' **ut . . . possit**: 'that not even the rampart in its entire extent can be manned.' **26. neque quisquam**: = *et nemo*. **27. quam praedam**: trans. as if *eam praedam, quam*. **28. duce**: 'as guide'; why abl.?

XXXVI. 30. Cicero: the year before (autumn of B. C. 54) Cicero had bravely withstood a most violent attack on his camp among the Nervii; see Book V. Chap. 38–52. **qui**: 'although he'; concessive, hence followed by the subj. H. 515 III. **praeceptis**: 'according to the instructions.' **34. progressum**: sc. *eum esse*. **36. illius**: Cicero.

Page 166. 2. quo . . . posset: 'by which hurt could be received in (a march of only) three miles.' **6. unus**: 'only a.' **legionibus**: the nine legions off on expeditions. **7. hoc spatio, etc.**: they had recovered in the few days that Caesar had been gone. **8. sub vexillo**: being of different legions and maniples, they went off by themselves under a flag, instead of with a regular standard; cf. p. 25. **10. facta potestate**: 'having obtained permission.'

XXXVII. 11. Hoc . . . casu: 'Just at this critical moment.' **12. eodem illo cursu**: 'with that same gallop.' **ab**: 'on the side of.' **14. obiectis silvis**: causal abl. abs. **appropinquarent**: A. 327; G. 579; H. 520 II. **15. tenderent**: 'had their tents.' A. 342; G. 631;

H. 529 II. The tents of the traders were in this case just outside the rear gate; cf. p. 32. **recipiendi sui**: cf. N. to p. 95, 14. **18. Circumfunduntur**: 'pour around,' 'swarm around.' A. 111 *b* N.1; G. 209; H. 465. **ex reliquis partibus**: 'on the other sides.' **si**: 'to see whether.' A. 334 *f*; G. 462, 2; H. 529 II. 1 N. 1. **20. locus**: the camp was probably situated on a hill. **Totis . . . castris**: see IDIOMS, p. 389. **22. signa ferantur**: 'an advance should be made.' **quam . . . conveniat**: 'where the men should fall in.' **25. ex . . . fingunt**: 'draw superstitions from the locality.' **26. calamitatem**: described in Book V., Chap. 26–37. **occiderint**: subj. because Caesar is giving the thought of the soldiers. **28. barbaris**: trans. as if *barbarorum*. A. 235 *a*; G. 345 R.2; H. 384 II. 4 N.2.

XXXVIII. 32. primum pilum duxerat: Baculus had been first centurion, *primipilus*; see p. 22. **ad Caesarem**: 'under Caesar,' i. e., in Caesar's army. **33. superioribus proeliis**: 'in (the narration of) previous battles,' viz., that with the Nervii (see p. 88, 1, and N.), and that in the Alps (see p. 95, 3–8). **38. in statione**: 'on guard.'

Page 167. 1. Relinquit animus Sextium: 'Sextius faints.' **2. per manus tractus**: see IDIOMS, under *per*.

XXXIX. 6. exaudiunt: force of *ex-*? 'from (a distance),' 'from (afar).' **7. Hic nulla munitio**: the foragers were three miles from camp. **8. recipiat**: force of the subj.? **modo conscripti**: the XIVth legion had been lately enrolled. See p. 163, 34–38, and N. to p. 150, 12. **10. exspectant**: 'they wait (to see) what order will be given.' **11. quin**: = *qui non*, 'as not to be upset.'

XL. 17. in . . . manipulos: the drivers try to force their way in among the soldiers of the companies. **18. Alii — censent**: 'some (of the soldiers) give it as their opinion.' **19. quoniam — sint**: 'since (they say) the camp is'; reason for subj.? **20. at**: 'at least.' **21. alii**: sc. *censent*. **23. docuimus**: see p. 166, 8, and N. **inter se cohortati**: N. to p. 153, 9. **30. eam**: i. e., *vim et celeritatem*. **34. virtutis causa**: 'on account of bravery.' Caesar had promoted into the new XIVth legion some centurions of lower rank from the other legions, both as a reward of merit and as an example of courage to the recruits. **38. pars**: two cohorts (over 700 men) perished.

Page 168. XLI. 6. fidem non faceret: 'he could not convince (Cicero and the soldiers).' **8. alienata mente**: abl. abs., 'bereft of reason.' **9. neque . . . contenderent**: 'and they were maintaining that, had the Roman army been unharmed, the Germans would not have attacked the camp.' **incolumi exercitu**: abl. abs.; A. 310; G. 594, 2; H. 507 III. 3 N.7.

XLII. **12. eventus**: acc. pl., 'issues,' 'chances.' **unum**: '(only) one thing,' after *questus* **13. essent emissae**: when is *quod* causal used with the subj.? **14. casu**: dat., for *casui*, '(saying) that . . . for not even the least chance.' **multum — potuisse**: cf. p. 162, 27 and N. **15. iudicavit**: 'concluded.' **16. amplius**: sc. *fortunam potuisse*. Caesar has much to say about "fortune" in times of reverses. **18. admirandum**: sc. *hoc* (= *haec res*).

XLIII. **23. numero**, etc.: cf. N. to p. 164, 33. **25. praeda**: cattle, and perhaps other animals, as shown by *agebatur*, and p. 165, 15–17. **frumenta**: force of the pl.? **27. anni tempore**: autumn; the autumn rains had begun. **28. in praesentia**: 'for a time.' **29. deducto exercitu**: 'after the army should have been led away.' **inopia**, etc.: see IDIOMS, p. 389. **30. in eum locum**: 'to such a pass.' **in . . . diviso**: 'sent apart in all directions.' **ut**, etc.: 'that those captured were looking about for Ambiorix, just seen by them in flight, and were maintaining, etc.' **35. paene . . . vincerent**: 'in their eagerness (of pursuit) were almost surpassing their natural powers.'

Page 169. **XLIV.** **6. duarum cohortium**: cf. p. 167, 38, and N. **10. more . . . sumpsit**: see IDIOMS under *more*. The ancient Roman custom referred to was that of putting traitors to death. **11. aqua . . . interdixisset**: see IDIOMS under *interdicere*. This was the usual Roman formula of exile, by which every one within certain limits was forbidden to furnish the outcast with fire and water, these representing the necessaries of life. **15. ad conventus agendos**: see N. to p. 76, 12.

BOOK VII.

I. Outbreak of the Rebellion. Vercingetorix. I–V. B.C. 52.

Page 170. Chapter I. 1. Quieta Gallia: it was the "calm before the storm," as events were soon to show. **Italiam**: see N. to p. 51, 31. **2. conventus**: N. to p. 76, 12. **Clodii**: murdered in an encounter with his personal enemy, T. Annius Milo, in Jan. B.C. 52. Riots immediately ensued at Rome of so serious a nature that the Senate ordered out all men throughout Italy capable of bearing arms. **3. iuniores**: men of age for military service, i. e., between the ages of 17 and 46. **4. coniurarent**: = *una iurarent.* In times of danger, when the levies were made in haste, the soldiers did not take the military oath one by one, but in a body, responding to the general. **provincia**: probably only Cisalpine Gaul is referred to. **instituit**: = *coepit.* **6. quod**: = *id quod*, explained by *retineri . . . posse.* **res**: 'the condition of affairs.' **7. urbano motu**: 'the disturbances in the city,' i. e., at Rome. **neque**: = *et non.* **8. qui**: 'since they.' A. 320 *e*; G. 636; H. 517. **12. Acconis**: leader of the rebellion of the previous year, and put to death by Caesar. See Book VI., Chap. 44. **14. omnibus**: 'by every sort of.' **15. Galliam . . . vindicent**: 'assert the freedom of Gaul.' **16. rationem esse habendam**: 'that they must see to it.' **19. legiones**: 6 legions were at Agedincum, 2 among the Lingones, 2 on the borders of the Treveri,—10 in all; see Book VI., Chap. 44. **21. praestare**: impers. Give rules for changing dir. to indir. disc.

II. 25. principes: = *primos*, 'that they will be the first of all to,' etc. **27. obsidibus cavere**: cf. p. 150, 22, and N. **ne res efferatur**: 'from fear that (report of) the compact may get abroad.' **28. iureiurando ac fide**: 'by oath and pledge of honor.' **sanciatur**: the subject is *ne . . . deserantur.* **militaribus signis**: the Gauls went armed to war-councils; see Book V., Chap. 56. **29. gravissima**: 'most solemn.'

Page 171. **2. eius rei**: the beginning of the war. **3. disceditur**: cf. IDIOMS, *Passives used Impersonally*.

III. **4. dies**: referring to *tempore eius rei* above; fem. because meaning *not* 'day,' but 'period,' 'limit.' A. 73; G. 70; H. 123. **6. negotiandi**: the Romans in Gallic cities were chiefly engaged in farming revenues (N. to p. 56, 1), and buying grain, slaves, and the like. **11. clamore, etc.**: cf. N. to p. 146, 16. On this occasion probably men were posted all along the route, ready to receive and at once transmit the news. **13. gesta essent**: concessive, 'although these things had been done.' **14. ante . . . vigiliam**: before 9 P. M. **15. quod spatium**: = 'a distance, which.' **milium**: pred. gen.

IV. **17. Galliae**: probably the land of the Galli, the central division of Gaul, is meant. See p. 38, and N. to p. 62, 10 and 12. **19. clientibus**: Gallic noblemen frequently controlled several thousand 'retainers'; cf. N. to p. 157, 18. **25. adit**: 'has access to.' **30. Senones**: for this and the following peoples, see Vocab. and map. **33. imperium**: 'the military authority,' = the position of commander-in-chief. **35. armorum quantum**: 'how many arms.' **36. quodque**: = *et quod;* 'and up to (lit. 'before') what time.' **38. dubitantes**: used as noun, 'the hesitating.'

Page 172. **1. tormentis necat**: N. to p. 157, 30. **2. leviore de causa**: = *si qui levius peccaverunt.*

V. **5. Lucterium**: in this name Voss thinks that he finds the origin of the name *Luther*. **8. fide**: 'protection,' 'clientship.' As the Aedui were friendly to the Romans, their dependents were at least nominally so. **15. quibus . . . cognoverint**: 'whose plan, they had learned, was this.' **17. ipsi**: the Bituriges, who might close in on the force of the Aedui from the north, while the Arverni might hem them in from the south. See map. **-ne**: here = *utrum.* **19. nihil constat**: 'not at all clear.' A. 240 *a*; G. 331 R.3; H. 378, 2. **nobis**: N. to p. 77, 2, *demonstravimus.* **20. iunguntur**: 'unite themselves.' A. 111 *b* N.1; G. 209; H. 465.

ii. CAESAR'S RETURN TO GAUL; FIRST MILITARY OPERATIONS. VI–XV.

VI. **21. Italiam**: why not abl.? **Caesari**: at Ravenna, in Cisalpine Gaul. **22. urbanas res**: 'matters in the city'; cf. N. to p. 170, 2, *Clodii.* **virtute**: 'energetic action.' Pompey was made sole consul for a time, with great authority. **Pompei**: for *Pompeii;* see N. to *Iuli,*

p. 215. **26. provinciam**: i. e., 'the Province'; cf. p. 38, and N. to p. 170, 19, *legiones*. **27. iis**: i. e., *Gallis*.

VII. 31. Nitiobroges: for this and the other peoples mentioned in this chapter, see Vocab. and map. **33. versus**: part. of *vertor*. **34. antevertendum** [esse]: the subject is *ut . . . proficisceretur*; 'that getting to Narbo ought to take precedence of every (other) design.'

Page 173. 4. supplementum: the troops lately levied in Cisalpine Gaul (p. 170, 4); they did not form a regular legion.

VIII. 7. intra praesidia: within the line of garrisons by which Caesar had secured the western and northern parts of the Province. **putabat**: sc. *Lucterius*. **8. proficiscitur**: sc. *Caesar*. **9. tempore**: 'season'; it was now the latter part of February (B. C. 52). **10. discussa**: 'cleared away.' **13. ne, etc.**: 'not even to a single person,' to say nothing of an army. **17. nuntiis**: 'by messengers'; more definite than **fama,** 'by report.'

IX. 23. haec de: 'these (movements) on the part of.' **24. usu ventura** [esse]: 'would take place' (lit. 'would come in experience'). **opinione praeceperat**: 'had conjectured.' **per causam**: used of a fictitious or assumed reason = 'through pretended anxiety' about the new force, etc. In reality Caesar had no intention of going back to the Province to look after his recruits stationed there, but pushed on to Agedincum and joined his legions before even his own men suspected that that was his destination. Great caution was necessary to keep information of his proposed movements from the Gauls. **25. Brutum**: see N. to p. 97, 37. **30 nanctus, etc.**: 'finding his cavalry refreshed.' **33. quid de sua salute consilii**: 'any plan involving his personal safety.' **35. prius, quam**: why followed by subj.? **38. Gorgobinam**: see Vocab., and p. 61, 6–9, and N.

Page 174. X. 5. ne, etc.: if Caesar failed to protect the Gauls pledged to his interests he would soon find them enemies. **6. eo**: 'him,' Caesar. **7. educeret**: sc. *legiones*. **8. duris subvectionibus**: 'by difficulties of transportation.' **10. voluntates**: 'good-will'; pl., because many states and individuals are referred to. **12. qui doceant**: 'to explain'; kind of subj.? **14. Agedinci**: A. 258 *c*; G. 412; H. 425 II.

XI. 16. Altero: = *postero;* trace out Caesar's route on the map. **17. quo**: when used in the sense of *ut?* Caesar's base of operations was now Agedincum. The transportation of supplies to the front as he

kept marching south would be endangered if he left towns behind him in possession of the enemy. Cf. p. 10. **22. quam primum**: see IDIOMS. **iter faceret**: i. e., to Gorgobina, which Vercingetorix was besieging. **24. ductum iri**: 'that it (the siege) would be prolonged'; fut. pass. infin. **praesidium, etc.**: i. e., *praesidium, quod Cenabum mitterent* (subj. of purpose), *eius tuendi causa, comparabant.* **26. pervenit**: sc. *Caesar.* **diei tempore**: i. e., by the lateness of the hour; Caesar reached Cenabum late in the afternoon. **27. posterum**: sc. *diem.* **quaeque . . . imperat**: = *et ea, quae ad eam rem usui sint, exponit et fieri imperat.* **28. sint**: how different in meaning from *sunt* here? **30. profugerent**: sc. *Cenabenses.*

Page 175. 2. praedam: including probably the inhabitants of the town as well as their possessions; cf. p. 11. Caesar thus rewarded his men for the pluck and endurance they had shown during the few weeks preceding.

XII. 6. Ille: Caesar. **in via**: 'on the way' to Gorgobina. **8. ut . . . consuleret**: object of *oratum;* while **ut . . . conficeret** explains the purpose of Caesar's action. **14. Quem**: 'this' (the cavalry). **15. in spem venerunt**: see IDIOMS, under *spem.* **16. murum complere**: 'to man the wall.' **17. in oppido**: = *qui erant in oppido.* **significatione**: 'demeanor,' 'behavior.' **novi aliquid consilii**: 'some new scheme.' **19. omnes incolumes**: acc.

XIII. 21. Germanos equites: N. to p. 110, 33. **22. ab initio**: 'from the beginning' of the Gallic war. When he first employed the German horsemen Caesar does not say. **instituerat**: = *ut facere consuerat.* **29. regione**: dep. on *in* before *finibus.*

XIV. 32. Vellaunoduni, etc.: A. 258 *c*; G. 412; H. 425 II. **34. alia — atque**: 'different from what.' **37. anni tempore**: early spring, probably March.

Page 176. 1. hostes: i. e., the Roman. **aedificiis**: the granaries and barns where grain and fodder were stored. **2. rei familiaris commoda**: 'private interests.' Such an appeal to the feeling of patriotism, in the face of invaders, rarely fails to bring response. **3. hoc spatio . . . quo**: 'for so great a distance from their (the Romans') track in every direction, as.' **8. -ne — -ne**: = *utrum — an.* **9. quibus amissis**: 'without which.' **11. sint**: subj. also in dir. disc., characteristic. **neu — neu**: = *ne aut — aut.* **12. proposita**: 'handy.' **13. Haec**: refers to what precedes, **illa** to what follows. This policy of avoiding a decisive battle, cutting off the enemy's supplies and

harassing him at every turn, was the very best that, under the circumstances, the Gauls could pursue. The proposal of it reveals in Vercingetorix generalship of a high order. Similar tactics have been successfully employed by many generals, — among others, Fabius Maximus, who wore out Hannibal, and our own Washington. **14. aestimare**: sc. *se*. **16. victis**: i. e., to the Gauls, if conquered.

XV. 18. urbes: A. 247 *c*; G. 311 R.4; H. 417 1 N.2. This voluntary burning of cities, especially at such a season, evinces a truly heroic spirit. **22. amissa**: neut. pl. used as noun. **Deliberatur**: see IDIOMS, p. 389. **24. Procumbunt**: the *falling* is emphasized by the position of the word. **Gallis**: 235 *a*; G. 343 R.2; H. 384 II. 4 N.2. **pulcherrimam**: Avaricum occupied a beautiful site, and had many fine open squares; its population was not far from 40,000. **28. flumine, etc.**: see Plan X (facing p. 178). **et**: omit in trans. **30. ipsorum**: the delegates of the Bituriges. **31. vulgi**: 'of the general body' of delegates from the other states. The exemption of Avaricum from the general destruction of cities was the first great mistake of the Gauls in this campaign, the outcome of which was to be so disastrous for them.

iii. THE SIEGE AND SACKING OF AVARICUM. XVI–XXVIII.

XVI. 32. minoribus: 'shorter,' 'easy.' **33. locum castris**: see Plan X., 2.

Page 177. 1. in . . . tempora: i. e., hourly. **3. dispersos . . . adoriebatur**: cf. N. to p 176, 13. The Britons had tried the same tactics in the year 54; see Book IV., Chap. 30, 32. **5. etsi, etc.**: 'although, so far as provision could be made by calculating in advance, our men met the emergency by going out at uncertain times and in different directions.'

XVII. 9. supra: p. 176, 27–29, and Plan X. **10. aggerem, vineas, turres**: see pp. 34–36 and Plate VI. **13. alteri**: the Aedui. **nullo studio**: 'without enthusiasm.' The Aedui had doubtless found the Roman yoke galling, and would gladly have thrown it off if they had dared. Once before they had given Caesar serious trouble by not bringing promised supplies; see Book I., Chap. 16. **15. quod**: as antecedent supply *frumentum* with *consumpserunt*. **16. affecto exercitu**: concessive, 'although the army was involved'; modified by the abl. of cause *tenuitate*, *indiligentia*, *incendiis*. **18. frumento**: cf. p. 28. **19.** Notice the change of tense from **caruerint**, stating a historical fact, to **sustentarent** ('were bearing up against'), giving the resulting condition and implying that the hunger continued so long as the grain was

scarce. **20. nulla . . . indigna**: the dignity of expression well-suits the noble courage exhibited. **22. in opere**: engaged 'in the work' of building the *agger*, etc. **25. illo imperante**: 'under him as commander.' **ignominiam acciperent**: 'suffer defeat.' **27. loco**: 'in the light' (of), 'as.' **29. parentarent**: derivation? subj. also in dir. disc. A. 332 *b*; H. 502, 2.

XVIII. 34. Avaricum: A. 234 *e*; G. 356, 4; H. 437, I. **35. expeditis, etc.**: light-armed foot-soldiers fought among the cavalry, after the manner described in Book I., Chap. 48. Vercingetorix had adopted the German tactics, the superiority of which over their own the Gauls had learned to their cost. Cf. N. to p. 110, 33. **38. pervenit**: sc. *Caesar*.

Page 178. XIX. 5. Collis: i. e., on which the Gauls had taken up their position, = *locus editus atque apertus* of l. 3 above; see Plan X. 3. **6. non latior**: concessive, 'although not wider.' **8. generatim**: explained by the more definite *in civitates*. **9. saltus**: places in the bog grown over with bushes and underbrush, through which the Romans might attempt to cross. **sic ut**: 'firmly resolved to.' **11. qui — videret**: 'if one should look at.' **12. aequo Marte**: see Vocab. **14. inani simulatione**: 'with mere parade,' spoken contemptuously. Caesar intimates, rather ungraciously, that the Gauls knew that they were safe from all attack where they were, and that they were simply showing themselves off. **15. conspectum suum**: 'the sight of them,' the Roman soldiers. **18. cum**: causal or concessive? **19. sua**: = *Caesaris*. **iniquitatis**: A. 220; G. 377; H. 409 II. **20. salute**: 'reputation,' rather than 'safety.'

XX. 24. proditionis: A. 220; G. 377; H. 409 II. **25. quod, etc.**: 'because (as they said) he had,' etc. **26. sine imperio**: Vercingetorix had left his army temporarily without placing any one in command. **31. Quod castra movisset**: 'In regard to having moved the camp.' A. 333 *a*; G. 525 R. 2; H. 516 II. 2 N. **33 persuasum**: sc. *eum esse*. **37. is**: the one appointed commander-in-chief temporarily. **cui rei**: i. e., immediate battle with the Romans. Even the Romans at times lost faith in Fabius Maximus as he was slowly breaking the strength of Hannibal.

Page 179. 4. qui: 'since they.' **8. ipsis remittere** [imperium]: 'resign (his generalship) to them, if they thought they were,' etc. **15. si**: 'to see whether.' A. 334 *f*; G. 462, 2; H. 529 II. 1 N. 1. **18. imperatorem**: Caesar.

XXI. 24. armis concrepat: the early Germans also at their war-councils expressed approval by beating with their spears upon their

shields. **26. summum, etc.**: the ingenious ruse of Vercingetorix had turned the fickle Gauls at once; they were now as much in favor of him as a few hours previous they had been against him. **27. maiore ratione**: 'on a more reasonable method.' **29. communem**: i. e., to the Gauls. If the Bituriges single-handed should succeed in resisting Caesar, they would have all the credit of the victory. **30. eos**: Bituriges. **oppidum**: Avaricum.

XXII. 33. summae sollertiae, etc.: versatility is a striking characteristic of the French. **34. quoque**: from *quisque;* here = 'any one.' **35. falces**: = *falces murales*, strong poles, to one end of which was fastened a heavy point for prying, and a hook for pulling stones out of the enemy's wall; whether they were usually worked by hand or by machinery is not known. See Plate V., 5. In this case the Gauls caught hold of the *falces* with nooses, turned them aside, and having gotten a firm grip on them, drew them over inside the walls by means of windlasses (*tormentis*). **37. subtrahebant**: 'drew away' the agger by running mines under it, so that it sank down into the ground. **38. ferrariae**: iron is still mined in the region about Bourges (Avaricum).

Page 180. 2. turribus contabulaverant: = *turribus contabulatis instruxerant*, or *compleverant.* The towers were built of wood, and two or more stories in height above the wall. See Plan X. 4 b. **coriis**: the hides were put on to protect the towers against the firebrands of the besiegers. **3. aggeri ignem**: cf. pp. 35, 36. **5. cotidianus agger expresserat**: 'the daily (addition to the) agger had raised.' On the agger the Romans had wooden towers, which were raised gradually as the height of the agger was increased. See Plan X. 4 a. **6. commissis . . . malis**: 'by building up between the corner-posts of their towers.' When the Gauls erected a tower on the walls they left the upright posts at the corners of full length, projecting above the stories at first built; the height could readily be increased, as circumstances might demand, by laying crosspieces above, between these corner-posts already in position. **7. apertos cuniculos**: '(the construction of) the open galleries' in the agger, through which timber and other material were carried to the front. As the agger was prolonged nearly to the wall, the enemy hurled sharp darts and other things into the ends of these passage-ways to hinder the progress of the work.

XXIII. 11. Trabes, etc.: in connection with this description, study Plate VI., figure 3. In the construction of the Gallic wall, first, beams were laid parallel on the ground at right angles to the direction of the wall and two feet apart. Some distance from the outer ends these beams

were firmly fastened by means of tie-pieces (probably mortised in), running at right angles to them and parallel with the line of the wall. Between the outer ends of the beams large rocks were carefully fitted; the remaining spaces were filled up level with the top of the beams with earth. The first layer (*ordo*) was now done. Above this a second layer was laid in the same way, but so that the ends of the beams of the upper layer rested on the rocks of the lower. In like manner the remaining layers were constructed, rocks and beams alternating, till the wall was raised to the requisite height. The outer surface of the wall presented an appearance something like that of a checker-board. **directae**: 'at right angles' to the line of the proposed wall. **perpetuae in longitudinem**: 'without a break along the (entire) length (of the wall).' **12. revinciuntur**: by the tie-pieces, running the same direction as the wall; see Plate VI., 3. **16. idem illud intervallum**: two feet. **17. singulae, etc.**: 'the different beams are held in position by (corresponding) rocks laid in between.' **19. expleatur**: why not indic.? **in speciem varietatemque**: 'in point of diversified appearance.' **24. perpetuis**: i. e, by a 'continuous' line of tie-pieces, each 40 feet long, and fastened at the ends to the ends of those adjoining it. **25. perrumpi**: 'broken to pieces' by the battering-ram and heavy missiles. **distrahi**: 'wrenched asunder' by the *falces murales*.

XXIV. **26. cum**: 'although.' **29. latum, altum**: the greatness of the dimensions given has led some to doubt whether the figures are correct. **33. cuniculo**: 'by means of a countermine,' prolonged out under the agger. **35. ab utroque latere**: 'on both sides' of the agger, designated by the two towers at the corners of the front. Cf. Plate VI. 2. **38. quo**: = *in quem locum*.

Page 181. **1. vix . . . posset**: 'could hardly be perceived.' **4. reducerent**: 'drew back' the movable towers on the agger. **5. aggerem interscinderent**: they cut the agger in two to prevent the spreading of the flames throughout the entire length of the structure. The agger was constructed largely of timber.

XXV. **8. hostibus**: A. 235 *a*; G. 343 R.2; H. 384 II. 4 N.2. **9. pluteos turrium**: wooden breastworks, probably covered with hides, on the tops of the towers. **10. nec . . . animadvertebant**: = *et animadvertebant, non facile adire*, etc. **apertos**: sc. *milites*, 'exposed' by the destruction of the *plutei*. **11. recentes**: 'fresh.' **13. quod**: '(something) which.' **15. per manus — traditas**: 'passed from hand to hand' till they reached him; it was his work to hurl them into the agger, in order to add to the fury of the flames already burning. **16. e regione turris**: 'in a line with,' i. e., 'directly in front of a

tower,' one of the towers on the agger. **scorpione**: a machine resembling a catapult, used principally for shooting small, pointed darts. Cf. Plate VI. 8. **18. iacentem**: 'as he lay.' **20. nec prius, quam**: Caesar states this with evident admiration of the courage exhibited.

XXVI. 24. consilium ceperunt: see IDIOMS. **25. non magna**: 'with no great.' **29. tardabat**: 'would delay.' **31. proiectae**: 'casting themselves,' 'falling.' **suorum**: i. e., husbands. **35. non, etc.**: 'knows no pity.' **36. Quo timore**: 'from fear of this' giving of information, explained by *ne . . . occuparentur*.

Page 182. XXVII. 1. directis operibus: 'the works (i. e., military engines, a rare meaning of *opus*) having been placed in position.' **7. expeditis**: here a participle. **9. praemia**: cf. pp. 28, 29.

XXVIII. 14. obviam veniretur: 'an advance should be made' by the Romans. **16. circumfundi**: impers. Caesar knew that if he could get possession of the wall on all sides there would be no hurry about securing the spoils. **19. a militibus**: sc. *interfecta est*. **21. Cenabi**: locative. **22. aetate confectis**: 'infirm with old age.' A more horrible slaughter is not recorded in history. **26. multa nocte**: 'late at night.' **27. vulgi**: cf. N. to p. 176, 31. **28. ut, etc.**: 'so that he took care to have his friends and leading men of the states meet (the fugitives) on the road at some distance (from the camp), in order to divide them up and conduct them to those of their own state in the part of the camp that had from the first been assigned to it.' The defenders of Avaricum had been drawn from different states.

iv. OPERATIONS AMONG THE AEDUI, AND BEFORE GERGOVIA. XXIX–LVI.

XXIX. 31. consolatus, etc.: sc. *Vercingetorix*. **32. ne . . . demitterent**: 'not to lose heart altogether.' **34. artificio quodam**: spoken with contempt. **35. si qui**: 'whoever.'

Page 183. 1. Avaricum defendi: see Chap. 15. **2. factum [esse]**: 'it had come about'; the subject is *uti . . . acciperetur*. **8. effectum habere**: trans. as if *effecisse*. A. 292 *c*; G. 230; H. 388, 1 N.

XXX. 13. ipse non . . . fugerat: the implication is that as a rule Gallic leaders who had made a failure gave up at once and went into hiding. **16. re integra**: 'at the outset.' **19. in spem veniebant**: see IDIOMS under *spem*. **21. castra munire**: Vercingetorix wisely

adopted the Roman method of encampment, as he had previously adopted the cavalry tactics of the Germans. Cf. N. to p. 177, 35. **22. insueti laboris**: 'though unused to labor.'

XXXI. 28. capere posset: 'could win over' the Gauls yet remaining out of the league. **posset**: A. 320 *f*; G. 633; H. 503 II. 2. **31. quem, etc.**: '(stating) what number and before what time.' **32. saggitarios**: these were to match Caesar's light-armed troops. **37. conduxerat**: sc. *mercede*, 'had hired.' The Aquitanians, being of different stock from the rest of the Gauls, felt little interest in the general Gallic movement against Caesar.

Page 184. XXXII. 4. cum: concessive. **6. legati**: 'as envoys.' **7. maxime necessario tempore**: 'at a most urgent crisis.' **9. rem**: i. e., the public weal. **magistratus, etc.**: cf. p. 56, 7–8, and N. **12. florentem**: 'influential.' **17. suas . . . clientelas**: 'that each of them had his own backers.' **Quod**: N. to p. 53, 36. **19. positum in**: 'depended on.'

XXXIII. 23. aluisset, ornasset: subj. by attraction. **25. ea . . . confideret**: 'that party which had least confidence' in its power, = 'the weaker party.' **26. quod, etc.**: as the chiefs, according to the laws of the Aedui, could not leave the state to come to Caesar, he must go to them. **28. iure, — legibus**: N. to p. 78, 12. **30. quos inter**: = (*eos*), *inter quos*. **32. alio . . . oportuerit**: 'at a time and place other than was proper.' **33. fratrem**: Cotus. **fratre**: Valetiacus. **renuntiatum**: 'declared elected'; sc. *esse*. **duo . . . prohiberent**: the excellence of this regulation throws light upon the political advancement of the Aedui. **37. intermissis magistratibus**: 'in case of vacancies in the magistracy'; properly the interval between the going out of one magistrate and the inauguration of his successor. As a rule the retiring Vergobret appointed his successor; since Valetiacus had unlawfully chosen his brother to the office, the Druids, by virtue of the right they had to fill the magistracy in case of vacancy, proceeded to nominate and install Convictolitavis, treating the appointment of Cotus as null and void. Possibly Caesar has not told the whole truth in regard to the matter. It seems probable that the division of parties among the Aedui was on the question of loyalty to himself; at any rate, a number of the Aedui soon joined the rebellion against him.

Page 185. XXXIV. 2. controversiarum: A. 219; G. 375; H. 406 II. **omnibus omissis rebus**: 'laying everything (else) aside.' **4. devicta Gallia**: = *cum Gallia devicta esset*. **11. ab altera parte**:

Vercingetorix was on the west side of the Allier (Elaver). Caesar, leaving Decize (Decetia) marched along the east bank in the direction of Gergovia, which he could not reach without crossing the stream. See map.

XXXV. **13. uterque . . . conspectu**: 'each army was in sight of the other.' **14. e regione**: 'directly opposite' each other. **dispositis**: by Vercingetorix. **18. vado**: "the Allier is now everywhere fordable in summer," says Moberly, "but this is from drainage and the natural rise of the river bed." **23. constare**: 'to be full.' From the six legions with him Caesar first chose out 20 cohorts (= 2 legions); then arranged the remaining 40 cohorts so that on the march they presented the appearance of 6 full legions, and sent them on in the direction he had been following. **25. perventum** [esse]: i. e., that the legions had gone about the usual distance of a day's march, and had halted, to encamp. Vercingetorix, following along on the other side of the river, would naturally encamp too, thus leaving the coast clear for Caesar and the two legions that had stayed back to build the bridge. Thus Caesar's ruse succeeded perfectly. Vercingetorix had not yet learned to keep scouts in the rear. **26. pars inferior**: the piles had not been destroyed below the water line.

XXXVI. **31. eo loco**: the place where Caesar had encamped, after crossing the Allier. **quintis castris**: 'in five marches,' = 'on the fifth day,' a camp being taken as a measure of time, because at the close of every day's march a camp was fortified; see pp. 31, 32. Vercingetorix was already at Gergovia when Caesar came. **33. situ**: Gergovia lay on a high plateau, accessible only from the south and southeast, and by a narrow projection on the western slope of the Risolle Heights. See map, and Plan XI. (facing p. 190).

Page 186. **1. expedisset**: 'had arranged for.' **2. castris . . . positis**: on a terrace of rock south of the town and at the top only a few feet below the level of the plateau; marked GALLIC ENCAMPMENT on the Plan. Vercingetorix had thus an extremely favorable position. **4. iugi**: 'ridge,' 'terrace,' the minor elevations of which are referred to in *collibus*. **qua despici poterat**: 'wherever a view could be obtained.' **5. horribilem**: i. e., on account of the number and impregnable position of the Gallic troops. **10. quid**: = *quantum*. **suorum**: dep. on *quŏque*. **11. e regione oppidi**: 'directly opposite the town' on the south. **collis**: a limestone spur of the height on which the town stood, now called *la Roche-Blanche*, 'White Rock'; a village of the same name lies close by. **12. munitus**: i. e., principally by nature. **circumcisus**: 'scarped.' **13. aquae, etc.**: for their water-supply the enemy

relied mainly on the Brook Auzon. **14. hostes**: object of *prohibituri*. **15. non nimis**: 'not very.' **Tamen**: in spite of the fact that this hill was guarded by the enemy. **16. castris**: Caesar nowhere indicates the position of this, his main camp (= *castra maiora*, l. 18); but excavations carried on under the direction of the Emperor Napoleon III. brought to light undoubted traces of it on the height so marked in the Plan, — south of the lake of Sarlièves, which is now drained. **subsidio veniri posset**: 'help could come.' **17. ibi**: on the hill mentioned in l. 11. **18. duodenum**: = *duodenorum*. A. 40 *e*; G. 29 R.3; H. 52, 3. *Each* of the two trenches was 12 feet wide. **19. minora** [castra]: as this contained two legions, in the large camp, there must have been four legions besides the auxiliaries and cavalry. Study Plan XI.

XXXVII. **23. demonstravimus**: in Chap. 32, 33. **26. praemium**: received from the Arverni. **27. imperio**: dat. of purpose. **Unam**: 'the only one.' **28. detineat**: subj. also in dir. disc. A. 320 *b*; G. 633; H. 503 II. 1. **30. sic**, etc.: 'yet only so far as he had been sustained in a perfectly just claim.' **34. veniant**: A. 268; G. 251; H. 486 II **37. ratio perficiendi**: 'a means of carrying out (their plan).'

Page 187. **1. Placuit** [eis]: 'They resolved.' **2. mitterentur**: 'on the point of being sent,' having been raised in response to Caesar's request, mentioned p. 185, 5. **3. fratres**: these were to try and win over to the scheme of revolt the Aeduan contingent already serving under Caesar.

XXXVIII. **5. exercitu**: the 10,000 recruits raised for Caesar. **9. Eporedorix, Viridomarus**: both favorites of Caesar, though afterwards traitors to his cause; Litaviccus was lying. **proditionis**: A. 220; G. 377; H. 409 II. **10. indicta**: not from *indīco;* see Vocab. **13. pronuntiare**: 'from uttering.' What other constructions often found after *prohibeo?* **16. collocuti** [esse]: A. 272 *b*; H. 536, 2. **19. consilii sit res**: 'it were a matter of choice.' A. 312; G. 604; H. 513 II. **21. An**: A. 211 *b*; G. 459; H. 353, 2 N.4. **23 persequamur**: 'let us avenge.' **25. cives Romanos**: these, relying on the protection of the Aedui, were probably conveying to Caesar the supplies mentioned in the next line. **29. permovet**: sc. *totam civitatem*.

XXXIX. **34. traditum**: 'introduced.' **35. nominatim evocati**: 'specially summoned.' **36. illa**: 'that' already spoken of in Chap. 33. **38. summis opibus**: 'with all their might.'

Page 188. **3. quod . . . provideat**: considered a subordinate clause; hence the subj. **6. levi momento**: 'of small account'; abl. of price.

XL. **10**. **ad contrahenda castra**: i. e., to reduce the size of the camp so that it could be defended by the two legions left behind; for Caesar had but six legions at Gergovia, four having been sent with Labienus to the north. (Cf. Chap. 34.) **11**. **posita** [esse] **in**: 'to depend on.' **13**. **Fratres Litavicci**: see p. 187, 3 and N. **15**. **necessario tempore**: 'in the emergency.' **18**. **omnibus**: i. e., Caesar's soldiers. **quemquam**: 'a single person'; more emphatic than *quem*. **19**. **illi**: the soldiers of the Aedui deceived by Litaviccus (cf. Chap. 38). **22**. **mortem deprecari**: 'to plead for life.'

XLI. **27**. **conservatos**: sc. *esse eos*. **28**. **castra movit**: Caesar had encamped after having received the submission of the Aedui. **30**. **quanto . . . fuerit**: 'how critical the condition of affairs has been.' **31**. **castra**: i. e., the camps before Gergovia. **32**. **succederent**: 'were relieving.' **34**. **in vallo**: 'on the rampart'; see p. 31.

Page 189. **1**. **tormenta**: cf. p. 35. **discessu eorum**: 'on the departure of the enemy.' **2**. **obstruere, addere, apparare**: the present tense implies that the messengers left Fabius engaged in the work. **4**. **ante . . . pervenit**: Caesar had learned of the defection stirred up by Litaviccus about midnight (p. 188, 1); he started with his troops immediately, and marched 25 miles (p. 188, 16); after three hours' rest he brought his force back again, reaching Gergovia before sunrise. His men had marched 50 Roman miles in a little over 36 hours.

XLII. **9**. illi, etc.: cf. N. to p. 96, 15. **10**. **pro re comperta**: 'as an assured fact.' **12**. **Adiuvat rem proclinatam**: 'helps to precipitate matters.' **14**. **ad legionem**: probably going to join his legion at Gergovia. Aristius seems to have been accompanied by a detachment of soldiers, and probably the traders put themselves under his protection. **15**. **idem facere**: i. e., to leave Cabillonum at once.

XLIII. **24**. **sui**: N. to p. 95, 14. **gratiā**: see Vocab. **26**. **ea res**: the profit accruing from the booty. **30**. **nihil — gravius iudicare**: 'that he would pass no very severe judgment.' **35**. **exercitum contraheret**: i. e., unite his forces with the four legions under Labienus.

Page 190. **XLIV**. **1**. **Haec**: i. e., how to get away from Gergovia without giving the impression of flight. **cogitanti**: sc. *Caesari*. A. 290 *a*; G. 668; H. 549, 1. **2**. **minora castra**: on la Roche-Blanche; see N. to p. 186, 11. **3**. **collem**: a part of the Risolle Heights, marked (Collis Nudatus) on the Plan. **7**. **Constabat inter omnes**: 'All agreed.' **quod**: = *id, quod*. **9**. **hunc**: sc. *dorsum*, from the masculine form. The northwestern slope of the Risolle Heights is meant, along

which there was a narrow approach to the town grown up with brush. **alteram partem**: the west side; from the standpoint of the main camp. **10. illos**: the Gauls. Now that one hill (la Roche-Blanche, Chap. 36) had been lost, if Caesar should get possession of another he might extend his line of works along the whole south side of the city, thus shutting the Gauls off from their main water supply (see N. to p. 186, 13) and from foraging in the plain. **13. hunc** [dorsum]: N. to l. 9. **14. evocatos**: i. e., from the top and eastern parts of the Risolle Heights, thus leaving the hill deserted on the side facing Caesar's works.

XLV. 15. mittit: towards the point which the Gauls were engaged in fortifying, mentioned l. 9 and l. 13 above. By seeming to concentrate his forces against this position Caesar drew the attention of the enemy altogether from his real design, the seizing of their camp. **18. impedimentorum**: here 'beasts of burden.' **19. stramenta**: 'pack-saddles,' used only for the conveyance of burdens and not adapted for riding. In southern countries frequently these are left on the animals for weeks at a time without being removed. **22. easdem regiones**: the lower ground southwest of the smaller camp, toward Chanonat; as they proceeded in this direction the purpose of the manœuvre would seem to the Gauls to be, to skirt the base of the Risolle Heights on the south and make a dash against the point they were fortifying from the west. **24. neque**: = *et non*. **spatio**: 'distance.' **25. Legionem**: marked DETACHED LEGION on the Plan. **27. illo munitionum**: 'to that point of the fortifications' mentioned in l. 13. A. 216 *a* 4; G. 371 R. 4; H. 397, 4. **28. insignibus**: N. to p. 86, 18. The crests and standards could be seen by the enemy from the plateau of Gergovia, above the embankment thrown up inside the trenches connecting the two camps. **29. raros**: 'in scattered parties.' **34. incommodi**: dep. on *quid*.

Page 191. 1. occasionis . . . proelii: 'that they were attempting a surprise, not a battle.' Caesar's purpose was not to hold the Gallic encampment but simply to raid it, thinking that after a successful dash of this sort he could withdraw from the siege with his credit good. **2. alio ascensu**: i. e., to the plateau of Gergovia, on the east; see Plan.

XLVI. 5. recta regione: 'in a straight line.' **mille ducentos passus**: in this ascent of 1200 paces (a little over an English mile) the troops would have to surmount an elevation of about 600 feet. The plateau of Gergovia lies at least 450 feet above the top of the hill la Roche-Blanche (see Napoleon's Atlas, Plan 22). **6. quicquid huc, etc.**: 'whatever curve there was in addition to this (direct distance of 1200 paces, built in the road) for the purpose of making the slope easy (to ascend).' **7. A medio colle**: = **medio in colle**: cf. IDIOMS.

8. ferebat: 'permitted.' **9. murum**: see Plan, GALLIC WALL. **tardaret**: subj. of purpose. **10. inferiore spatio**: that part of the slope of the hill below and outside of the wall. **11. densissimis**: i. e., standing close to each other. **13. trinis**: A. 95 *b*; G. 95 R. 2; H. 172, 3. **16. superiore . . . nudata**: explained by *ut . . . conquieverat.*

XLVII. 18. id . . . proposuerat: cf. N. to l. 1 above. The opinion is current that Caesar has falsified in regard to his intentions in making this assault. It is thought that he seriously planned by a daring attempt, when the enemy had been drawn off by a feint, to capture the city; but that, having failed in this, he passed the matter over as a mere dash, whose purpose was simply to humble the enemy and encourage his own men. This view does not seem plausible, because of the nature of the instructions given before the battle (see Chap. 45). About these Caesar would hardly have ventured to falsify, for the reason that, when the memoirs were given to the world, those lieutenants placed in command of the legions (p. 190, 31) were still living, and Caesar knew that they might bring any untruth at once to public notice. After the Gallic War several of Caesar's lieutenants became his bitterest enemies. **19. legionis decimae**: cf. N. to p. 68, 33. **20. constituit**: 'planted,' 'brought to a halt.' **21. valles**: a depression in the slope, just west of the village of Merdogne. Caesar with the tenth legion was on the east side of this (see Plan, xth LEGION, 1st POSITION), the other legions on the west side. **23. retinebantur**: expresses attempted action. A. 277 *c*; G. 224; H. 469 II. 1. **29. hostem**: the Romans. **30. vestem**: 'clothing,' abstract sing. used instead of concrete pl. **32. neu**: = *et ne.* **34. demissae**: 'let down' outside the city wall by taking hold of the hands of those remaining on the wall. **36. Avaricensibus**: 'gained at Avaricum,' which Caesar permitted his men to sack with all manner of atrocities. See Chap 28. **37. neque . . . ascenderet**: 'and that he was not going to let any one scale the wall before himself.'

Page 192. XLVIII. 3. ii: sc. *hostes.* **alteram partem**: N. to p. 190, 9. **4. munitionis**: notice the verbal force, 'of fortifying.' **7. sub muro**: 'at the base of the wall' on the outside. **11. liberos . . . proferre**: the women of the ancient Germans frequently in battle placed themselves and their children in sight of their husbands and fathers, in order to inspire greater courage. **14. non facile — sustinebant**: 'could not easily hold out against.'

XLIX. 18. sub infimo colle: 'at the base of the hill' on which the small camp stood. See Plan, SEXTIUS, 1st POSITION. **21. progressus**: trans. as if *regressus.* See Plan, xth LEGION, 2nd POSITION.

L. **23.** **loco, numero, virtute**: A. 254 *b*; G. 345 R. 1 end; H. 425 II. 1 1) N. **24.** **Aedui**: they had been directed to scale the height of Gergovia from the east (p. 191, 3 and N.), and were hence north of the retreating legions. See Plan. **26.** **manus distinendae causa**: 'to separate the enemy's forces.' **28.** **insigne pacatorum**: 'an indication of those at peace,' = 'indicating friends.' As the dress and armor of the Aedui were Gallic, the mistake of the panic-stricken soldiers in supposing them enemies was a natural one. **32.** **eiusdem legionis**: the VIIIth (p. 191, 35).

Page 193. **6.** **suis saluti fuit**: 'he saved his men' by taking up the attention of the enemy till they could make good their escape.

LI. **8.** **deiecti sunt loco**: 'were forced down from their position.' **9.** **aequiore loco**: see Plan, Xth LEGION, 3rd POSITION. **12.** **locum superiorem**: see Plan, SEXTIUS, 2nd POSITION. **Legiones**: driven by the Gauls down the entire ascent leading to the town; once on level ground, however, and supported by the Xth and XIIIth legions, they turned and drove back their pursuers. **15.** **septingenti**: A. 247 *c*; G. 311 R. 4; H. 417, 1 N. 2. **desiderati**: 'missing.'

LII. **17.** **cupiditatem**: 'eager desire' for victory, not for booty. **sibi**: 'for themselves.' **20.** **quid . . . posset**: 'what the effect of a disadvantageous position is.' **posset**: trans. as if pres. A. 287 *a*; H. 495 I. **22.** **exploratam victoriam**: Caesar was not so sure about the victory at the time; cf. Chap. 19, and N. to p. 178, 14. **24.** **Quanto opere — tanto opere**: see Vocab. under *Quantō*.

LIII. **32.** **ad extremam orationem**: 'at the close of his address.' **35.** **ante**: cf. p. 189, 35–36. **36.** **idoneo loco**: Caesar wished to entice the Gauls into a general engagement, where they would be at a great disadvantage. Vercingetorix, however, was wise enough to avoid a regular battle.

Page 194. **1.** **satis . . . factum**: these words hardly conceal the fact that the siege of Gergovia was a complete failure, and in several respects a serious reverse. **5.** **eo**: i. e., *flumine*.

LIV. **6.** **Ibi**: on the east side of the Elaver (Allier), in the territory of the Aedui. **8** **opus esse**: see IDIOMS. Viridomarus and Eporedorix were going to turn traitor to Caesar, and wished for an excuse to get away from him. **10.** **perspectam habebat**: trans. as if *perspexerat*. A. 292 *c*; G. 230; H. 388, 1 N. **13.** **his**: Viridomarus and Eporedorix. **14.** **quam humiles**: cf. Book VI., Chap. 12, and Book I., Chap. 31. **18.** **omnium temporum**: 'of all (previous) periods.'

20. mandatis: 'instructions,' points which Caesar gave Viridomarus and Eporedorix to understand they were to use with their fellow-countrymen.

LV. 21. Noviodunum: now *Nevers;* this town Caesar had taken as his permanent base of supplies. **23. pecuniam publicam**: i. e., the military chest. **28. Bibracti**: locative. **33. negotiandi causa**: N. to p. 171, 6. **35. obsides civitatum**: held by Caesar as pledges of loyalty. The capture of these by the Aedui had much to do with hastening the spread of the rebellion. See p. 198, 15.

Page 195. 1. frumenti quod: 'whatever grain.' **6. si**: '(to see) whether.' A. 334 *f*; G. 462, 2; H. 529, I N. I. **8. ex nivibus**: i. e., the melting of the snow on the mountains. It was now harvest-time, probably early in July; cf. l. 24, *frumentum in agris.*

LVI. 11. si . . . periclitandum: haste was necessary in order to get over the Liger before the enemy should have gathered any greater forces to prevent his crossing. Retreating to the Province was out of the question; he must push to the north, and effect a junction with Labienus at all hazards. **17. Labieno**: dat. of advantage. **20. vado**: probably at Bourbon, near Decize, where there has always been a ford. **pro . . . opportuno**: 'good enough considering the emergency,' though under ordinary circumstances dangerous and impracticable. **22. disposito equitatu**: by stationing the cavalry in a compact line across the stream, the force of the current was broken, so that the infantry could keep their footing in the deep water while marching over. **26. instituit**: = *coepit.* Caesar's objective point was Agedincum.

V. EXPEDITION OF LABIENUS AGAINST THE PARISII. LVII–LXII.

LVII. 28. supplemento: N. to p. 173, 4. **Agedinci**: A. 258 *c*; G. 412; H. 425 II. **30. Lutetiam**: cf. N. to p. 151, 10. **33. Summa imperii**: see IDIOMS.

Page 196. 1. perpetuam paludem: this 'continuous marsh' probably lay along the little stream Esonne, extending back from its junction with the Seine. On the north side of it the Gauls were securely posted. See Plan XII.

LVIII. 4. vineas agere, etc.: Labienus proposed, under cover of *vineae*, to build a causeway over the marsh in the face of the enemy, throwing in fascines and earth as if filling up the moat of a besieged city. **5. iter munire**: 'to construct a road.' **id difficilius confieri**: the implication is that the difficulty arose less from the attacks of the enemy

than from the yielding nature of the marsh. **7. eodem . . . pervenit**: Labienus had come from Agedincum along the left bank of the Seine as far as the Esonne. Not being able to cross this, he marched back the way he came as far as Melun, there passed over to the east side of the Seine, and followed the course of the river down to Paris unhindered. See Plan. **10. eo**: 'thereon.' **13. ponte**: across the Seine at Melun. **14. secundo flumine**: see IDIOMS. **17. e regione Lutetiae**: 'directly opposite Paris.' For the positions of the camps of Labienus and the Gauls, see Plan XII.

LIX. 19. audiebatur: 'men were hearing,' 'the report was being circulated.' **21. itinere et Ligeri**: 'from marching, and from (crossing) the Loire.' **26. rerum**: 'circumstances.' **aliud — atque**: 'different from what.' **27. ut**: introducing a subj. of purpose. Labienus had now to plan not merely about inflicting damage upon the enemy, but even about making sure his retreat and getting back in safety to Agedincum. **29. altera ex parte**: on the north; see Plan. **opinionem**: 'reputation.' **33. flumen**: the Seine; Labienus was now on the east side, while Agedincum lay to the southwest of the river. **34. virtute**: 'determination.'

LX. 38. singulas equitibus Romanis: 'each to a Roman knight.' These knights were "unattached officers waiting till they were appointed to a legion."

Page 197. 2. ibi: four miles below Paris, near the site of the village of Point-du-Jour. **5. adverso flumine**: see IDIOMS. The skill shown in this stratagem reveals in Labienus the true general. **9. eum locum**: N. to *ibi* above.

LXI. 14. transmittitur: across the Seine, not far below the Gallic camp. **16. tumultuari**: pass. used impers. **19. tribus locis**: the Gauls heard the uproar in the Roman camp, thought that a large detachment was going up the river, and were informed by scouts of the approach of Labienus from below. Accordingly they separated their forces into three divisions, one of which went up-stream, another mounted guard on the bank of the Seine opposite the Roman camp, and a third went to meet Labienus. Thus the ruse of Labienus was successful in scattering the forces of the enemy, though not in taking them on the rear by surprise as he had perhaps intended. **22. e regione castrorum**: on the bank of the Seine, 'in a line with (the Gallic) camp.' **23. progrediatur** for *progrederetur*, as if following a historical pres.; 'which was to advance (only) so far.' **24. naves**: the *lintres* of l. 7 above, which were being rowed up-stream with great tumult.

LXII. **26. nostri**: Labienus with three legions and the cavalry; five cohorts had remained at the camp, and the remaining five of the same legion had gone up-stream. **27. hostium acies**: the division of the enemy that had marched down stream from their camp. The probable scene of the battle is indicated on the Plan by crossed swords. **31. ab dextro cornu**: see IDIOMS. **33. quem locum**: 'the position, which.' **34. cum**: concessive. **35. suspicionem**: 'indication.' **36. quisquam**: emphatic by position. **suis aderat**: i. e., he was not simply present, but took part in the fighting. **38. septimae legionis**: the VIIth legion made a flank movement and turned the enemy's rear.

Page 198. **6. ceperunt**: 'reached' the elevated ground on which Labienus had taken his stand. **neque**: = *et tamen non.* **8. quos**: sc. *ei.* **10. ubi . . . erant**: see p. 174, 17, and N. **11. Caesarem**: Caesar had been marching to the north of the Loire, and met Labienus probably near Joigny, on the Yonne. See map.

vi. SPREAD OF THE REBELLION, AND DEFEAT OF VERCINGETORIX AT THE VINGEANNE. LXIII–LXVIII.

LXIII. **13. quantum — valent**: 'so far as they can.' **15. apud eos**: at Noviodunum; see Chap. 55, and N. to p. 194, 35. **16. dubitantes**: N. to p. 171, 38. **17. communicet**: sc. *secum.* **18. summa imperii**: see IDIOMS. **23. illi**: the former, including both *Remi* and *Lingones.* **27. principatu**: see p. 155, 36–38. **28. requirunt**: 'miss,' 'wish back again.' **neque**: trans. as if *et non.* **30. summae spei**: 'of the greatest promise.' **Eporedorix, Viridomarus**: N. to p. 187, 9, and N. to p. 194, 8.

LXIV. **32. Ipse**: Vercingetorix. **33. huic rei**: i. e., *obsidibus dandis.* **34. Peditatu**: A. 254 *b*; G. 373 R.1; H. 421 III.

Page 199. **1. contentum**: part. of *contineo* used as adj., 'satisfied.' **4. aequo animo**: see IDIOMS. **corrumpant, incendant**: imp. or hortatory subj. in dir. disc. **aedificia**: N. to p. 176, 2. Vercingetorix was consistently carrying out the policy he had proposed at the outset; see Chap. 14, and N. to p. 176, 13. **5. qua iactura**: 'since by this loss.' **8. huc**: = *ad hos.* **9. Allobrogibus**: in the Province. **10. Altera ex parte**: i. e., on the west, reckoning from the territory of the Aedui, which for the time being Vercingetorix made his base of operations. For the different peoples mentioned see Vocab. and map. **14. superiore bello**: the uprising of the Allobroges in B. C. 60, for which they had been terribly punished by the Romans. Vercingetorix hoped that their old hatred of the Romans had not died out.

LXV. **22. intra . . . muros:** i. e., into their fortified towns and behind their walls. **25. interclusis omnibus itineribus:** 'if all the roads should be blocked up' by the enemy's cavalry, 15,000 in number (see p. 198, 33). **26. provincia:** 'the Province,' while by **Italia** probably Cisalpine Gaul is meant; cf. N. to p. 51, 31. **27. eas civitates:** the Ubii were friendly to Caesar; what other German states are referred to it is impossible to determine. **28. superioribus annis:** B. C. 55 and 53; see Book IV. Chap. 16–19, and Book VI. Chap. 9–28. **29. qui . . . consuerat:** after the manner described in Book I., Chap. 48. Vercingetorix had adopted the same tactic (see p. 177, 34-35, and N.). Caesar had had a division of German cavalry before this (cf. p. 175, 21, and N.). **30. minus idoneis:** the German horses, though hardy, were small and scraggy; see Book IV., Chap. 2. **32. evocatis:** the *evocati* were perhaps mounted for service on the staff. Cf. p. 21.

LXVI. **38. trinis castris:** marked **V V V** on Plan XIII. From the place where he was joined by Labienus (Joigny on the Yonne, south-east of Agedincum), Caesar had marched eastward, and was now east of Dijon, near the little river Vingeanne, a tributary of the Saône. Here the engagement described in Chapters 56, 57, took place.

Page 200. **2. Gallia:** Vercingetorix does not consider the Province a part of Gaul. **3. Id:** the retreat of the Romans to the Province. **4. parum profici:** 'that little would be gained' if the Romans were allowed to escape unharmed. **6. impeditos:** sc. *eos* (*Romanos*). **Si pedites, etc.:** Vercingetorix proposed to attack the Romans on the march. If the Roman infantry, thus caught at a disadvantage, should attempt to protect the baggage-train, their retreat would be hindered; if they should leave the baggage to its fate and try to protect themselves, they would be cut off from their supplies. Either alternative, Vercingetorix reckoned, would in the end put complete victory within his grasp. **10. spoliatum iri:** fut. infin. pass. **12. Id:** the manœuvre proposed. **faciant:** sc. *equites*, or *praefecti equitum*, from l. 1. **13. copias:** he would display the infantry before the camp as an inspiration to the cavalry, who were to make the attack. **17. perequitasset:** fut. pf. indic. in dir. disc.

LXVII. **18. iureiurando:** the oath given in lines 15–17 above. It would be interesting to know how many of them kept their vow! **19. duae acies, una** [acies]**:** the three bodies of Gallic cavalry, marked **g g g** on the Plan. **20. a primo agmine:** 'on the van' of the Roman line of march. **21. equitatum tripertito:** see Plan, **e e e**. **22. Pugnatur:** see IDIOMS, p. 389. **23. impedimenta . . . recipiuntur:**

each legion protected its own baggage. **25. signa inferri**: 'that an advance be made.' **27. Germani**: see Plan XIII., **x.**; to them is due the credit of having turned the tide of battle. Cf. N. to p. 110, 33. **29. flumen**: the Vingeanne. **36. Eporedorix**: see Vocab. (1).

Page 201. LXVIII. 6. quantum: 'so far as.' **8. situ**: see l. 12, and N.

vii. THE SIEGE AND FALL OF ALESIA. LXIX–XC.

LXIX. 12. Alesia: the site of Alesia has been determined with absolute certainty. The town was situated on the top of an oval elevation, a part of which is now occupied by the village of Alise Ste. Reine (see Plan XIV.). The base of the height is washed on two sides by small streams, the Ose and the Oserain, which flow near by into the Brenne, a tributary of the Yonne. To the west, along the Brenne, a level plain, shut in by hills on the north and south, extends about three miles. On the remaining sides are ranges of heights similar to that on which the city stood. The highest point of Alesia rose about 500 feet above the beds of the brooks on each side. Excavations carried on under the direction of the Emperor Napoleon III. brought to light abundant traces of Caesar's works, verifying in a remarkable way the statements of the text. **colle summo**: cf. N. to p. 58, 5. **admodum edito loco**: 'having a very elevated position.' **14. flumina**: the brooks Ose and Oserain. **16. in longitudinem**: i. e., to the west. **17. spatio**: the average distance between the height of Alesia and the tops of the surrounding hills is about a mile. **18. fastigio**: here applied to the horizontal top of an elevation, — a rare use of the word. The principal hills about Alise Ste. Reine are Mont Réa and Bussy Heights on the north, Pennevelle Heights on the east, and Flavigny Heights on the south. See Plan. **quae . . . locum**: = *omnem eam partem collis, quae ad orientem solem spectabat, copiae Gallorum compleverant.* **20. fossam maceriamque**: marked **P, S** on the Plan. **21. munitionis**: not a continuous line of works, but a series of fortified encampments, the spaces between which were guarded by frequent redoubts (*castella*). The sites of the encampments and of several of the redoubts were discovered in the course of Napoleon's excavations (indicated on the Plan by angular and circular red lines). **22. tenebat**: 'extended.'

LXX. 29. supra: in line 15 above. **Summa vi**: see IDIOMS. **30. Germanos**: cf. p. 199, 27, and N. **32. Praesidio**: 'support.' **nostris**: = *nostrorum.* A. 235 *a*; G. 343 R.2; H. 384 II. 4 N.2. **34.**

angustioribus portis relictis: 'since the (spaces) left (in the wall for) gates were quite narrow.' **35. munitiones**: i. e., *hostium*.

Page 202. 2. pro vallo: 'as a rampart' for Caesar's cavalry to retreat to in case of any reverse. **4. munitiones**: = *fossam et maceriam* of l. 1; see p. 201, 20 and N. **veniri**: impers. 'that the enemy are coming.' **6. castra**: just east of the city, inside of the Gallic wall and trench. See Plan.

LXXI. 10. perficiantur: A. 327; G. 579; H. 520 I. 2. **consilium capit**: see IDIOMS; the 'plan' is explained by *omnem . . . dimittere*. **14. neu**: = *et ne*. **15. meritum**: participle. **16. Quod**: N. to p. 53, 36. **17. Ratione inita**: 'having made calculation.' **19. parcendo**: "by shortening the rations," we should say. **opus erat intermissum**: 'there was a break in the (Roman) line,' between two redoubts; see N. to p. 201, 21. **20. secunda vigilia**: what time? Cf. p. 33. **Frumentum omne**: i. e., within the city. Vercingetorix puts the inhabitants under martial law. **21. capitis poenam**: see IDIOMS. **22. paruerint**: subj. of characteristic. **24. pro oppido**: on the east side.

LXXII. 28. haec: 'the following' or 'as follows.' G. 290, 6; H. 450, 3. **29. directis lateribus**: 'with perpendicular sides,' so that the ditch was as wide at the bottom (*solum*) as at the top. This trench (marked **f f f** on the Plan) extended across the level plain just west of the town between the two brooks, Ose and Oserain. Its entire course has been discovered by means of excavations. **31. id**: sc. *atque fecit*. **hoc, etc.**: Order, *hoc consilio, ne, quoniam . . . cingeretur, de improviso . . . advolaret*. **32. esset — complexus, cingeretur**: subj. by attraction, expressing the ground of the *ne*- clause. **33. nec**: = *et non*. **totum corpus, etc.**: 'the entire extent of the works could not be completely manned with soldiers.' **corona**: = an encircling, a posting at every point. **36. Hoc spatio**: 400 ft., measured west of the trench **f f f**. **duas fossas**: indicated on the Plan by parallel red lines. **eadem altitudine**: '(both) of the same depth,' 8 to 9 ft., as shown by Napoleon's excavations. **38. aqua, etc.**: deposits of silt and gravel, showing the action of water, have been found about the middle of the inner trench. **Post**: 'Behind;' the outer ditch served as a trench for the rampart; study Plate VI., 1.

Page 203. 1. aggerem: 'earthwork,' the line of earth thrown up on the west side of the outer trench. **vallum**: the 'palisade' erected on this earthwork, like the palisade of a camp (cf. p. 31), and 3 or 4 feet in height.

loricam: a 'breastwork,' made by weaving supple branches closely together, and put on the exposed side of the palisade. **2. pinnas**: 'battlements,' made of framework covered with wickerwork (taking the place of boards), projecting above the palisade at certain intervals, and 6 to 8 feet in height. Behind these the soldiers could find shelter after having hurled their weapons over the palisade. **cervis**: 'stag's-horns,' 'chevaux-de-frise,' tops of young trees, from which the foliage and twigs had perhaps been removed, leaving only the larger branches projecting from the trunk; these were planted along the earthwork at the foot of the palisade, projecting outwards over the trench and towards the town. See Plate VI., 1, the projecting branches at the foot of the tower. **3. pluteorum**: 'parapets,' here a comprehensive term designating the wood-work above the earthwork as a whole, — including the palisade, the breastwork, and the battlements.

LXXIII. **6. materiari, frumentari**: co-ordinate with *munitiones fieri* as subject of *Erat*. **10. summa vi**: see IDIOMS. **11. addendum** [esse]: impers., 'that an addition ought to be made.' **minore numero**: Moberly calculates that to man the whole line of works 38,000 men would have been required, — a much larger force than Caesar could provide for this purpose. **13. admodum firmis ramis**: abl. of characteristic (or quality) limiting *truncis*, 'with quite strong branches.' **14. delibratis**: the bark was peeled off in order to make them smooth and slippery, so that any one trying to step over would be able to get no firm footing on them. **perpetuae**: 'continuous,' running parallel with the rampart on the side towards the town. **quinos**: notice the distributive force, '*each* five feet deep.' **15. Huc**: 'In these,' the five parallel trenches. **16. revincti**: 'securely fastened' by attaching the lower ends to cross-pieces, which were buried in the earth when the trenches were filled up. **ab ramis**: 'with the branches (only),' the other parts being in the ground. See Plate VI., 1 a. **Quini**: five rows, one in *each* trench. **18. vallis**: dat., referring to the sharp, pointed branches of the *cippi*. **19. Ante quos**: 'In front of these' rows of *cippi*, towards the town. **20. scrobes**: 'wolf-pits.' Pits were dug, three feet deep and small at the bottom, arranged diagonally (see Vocab. under *quincunx*) in eight rows, three feet apart. In these smooth stakes were set, sharpened at the upper end, but not projecting above the level of the ground more than four inches. At the bottom of the stakes earth was packed in firmly to the depth of a foot, leaving still a depth of two feet in the pits, which were concealed from view by placing brush over them. See Plate VI., 1 b. In the course of Napoleon's excavations many of these pits were brought to light, and found to

24

correspond exactly with the description here given. **29. taleae:** 'crow's-feet,' upright iron bars with pointed hooks projecting from the upper end, fastened to blocks of wood, which were sunk firmly in the earth. Several of the hooks have been found. See Plate VI., 1 c.

LXXIV. 32. secutus: 'keeping to.' **34. munitiones:** an outer line of works, outside of the Roman encampments, to protect against the Gallic army that was coming to relieve the town. See Plan. **diversas:** 'facing in the opposite direction' from the works described in the last two chapters, the purpose of which was to hem in Vercingetorix. **35. multitudine:** i. e., *hostium*. **si ita accidat:** i. e., *si magna multitudo adveniat*. **36. eius discessu:** these words are probably an incorrect reading of the MSS.; as they stand they can only mean 'on his departure,' 'even in case he (Caesar) should be away.' **37. ex castris egredi:** i. e., for the purpose of foraging. **dierum:** cf. p. 202, 17–19; distinction between subjective and objective gen.?

Page 204. LXXV. 3. convocandos, imperandum: why must *esse* be supplied? **4. cuique:** sc. *principi*. **ex civitate:** 'from his state,' goes with *numerum*. A. 217 R.; H. 359 N.1, 4). **5. frumentandi rationem habere:** 'to make systematic provision for the grain-supply.' **6. Aeduis:** for the states mentioned in this chapter, see pp. 38–40, map and Vocab. Notice particularly the survivals of Gallic names in the names of modern towns and localities. The Aquitani did not join the rebellion (cf. N. to p. 97, 34, and N. to p. 183, 37), nor did the Volcae and the Helvii (cf. Chap. 64), nor the Remi, Lingones, and Treveri (cf. Chap. 63). With these exceptions, the movement of all Gaul outside the Province against Caesar was unanimous. **24. pro:** 'out of regard for.'

LXXVI. 25. Commii: see Book IV., Chapters 21, 27, 35; Book V., Chap. 22; Book VI., Chap. 6. **28. iura, leges:** N. to p. 78, 12. **29. libertatis vindicandae:** 'in the asserting of freedom.' **31. moverentur:** 'men were touched.' **que:** 'but'; N. to p. 101, 34.

Page 205. 3. summa imperii: see IDIOMS. **delecti:** part. used as noun. **4. administraretur:** in what ways may a purpose be expressed in Latin? **5. ad:** 'towards'; had the approaching host been able to march *into* the city *ad* would have been omitted. A. 258 *f* R.; G. 410 R.3; H. 380 II. 1 (1). **neque — quisquam:** = emphatic *et nemo*. **6. aspectum modo:** 'the sight merely,' 'the bare sight.' **7. ancipiti proelio:** 'with fighting on two sides.' Cf. p. 59, 31 and N. **8. foris:** 'on the outer side.'

LXXVII. **10.** **die**: why fem.? N. to p. 171, 4. **14.** **quarum**: 'of which,' the opinions being taken instead of the persons holding the opinions. **suppeterent**: subj. because expressing the opinion of those who voted for the sortie. **15.** **videtur**: sc. *mihi;* 'the speech of Critognatus, I think, ought not to be passed over (without mention).' **17.** **auctoritatis**: gen. of characteristic (or quality) as if with *esse.* **20.** **ad concilium**: = 'to give their advice.' **21.** **sit**: hortatory subj.; 'Let me take issue with those,' 'I would take issue with those.' **23.** **ista**: for *istud* (A. 199; G. 616 R.3; H. 445, 4), spoken contemptuously; 'that (impulse) of yours is.' **24.** **offerant**: subj. of characteristic. **25.** **quam**: sc. *ei.* **26.** **tantum . . . potest**: 'so great weight does the standing of those (who favor it) carry with me.' **27.** **nullam**: i. e., *vitae iacturam.* **28.** **respiciamus**: A. 266; G. 256, 1; H. 484 II. **29.** **nostrum**: objective gen. **Quid — animi**: 'What feelings,' 'What heart' for fighting. **30.** **milibus lxxx**: the army of Vercingetorix. **32.** **Nolite exspoliare**: A. 269 *a* 2; G. 264 II.; H. 489, 1). **33.** **qui**: those coming to the relief of the besieged. **35.** **prosternere, subicere**: sc. *nolite.* **36.** **An**: A. 211 *b*; G. 459; H. 353, 2 N.4. **38.** **animi causa**: 'for the sake of amusement,' 'for the fun of the thing.' **exerceri**: 'are training.' A. 111 *b* N.1; G. 209; H. 465.

Page 206. **1.** **illorum, (2) eorum**: refer to the Gauls. **2.** **his**: the Romans. **adventum**: emphatic by position. **4.** **Quid . . . est**: = *Quid consilii mihi est,* = 'What plan have I (to propose)?' **Facere**: sc. *meum consilium est.* **5.** **Cimbrorum, Teutonum**: 'with the Cimbri and Teutones,' who had ravaged Gaul and parts of Spain before they were cut off by Marius. Cf. N. to p. 67, 36. **7.** **aetate**: = **per aetatem**: in Book II., Chap. 16; cf. N. to p. 84, 8. **9.** **instituí**: 'that (such an example) be presented.' **10.** **quid, etc.**: 'what resemblance had that war (with the Cimbri and Teutones) to the present one?' **17.** **ulla alia condicione**: 'with any other terms.' **19.** **finitimam**: 'the neighboring (part of).' **20.** **securibus**: see Vocab., and Plate II. 4.

LXXVIII. **26.** **subeundam [esse] condicionem**: 'submit to terms.' **27.** **Mandubii**: i. e., the inhabitants of Alesia and those who had fled from the surrounding country into the city. **30.** **receptos**: 'to receive them.' A. 292 R.; G. 667 R.1; H. 549, 5. **31.** **recipi**: sc. *eos.* The suppliants, cast out by Vercingetorix and rejected by Caesar, perished wretchedly in the spaces between the city and the Roman lines, — by no means the least item in this catalogue of horrors.

LXXIX. **34. colle exteriore**: southwest of the city; see Plan, GALLIC ARMY OF SUCCOR. **37. demonstravimus**: in Chap. 69. **38. abditas**: 'drawn back,' *not* 'concealed.'

Page 207. **2. Concurrunt**: i. e., *Galli, qui in oppido sunt.* **4. proximam fossam**: the trench nearest the city, described in Chap. 72, and marked f f f on the Plan.

LXXX. **7. utramque partem**: both the inner and the outer lines of works. **12. Galli . . . interiecerant**: after the German fashion; cf. p. 177, 35 and N. **14. succurrerent, sustinerent**: A. 317; G. 632; H. 497 I. **15. complures**: i. e., of Caesar's cavalry. **18. ii**: the Gauls in the town. **19. ululatu**: cf. N. to p. 139, 24. **21. recte ac turpiter factum**: 'a thing done rightly and (one done) basely' = 'a brave or a cowardly action.' **utrosque**: on the side of the Romans as well as the Gauls. **23. Cum — pugnaretur**: = 'After the battle had been raging.' **26. sagittarii**: among the cavalry; they had not yet learned to keep up with the cavalry after the manner of the Germans, described in Book I., Chap. 48. **27. cedentes**: used as noun, acc.; 'those retreating.' **sui colligendi**: N. to p. 95, 14.

LXXXI. **31. hoc spatio**: 'during this interval.' **32. harpagonum**: designed to pull down the Roman breastworks and palisades. **33. campestres**: i. e., on the plain west of the city. **34. qua**: = *ut eā*, 'that by this sign.' **obsidebantur**: why not subj.? Cf. A. 342; G. 630 R.1; H. 529 II. N.1, 2). **35. crates proicere**: in order to cover over the trenches. **36. vallo**: the outer Roman rampart, shown by excavations to have extended from the Ose brook across the plain and some distance up the slope of the Flavigny Heights.

Page 208. **1. educit**: sc. *eos.* **3. fundis librilibus**: stones weighing a pound, and attached to the end of a strap or short rope; skilfully thrown, they became a formidable means of warfare. **sudibus**: pointed stakes, burned at the end to harden the point, and used as javelins. Similar darts were made by Cicero, when, owing to the long duration of the attack on his camp, the supply of regular weapons gave out. See p. 140, 35, and N. **4. glandibus**: leaden bullets, of the shape of an acorn, hurled by means of a sling. **5. tenebris**: the attack had begun about midnight (see p. 207, 32).

LXXXII. **12. stimulis**: see p. 203, 28–31 and N. **scrobes**: see p. 203, 19–27 and N. **13. transfodiebantur**: 'were impaled.' **14. pilis muralibus**: see N. to p. 140, 35. **16. superioribus castris**: of the

Romans, on Flavigny Heights. See Plan, A, B. **17. interiores**: i.e., those in the city, the army of Vercingetorix. **19. priores fossas**: first came the inmost trench (f f f on the Plan), then two parallel trenches 400 ft. west (see Chap. 72); in the intervening space were the ingenious and complicated contrivances described in Chap. 73. Peskett well remarks that, "The result of this unsuccessful attempt of the Gauls shows Caesar's wisdom in constructing so many lines of defence. Had the Gauls in Alesia been able to advance up to the outer" line of works, which was being attacked by the army of succor, "the two forces by a simultaneous assault would probably have broken through the lines and inflicted a serious defeat on the Romans." **21. re infecta**: 'without gaining their object.'

LXXXIII. 23. Bis: the first repulse is described in Chap. 80. **25. a septentrioribus**: 'on the north'; the height referred to is probably Mont Réa. **28. declivi**: the slope was southerly, towards the city and the plain. **castra**: see Plan, D. **32. virtutis opinionem**: 'reputation for courage.' quid . . . **placeat**: 'what plan they may think best to carry out, and in what way.' **37. itinere**: indicated on the Plan by a dotted line, *Route of the Gallic Army of Succor*.

Page 209. 2. supra: see p. 208, 25–30 and N. **3. campestres**: N. to p. 207, 33.

LXXXIV. 6. cratis: acc. pl.; cf. N. to p. 207, 35. **6. falces**: N. to p. 179, 35. Vercingetorix had adopted the Roman siege tactics and instruments. **7. Pugnatur . . . temptantur**: chiasmus. A. 344 *f*; G. 684; H. 562. **9. concurritur**: cf. IDIOMS, p. 389. **11. qui post tergum**: the cries of combatants at the outer line of works would be heard in the rear of those defending the inner line, and vice versa. **12. pugnantibus**: A. 235 *a*; G. 354; H. 384 II. 4 N.2. **suum, etc.**: 'their own (escape from) danger depended on the safety of others.' **13. omnia . . . perturbant**: Caesar had a keen insight into human nature.

LXXXV. 15. Caesar: Caesar is thought to have taken his position of observation on the Flavigny Heights, at or near the point designated on the Plan by a red cross. **16. Utrisque . . . occurrit**: 'Both (Gauls and Romans) reflect.' **17. quo . . . conveniat**: 'when the mightiest effort should be put forth.' **20. exspectant**: 'look forward to.' **21. demonstravimus**: see p. 208, 34 et seq. **23. testudine facta**: as in an assault on a town; cf. p. 36, and Plate V., 6. The Gauls evidently had shields of the Roman pattern. **24. Agger**: see pp. 35, 36. **25. coniectus**: sc. *est*.

LXXXVI. **30. deductis . . . pugnaret**: 'to draw off his troops and make a sortie.' **31. nisi**: closely connected with *necessario*. **33. Interiores**: cf. p. 208, 17, and N. **35. ea, quae**: cf. l. 6 above. **36. propugnantes**: i. e., Romans; acc. **37. falcibus**: N. to p. 179, 35. **38. vallum, loricam**: N. to p. 203, 1.

Page 210. **LXXXVII.** **1. Brutum**: N. to p. 97, 37. **7. circumire, etc.**: i. e., to make a flank movement and turn the enemy's rear. **8. Labienus**: N. to p. 51, 31.

LXXXVIII. **13. colore**: ancient purple, corresponding nearly to our scarlet; on the *paludamentum* see p. 25. Notice throughout this chapter the vividness of style, which is heightened by the omission of conjunctions. **15. haec declivia et devexa**: 'these descending slopes'; Caesar passed down the northwest side of the Flavigny Heights, in full view of the enemy. **17. excipit**: 'follows.' **19. tergum**: sc. *hostium*. **28. Quod**: N. to p. 53, 36.

LXXXIX. **36. ad utramque rem**: 'for either alternative.'

Page 211. **1. Ipse**: Caesar. **2. Vercingetorix**: Vercingetorix (as we learn elsewhere), having arrayed himself in splendid armor, mounted a horse adorned with trappings, passed slowly out from Alesia, and rode around Caesar sitting to receive the prisoners; then, halting before Caesar, he sprang from his horse, laid off his armor, and without a word placed himself at the feet of his conqueror — "every inch a King!" For six years after this he languished in a Roman dungeon; at length in B.C. 45 he was put to death to celebrate Caesar's great triumph. Thus closed the career of the greatest of the Gauls, — the first national hero of France. **3. si**: '(to see) whether.' A. 334 *f*; G. 462, 2; H. 529 II. I N. I. **4. toto**: dat., for *toti*. **capita singula**: i. e., a captive to each soldier; cf. N. to p. 61, 14. Thus fell Alesia, after one of the most remarkable sieges on record. Caesar's devices for rendering impassible his lines of defence, for ingenuity and adaptation to the purpose for which they were intended, have never been excelled in the annals of military engineering. They are a further evidence of that readiness to meet emergencies and that practical mastery of mechanical details previously shown in the construction of the bridges over the Rhine. Further than this, Caesar's success well illustrates the inevitable superiority of discipline, generalship, persistency, and hard work over vastly greater numbers, even in the face of every disadvantage of position and surroundings. For the Gauls the fall of Alesia was the crowning disaster of a hopeless struggle. They staked all on the relief of the city, and lost. But if Caesar instead of Vercingetorix had suffered complete

defeat, little doubt that Gaul would long have remained unconquered, and that the course of European history would have been changed. The siege of Alesia may well rank among the decisive military operations of the world's history.

XC. 6. civitatem: 'he recovered the state' from its condition of rebellion. **9. in hiberna**: the legions were distributed so as to be a support to one another in case of need, and at the same time so as to command the whole country. The strength of Gaul had been so far broken that little danger was to be apprehended from rebellion. **13. Remis**: these from the first had been friendly to Caesar. **20. ex litteris**: 'from despatches.' **21. supplicatio**: cf. p. 92, 7, and N.

ON THE STUDY OF CAESAR.

THE student of Caesar should give his attention to three things — the thought, translation, and explanation.

The Thought: A page of Caesar is not a mere exercise in parsing, contrived to discipline the mind and tax the patience of the student. It is a fragment of the world's literature. It has been transmitted down through the centuries and spared by the destructive agencies of time because it contains *thought*, — thought of such interest and value that men would not willingly let it pass into oblivion. Approach the Gallic War, then, as a work which the verdict of the ages has pronounced a literary masterpiece; in studying it your first task will be to grasp the underlying thought.

The unit of thought is the sentence. In taking up each sentence look first for the subject, then for the verb. If no subject is expressed, either supply one from the preceding sentence, or find out why an impersonal form of the verb is used. Having sought out both subject and verb, find next the modifiers of the subject; then, the words that limit or complete the meaning of the verb. If the sentence is compound, take up each part as if it were a simple sentence; if complex, first look for the principal clause, then treat the subordinate clauses in like manner, determining carefully the relations of the subordinate clauses to the main proposition. If you have now the general idea of the sentence, go over the following sentences in the same way, trying to determine the drift of the paragraph, or chapter, or lesson.

If you have now a fairly clear conception of the thought, the next thing is to master the constructions. Never be content with a careless half-notion of the meaning. You will never really understand a sentence till you can explain every form and word in it. Here parrot-like glibness in the repeating of grammatical rules is not the chief thing. Be sure that you understand *how* and *why*, that you cannot simply give the rule but explain the principle involved. At first look up *all* grammatical references; later on, as you become familiar with Caesar's constructions, refer to the grammar only in cases of uncertainty. Try often to read your lesson and understand it without reference to grammar, notes, or vocabulary, making the connection explain obscure points; but never leave a lesson till you are sure that you understand the thought in it as well as if it were expressed in English.

Translation: Languages differ in their ways of expressing the same thought. In translating Caesar, be careful not to transfer to English forms of expression peculiar to the Latin. Render Latin by *English*, not by *Latin-English*. The following points are worthy of special mention: —

a. After verbs of *saying*, *perceiving*, *knowing*, and the like, the Latin infinitive with its subject-accusative should be rendered into English by a clause.

b. The Latin uses the copula *esse* in many relations where we must employ an entirely different form of expression. For examples see IDIOMS, p. 390.

c. The Latin often uses the passive voice of intransitive verbs impersonally, in order to make prominent the action rather than the agent. Whenever possible, translate such by a noun designating the action, with a suitable verb; in other cases translate by the active voice, and supply a personal subject according to the connection. Study IDIOMS, p. 389.

d. The Latin has several uses of the genitive case that should never be translated into English literally. Study IDIOMS, p. 388.

e. The Latin ablative absolute is in many instances employed where the English prefers clauses or phrases. Render it rarely by the English nominative absolute, but rather by clauses introduced by *when*, *as*, *after*, *now that*, *if*; by *by* and a participle, with or without an object; by a preposition and a noun, etc.

f. The Latin relative often expresses relations between clauses and sentences altogether foreign to the English relative. In such cases it should not be translated by *which* or *who*, but as the sense requires; as, in clauses of purpose (with the subjunctive) by *to* (with the infinitive); in clauses of characteristic result often by *so that he* (*she*, *it*, *they*); in causal clauses, by *since* or *because he* (*she*, *it they*); in concessive clauses, by *although he*, etc.; at the beginning of a clause or sentence, often by *and he*, *he*, *they*, *this*, *that*, etc.

Never be content with your translation of a lesson till you are sure, first, that it represents exactly the thought of the original; secondly, that it is expressed in so perfect English that the same sentences, if in an English essay, would receive your teacher's approval. Remember that Caesar is one of the world's great writers; try to bring out in English the clearness, conciseness, and vigor of his style.

Explanation: It is not enough to comprehend clearly the thought of Caesar, and to be able to express this in the best English; there yet remains the understanding of everything connected with the portion read. Having mastered the construction of your passage and carefully translated it, be not satisfied till you can explain intelligently the references in it to *persons*, *places* (including *rivers*, *mountains*, *towns*, etc), *states* or *tribes*; *events*, *dates*, *military organization* or *tactics*, *manners* and *customs*. Investigate the significance of Caesar's writings and career in the light of history and the development of European civilization. Thus pursued, the study of the Gallic War will become both interesting and profitable.

HELPS TO THE STUDY OF CAESAR.

CAESAR.

FROUDE: *Caesar, A Sketch.* N. Y., 1879. Well written, but partisan.
TROLLOPE: *Life of Cicero,* 2 vols. N. Y., 1882. To be read as an antidote to Froude's Caesar.
TROLLOPE: *The Commentaries of Caesar.* Phila., 1880.
LIDDELL: *History of Rome.*
LONG: *Decline of the Roman Republic,* Vols. III.–V.
MOMMSEN: *History of Rome,* Vol. IV.
MERIVALE: *History of the Romans under the Empire,* Vols. I., II.
NISARD: *Les Quatre Historiens Latins.* Paris, 1862.
DURUY: *History of Rome,* Vol. III.
SEELEY: *Roman Imperialism,* etc., Lecture i.
CRUTTWELL: *History of Roman Literature,* pp. 187–198.
SIMCOX: *History of Latin Literature,* Vol. I.
DRUMANN: *Geschichte Roms,* etc., Vol. III.
DELORME, deutsch bearbeitet von Doehler: *Cäsar und seine Zeitgenossen* Leipzig, 1873.
NAPOLÉON III.: *Histoire de Jules César,* 2 vols. with Atlas. Paris, 1865 Accessible also in an English translation. Of especial value because embodying the results of the researches and excavations carried on under the direction of the Emperor.
SHAKESPERE: *Julius Caesar.*

THE GALLIC WAR — CRITICAL AND TEXT EDITIONS.

HOLDER: Books I.–VIII., with complete Index. Tübingen, 1882.
FRIGELL: Books I.–III. Upsala, 1861.
NIPPERDEY: *Gallic and Civil Wars,* etc. Leipzig, 1847.
DINTER: *Gallic and Civil Wars,* etc. Leipzig, 1880.

THE GALLIC WAR — EDITIONS WITH EXPLANATORY NOTES.

KRANER: 13th ed., rev. by Dittenberger. German notes. Berlin, 1883.
DOBERENZ: 8th ed., rev. by Dinter. German notes. Leipzig, 1882.

RHEINHARD: With illustrations, plans, and German notes. 4th ed. Stuttgart, 1883.
HERZOG: With German notes. Leipzig, 1831.
SCHNEIDER: *Gallic and Civil Wars.* Latin notes. 2 vols. Halle, 1849.
PESKETT: Books I.–VII. With English notes. Cambridge, 1878–1882.
MOBERLY: Books I.–VIII. With English notes. 2d ed. Oxford, 1878.
LONG: Books I.–VIII. With English notes. New ed. London, 1880.
MERRYWEATHER and TANCOCK: Books I.–III. With English notes. 2d ed. Oxford, 1879.
L'ABBÉ BOUÉ: Books I.–VIII. Illustrated, with French notes. Paris, 1886.

SPECIAL DICTIONARIES.

EICHERT: *Vollständiges Wörterbuch zu den Schriftwerken des C. J. Cäsar.* 8th ed. Hannover, 1883.
EBELING: *Schulwörterbuch zu Cäsar.* 3d ed. rev. by Draeger. Leipzig, 1884.
CREAK: *Complete Dictionary to the Gallic War.* London, 1877.
MEUSEL: *Lexicon Caesarianum.* Issued in parts, completed as far as CUM. Berlin.
MERGUET: *Lexicon zu den Schriften Caesars,* etc. Issued in parts, completed as far as PETO. Jena.

WORKS HELPFUL IN THE SPECIAL STUDY OF THE GALLIC WAR.

FALLUE: *Analyse Raisonnée des Commentaires de Jules César.* Paris, 1862.
GLÜCK: *Die bei Caesar vorkommenden Keltischen Namen.* München, 1857.
ZEUSS: *Grammatica Celtica.* 2 vols. Leipzig, 1853. Gives special attention to the Keltic words and names in Caesar.
ZEUSS: *Die Deutschen und die Nachbarstämme.* München, 1837.
VANIČEK: *Fremdwörter im Griechischen und Lateinischen.* Leipzig, 1878.
WAGLER: *Hilfsbüchlein zu Caesars Bellum Gallicum.* Berlin, 1881.
A. VON GOELER: *Caesars Gallischer Krieg,* etc. 2d ed. Tübingen, 1884.
RÜSTOW: *Heerwesen und Kriegführung Caesars.* Nordhausen, 1862.
RÜSTOW: *Atlas zu Caesars Gallischem Krieg.* Stuttgart, 1868.
DE SAULCY: *Les Campagnes de Jules César dans les Gaules.* Paris, 1865.
LONG: A criticism of De Saulcy in the Westminster Review, Vol. XXI., pp. 399–417.
JAL: *La Flotte de César.* Paris, 1861.
A. VON KAMPEN: *XV. ad Caesaris de Bello Gallico Commentarios Tabulae.* Gotha, 1879.
DESJARDINS: *Géographie historique et administrative de la Gaule romaine.* 3 vols. Paris, 1876–1885. One of the finest historical monographs in any language.
THIERRY: *Histoire des Gaulois.* 3 vols. Paris, 1835.
STUBBS: *Constitutional History of England,* Vol. I., Chaps. 1 and 2.
MARTIN: *Histoire de France,* Vol. I. Specially valuable on Druids.

IDIOMS AND PHRASES.

a dextro cornu, *on the right wing.*
a fronte, *in front.*
a novissimo agmine, *on the rear.*
a pueris, *from childhood.*
a sinistro cornu, *on the left wing.*
ab armis discedere, *to lay down arms.*
urbem ab eis defendere, *to defend the city against them.*
ab milibus passuum duobus, *two miles off.*
ab tanto spatio, *so far off.*
ab tergo, *on the rear.*
se absente, *in his absence.*
accedit (huc) ut, or quod, *there is the additional fact* (or *circumstance*) *that, and besides.*
aciem convertere, *to face about.*
acies media, *the middle of the line.*
acies oculorum, *the keen glance of their eyes.*
ad ancoras deligatae (naves), *lying at anchor.*
ad conducendos homines, *for hiring men.* (ii. 1.)
ad equum rescribere, (1) *to enroll in the cavalry,* (2) *to raise to knighthood.* (i. 42.)
ad extremum, *at the end, at last, finally.*
ad Genevam pervenit, *he arrived in the vicinity of Geneva.*
ad hunc modum, *after this fashion, thus.*
ad milia quindecim, *about fifteen thousand.*
ad salutem contenderunt, *they rushed to a place of safety.*
ad speciem, *for show.*
ad unum, *to a man.*
ad urbem, *near the city.*
vulnera adversa, *wounds in front.*
hostibus adversis occurrere, *to meet the enemy face to face.*
in adversum os, *right in the face.*
adverso colle, *up the hill.*
adverso flumine, *up-stream, against the current.*
aegre ferre, *to take to heart, be vexed.*
aequo animo, *contentedly, without anxiety.*
aere alieno premi, *to be in debt.*
afficere supplicio, *to punish.*
affici magno dolore, *to be greatly annoyed,* etc.
agere cum eo, *to confer with him.*
cum tribunis agunt, *they arrange with the tribunes.*
agere gratias, *to thank.*
agmen claudere, *to bring up the rear.*
alias — alias, *at one time — at another.*
alienum tempus, *an unfavorable time.*
alienus locus, *an unfavorable place, location.*

alii aliam in partem, *some in one direction, others in another; in different directions.*

aliter atque (or **ac**), *otherwise than, different from what.*

alius aliā causā illatā, *one presenting one pretext, another another; each one presenting a different excuse.*

alius alii subsidium fert, *they help one another.*

res erat in angusto, *matters had reached a crisis.*

animum advertere, *to notice.*

ante exactam hiemem, *before the end of winter.*

apud eum, *in his presence.*

longe alius atque (or **ac**), *far other than, very different from.*

contra atque erat dictum, *contrary to what had been agreed upon.*

idem atque, *the same as.*

audiens dicto esse, *to be obedient.*

aversi circumventi, *surrounded on the rear.*

aversum hostem videre, *to see a foe in flight.*

bellum defendere, *to ward off war.*

bellum ducere, *to prolong a war* (i. 38).

bellum gerere, *to carry on war, wage war.*

bellum inferre, *to make war.*

bono animo esse in (with acc.), *to be well disposed toward.*

capere consilium, *to form a plan.*

capere locum, *to reach a destination.*

capere portum, insulam, *to "make" a harbor, an island.*

capere urbem, *to capture a city.*

capite solo ex aqua exstare, *to stand up to the chin in water* (v. 18).

capitis poenam, *capital punishment, the death penalty.*

capitum decem milia, *ten thousand souls.*

castra movere, *to break camp, decamp.*

castra ponere, *to pitch camp, encamp.*

causā, with gen., *for the sake of, on account of.*

honoris Divitiaci causā, *out of respect for Divitiacus.*

qua de causa, *for this reason.*

causam dicere, *to plead a case.*

causam inferre, *to allege a reason.*

cedentibus et insequentibus, *to the pursued and the pursuing.*

celerius opinione, *sooner than was expected.*

certiorem Caesarem facere, *to inform Caesar.*

certior fieri, *to be informed.*

civitate donatus, *granted citizenship, made a citizen* (i. 47).

collocare nuptum, *to give in marriage.*

committere proelium, *to commence an engagement, join battle.*

rei publicae commodo (abl.), *to the advantage of the commonwealth,* or *with advantage to the state.*

idem conari, *to make the same attempt.*

confectus vulneribus, *exhausted with wounds.*

confectus aetate, *weakened by age.*

conficere exercitum, *to raise an army.*

conicere in fugam, *to put to flight, rout.*

sibi mortem consciscere, *to commit suicide.*

consilium inire or **capere,** *to form a plan.*

conspicari licet, *one may see.*

consulere aliquem, *to consult any one, ask advice.*

consulere alicui, *to consult for* (*look out for the interest of*) *any one.*

consulto cedere, *to draw back (retreat) purposely.*
tempus quod convenerat, *the time which had been agreed upon.*
convertere signa, *to face about.*
sub corona vendere, *to sell into slavery.* See N. to p. 100, 19.
cum primum, *as soon as.*
cum — tum, *not only — but also, both — and.*
cursu incitato, *quickening their pace.*

dare in matrimonium, *to give in marriage.*
dare in fugam, *to put to flight.*
dare inter se, *to exchange.*
dare manus, *to yield.*
dare operam, *to take pains.*
de improviso, *unexpectedly, suddenly.*
hac spe deiecti, *disappointed in this hope.*
se animo demittere, *to lose heart, despair.*
deprecari mortem, *to plead for life.*
diem dicere, *to appoint a day.*
ius dicere, *to administer justice.*
dimidio minor, *smaller by half, one half smaller.*
dubitat id facere, *he hesitates to do that.*
non dubitat, quin, *he does not doubt that.*
non dubium est, quin, *there is no doubt that.*
duce Caesare, *under the leadership of Caesar.*
ducere in matrimonium, *to marry.*
ducere uxorem, *to marry.*

egredi navi, ex navi, *to disembark.*
eo, before comparatives, *all the;* as **eo magis,** *all the more.*
ex aqua mensurae, *water-clocks* (v. 13).
ex equis, ex equo, *on horseback.*
ex itinere, *on the march, leaving the line of march.*
ex loco inferiore, *from a lower position,* or *point of view.*
ex loco superiore, *from a higher position,* or *point of view.*
ex usu Galliae, *of advantage to Gaul, expedient for Gaul.*
exspectat si eant, *he waits to see whether they will go.*
expedita legio, *a legion unencumbered* with a baggage train. See p. 23.
extrema hieme, *at the end of winter.*
extremi (as part of an army), *the rear.*

facere excursionem, *to make a sally.*
non facere fidem, *not to convince.*
facere imperata, *to carry out the orders.*
facere impetum in (with acc.), *to make an attack on.*
facere iter, *to march.*
facinus in se admittere, facinus admittere, *to become guilty of a crime, commit a crime.*
hoc proelio facto, *after this battle.*
proelio facto secundo, *after a successful engagement,* or *since the result of the battle was favorable.*
facultas navium, *supply of ships.*
ferre auxilium, subsidium, *to render aid.*
ferre condicionem, *to propose terms.*
ferre graviter, moleste, *to be annoyed, vexed.*
signa ferre, inferre, *to advance.* See p. 26.
consuetudo fert, *is usual.*
ut fert illorum opinio, *as their opinion goes.*
fidem habere alicui, *to have confidence in any one.*
fidem interponere, *to pledge one's honor.*
fidem praestare, *to give proof of one's good faith.*

Caesaris fidem sequi, *to attach one's self to Caesar.*
in eius fidem venire, *to put one's self under his protection.*
fingere sibi, *to imagine.*
fingere vultum, *to control the features* (i. 39).

gerere bellum, *to wage war, carry on war.*
gratiam habere, *to feel thankful.*
gratiam referre, *to make return.*
gratias agere, *to thank.*
gratum facere, *to do a favor* (i. 44).
graviter ferre, *to take to heart, be annoyed.*

habere eodem loco, *to consider in the same light.*
habere exercitum coactum, *to have an army collected, to have gathered an army together.*
habere id compertum, *to have learned that* (i. 44).
habere in animo, *to intend.*
habere orationem, *to deliver a speech, make a speech.*
habere sibi persuasum, *to be convinced.*

idem qui, *the same as.*
idem sentire, *to have the same feeling.*
imperat equitibus, *he commands the cavalry.*
imperat obsides civitati, *he levies hostages upon the state, obliges the state to furnish hostages.*
pons in Arare, *a bridge over the Arar.*
in arido, *on dry land.*
in circuitu, *in case one goes around.*
in dies, *every day, daily.*
in itinere, *on the march.*
in perpetuum, *forever.*
praesentia, *for the present, at the* ...*e.*
capi... **quum tempus,** *for the future.*
men...

in servilem modum, *as in the case of slaves* (vi. 19).
in statione, *on guard.*
in vestigio, *on the spot.*
in vicem, *in turn.*
incidit bellum, *a war breaks out.*
incidit in eum, *fell in with him* (i. 53).
inferre bellum, *to make war.*
inferre iniuriam, *to inflict an injury.*
inferre signa, *to advance.*
inferre signa conversa, *to face about and advance.*
collis infimus apertus, *a hill cleared at the base.*
inire consilium, *to form a plan.*
inita aestate, *at the beginning of summer.*
iniussu Caesaris, *without Caesar's bidding.*
inter se cohortati, *urging one another on.*
inter se dare, *to exchange.*
inter se differunt, *they differ from one another.*
duobus pedibus inter se, *two feet apart.*
inter xv annos, *during fifteen years.*
interdicere aqua atque igni, *to forbid the use of fire and water, to banish.*
interdicere sacrificiis, *to prohibit from attendance at sacrifices, excommunicate.*
interdixit Romanis omni Gallia, *he forbade the Romans occupying any part of Gaul.*
ipsi se interficiunt, *they kill themselves with their own hand.*
sua ipsius (ipsorum) domus, *his (their) own house.*
iter facere, *to march.*
iudicium optimum facere, *to pass a very favorable opinion.*
ius dicere, *to administer justice.*

largiter posse, *to have great power, influence.*

legionem conscribere, *to enroll a legion.*

loco alieno, *in an unfavorable place, position.*

loco obsidum, *as hostages.*

loco suo, *in a favorable position, place.*

habere eodem loco, *to consider in the same light.*

maior pars, *the greater part, the majority.*

maiores (with or without **natu**), *old men, ancestors.*

in manibus esse, *to be close at hand.*

manipulos laxare, *to spread out the maniples, open the ranks.*

manus conducta, *a force serving for pay, a hired band.*

maxima laus, *the highest merit, most praiseworthy.*

medio in colle, *half way up the hill.*

memoriā nostrā, *in our own day.*

memoriā tenere, *to remember.*

memoriam deponere, *to cease to remember, forget.*

memoriam prodere, *to transmit the remembrance.*

missu Caesaris, *sent by Caesar.*

oratoris modo, *as an envoy,* or *ambassador.*

moleste ferre, *to be annoyed.*

more maiorum supplicium sumere, *to punish after the ancient fashion.*

linguā Gallicā multā uti, *to speak the Gallic language fluently.*

ad multam noctem, *till late at night.*

multo die, *late in the day.*

multum valere, *to be very powerful.*

natura atque opere (manu), *naturally and artificially.*

navem, in navem (naves) conscendere, *to go on board, embark.*

naves armare, *to fit out ships.*

naves deducere, *to launch ships.*

naves in litore eiectae, *ships stranded.*

naves longae, *war-ships, galleys.*

naves onerariae, *freight-ships, transport-ships.*

naves solvere, *to set sail, weigh anchor.*

naves subducere, *to draw ships up on land, beach.*

navi, ex navi, egredi, *to disembark.*

ex navibus expositi, *landed, placed on shore.*

navigia speculatoria, *spy-boats.*

nihilo minus, secius, *none the less, no less, just so.*

nisi rogatus, *without being asked* (i. 44).

novis rebus (or **imperiis**) **studere,** *to desire a revolution.*

non ita magnus numerus, *not a very large number, not very many.*

occupationes reipublicae, *business of state, public affairs* (iv. 16).

officium praestare, *to do one's duty.*

operam dare, *to take pains.*

operam navare, *to do one's best.*

opinio timoris, *impression of fear.*

opinio virtutis, *reputation for courage.*

opus est, *there is need, it is necessary.*

opus facto est, *there is need of action.*

in orbem consistere, *to form a circle.*

ordines servare, *to keep the ranks, remain in line.*

primi ordines, *the centurions of the first rank* (i. 41; v. 30).

ordinibus perturbatis, *the ranks being broken, out of order.*

ratio ordoque agminis, *system and arrangement, regular order, of the line of march.*

pedem referre, *to retreat.*
sub pellibus, *in tents.*
pendere stipendium (or **vectigal**), *to pay tribute.*
per manus tractus, *dragged, passed, from hand to hand* (vi. 38).
ad Alpes pertinent, *extend as far as the Alps.*
eodem pertinere, *point to the same thing.*
petere, ut liceat, *to ask permission.*
placuit ei mittere, *he thought best to send.*
plurimum posse, *to have the greatest influence, be very powerful.* See N. to p. 49, 2.
plus posse, *to have greater influence, be more powerful.*
poenas pendere, *to pay the penalty.*
poenas persolvere, *to pay the penalty.*
poenas repetere, *to inflict punishment.*
Galliā (sometimes **Galliae**) **potiri,** *to become master of Gaul.*
prae magnitudine sua, *in comparison with his own greatness.*
se praesente, *in his presence.*
praestant Gallis virtute, *excel the Gauls in respect to courage.*
praestare fidem, *to give proof of one's good faith.*
praestare officia ducis, *discharge the duties of a commander, take the place of a commander.*
praestare virtutem, *to show courage.*
praestat pati, quam, *it is better to suffer than.*
praesto fuit Sabino, *he met Sabinus* (v. 26).
milites premi (urgeri, laborare) videt, *he sees that the soldiers are hard pressed.*
prima aestate, primo vere, *at the beginning of summer, of spring.*
prima luce, *at early dawn.*
prima nocte, *at the beginning of night, night-fall.*
primum agmen, *the van.* See p. 29.
principes consilii, *the leaders in the scheme* (vi. 44).
pro beneficiis, *in return for favors.*
pro his, *on behalf of these.*
pro multitudine, *in proportion to the population.*
pro perfuga, vallo, *as a deserter, rampart.*
pro sano, *as a sane man, like a man in his senses.*
pro tempore, pro re, *as the time, as the circumstances demanded.*
proeliis parvulis, *in skirmishes.*
publice — privatim, *as a state* or *in the name of the state — as individuals.* See N. to p. 107, 11.

quae cum ita sint, *since this is true, since the case stands thus.*
quaevis fortuna, *any lot you please.*
post diem quartum, quam, *four days after, the fourth day after.*
quam, with superlative adjectives and adverbs, *as possible.*
quam maximus, *as great as possible, the greatest possible.*
quam primum, *as soon as possible.*
quanto — tanto, quo — eo, quo — hoc, with comparatives, *the —*; as, **quanto gravior — tanto crebriores,** *the severer — the more frequently.*
decem diebus, quibus, *ten days after.*
quinis aut senis milibus passuum, *five or six miles each day.*
nullum tempus intermiserunt, quin mitterent, *they let no time pass without sending.*
nobilissimus quisque, *all the nobles.*
antiquissimum quodque tempus, *priority of time* (i. 45).

rari propugnabant, *they were fighting in scattered parties, in small bodies* (v. 9).

se recipere, *to withdraw, retreat.*

recusare mortem, *to shrink from death.*

recusare quominus sint, *to refuse to be.*

referre pedem, *to retreat.*

religiones interpretari, *to solve religious questions.*

religionibus impediri, *to be hindered by religious scruples.*

male re gesta, *the attempt being unsuccessful, after an unsuccessful attempt.*

occasio rei bene gerendae, negotii bene gerendi, *a chance of fighting a successful battle, of gaining an advantage.*

res certiores, *sure information.*

res communis, *a common interest, common interests.*

res gestae, *deeds, exploits.*

res secundae, *prosperity.*

rogare sacramento, *to enlist.*

satis commode, *very conveniently.*

se suaque omnia, *themselves and all their possessions.*

secundo flumine, *down-stream, with the current.*

secundum ea, *besides those things.*

secundum flumen, *next to the stream, along the river.*

secundum naturam fluminis, *according to the natural course* (or *current*) *of the river.*

sententiā desistere, *to give up a scheme.*

si quid erat durius, *in case of any difficulty* (i. 48).

ad signa convenire, *to muster.*

signa inferre, referre, etc. See p. 26.

sol oriens, *the East.*

occasus solis, *the West.*

in spem venire, *to begin to have hope.*

sub bruma, *at the time of the winter solstice, in winter.*

sub monte, *at the foot of the height.*

sub occasum solis, *about sunset.*

sub vesperum, *towards evening.*

sumere diem, *to take time.*

sumere supplicium de eo, *to inflict punishment on him, punish him.*

in summa, *as a whole.*

summa belli, *the supreme command of the war.*

summa exercitus, *the army as a whole* (vi. 34).

summa imperii, *the supreme power, chief authority.*

summa omnium rerum, *the final decision of everything.*

summa vi, *with might and main.*

summis copiis, *with all their forces, in full force* (v. 17).

ab summo, *from the top.*

sustinere equos, *to check the horses* (iv. 33).

se sustinere non potest, *he can no longer hold himself up, stand* (ii. 25).

una via, *only one way.*

in una virtute consistere, *to depend on courage alone.*

Sequani uni, *the Sequani alone.*

multum valere, *to be very powerful.*

vehi curru, *to drive.*

vehi equo, *to ride.*

veniam dare, *to pardon.*

vereor ne, *I fear that.*

vereor ut, *I fear that not.*

versari in castris, *to be in the camp.*

versari in periculo, *to be in danger.*

versari in proeliis, *to be engaged in fighting.*

terga vertere, *to turn to flee, flee.*

eos in vestigio poenitet, *they regret immediately.*

eodem vestigio remanere, *to stay on the same spot.*
vim facere, *to use violence.*
vindicare in aliquem, *to punish any one.*
quid sibi vult? *what does he mean?*

Idiomatic Genitives.

i. Partitive. A. 216; G. 366–371; H. 397.

aliquid calamitatis, *some disaster.*
novi aliquid consilii, *some new plan (or other).*
aliquid itineris, *some distance.*
amplius obsidum, *more hostages.*
minus dubitationis, *less doubt.*
multum aestatis, *a great part of the summer.*
nihil agri, *no land, no territory.*
nihil negotii, *no trouble.*
nihil reliqui, *nothing left;* see i. 11; N. to p. 88, 29.
nihil vini, *no wine.*
plus doloris, *more grief, more pain.*
quam minimum spatii, *as little time as possible.*
quantum boni, *how much advantage, good.*
quicquam vestitus, *any clothing.*
quid negotii? *what business?*
quid rei est? *what is the matter?*
quod navium, *what ships, whatever ships.*
satis causae, *reason enough, sufficient cause.*
satis praesidii, *a sufficient garrison.*
sui nihil deperdere, *to lose none of their standing* (i. 43).
tantum repentini periculi, *so great sudden danger.*

ii. Objective. A. 217; G. 361, 2; H. 396 III.

Helvetiorum iniuriae populi Romani, see N. to p. 61, 23.
magno sui cum periculo, *with great danger to himself.*
Romanis sui potestatem facere, *to give the Romans a chance at him.*

iii. Genitive of value. A. 252 *a*; G. 378, 379; H. 404.

magni haberi, *to be considered of much account, much thought of.*
rei publicae (gen.) **magni interest**, *it is of great consequence to the state.*
tanti eius apud me gratia est, *my regard for him is so great.*

iv. Genitive after adjectives. A. 218; G. 373; H. 399.

peritus rerum, belli, *skilled in affairs, in war.*
locus medius utriusque, *a place midway between both* (i. 34).

v. Genitive after adverbs. A. 214 *g*; G. 371 R.4; H. 398, 5.

postridie eius diei, *the next day after, the following day.*
pridie eius diei, *the previous day, the day before.*

Passives used Impersonally.

accessum est ad Britanniam, *they reached Britain* (v. 8).
committendum non putabat, *he was thinking that he ought not* (*so*) *to act, that occasion ought not to be given* (i. 46).
concedi non oportet, *it ought not to be granted, concession ought not to be made* (i. 44).
concursum est, *a rush was made, they rushed together.*
constabat hiemari in Gallia oportere, *it was clear that they must spend the winter in Gaul.*
consurgitur, *they rise in a body, all rise.*
contendebatur proelio equestri, *the contest was carried on with an engagement of the cavalry.*
contendendum est nobis, *we must make haste.*
non nobis cunctandum est, quin, *we must not delay to.*
deliberatur, *the matter is discussed.*
militibus de navibus desiliendum, et in fluctibus consistendum, et cum hostibus erat pugnandum, *the soldiers had to jump down from the ships and get their footing in the water and fight with the enemy.*
non dubitandum est nobis, quin, *we ought not to doubt, that.*
in vulgus militum elatum est, *it got abroad among the rank and file of the soldiers* (i. 46).
si enuntiatum sit, *if disclosure should have been made.*
exspectari non oportet, quin eatur, *ought not to delay to go.*
hominibus sacrificiis interdictum est, *men are forbidden attendance at sacrifices.*
ut sibi ignosceretur, petit, *he begs that pardon be granted him.*
mandatum est, *a commission was given, the matter was intrusted* (i. 30).
manetur, *they remain, he remains.*
maturandum est nobis, *we must make all haste.*
navibus nocetur, *the ships are damaged.*
quibus rebus occurrendum est, *these circumstances ought to be provided for, this emergency ought to be met* (i. 33).
non hostibus parcitur, *no quarter is given to the enemy.*
inopia nobis pereundum est, *we must perish from want.*
mihi persuadetur, *I am convinced.*
praecavendum est, *every precaution should be taken.*
ei praeceptum est, *he was instructed, directed.*
prodeundum est, *ought to advance.*
pronuntiatur, *notice is given, announcement is made.*
prospiciendum est rei frumentariae, *provision must be made for supplies.*
pugnatum est, *fighting went on, the battle raged.*
minus facile resisti potest, *resistance cannot so easily be made.*
aegre sustentatur, *the defence was maintained with difficulty.*
totis castris trepidatur, *there is a panic throughout the camp.*
ventum est, *he* (or *they*) *came.*
in eos vindicandum est, *punishment ought to be inflicted on them.*

Esse in Idiomatic Expressions.

i. With predicate genitive. A. 214 *c*; G. 365; H. 402, 403.

aestivum tempus instantis belli est, *summer is the season for the impending war, ought to be devoted to the impending war* (vi. 4).
quid consilii Caesaris est? *what plan has Caesar in mind? what does Caesar intend to do?*
est hoc Gallicae consuetudinis, *this is a peculiar custom of the Gauls.*
summae dementiae est exspectare, *it is the highest folly to wait.*
esse suae dignitatis, *to be consistent with his dignity.*
magnae fuit fortunae, *it was a case of rare good luck.*
iudicium imperatoris est, *it is for the general to decide.*
sui quicquam esse imperii postulare, *to claim anything as under one's own rule.*
haec summi ut sint laboris efficiunt, *these (by training) they make capable of the greatest exertion, of the greatest endurance.*
est legati, *it is a lieutenant's duty.*
esse liberae civitatis, *to belong to a free state.*
res erat multae operae ac laboris, *the operation cost great effort and toil.*
erat magni periculi, *was very dangerous.*

ii. With dative of possession. A. 231; G. 349; H. 387.

est mihi, est tibi, *I have, you have.*
est Caesari, *Caesar has.*
Caesari mecum nulla amicitia est, *I have no friendship with Caesar, there is no friendship between Caesar and me.*

iii. With two datives. A. 233; G. 350; H. 390 I.

erit mihi curae, *I will attend to it.*
dixit, sibi curae futurum esse, *he said that he would attend to it.*
mihi est cordi, *it is agreeable to me, suits me.*
ea erant Caesari usui, *those things were of use to Caesar.*
praesidio impedimentis erant, *they served as a guard for the baggage.*
his difficultatibus duae res erant subsidio, *two things served to offset these disadvantages* (ii. 20).
magno fuit Germanis dolori, *it was a cause of great vexation to the Germans.*
amicitiam populi Romani nobis ornamento et praesidio, non detrimento, esse oportet, *the friendship of the Roman people ought to be an honor and protection to us, not a disadvantage.*

iv. With ablative of characteristic. A. 251; G. 402; H. 419 II.

sunt specie tauri, *they* (the *uri*) *have the appearance of a bull.*
sunt horridiore aspectu, *present a more frightful appearance.*
sunt capillo promisso, *they have flowing hair.*
sunt ingenti magnitudine corporum, *they are of gigantic stature* (or *size*).

VOCABULARY.

ABBREVIATIONS.

a. = *active (voice).*
abl. = *ablative.*
abs. = *absolute.*
acc. = *accusative.*
adj. = *adjective.*
adv. = *adverb, adverbial.*
c. = *common (gender).*
causat. = *causative.*
chap. = *chapter.*
comp. = *comparative.*
conj. = *conjunction.*
dat. = *dative.*
decl. = *declension.*
def. = *defective.*
dem. = *demonstrative.*
dep. (in vocabulary) = *deponent.*
dim. = *diminutive.*
e. g. = *exempli gratia* = *for example*
etc. = *et cetera* = *and so forth.*
et seq. = *et sequentia* = *and what follows.*
excl. = *exclamation.*
f. = *feminine.*
freq. = *frequentative.*
fut. = *future.*
gen. = *genitive.*
ibid. = *ibidem* = *in the same place.*
id. = *idem* = *the same.*
i. e. = *id est* = *that is.*
imp. = *imperative.*
impers. = *impersonal, impersonally.*
impf. = *imperfect.*
indecl. = *indeclinable.*
indef. = *indefinite.*
indic. = *indicative.*
inf. = *infinitive.*
interj. = *interjection.*
intr. = *intransitive.*
irr. = *irregular.*
lit. = *literally.*
m. = *masculine.*
MSS. = *manuscripts.*
n., neut. = *neuter.*
nom. = *nominative.*
num. = *numeral.*
p., pp. = *page, pages.*
part. = *participle.*
pass. = *passive.*
pers. = *person.*
pf. = *perfect.*
pl. = *plural.*
plpf. = *pluperfect.*
pred. = *predicate.*
prep. = *preposition.*
pres. = *present.*
pron. = *pronoun.*
rel. = *relative.*
sing. = *singular.*
subj. = *subjunctive.*
sup. = *superlative.*
trans. = *transitive.*
v. = *verb.*
voc. = *vocative.*
1, 2, 3, 4 with verbs = 1st, 2d, 3d, or 4th conjugation.

VOCABULARY.

QUANTITY. In this vocabulary the quantity of words is marked according to *prose* usage, as it is deemed unwise to unite poetic license and prose quantity in such a way as to create an impression in the mind of the student that vowels are indifferently long or short in certain syllables. "Common" marks of quantity are not employed; for example, final **o** is marked long, except in the few instances where it is short.

DERIVATION. In the derivation of words no attempt has been made to give ultimate or hypothetical roots. Only such aid is given in this direction as can be readily appreciated, applied, and remembered by a student possessing as little capacity for philological research as does the average boy or girl who reads Caesar.

IDIOMS. Very many of the more common idioms contained in the Table preceding the Vocabulary are repeated here.

THE LETTER J. The Vocabulary, consistently with the text, does not employ the letter j, but the consonant i. As an aid, however, to those pupils accustomed to the letter j, words containing the consonant i are also given (in parentheses) with the j; e. g. **abiungo** (or **abjungo**).

A. with proper names stands for *Aulus*.

a. d. = **ante diem.**

ā, ab, abs, prep. with abl., (**a** is used only before a consonant; **ab,** before a vowel or a consonant; **abs,** only with **te**), *from, by, on the side of, on, at.* — **a dextro cornu,** *on the right wing.* — **a tergo,** *in the rear.* Sometimes as adv. with abl. of degree of difference, *off;* as, **ab milibus passuum octo,** *eight miles off.* — See IDIOMS.

abditus, pf. pass. part. of **abdo.**

abdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, [**ab** + **do**], 3, a., *put away, remove, hide.*

abdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -dūctum, [**ab** + **duco**], 3, a., *withdraw, lead away.*

abeō, -īre, -īvī, (**-iī**), **-itum,** [**ab** + **eo**], irr., n., *go away, depart.*

abesse, pres. inf. of **absum.**

abfutūrus, fut. part. of **absum.**

abiciō (or **abjiciō**), **-icere, -iēcī, -iectum,** [**ab** + **iacio**], 3, a., *throw away, cast off, fling down, hurl.*

abiēs, -ietis, f., *a fir-tree, spruce.*

abiungō (or **abjungo**), **-iungere, -iunxī, -iunctum,** [**ab** + **iungo**], 3, a., *separate, detach, disjoin.*

abripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, [**ab** + **rapio**], 3, a., *take away by force, carry off, tear away.*

abscīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, [**abs + caedo**], 3, a., *cut off, lop off, cut away.*

absēns, part. of **absum,** used as an adj., *absent.* — **se absente,** *in his absence.*

absimilis, -e, [**ab + similis**], adj., *unlike.*

absistō, -sistere, -stitī, [**ab + sisto**], 3, n., *withdraw, go away, desist from, keep off from, leave off.*

abstineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, [**abs + teneo**], 2, a. and n., *hold at a distance, hold back; abstain from, refrain from, spare.*

abstrahō, -trahere, -traxī, -tractum, [**abs + traho**], 3, a., *drag* or *pull away, drag off, take away by force.*

absum, -esse, -fuī, [**ab + sum**], irr., n., *be distant, be absent* or *away from; be wanting* or *lacking; be exempt from.*

abundō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**ab + unda,** *a wave*], 1, n., *overflow; abound in, be rich in* or *well provided with.*

āc (atque), conj., *and.* [For other meanings and use, see **atque.**]

accēdō, -cēdere, -cēssī, -cēssum, [ad + cedo], 3, n., *move towards, approach; be added.* See IDIOMS.

accelerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ad + celer], 1, a. and n., *quicken, hurry, hasten, make haste.*

acceptus, pf. pass. part of accipio, used as an adj., *acceptable, welcome, beloved.*

accidō, -cidere, -cidī, [ad + cado], 3, n., *fall, fall to, befall, happen, occur, fall to the lot of, turn out.* Impers., **accidit,** *it happens.*

accīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, [ad + caedo], 3, a., *cut, cut into, fell.*

accipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, [ad + capio], 3, a., *take to one's self, receive, accept; hear, learn.*

acclīvis, -e, [**ad + clivus**], adj., *sloping upwards, rising, ascending.*

acclīvitās, -tātis, [**acclivis**], f., *upward slope, ascent, inclination.*

Accō, -ōnis, m., a chief of the Senones.

accommodātus, pf. pass. part. of accommodo. As an adj., *suited, adapted to, fit.*

accommodō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ad + commodus], 1, a., *fit, fit on, adjust.*

accūrātē [**accuratus, ad + cura**], adv., *carefully, with care, exactly.*

accurrō, -currere, -cucurrī or **-currī, -cursum,** [ad + curro], 3, n., *run to, run up to, hasten, rush up.*

accūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**ad + causa**], 1, a., *call to account, accuse, reproach, blame, censure.*

ācer, ācris, ācre, adj., *sharp, keen, violent.*

acerbē [acerbus], adv., *sharply, harshly; with discontent* or *sorrow.* — **si acerbius inopiam ferrent,** *if they found the scarcity too severe.*

acerbitās, -tātis, [**acerbus**], f., *harshness, bitterness, severity, hardship, sorrow, trouble;* pl. *sufferings.*

acerbus, -a, -um, [**acer**], adj., *bitter, harsh, cruel, severe, disagreeable.*

ācerrimē, superlative of **acriter.**

acervus, -ī, m., *a heap, pile.*

aciēs, -ēī, f., (old gen. **acie** occurs, ii. 23), *sharp point* or *edge* of a weapon; *keenness* or *fierceness* of the eye; *line* of an army, *line of battle, a battle.* — **convertere aciem,** *to face about.* — **acies media,** *the centre.*

acquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, [**ad + quaero**], 3, a., *gain, obtain, procure, acquire.*

ācriter [acer], adv., *sharply, fiercely, vigorously, courageously.* — **cum acriter resisteretur,** *when a vigorous resistance was made.*

actuārius, -a, -um, [ago], adj., *easily moved, swift.* — **navis actuaria,** *a swift sailer,* driven by both oars and sails.

āctus, pf. pass. part. of **ago.**

acuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum, [**acus,** *a needle*], 3, a., *sharpen.*

acūtus, pf. pass. part. of **acuo;** as an adj., *sharp, pointed.*

ad, prep. with acc. only, *to, towards, up to, in the vicinity of, according to, near to, next, among, at, to the number of, until, for.* — **ad multam noctem,** *till late at night.* — **ad Genavam,** *near,* or *in the vicinity of, Geneva.* — **ad extremum,** *at last, finally.* — **ad hunc modum,** *after this manner.* — **ad vesperum,** *towards evening.* — **ad unum,** *to a man.* Also as adv. with numerals, *about, nearly.* — **ad duodecim,** *about twelve.* Also see IDIOMS.

adāctus, pf. pass. part. of **adigo.**

adaequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**ad + aequus**], 1, a., *make equal to, bring up to a level with, become equal to, keep up with.* — **adaequare cursum,** *to keep pace with.*

adamō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**ad + amo**], 1, a., *conceive an affection for, love exceedingly, covet.*

adaugeō, -augēre, -auxī, -auctum, [**ad + augeo**], 2, a., *increase.*

addīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dīctum, [**ad + dico**], 3, a., *assent, hand over, assign, deliver, yield.*

addō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, [**ad + do**], 3, a., *give to, add, join to, make additions to.* — **addunt de Sabini morte,** *they tell him in addition about the death of Sabinus.*

addūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -dūctum, [**ad + duco**], 3, a., *lead to, bring, lead, draw, induce, influence.* — **in eam se consuetudinem adduxerunt,** *they have so trained themselves.*

adēmptus, pf. pass. part. of **adimo.**

adeō, -īre, -īvī or **-iī, -itum,** [**ad + eo**], irr., n. and a., *go to, approach, advance, reach, visit, attack.*

adeō, [**ad + eo,** from **is**], adv., *to that point, so, so much, so far, to that degree.*

adeptus, pf. part. of **adipiscor.**

adequitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**ad + eques**], 1, n., *ride towards, ride up to.*

adhaereō, -haerēre, -haesī, -haesum, [**ad + haereo,** *cling*], 2, n., *stick to, cling to.*

adhaerēscō, -haerēscere, -haesī, -haesum, [**ad + haeresco**], 3, n., *stick to, adhere; remain clinging* or *hanging.*

adhibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitum, [**ad + habeo**], 2, a., *bring to, bring in, admit, call in, invite, summon, use, employ.*

adhortor, -ārī, -ātus, [**ad + hortor**], 1, dep., a., *encourage, rally, incite.*

adhūc, [**ad + huc**], adv., *hitherto, up to this time, as yet, still.*

Adiatunnus, -ī, m., a chief of the Sontiates. See iii. 22, N. to p. 103, 2.

adiciō, (or **adjicio**), **-icere, -iēcī, -iectum,** [**ad + iacio**], 3, a., *throw to, fling, hurl, throw up to, join to, add.*

adigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, [**ad + ago**], 3, a., *drive to, drive home, drive in, move up, throw up to; bind* (by oath), *compel.* — **omni-**

bus ad iusiurandum adactis, *all being bound by an oath.*

adimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, [ad + emo], 3, a., *take away, destroy, cut off, remove.*

adipiscor, -ipiscī, -eptus, [ad + apiscor, *seize upon*], 3, dep., *gain, obtain, acquire.*

aditus, -ūs, [ad + eo], m., *approach, access, a going to, means* or *right of access.* — **facilem aditum habere,** *to be easy of access.* — **aditum sermonis,** *access for conversation.*

adiaceō (or **adjaceo**), **-iacēre, -iacuī,** [ad + iaceo], 2, n., *lie near, border on, be adjacent.*

adiūdicō (or **adjūdico**), **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** [ad + iudico], 1, a., *adjudge, award, assign.*

adiungō (or **adjungo**), **-iungere, -iunxī, -iunctum,** [ad + iungo], 3, a., *join to, add, unite.*

adiūtor (or **adjutor**), **-ōris,** [ad-iuvo], m., *an assistant, helper, mediator.*

adiuvō (or **adjuvo**), **-iuvāre, -iūvī, -iūtum,** [ad + iuvo], 1, a., *help, aid, assist, support.*

Admagetobriga, -ae, f., a town in Gaul. i. 31.

admātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ad + maturus], 1, a., *ripen, mature, hasten, precipitate.*

administer, -trī, [ad + minister, *servant*], m., *assistant, servant.*

administrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [administer], 1, a., *serve, assist, perform, carry on, manage, execute, superintend, direct, arrange for.*

admīror, -ārī, -ātus, [ad + miror], 1, dep., a. and n., *wonder at, admire, be surprised at.* — **maximè admirandum videbatur,** *it seemed most surprising.*

admissus, pf. pass. part. of **admitto.** — **equo admisso,** *at full gallop.*

admittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, [ad + mitto], 3, a., *allow, permit, admit, commit.* — **admittere facinus,** *become guilty of a crime.* — **admittere dedecus,** *permit the disgrace.*

admodum [ad + modus], adv., lit. *up to the measure, to a degree; exceedingly, very much, especially, very;* with numbers, *fully, at least.*

admoneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, [ad + moneo], 2, a., *warn, advise, remind.*

adolēscō, -olēscere, -olēvī, -ultum, [ad + olesco, *grow*], 3, n., *grow up, reach adult age.*

adorior, -orīrī, -ortus, [ad + orior], 4, dep., *rise up against, attack, assail; attempt.*

adortus, pf. part. of **adorior,** *having attacked, attacking.*

adscīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītum, [ad + scisco, *approve,* after examination], 3, a., *approve, admit, receive, adopt.*

adsum, -esse, -adfuī (affuī), [ad + sum], irr., n., *be near, be close at hand, be present; assist, aid.*

Aduātuca, -ae, f., a fortress nearly in the centre of the Eburones, perhaps identical with *Tongern,* S. W. of Maestricht.

Aduātucī, -ōrum, m., a people of northeast Gaul descended from the Cimbri and Teutones. They promised a contingent of 19,000 men in the great Belgic insurrection, but on hearing of the defeat of the Nervii returned home.

adulēscēns, -entis, [adulesco], c., *a young man* (or *woman*), *a youth.*

adulēscentia, -ae, [adulescens], f., *youth, the state* or *age of youth.*

adulēscentulus, -ī, (dim. of **adulescens**), m., *a very young man, a mere youth, a stripling.*

adventus, -ūs, [ad + venio], m., *arrival, coming, approach.*

adversārius, -ī, [ad + verto], m., one turned towards or facing another, *an adversary, opponent, foe, enemy.*

adversus, -a, -um, (part. of **adverto**), adj. (lit. *turned to* or *towards*), *in front, opposite, unfavorable, adverse, unsuccessful.* — **adversis hostibus occurrunt,** *they meet the enemy face to face.* — **in adversum os,** *full in the face.* — **adverso flumine,** *up the stream.*

adversus, prep. with acc. only, *opposite to, against.*

advertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, [ad + verto], 3, a., *turn to* or *towards;* especially in the phrase, **animum advertere,** *perceive, notice, observe.*

advocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ad + voco], 1, a., *call, summon.*

advolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ad + volo, *fly*], 1, n., *fly at* or *to, hurry forward, rush upon, pounce upon.*

aedificium, -ī, [aedifico], n., *building.*

aedificō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [aedes, *house*, **+ facio],** 1, a., *build a house, build, make, construct.*

Aeduus, -a, -um, adj., *Aeduan;* as noun, *an Aeduan.* In pl. *the Aedui,* a powerful Gallic tribe, living between the upper waters of the Saône and Loire. Their chief town was Bibracte, now Autun. At one time they were held in subjection by the Sequani, but were set free by Caesar. Their chief officer was called Vergobret; he held office for one year, and had the power of life and death over the people.

aeger, -gra, -grum, adj., *sick, disabled; weary, feeble.*

aegerrimē, sup. of **aegre,** adv., *with very great difficulty.*

aegrē [aeger], adv., *with difficulty, scarcely, hardly.*

Aemilius, -ī, m., *L. Aemilius,* a cavalry officer in charge of a decuria of Gallic horsemen.

aequāliter [aequalis, *equal*], adv., *evenly, regularly, uniformly.*

aequinoctium, -ī, [aequus + nox], n., *the equinox,* i. e., the time of year when day and night are of equal length.

aequitās, -tātis, [aequus], f., *evenness, justice, fairness.* — **animi aequitate,** *in a contented spirit.*

aequō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [aequus], 1, a., *equalize, make equal, put on a level.*

aequus, -a, -um, adj., *equal, level, just, fair, equitable, reasonable.* — **aequo animo,** *without anxiety,* [Engl. *equanimity*]. — **aequo Marte,** *in a contest on an equal footing, in a fair* or *equal fight.*

aerāria, -ae, [aerarius], f., *a copper mine.*

aerārius, -a, -um, [aes], adj., *belonging to copper* or *bronze.*

aereus, -a, -um, [aes], adj., *made of copper* or *bronze.*

aes, aeris, n., *copper, bronze; money.* — **aes alienum,** *debt,* i. e., another's money, money owed another.

aestās, -tātis, f., *summer.*

aestimātiō, -ōnis, [aestimo], f. *valuation, estimation, esteem; value, price.*

aestimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [aes], 1, a., *estimate, value, reckon; regard, judge, determine.*

aestīvus, -a, -um, [aestas], adj., *of summer.* — **tempus aestivum,** *summer, summer time.*

aestuārium, -ī, [aestus], n., *a place left bare at low water, a marsh, estuary.*

aestus, -ūs, m., (lit. *burning* or *boiling*); applied to heat, and to the waves; *heat, tide.* — **cum ex alto se aestus incitavisset,** *at flood tide.* — **aestu minuente,** *at ebb tide.*

aetās, -tātis, [for **aevitas,** from **aevum,** *age*], f., *age, old age.*

aeternus, -a, -um, [contraction for **aeviternus,** from **aevum,** *age*], adj., *everlasting, eternal, unbroken, perpetual.*

afferō, -ferre, attulī, allātum, [ad + fero], irr., a., *bring, present, bring cause, cause, occasion, produce, allege.*

afficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, [ad + facio], 3, a., *do something to, affect, treat, visit with.* — **supplicio (poena) afficere,** *to punish.* — **magno dolore affici,** *to be greatly annoyed* or *mortified.*

affīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxum, [ad + figo, *fix*], 3, a., *fix on, attach to, fasten upon.*

affingō, -fingere, -finxī, -fictum, [ad + fingo], 3, a., *invent, add falsely.*

affīnitās, -tātis, [ad + finis], f., *relationship* by marriage, *kinship, connection.*

affirmātiō, -ōnis, [affirmo, *assert*], f., *declaration, assurance, assertion.*

affīxus, pf. pass. part. of **affigo,** *fastened upon, attached to.*

afflictō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, (freq. of **affligo**), 1, a., *knock* or *dash against, toss* or *dash about, damage, trouble, strand, wreck.*

afflīgō, -flīgere, -flīxī, -flīctum, [ad + fligo, *strike*], 3, a., *dash against, cast* or *knock down, collide, shatter.*

affore (= affutūrus esse), fut. infin. of **adsum.**

Africus, -ī, m., (properly an adj. agreeing with **ventus** understood), *the southwest wind,* still called affrico by the Italians.

Agedincum, -ī, n., the capital of the Senones, on the Yonne, a tributary of the Seine; now called *Sens.*

ager, agrī, m., *land, a field, country, territory;* plur., *lands, territory.* — **nihil agri,** *no land.*

agger, -geris, [ad + gero], m., *a pile, mound, rampart, mole, dike, materials for a mound,* etc. See p. 35. — **aggerem petere,** *to get materials for the mound.* — **aggerem exstruere,** *to raise a mound.* — **multo aggere,** *with plenty of earth.*

aggredior, -gredī, -gressus, [ad + gradior, *walk, go*], 3, dep., *go to, go against, attack.* [English *aggressive.*]

aggregō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ad + grex, *flock*], 1, a., *bring together* into a flock, *assemble, attach one's self to, join.* — **se aggregare,** *to attach one's self to, to cluster round.*

agitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ago], 1, a., *drive, trouble, vex; propose, discuss, consider.*

agmen, -minis, [ago], n., anything set in motion, *an army on the march, column* (marching); *the main line, the line of march.* See pp. 29–31. — **novissimum agmen,** *the rear.* — **primum agmen,** *the van.*

agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, 3, a. and n., *set in motion, drive, drive away* or *forward, pursue, move forward, extend; do, act, transact,*

perform, manage; of time, *spend; treat, negotiate, plead, express.* — **agere conventum,** *to hold court.* — **agere gratias,** *to thank.* — **agere vineas,** *to bring up the vineae.* — **agere cuniculos,** *to extend the mines.* — **agere hiemem,** *to spend the winter.*

agricultūra, -ae, [ager + colo], f. *agriculture, farming, husbandry.*

alacer, -cris, -cre, adj., *active, eager, quick, impetuous, ardent, spirited, fierce.*

alacritās, -tātis, [alacer], f., *ardor, spirit, eagerness, zeal, readiness.*

ālārius, -a, -um, [āla, *wing*], adj., *on* or *at the wings.* Pl. **alarii,** *the allies,* who were placed on the wings of the army.

albus, -a, -um, adj., *white.* — **album plumbum,** *tin.* v. 12.

alcēs, -is, f., *the elk.* vi. 27.

Alēsia, -ae, f., the chief town of the Mandubii, in Central Gaul, famous for its siege by Caesar; now called *Alise St. Reine.*

aliās [alius], adv., *elsewhere; at another time.* — **alias . . . alias,** *at one time . . . at another; partly . . . partly.*

aliēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [alienus], 1, a., *make another's, alienate, estrange, take away.* — **alienata mente,** *deprived of reason.* vi. 41.

aliēnus, -a, -um, [alius], adj., *belonging to another, another's; strange, foreign, hostile; unsuitable, ill-adapted, disadvantageous, unfavorable.* — **non alienum videtur,** *it does not seem out of place,* or *foreign to the subject.* vi. 11. — **aes alienum,** *debt.* — **alienissimus,** as noun, *an entire stranger.*

aliō [alius], adv., *elsewhere.* vi. 22.

aliquamdiū [aliquis + diu], adv., *for some time, some time.*

aliquandō [alius + quando], adv., *at some time or other, at length, sometime, sometimes.*

aliquantō [aliquantus], adv., *somewhat, considerably, rather.*

aliquantus, -a, -um, [alius + quantus], adj., *somewhat, considerable, some;* as noun, *somewhat, a great deal.* — **aliquantum itineris,** *some distance.*

aliquis, -qua, -quid, [alius + quis], and **aliquī,** -qua, -quod, [alius + qui], indef. pron. [The usual distinction in the use of these forms is that **aliquis,** -quid are used substantively and **aliquī,** -quod adjectively], *some one or other, some, any one, anything, any.* — **aliquid novi consilii,** *some new scheme or other.* — **aliquid calamitatis,** *some disaster.* — **aliquid sublevare,** *to help somewhat.*

aliquot [alius + quot], indef. indecl. adj., *some, several.*

aliter [alius], adv., *otherwise, differently.* — **habere se aliter ac,** *to be other than* or *different from what.*

alius, -a, -ud, (gen. alīus), adj., *another, other, different, else.* **alius . . . alius,** *one . . . one, another . . . another;* — pl. *some, . . . others.* — **alia re,** *with anything else.* — **alius alia causa illata,** *one alleging one reason, another, another.* — **longe aliam atque,** *very different from.* — **alio atque oportuerit,** *other than was proper.*

allātus, pf. pass. part. of **affero.**

alliciō, -licere, -lēxī, -lectum, [ad + lacio, *entice*], 3, a., *entice, allure to.*

Allobroges, -um, m., (acc. pl. **Allobrogas,** i. 14, vii. 64), a Gallic people, separated from the Helvetii by the Rhone.

alō, alere, aluī, alitum and altum, 3, a., *nourish, increase, maintain, keep, rear, foster, raise.*

Alpēs, -ium, 3, f., *the Alps.* These mountains separate Italy from France, Switzerland, and Germany. They were divided into four parts: 1. *The Maritime Alps,* from the sea-coast to Mt. Viso. 2. *The Cottian Alps,* from Mt. Viso to Mt. Cenis. 3. *The Graian Alps,* from Mt. Cenis to Aosta. 4. *The Pennine Alps,* from Mt. Blanc to the Great St. Bernard. West of the Pennine range other names and divisions occur.

alter, -era, -erum, (gen. **alterīus**), adj., *one of two, the other, a second.* — **alter . . . alter,** *the one . . . the other.* — **alteri . . . alteri,** *the one party . . . the other.* — **alter e quibus,** *one of whom.*

alternus, -a, -um, [alter], adj., *alternate, one after the other, mutual.*

altitūdō, -inis, [altus], f., *height, depth, thickness.*

altum, -ī, [altus], n., *the deep, deep water, the open sea.*

altus, -a, -um, [alo], adj., *high, deep.*

alūta, -ae, f., *tanned skin, soft leather,* made soft by means of alum. iii. 13.

ambactus, -ī, m., [Keltic word], *a vassal, dependant.* vi. 15.

Ambarrī, -ōrum, m., *Aedui Ambarri,* a tribe on the Saône closely related with the Aedui.

Ambiānī, -ōrum, m., a small tribe in Northern Gaul. Their chief town was Samarobriva, now *Amiens.*

Ambibariī, -ōrum, m., a small tribe in Normandy. vii. 75.

Ambiliātī, -ōrum, m., a small tribe in Northern Gaul.

Ambiorix, -igis, m., a chief of the Eburones.

Ambivaretī, -ōrum, m., a tribe in Northern Gaul.

Ambivarītī, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe along the Meuse. iv. 9.

ambō, -ae, -ō, adj., *both.*

āmentia, -ae, [a + mens], f., *madness, senselessness, folly.*

āmentum, -ī, (contraction for **agmentum**), n., *a thong* or *strap,* used in hurling javelins. v. 48.

amfractus, -ūs, [amb- + frango], m., *a winding path.* vii. 46.

amīcē [amicus], adv., *kindly.*

amīcitia, -ae, [amicus], f., *friendship, alliance.*

amīcus, -a, -um, [amo], adj., *friendly, faithful, well-disposed.*

amīcus, -ī, [amo], m., *a friend, an ally.*

āmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, [a + mitto], 3, a., *send away, lose, let go.* [*love.*

amor, -ōris, [amo], m., *affection,*

amplē [amplus], adv., *largely, abundantly, liberally.*

amplificō, -āre -āvī, -ātum, [amplus + facio], 1, a., *make large, increase, enhance, extend.*

amplitūdō, -inis, [amplus], f., *size, bulk, greatness, dignity.*

amplius[amplus], adv., (comp. of **ample**), *more, further.* — **amplius obsidum,** *more hostages.*

amplus, -a, -um, adj., *large, spacious, considerable, extensive, distinguished, splendid, noble.*

an, interrog. conj., *or, or rather, or indeed.* In direct questions it is frequently not translated; in double questions it is generally preceded by **utrum** or **-ne.** — **-ne . . . an,** or **utrum . . . an,** *whether . . . or.*

Anartes, -ium, m., a Dacian tribe, on the Theiss. vi. 25.

Ancalītes, -um, m., a British tribe, near Oxford, that surrendered to Caesar. v. 21.

anceps, -cipitis, [ambo + caput], *two-headed, twofold, double; doubtful.*

ancora, -ae, f., *an anchor.* — **ancoram iacere,** *to anchor.* — **in ancoris,** *at anchor.* — **tollere ancoram,** *to weigh anchor.*

Andecumborius, -ī, m., a leading man among the Remi. ii. 3.

Andes, -ium, m., a people of Central Gaul, north of the Loire. They have given their name to the province of *Anjou.*

angulus, -ī, m., *an angle, corner.*

angustē **[angustus],** adv., *closely, narrowly, in close quarters, scantily.*

angustiae, -ārum, [angustus], f., *a narrow part, defile, narrowness, narrows; straits, difficulties, perplexity; scarcity.*

angustus, -a, -um, [ango, *squeeze*], adj., *limited, confined, narrow, close, steep.* — **esse in angusto,** *to be in a critical condition, at a crisis.*

anima, -ae, f., *breath, soul, life.*

animadvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, [animus + ad + verto], 3, a., *turn the mind to, notice, observe, perceive.* — **in aliquem,** *to punish,* i. e. "attend to."

animal, -ālis, [anima], n., *a living thing, an animal.*

animus, -ī, m., *mind, disposition, feelings, courage, will, spirit, temper, resolution.* — **bono animo in,** *favorably disposed towards.* — **animum offendere,** *to wound the feelings.* — **esse in animo,** *to intend.* — **relinquit animus Sextium,** *Sextius faints.*

annōtinus, -a, -um, [annus], adj., *a year old, of the year before, last year's.*

annus, -ī, m., *a year.*

annuus, -a, -um, [annus], adj., *annual, annually, year by year.*

anser, -eris, m., *a goose.*

ante, (1) as adv., *previously, before, in front.* — **paucis ante diebus,** *a few days before.* (2) as prep. with acc. only, *before, in front of, in advance of.* — **ante diem,** see N. to p. 50, 9.

anteā, adv., *previously, before, once.*

antecēdō, -cēdere, -cēssī, -cēssum, [ante + cedo], 3, n. and a., *go in front* or *forward, get the start, precede, surpass, excel.*

antecursor, -ōris, [ante + curro], m., one who runs in front, *a courier;* pl. *the advanced guard, the pioneers.*

anteferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, [ante + fero], irr., a., *carry in front, place before, prefer;* pass., *become first, have the superiority.*

antemna, -ae, f., *a sail-yard.*

antepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, [ante + pono], 3, a., *place in front, prefer.*

antequam, conj., *before.*

antevertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, [ante + verto], 3, a., *place before, prefer.*

antīquitus [antiquus], adv., *of old, in former times, long ago, anciently.*

antīquus, -a, -um, [ante], adj., *old, former, ancient.*

Antistius, -ī, m., *Caius Antistius Regīnus,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

Antōnius, -ī, m., (1) *Marcus Antonius,* usually known as Mark Antony. He was one of Caesar's lieutenants at Alesia, and played a very important part in Roman history; (2) *Gaius Antonius,* a brother of Marcus, also a lieutenant of Caesar.

aperiō, -perīre, -peruī, pertum, 4, a., *open, disclose, uncover.*
apertē [**apertus**], adv., *openly, clearly.*
apertus, -a, -um, (part. of **aperio,** used as adj.), *open, exposed, unprotected, undefended.* — **loca aperta,** *open country.* — **latere aperto,** *on the exposed flank.*
Apollō, -inis, m., *Apollo,* a god, son of Jupiter and Latona, identified by Caesar with a Gallic divinity. Apollo was god of poetry, music, archery, and healing. vi 17.
apparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**ad** + **paro**], 1, a., *provide, prepare, get ready, equip.*
appellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**ad** + **pello,** *bring one's self* to another in order to address him]. 1, a., *call to, call by name, name, style, address, appeal to.*
appellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, [**ad** + **pello**], 3, a., *drive to, bring;* of ships, *make for, land.*
appetō, -petere, -petīvī or **-petiī, -petītum,** [**ad** + **peto**], 3, a. and n., *aim at, desire, seek; approach.*
Appius, -ī, m., a Roman praenomen.
applicō, -plicāre, -plicāvī or **-plicuī, -plicātum** or **-plicitum,** [**ad** + **plico,** *fold*], *attach; lean against.*
apportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**ad** + **porto**], 1, a., *carry to, bring, convey, bring in.* v. 1.
approbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**ad** + **probo**], 1, a., *approve of, assent to, favor.* vii. 21.
appropinquō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**ad** + **propinquus**], *approach, come near.*
appulsus, pf. pass. part. of **appello** (3d conjugation).
Apr. = **Aprilis.**

Aprīlis, -e, [**aperio**], **adj.,** *of April.*
aptus, -a, -um, adj., *fitted, adapted, suited, fit, suitable, appropriate.*
apud, prep. with acc. only, *at, with, near, close to, by, among, in the presence of.*
aqua, -ae, f., *water.* — **mensurae ex aqua,** *water-clocks.* — **aqua et igni interdicere,** *to forbid the use of fire and water = to banish.*
aquātiō, -ōnis, [**aqua**], f., *getting water.*
aquila, -ae, f., *an eagle.* As the eagle was the chief ensign of the Roman legion, **aquila** came to mean *a standard.*
Aquilēia, -ae, f., a city in upper Italy. See N. to p. 51, 33.
aquilifer, -erī, [**aquila** + **fero**], m., *standard-bearer.* See **aquila.**
Aquītānia, -ae, f., *Aquitania,* one of the three chief divisions of Gaul. See p. 38.
Aquītānus, -a, -um, adj., *of Aquitania.* As a noun, *an Aquitanian;* pl. m., *the Aquitani.*
Arar, -aris, (acc. **-im**), m., *the Saône.* It rises in the Vosges, and flows slowly through the territory once occupied by the Aedui and Sequani into the Rhone.
arbiter, -trī, m., *a witness; arbiter, umpire, commissioner.* — **arbitros dare,** *to appoint commissioners.*
arbitrium, -ī, [**arbiter**], n., *decision, judgment, will, power.*
arbitror, ārī, -ātus sum, [**arbiter**], 1, dep., *think, suppose, consider.*
arbor, -oris, f., *a tree.*
arcessō, -sere, -sīvī, -sītum, [**accedo**], 3, a., *send for, fetch, summon, call in, invite.*
ardeō, -ēre, arsī, arsum, 2, n., *be hot* or *in a blaze; be eager, be excited.*

Arduenna, -ae, f., *the Ardennes*, a great forest in Gaul west of the Rhine.

arduus, -a, -um, adj., *steep, high, difficult.*

Arecomicī, -ōrum, m., a division of the Volcae.

Aremoricus, see **Armoricus.**

argentum, -ī, n., *silver, silver-ware.*

argilla, -ae, f., *clay.*

āridus, -a, -um, [areo, *be dry*], adj., *dry;* **aridum** as a noun, *dry land, shore.*

ariēs, -ietis, m., *a battering-ram*, so called because the head of the beam was capped with iron in the shape of a ram's head. See p. 35. Also *a prop, buttress, support.*

Ariovistus, -ī, m., king of the Germans. He entered Gaul, and subdued several tribes, but was defeated by Caesar. See N. to p. 62, 31.

Aristius, -ī, m., *Marcus Aristius*, a tribune of the soldiers.

arma, -ōrum, n. pl., *arms, weapons, equipment, outfit* (of a ship). — **non poterant esse in armis,** *they could not bear arms.*

armāmenta, -ōrum, [armo], n. pl., *implements, fittings, tackle, rigging.*

armātūra, -ae, [armo], f., *armor, equipment.* — **levis armaturae Numidae,** *light-armed Numidians.*

armō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [arma], 1, a., *equip, arm, fit out* (a ship).

Armoricus, -a, -um [ar, *on* + mor, *the sea*, Keltic], adj., *Armorican.* The Armorican states in Gaul comprised modern *Brittany* and part of *Normandy.* See N. to p. 96, 7.

Arpinēius, -ī, m., *Gaius Arpineius*, a Roman knight.

arripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, [ad + rapio], 3, a., *snatch, seize, appropriate.*

arroganter [arrogans, *arrogant*], adv., *insolently, arrogantly, haughtily, presumptuously.* i. 40.

arrogantia, -ae, [arrogans], f., *arrogance, insolence, haughtiness.*

ars, artis, f., *skill, cleverness, art, science.*

artē, [artus], adv., *closely, tightly.*

articulus, -ī, [dim. of **artus,** *joint*], m., *a small joint, a joint, a knot.*

artificium, -ī, [artifex, *artist*], n., *an art, trade; a trick, craft, cunning.*

artus, -a, -um, [arceo, *shut up*], adj., *dense, close.*

Arvernus, -a, -um, adj., *of the Arverni, Arvernian.* Pl. m., *the Arverni,* a leading tribe in Central Gaul. Their capital was Gergovia. The modern name of their territory is *Auvergne.*

arx, arcis, f., *a fortress, stronghold, citadel.*

ascendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsum, [ad + scando, *climb*], 3, a. and n., *ascend, mount, climb up.*

ascēnsus, -ūs, [ascendo], m., *an ascending, ascent; means of approach.*

aspectus, -ūs, [aspicio, *look at*], m., *appearance, look, sight.*

asper, -era, -erum, adj., *rough, sharp, uneven; wild, fierce.*

assiduus, -a, -um, [ad+sedeo, *sit*], adj., *incessant, constant, diligent.*

assistō, -sistere, -astitī, [ad + sisto, *place, stand*], 3, n., *stand by* or *near; support, assist.*

assuēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, [ad + suesco + facio], 3, a., *accustom, familiarize, train.*

assuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum, [ad + suesco, *become accustomed*], 3, n., *become accustomed to.*

at, conj., *but, yet, at least.*

atque, ac, conj., *and also, and even, and;* after words of likeness or unlikeness, *as, than.* — **idem atque** or **par atque,** *the same as.* — **aliam atque,** *other than.* — **similis atque,** *just as.* — **contra atque,** *contrary to what.* — **simul ac,** *as soon as.*

Atrebas, -atis, 3, m., *an Atrebatian;* pl. m., *the Atrebătes,* a people in northeastern Gaul. Their capital was *Nemetocenna,* now *Arras.*

Atrius, -ī, m., an officer in Caesar's army, left to look after the fleet while Caesar invaded Britain.

attexō, -texere, -texuī, -textum, [ad + **texo,** *weave*], 3, a., *weave to* or *on, add, join.* v. 40.

attingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tactum, [ad + **tango**], 3, a., *touch upon, border on, touch, reach.*

attribuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum, [ad + tribuo], 3, a., *allot, assign, appoint.*

attulī, see **affero**

auctor, -ōris, [augeo], m., lit., *producer* or *author: an adviser, promoter, contriver, originator, instigator.* — **auctore hoste,** *at the suggestion of the enemy.*

auctōritās, -tātis, [augeo], f., *influence, weight, prestige, authority, power.*

auctus, -a, -um, part. of **augeo,** as adj., *increased, advanced; distinguished.*

audācia, -ae, [audax], f., *boldness, daring; insolence, impudence.*

audācter [audax], adv., *boldly, courageously, fearlessly; presumptuously;* comp. **audacius,** sup. **audacissime.**

audāx, -ācis, [audeo], adj, *bold, spirited, courageous, fearless; audacious.*

audeō, audēre, ausus sum, 2, semi-dep., *venture, dare, risk; attempt.*

audiēns, -entis, pres. part. of audio, as adj., *obedient.* — **dicto audiens,** *obedient* (to the word of command).

audiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, 4, a., *hear, hear of, listen to.*

audītiō, -ōnis, [audio], f., *report, rumor, hearsay.*

augeō, augēre, auxī, auctum, 2, a., *increase, enlarge, magnify, add to; advance.*

Aulercus, -ī, m., *an Aulercan;* pl. *the Aulerci,* a people of Central Gaul, divided into four tribes: 1. *Aulerci Brannovīces;* 2. *Aulerci Cenomāni;* 3. *Aulerci Eburovīces;* 4. *Aulerci Diablintres.*

Aulus, -ī, m., a Roman praenomen.

aurīga, -ae, [aurea, *a headstall* + ago], m., *a charioteer, driver.*

auris, -is, f., *an ear.*

Auruncülēius, -ī, m., *Lucius Aurunculeius Cotta,* a lieutenant of Caesar.

Auscī, -ōrum, m., a people in Aquitania. iii. 27.

ausus, pf. part. of **audeo.**

aut, conj., *or;* **aut . . . aut,** *either . . . or.*

autem, conj., *but, moreover, yet; also, now.*

autumnus, -ī, [augeo], m., *autumn.* vii. 35.

auxiliāris, -e, [auxilium], adj., *auxiliary;* pl., *auxiliaries.*

auxilior, -ārī, -ātus sum [auxilium], 1, dep., *assist, help.*

auxilium, -ī, [augeo], n., *help, aid, assistance, relief, remedy;* pl., *auxiliary troops, auxiliaries,* as opposed to the heavy-armed Roman legionaries.

Avāricēnsis, -e, adj., *of Avaricum.*

Avāricum, -ī, n., a town of the Bituriges, in Central Gaul, now *Bourges.*

avāritia, -ae, [**avārus,** *greedy*], f., *greed, avarice, covetousness.*

āvehō, -vehere, -vēxī, -vēctum, [**a + veho**], 3, a., *carry off* or *away.* vii. 55.

āversus, -a, -um, part. of **āverto,** used as adj., *turned away; behind, in the rear.* — **aversum hostem,** *a retreating enemy,* or *an enemy in flight.* — **aversi ab hoste circumveniri,** *to be surrounded in the rear by the enemy* (i. e., with their backs to the enemy).

āvertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, [**a + verto**], 3, a., *turn away* or *aside, avert, repulse, divert, alienate, estrange.*

avis, -is, f., *a bird.* iv. 10.

avus, -ī, m., *a grandfather.*

Axona, -ae, f., a river of Northern Gaul, flowing into the Isara (*Oise*), and now called *Aisne.*

B.

Bacēnis, -is, (sc. **silva**), f., a forest in Germany, separating the Suebi from the Cherusci. vi. 10.

Baculus, -ī, m., *Sextius Baculus,* a centurion in Caesar's army.

Baleāris, -e, adj., *Balearic.* The Balearic isles (Majorca, Minorca, Iviza, and two smaller islands) lie in the Mediterranean off the coast of Spain; they were conquered by the Romans B. C. 123. The inhabitants were noted slingers.

balteus, -ī, m., *a belt, a sword-belt.* See p. 24. v. 44.

Balventius, -ī, m., *Titus Balventius,* a brave Roman centurion. v. 35.

barbarus, -a, -um, adj., *foreign, wild, savage, uncivilized, barbarous.* As noun, pl. m., *strangers, foreigners, barbarians,* i. e., the Gauls or Germans.

Basilus, -ī, m., *L. Minucius Basilus,* one of Caesar's officers; afterwards one of the conspirators against him.

Batavī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Batavians;* they lived on an island formed by the Rhine, Meuse, and Waal. iv. 10.

Belgae, -ārum, m. pl., *the Belgians,* a warlike people, of Keltic and German origin. They inhabited the country between the Seine, the Marne, and the Rhine. See N. to p. 78, 17.

Belgium, -ī, n., the land of the Belgae, *Gallia Belgica.*

bellicōsus, -a, -um, [**bellicus**], adj., lit., *full of war; warlike, fierce.*

bellicus, -a, -um, [**bellum**], adj., *of war, martial, military.*

bellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**bellum**], 1, n., *wage* or *carry on war, fight.*

Bellovacī, -ōrum, m. pl., a powerful tribe of the Belgae. Their territory was represented by the former diocese of *Beauvais.*

bellum, -ī, (for **duellum,** from **duo**), n., *war, warfare.* — **bellum gerere,** *to wage war.* — **bellum inferre,** *to make war.*

bene [**bonus**], adv., *well, ably, successfully.* Comp. **melius,** sup. **optime.**

beneficium, -ī, [**bene + facio**], n., *kindness, favor, service, benefit.*

benevolentia, -ae, [**bene + volo**], f., *good-will, friendly disposition, friendship.*

Bibracte, -is, n., the capital of the Aedui, afterwards called Augustodunum, and now *Autun.*

Bibrax, -actis, f., a town of the Remi, now called *Bièvre.* ii. 6.

Bibrocī, -ōrum, m. pl., a British tribe who surrendered to Caesar.

biduum, -ī, [bis + dies], n., *a space of two days, two days.*

biennium, -ī, [bis + annus], n., *a space of two years, two years' time.*

Bigerriōnes, -ōnum, m. pl., a people of Aquitania, whose territory is now called *la Bigorre.*

bīnī, -ae, -a, [bis], distrib. adj., *two by two, two each, two apiece for each, by twos.*

bipedālis, -e, [bis + pes], measuring *two feet* in width, length, or height; *two feet long, wide,* or *thick.* iv. 17.

bipertītō [bis + pars], adv., *in two divisions.*

bis [for duis, from duo], num. adv., *twice.*

Bituriges, -um, m. pl., a tribe in Central Gaul, separated from the Aedui by the Loire. Their capital was Avaricum, now *Bourges.*

Boduōgnātus, -ī, m , a leader of the Nervii. ii. 23.

Bōia (or **Bōja**), **-ae,** f., the country of the Boii.

Bōiī (or **Bōji**), **-ōrum,** m. pl., a people widely diffused over Central Europe, whose name survives in *Bohemia.* A portion joined the Helvetii, went with them into Gaul, and after their defeat were absorbed in the Aedui.

bonitās, -tātis, [bonus], f., *goodness, excellence.* — **bonitas agrorum,** *fertility.*

bonus, -a, -um, adj., (comp. **melior,** sup. **optimus**), *good, advantageous; pleasant, well-disposed, friendly.* — **bono animo esse,** *to be favorably disposed.* As noun, **bonum,** n., *profit, advantage;* pl., **bona, -orum,** *goods, property.*

bōs, bovis, c., *an ox, a cow.*

brāchium, -ī, n., *an arm.*

Brannovīces, -um, see **Aulerci.**

Brannoviī, -ōrum, m. pl., a Gallic tribe in Central Gaul, tributary to the Aedui. vii. 75.

Bratuspantium, -ī, n., a town of the Bellovaci, probably the modern *Breteuil.* ii. 13.

brevis, -e, adj., *short.*

brevitās, -tātis, [brevis], f., *shortness, smallness, small stature.*

breviter [brevis], adv., *shortly, briefly, with few words.* vii. 54.

Britannī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Britons.*

Britannia, -ae, f., *Britain.*

Britannicus, -a, -um, adj., *of Britain, Britannic, British.* v. 4.

brūma, -ae, [contr. from **brevissima, sc. dies**], f., *the winter solstice; winter.* v. 13.

Brūtus, -ī, m., *Decimus Brutus,* one of Caesar's most active officers. Afterwards he became a leading member of the conspiracy against Caesar. Cf. N. to p. 97, 37.

C.

C. as an abbreviation stands for *Gaius.* As a designation of number = **centum** = 100.

Cabillōnum, -ī, n., an important town of the Aedui on the Arar, now *Chalons-sur-Saône* in Burgundy.

Cabūrus, -ī, m., *Gaius Valerius Caburus,* the father of C. Valerius Donnotaurus.

cacūmen, -inis, n., *point, end, peak, summit.*

cadāver, -eris, [cado], n., *corpse, dead body.*

cadō, cadere, cecidī, cāsum, 3, n., *fall, be slain, die.*

Cadurcī, -ōrum, m. pl., a tribe in Aquitania; their capital was Divōna, now *Cahors*. vii. 4, etc.

caedēs, -is, [**caedo**], f., *slaughter, destruction, murder.*

caedō, caedere, cecīdī, caesum, [causat. from **cado**], 3, a., *cut, fell, slay, cut down, cut to pieces, vanquish.*

caelestis, -e, [**caelum,** *the sky*], adj., *celestial, heavenly.* — pl. m., as noun, *the gods.* vi. 17.

caerimōnia, -ae, f., *a religious ceremony* or *rite.*

Caeroesī, -ōrum, m. pl., a tribe in Northern Gaul, on the river Chiers, near Sedan. ii. 4.

caeruleus, -a, -um, adj., *deep blue.*

Caesar, -aris, m., (1) *Gaius Iulius Caesar.* See pp. 1–20. (2) *Lucius Caesar,* a relative and lieutenant of Iulius Caesar. vii. 65.

calamitās, -tātis, f., *misfortune, disaster, defeat.*

Calētī, -ōrum, also **Calētes, -um,** m. pl., an Armorican tribe living in Normandy.

callidus, -a, -um, adj., *crafty, cunning, expert, skilful.*

cālō, -ōnis, m., *a soldier's servant, camp servant.*

campester, -tris, -tre, [**campus**], adj., *on level* or *open ground, flat, level.*

campus, -ī, m., *a plain.*

Camulogēnus, -ī, m., an Aulercan, invested with the supreme command against Labienus. vii. 57.

Canīnius, -ī, m., *C. Caninius Rebilus,* one of Caesar's lieutenants.

canō, canere, cecinī, cantum, 3, a. and n., *sing, play, sound* a musical instrument. — **receptui canere,** *to sound a retreat.*

Cantaber, -brī, m., *a Cantabrian,* belonging to a warlike tribe in the north of Spain.

Cantabrī, -ōrum, pl. m., *the Cantabri, Cantabrians,* a tribe in the north of Spain.

Cantium, -ī, n., *Kent,* a district in England. v. 13, 14, 22.

capillus, -ī, [**caput**], m., *the hair.*

capiō, capere, cēpī, captum, 3, a., *take, get, seize, capture, occupy, select;* of vessels, *reach, make.* — **initium capere,** *to begin.* — **consilium capere,** *to form a plan.* — **dolorem capere,** *to be grieved.* See IDIOMS.

capra, -ae, [**caper,** *a goat*], f., *a she-goat.*

captīvus, -ī, [**capio**], m., *a captive, prisoner.* vi. 27.

captus, -a, -um, pf. pass. part. of **capio,** *taken, captured, influenced, charmed.*

captus, -ūs, [**capio**], m., *capacity, comprehension, understanding, notion, idea.* iv. 3.

caput, -itis, n., *the head; a person* or *man; mouth of a river.* — **duo milia capitum,** *two thousand souls.* — **capitis poena,** *capital punishment.* — **capite demisso,** *with the head bowed down.*

careō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, 2, n., *be without, lack, want.*

carīna, -ae, f., *the keel* of a ship.

Carnūtes, -um, m. pl., a tribe in Central Gaul; their capital was Cenabum, now Orléans.

carō, carnis, f., *flesh.*

carpō, -ere, -si, -tum, 3, a., *pluck; censure, criticise, slander, revile, "pick to pieces."*

carrus, -ī, m., *a cart, wagon.* See N. to p. 48, 20.

cārus, -a, -um, adj., *dear, precious, valued.*

Carvilius, -ī, m., a British king in Kent. v. 22.

casa, -ae, f., *a hut, cabin, cottage, barrack.*

cāseus, -ī, m., *cheese*. vi. 22.

Cassī, -ōrum, m. pl., a small British tribe who surrendered to Caesar. v. 21.

Cassiānus, -a, -um, [**Cassius**], adj., *of Cassius*.

cassis, -idis, f., *a helmet*. Cf. p. 24.

Cassius, -ī, m., the name of an important Roman family. L. Cassius Longīnus was slain, when consul, in a battle with the Helvetii, 107 B. C.

Cassivellaunus, -ī, m., *Cassivellaunus, Caswallon*, commander-in-chief of the British army against Caesar. v. 11 et seq.

castellum, -ī, (dim. from **castrum**), n., *a fort, redoubt, citadel*.

Casticus, -ī, m., a leading Sequanian. i. 3.

castīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, a., *punish, reprove, censure*.

castra, -ōrum, n. pl. (of **castrum**, *a fortress*), *a camp; a day's march*. — **castra movere**, *to break up camp*. — **castra ponere**, *to pitch a camp*. — **quintis castris**, *in five marches*, i. e. days.

cāsus, -ūs, [cado], m. lit., *what happens; an event, chance, risk, accident, misfortune, evil plight, death*. — **casu**, *by chance*. — **ad extremum casum**, *to the last extremity*.

Catamantaloedēs, -is, m., for a long time the chief man among the Sequani. i. 3.

catēna, -ae, f., *a chain*; pl., *fetters*.

Caturigēs, -um, m. pl., a Gallic tribe in the Province. i. 10

Catuvolcus, -ī, m., a chief of the Eburones, who poisoned himself after the failure of an insurrection he had promoted. v. 26, vi. 31.

causa, -ae, f., *a cause, reason, pretext, excuse; condition, case, situation*. — **causā** (abl., with a gen.), *for the sake of, on account of*. See IDIOMS.

cautē [**cautus**, **caveo**], adv., *cautiously, carefully*.

cautēs, -is, f., *a jagged rock, crag, cliff*.

cautus, pf. pass. part. of **caveo**.

Cavarillus, -ī, m., a chief of the Aedui. vii. 67.

Cavarīnus, -ī, m., a chief of the Senones. v. 54; vi. 5.

caveō, **cavēre**, **cāvī**, **cautum**, 2, n. and a., *be on one's guard, beware of, take precautions; give security*.

cēdō, **cēdere**, **cēssī**, **cēssum**, 3, n., *go away, retire, retreat, yield, abandon*.

celer, -eris, -ere, [**cello**, *impel*], adj., *quick, fleet, swift, sudden*.

celeritās, -tātis, [celer], f., *speed, swiftness, rapidity, despatch*.

celeriter [celer], adv., *quickly, speedily, at once*.

cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, a., *conceal, keep secret, hide*.

Celtae, -ārum, m. pl., *the Celts*, the inhabitants of that part of Gaul between the Garonne and the Seine, and extending from the Atlantic to the Alps. They belonged to the great Keltic family, and were divided into many tribes or states. See pp. 38, 39.

Celtillus, -ī, m., an Arvernian, the father of Vercingetorix. vii. 4.

Cenabēnses, -ium, m. pl., the inhabitants of Cenabum. vii. 11.

Cenabum, -ī, n., chief city of the Carnutes, later called Civitas Aureliana, whence comes the modern name of *Orléans*.

Cenimāgnī, -ōrum, m. pl., a British tribe in Suffolk, who surrendered to Caesar. v. 21.

Cenomānī, see **Aulerci.**

cēnseō, -ēre, -uī, -um, 2, a., *estimate, think, hold, judge, decree, determine, vote for.*

cēnsus, -ūs, [**censeo**], m., *a census, count, enumeration.* i. 29.

centēnī, -ae, -a, [**centum**], distrib. adj., *a hundred each.*

centum, indecl. num. adj., *a hundred.*

centuriō, -ōnis, [**centum**], m., *a centurion.* See p. 22.

cernō, cernere, crēvī, crētum, 3, a., *separate, discern, see; decide.*

certāmen, -inis, [**certo,** *fight*], n., *a conflict, struggle, battle, engagement.*

certē [**certus**], adv., *certainly, yet surely, at least.*

certus, -a, -um, part. of **cerno** used as adj., *certain, fixed, definite, positive, undoubted, trustworthy, true.* — **certiorem facere,** *to inform.* — **certior fieri,** *to be informed.*

cervus, -ī, m., *a stag,* vi. 26; in military language, *a forked stake* (i. e. like a stag's horns), vii. 72.

cespes, -itis, m., *a turf, sod.*

cēterus, -a, -um, (nom. sing. m. not in use), *the rest, remainder, the other* or *others.*

Ceutrōnes, -um, m. pl., (1) a Belgic tribe in the neighborhood of Courtray in West Flanders, subject to the Nervii. v. 39. (2) a tribe in the Province. i. 10.

Cevenna, -ae, f., *the Cévennes,* a mountain range in the south of Gaul, separating the Arverni from the Helvii. See p. 38.

Cheruscī, -orum, m. pl., a German tribe between the Weser, the Elbe, and the Hartz mountains.

cibāria, -ōrum, [**cibus**], n. pl., *provisions, rations.*

cibus, -ī, m., *food, nourishment.*

Cicerō, -ōnis, m., *Q. Tullius Cicero,* the brother of the famous orator, M. Tullius Cicero. He was a lieutenant of Caesar's in Gaul.

Cimberius, -ī, m., leader, with his brother Nasua, of 100 cantons of the Suebi who were trying to cross the Rhine into Gaul. i. 37.

Cimbrī, -ōrum, m. pl., a Germanic people, originally in the Cimbric peninsula, the present Jutland. They invaded Gaul and the Province and were defeated by Marius, 101 B. C. See N. to p. 67, 36.

Cingetorix, -igis, m., (1) a Gaul, attached to Caesar, and the rival of Indutiomărus for the chief power among the Treviri. v. 3, 56. (2) a British chief in Kent. v. 22.

cingō, cingere, cinxī, cinctum, 3, a., *surround, enclose, invest.*

cippus, -ī, m., *a stake, post, palisade.* vii. 73.

circā, adv., and prep. with acc., *about, around.*

circinus, ī, m., *a pair of compasses.* i. 38.

circiter [**circus,** *a circle*], adv., and prep. with acc., *about, not far from, near.*

circueō, see **circumeo.**

circuitus, -ūs, [**circumeo**], m., *a circuit, winding path, way around.* — **in circuitu,** *all around.*

circum [**circus,** *a circle*], adv., and prep. with acc., *around, about, near, in the neighborhood of.*

circumcīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, [**circum + caedo**], 3, a., *cut around* or *off; clip.*

circumcīsus, -a, -um, part. of **circumcido** as adj., *cut off, inaccessible, steep.*

circumclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, [circum + claudo], 3, a., *shut in, surround, encircle, hem in.*

circumdō, -dare, -dedī, -datum, [circum + do], 1, a., *place around, encompass, surround.*

circumdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -dūctum, [circum + dūco], 3, a., *lead around, draw around; trace.*

circumeō (and **circueo**), **-īre, -īvī** or **-iī, -itum,** [circum + eo], irr. n. and a., *go around; surround.*

circumfundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, [circum + fundo], 3, a., *pour around, surround, hem in;* pass. used reflexively, *crowd around.*

circumiciō (or **circumjicio**), **-icere, -iēcī, -iectum,** [circum + iacio], 3, a., *throw* or *place around.*

circumiectus, part. used as an adj., *surrounding.*

circummittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, [circum + mitto], 3, a., *send around.*

circummūniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, [circum+mūnio], 4, a., *surround with walls, surround, fortify, secure.*

circummūnītiō, -ōnis, [circum + mūnio], f., *investment* of a town by siege.

circumplector, -plectī, -plexus, 3 dep., *clasp around, embrace, encompass, surround.*

circumsistō, -sistere, -stitī or **-stetī,** [circum + sisto], 3, a. and n., *take one's stand around, surround.*

circumspiciō, -icere, -ēxī, -ectum, [circum + specio, *look*], 3, n. and a., *look about, survey, examine, consider.*

circumstō, -stāre, -stetī, [circum + sto], 1, n. and a., *stand about* or *around, surround.*

circumvallō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [circum + vallo], 1, a., *surround with a rampart, blockade, invest.*

circumvehor, -vehī, -vectus, [circum + veho], 3, pass. as dep., *ride* or *sail around.*

circumveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, [circum + venio], 4, a., *encompass, surround, ensnare, deceive.*

cis, prep. with acc. only, *on this side.*

Cisalpīnus, -a, -um, [cis + Alpes], adj., *Cisalpine, lying on this* (the Italian) *side of the Alps.* See p. 38.

Cisrhēnānus, -a, -um, [cis + Rhenus], adj., *on this side the Rhine,* i. e. the western side.

citātus, -a, -um, [cito, *move rapidly*], part. used as adj., *hurried, quick, rapid, speedy.* — **equo citato,** *at full gallop.*

citerior, -us, (cis), adj., *on this side, hither, nearer.* — **Gallia citerior,** *Cisalpine Gaul.* — **Hispania citerior,** *hither Spain,* i. e. the eastern part, afterwards called Tarraconensis.

citissimē, (sup. of **cito,** *quickly*), adv., *with the utmost rapidity.*

citrā [cis], prep. with acc. only, *on this side of.*

citrō [cis], adv., *hither.* — **ultro citroque,** *to and fro.*

cīvis, -is, c., *a citizen.*

cīvitās, -tātis, [civis], f., *citizenship; the body of citizens; the state* or *nation.* — **multi ex civitate,** *many of the citizens.*

clam [celo], adv., *secretly.*

clāmitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [freq. of clamo, *cry out*], 1, a., *cry out violently, exclaim, shout.*

or, **-ōris**, [clamo, *cry out*], *utcry, shout, din.*

stīnus, **-a**, -um, [clam], *., secret, hidden.*

-arus, **-a**, -um, adj., *clear, distinct; loud; famous.*

clāssis, -is, f., *a fleet.*

Claudius, **-ī**, m., *Appius Claudius*, consul with L. Domitius, B.C. 54. v. 1.

claudō, **claudere**, **clausī**, **clausum**, 3, a., *shut, close.* — **claudere agmen**, *bring up the rear.*

clāvus, **-ī**, m., *a nail, spike.*

clēmentia, **-ae**, [**clēmens**, *kind*], f., *kindness, mercy, clemency.*

cliēns, **-ēntis**, [= **cluens**, from **clueo**, *hear*], c., *a client, adherent, vassal, dependant.*

cliēntēla, -ae, [**cliens**], f., *clientship, vassalage; alliance, protection.*

clīvus, **-ī**, [clino, *lean*], m., *a slope, hill.*

Clōdius, **-ī**, m., *P. Clodius Pulcher*, a riotous tribune of the people. He was the bitter enemy of Cicero, and was killed near Rome by Milo, B.C. 52. vii. 1.

Cn., abbreviation for *Gneus* or *Gnaeus*, a Roman praenomen.

coacervō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, [**con** + **acervus**], 1, a., *heap up, collect.*

coāctus, pf. pass. part. of **cogo**.

coāctus, **-ūs**, [cogo], m., *compulsion.*

coagmentō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, [cogo], 1, a., *fasten together, connect.*

coartō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, [**con** + **arto**, *make close*], 1, a., *to press* or *squeeze together.*

Cocosātēs, **-um**, m. pl., a people of Aquitania. iii. 27.

coëmō, **-emere**, **-ēmī**, **-ēmptum**, [**con** + **emo**], 3, a., *buy up, purchase.*

coëo, **-īre**, **-īvī** or **-iī**, **-itum**, [**con** + **eo**], irr. n., *go* or *come together, meet, combine.*

coepī, **-isse**, def. a. and n., *began, started, commenced.* The pass. form is used (as **coeptus est**) with a pass. infinitive.

coërceō, **-ercēre**, **-ercuī**, **-ercitum**, [**con** + **arceo**, *shut up*], 2, a., *confine, restrain, check.*

cōgitātiō, **-ōnis**, [cogito], f., *a thinking, deliberation, reflection.*

cōgitō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, [**con** + **agito**], 1, a., *think about, consider, weigh; intend, purpose.*

cōgnātiō, **-ōnis**, [**con** + (**g**)**nascor**), f., *relationship; kindred.*

cōgnōscō, **-gnōscere**, **-gnōvī**, **-gnitum**, [**con** + (**g**)**nosco**], 3, a., *become acquainted with, learn, ascertain; know thoroughly; examine, investigate.*

cōgō, **cōgere**, **coēgī**, **coāctum**, [**con** + **ago**], 3, a., *drive together, collect, assemble; compel, force, oblige.*

cohors, **-hortis**, f., *a cohort*, the tenth part of a legion. See p. 21.

cohortātiō, **-ōnis**, [cohortor], f., *an harangue; encouraging, encouragement.*

cohortor, **-ārī**, **-ātus sum**, [**con** + **hortor**], 1, dep., *exhort, encourage, animate, urge.*

collātus, pf. pass. part. of **confero**.

collaudo, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, [**con** + **laudo**], 1, a., *praise highly, extol, commend.*

1. **colligō**, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, [**con** + **ligo**, *bind*], 1, a., *bind* or *fasten together.*

2. **colligō**, **-ligere**, **-lēgī**, **-lēctum**, [**con** + **lego**, *gather*], 3, a., *collect, assemble; obtain, get.* — **se colligere**, *recover one's self, rally.*

collis, **-is**, m., *a hill, height.*

collocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**con** + **loco,** *place*], 1, a., *place, post, station; pack, stow away; arrange; give in marriage,* in this sense usually with **nuptum** (supine), as, **nuptum . . . collocare,** *to give in marriage.*

colloquium, -i, [**colloquor**], n., *conference, interview.*

colloquor, -loquī, -locūtus sum, [**con** + **loquor**], 3, dep., *talk with, hold a parley* or *conference.*

colō, colere, coluī, cultum, 3, a., *cultivate, till; honor, worship.*

colōnia, -ae, [**colo**], f., *a colony, settlement.*

color, -ōris, m., *color, complexion.*

combūrō, -ūrere, -ūssī, -ūstum, [**con** + (**b**)**ūro,** *burn*], 3, a., *burn up, consume.*

comes, -itis, [**con** + **eo**], c., *a companion, associate, comrade.*

comitium, -ī, [**con** + **eo**], n., the place in the Roman Forum where the elections were held; — pl. the *assembly* of the people, *the election.* vii. 67.

comitor, -ārī, -ātus, [**comes**], 1, dep., *accompany, attend.* vi. 8.

commeātus, -ūs, [**commeo**], m., *passing to and fro; expedition, voyage; transport;* common meaning, *supplies, provisions.*

commemorō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**con** + **memor**], 1, a., *call to mind, recount, mention, relate.*

commendō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**con** + **mando**], 1, a., *commit* to one for protection, etc., *intrust, recommend.*

commentārius, -ī, [**commentor**], m., *note-book; commentary, memoir.*

commeō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**con** + **meo,** *go*], 1, n., *go to and fro, visit, resort to.*

commīlitō, -ōnis, [**con** + **miles**], m., *a fellow-soldier, comrade.*

comminus [**con** + **manus**], adv., *hand to hand, at close quarters.*

commissūra, -ae, [**con** + **mitto**], f., *a joint, juncture.* vii. 72.

committō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, [**con** + **mitto**], 3, a., *join, bring together; intrust, commit; act so that, cause, do.* — **committere proelium,** *to join battle, begin the engagement.*

Commius, -i, m., a leader of the Atrebătes.

commodē [**commodus**], adv., *conveniently, opportunely, to advantage, readily, easily, fitly, suitably, properly.* — **non minus commodē quam,** *just as readily as.* — **non satis commodē,** *not very conveniently.*

commodum, -ī, [**commodus**], n., *convenience, advantage, profit.*

commodus, -a, -um, [**con** + **modus,** i. e. having *full measure*], adj., *convenient, advantageous, favorable, suitable, fit, easy.*

commonefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, [**con** + **moneo** + **facio**], 3, a., *remind, impress upon.* i. 19.

commoror, -ārī, -ātus, [**con** + **moror**], 1, dep., *stay, linger, remain, stop.*

commoveō, movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, [**con** + **moveo**], 2, a., *agitate, disturb, alarm, move, excite, influence.*

commūnicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**commūnis**], 1, a., *share together* or *with, communicate, consult, impart, bestow.*

commūniō, -īre, -īvī or **-iī, -ītum,** [**con** + **mūnio**], 4, a., *fortify on all sides* or *strongly, intrench.*

commūnis, -e, [**con** + **mūnus**], adj., *common, in common, general, public.* — **ex commūni consensu,** *by common consent.* — **res commūnis,** *the public interest.*

commūtātiō, **-ōnis**, [**commūto**], f., *a change*.

commūtō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, [**con** + **mūto**], 1, a., *change, alter; exchange*.

1. **comparō**, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, [**con** + **paro**], 1, a., *prepare, get ready, get together, acquire, procure*.

2. **comparō**, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, [**compar**, *like*], 1 a., *compare*. i. 31.

compellō, **-pellere**, **-pulī**, **-pulsum**, [**con** + **pello**], 3, a., *drive together, collect; drive, force*.

compendium, **-ī**, [**con** + **pendo**], n., *a saving, gain, profit*.

comperiō, **-perīre**, **-perī**, **-pertum**, [**con** + **per-** (root in **experior**, *try*)], 4, a., *ascertain, learn, discover, find out*.

compertus, **-a**, **-um**, part. of **comperio** used as adj., *known, certain*. — **compertum habere**, *to learn*. — **res comperta**, *a settled fact*.

complector, **-plectī**, **-plexus sum**, [**con** + **plecto**, *braid*], 3, dep., *embrace, surround, include*.

compleō, **-plēre**, **-plēvī**, **-plētum**, [**con** + **pleo**, *fill*], 2, a., *fill up, fill, cover; complete; occupy*.

complūrēs, **-a** and **-ia**, [**con** + **plūs**], adj., *several, a great many, very many*.

comportō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, [**con** + **porto**], 1, a., *bring together, collect, carry*.

comprehendō, **-hendere**, **-hendī**, **-hēnsum**, [**con** + **prehendo**], 3, a., *catch, grasp, seize, lay hold of, arrest, capture*. — **comprehendere ignem**, *catch fire*.

comprobō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, [**con** + **probo**], 1, a., *approve fully, assent to, justify; confirm*.

cōnātum, **-ī**, [**cōnor**], n., *an attempt*.

1. **cōnātus**, **-ūs**, [**cōnor**], m., *an attempt*.

2. **cōnātus**, pf. part. of **cōnor**.

concēdō, **-cēdere**, **-cēssī**, **-cēssum**, [**con** + **cēdo**], 3, a. and n., *withdraw, depart; give up, yield, bow, submit; allow, grant, grant permission*.

concertō, **-āre**, **-avī**, **-ātum**, [**con** + **certo**, *fight*], 1, n., *fight, contend*. vi. 5.

concēssus, **-ūs**, [**concēdo**], m., *permission, leave*. vii. 20.

concidō, **-cidere**, **-cidī**, [**con** + **cado**], 3, n., *fall, perish*.

concīdō, **-cīdere**, **-cīdī**, **-cīsum**, [**con** + **caedo**], 3, a., *cut up, cut off, cut to pieces, destroy*.

conciliō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, [**concilium**], 1, a., *win over, make friendly, reconcile; win, gain, procure*.

concilium, **-ī**, [**con** + **calo**, *call, summon*], n., a *meeting, assembly, council*.

concitō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, [**con** + **cito**, *move rapidly*], 1, a., *rouse, excite, provoke*.

conclāmō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, [**con** + **clāmo**, *shout*], 1, n., *shout* or *cry aloud, call out*.

conclūdō, **-clūdere**, **-clūsī**, **-clūsum**, [**con** + **claudo**], 3, *a.*, *shut up, enclose, confine*. — **mare conclusum**, *a confined sea*, i. e. the Mediterranean.

Conconnetodumnus, **-ī**, m., a chief of the Carnutes. vii. 3.

concrepō, **-āre**, **-uī**, **-itum**, [**con** + **crepo**, *rattle*], 1, n., *rattle, clash*.

concurrō, **-currere**, **-currī** or **-cucurrī**, **-cursum**, [**con** + **curro**], 3, n., *run together, run up, rush, charge*. — **concursum est eo**, *a rush was made to that point*.

concursō, **-āre**, no pf. nor supine,

(freq. of concurro), 1, n., *rush to and fro, run about.*

concursus, -ūs, [con + cursus], m., *a running together, rushing about; collision, onset, charge.*

condemnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [con + damno], 1, a., *condemn, sentence.*

condiciō, -ōnis, [condo, *put together*], f., *condition, position, situation, state; terms, stipulation.*

condōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [con + dōno], 1, a., *give up, forgive, excuse, pardon.*

Condrūsī, -ōrum, m. pl., a Belgic tribe on the right bank of the Meuse, near Liège, district *Condroz.*

condūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, [con + dūco], 3, a., *bring together, collect; hire.* — manus conducta, *a hired band.*

cōnfectus. See cōnficio.

cōnferciō, -īre, -sī, -tum, [con + farcio, *stuff*], 4, a., *press closely together.*

cōnferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, [con + fero], irr. a., *bring together, gather, collect, convey; ascribe to; confer, compare;* with in or ad, *put off, postpone.* — se cōnferre, *betake one's self.* — cōnferre culpam, *throw the blame.*

cōnfertus, -a, -um, part. of cōnfercio used as adj., *crowded together, closely packed, close, dense, compact.*

cōnfestim, adv., *immediately, at once.*

cōnficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, [con + facio], 3, a., *do thoroughly, complete, finish, accomplish; bring to an end, wear out, exhaust; prepare, draw up, furnish.* — bello cōnfecto, *when the war was over.* — ante cōnfectam primam vigiliam, *before the end of the first watch.* — cōnfecto magno itinere, *having made a forced march.*

cōnfīdō, -fīdere, -fīsus sum, [con + fīdo, *trust*], 3, n., *trust firmly, rely upon, believe.*

cōnfīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxum, [con + fīgo, *fasten*], 3, a., *fasten together, join.*

confīnis, -e, [con + fīnis], adj., *bordering on, adjoining, touching.*

cōnfīnium, -ī, [confīnis], n., *boundary line, frontier.* v. 24.

cōnfīō, -fierī, [con + fīo], irr. pass. of cōnficio, sometimes used for the regular cōnficior (see vii. 58).

cōnfirmātiō, -ōnis, [confirmo], f., *assurance, assertion, encouragement.*

cōnfirmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [con + firmus], 1, a., *confirm, strengthen, establish, reassure, encourage; assert, declare.* — confirmare inter se, *to give mutual assurances.*

cōnfīsus, -a, -um. See confīdo, *trusting in, relying on.*

cōnfiteor, -fitērī, -fessus sum, [con + fateor, *confess*], 2, dep., *confess, own, avow, acknowledge.*

cōnfīxus, -a, -um. See cōnfīgo.

cōnflagrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [con + flagro, *blaze*], 1, n., *be in flames, be burned up.* v. 43.

cōnflictō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [freq. of conflīgo], 1, a., *dash against* or *together, struggle with.* — pass., *be harassed.*

cōnflīgō, -flīgere, -flīxī, -flictum, [con + flīgo, *strike*], 3, a. and n., *knock* or *strike together; contend, fight.*

cōnfluēns, -entis, [confluo], m., the place where two streams unite, *confluence.*

cōnfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, no supine, [con + fluo], 3, n., *flow* or *run together, flock together.*

cōnfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, no supine, [**con + fugio**], 3, n., *flee for refuge.*

cōnfundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, [**con + fundo**], 3, a., *pour together, mix, mingle, blend, unite.*

congerō, -gerere, -gessi, -gestum, [**con + gero**], 3, a., *bear, bring,* or *carry together, collect, heap,* or *pile up.*

congredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, [**con + gradior,** *step*], 3, dep., *come together, unite with, meet; come into conflict, engage, contend.*

congressus, -a, -um. See **congredior.**

congressus, -ūs, [**congredior**], m., *an encounter, engagement.*

cōniciō, (or **conjicio**), **-icere, -iēcī, -iectum,** [**con + iacio**], 3, a., *throw together, hurl, cast; throw, place.* — **cōnicere in fugam,** *put to flight.* — **cōnicere se in fugam,** *betake one's self to flight.* — **culpam cōnicere in,** *cast the blame on.*

coniectūra (or **conjectūra**), **-ae,** [**cōnicio**], f., *a conjecture, inference.* — **caperet coniecturam,** *he could form an idea.*

coniunctim (or **conjunctim**), [**coniungo**], adv., *jointly, in common.* vi. 19.

coniunctus. See **coniungo.**

coniungō (or **conjungo**) **-iungere, -iunxī, -iunctum,** [**con + iungo**], 3, a., *unite, join.* — **coniungere civitatem,** *to form a state.*

coniunx (or **conjunx**), **coniugis,** [**coniungo**], c., a *husband* or *wife, spouse.*

coniūrātiō (or **conjūrātio**), **-ōnis,** [**coniūro**], f., *conspiracy, plot.*

coniūrō (or **conjūro**), **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** [**con + iūro**], 1, a., *take oath together, conspire.*

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, dep., *endeavor, attempt, try.* — **idem cōnari,** *make the same attempt.*

conquiēscō, -ere, -quiēvī, -quiētum [**con + quiēsco,** *rest*], 3, n., *rest, repose.*

conquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, [**con + quaero**], 3, a., *seek for, hunt up, bring together.*

conquīsītus. See **conquīro.**

cōnsanguineus, -a, -um, [**con + sanguis**], adj., *of the same blood;* — as noun, m., *relative, kinsman;* pl., *kinsfolk, relatives.*

cōnscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsum, [**con + scando,** *climb*], 3, a., *mount, ascend.* — **in navem cōnscendere,** *to embark.*

cōnscientia, -ae, [**con + scientia**], f., *consciousness, knowledge, feeling.*

cōnscīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī, -scītum, [**con + scīsco,** *approve*], 3, a., *decree, appoint.* — **sibi mortem cōnscīscere,** *to commit suicide.*

cōnscius, -a, -um, [**con + scio**], adj., *conscious; accessory to.*

cōnscrībo, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, [**con + scrībo**], 3, a., *write; enrol, levy.*

cōnscrīptus. See **conscrībo.**

cōnsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**con + sacro,** *hallow*], 1, a., *consecrate.*

cōnsector, -ārī, -ātus, [**con + sector, sequor**], 1, dep., *pursue.*

cōnsecūtus, see **consequor.**

cōnsēnsiō, -ōnis, [**con + sentio**], f., *agreement, unanimity.*

cōnsēnsus, -ūs, [**con + sentio**], m., *consent, assent, united opinion.* — **ex communi cōnsēnsu,** *by common consent.*

cōnsentiō, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum, [**con + sentio**], 4, n., *agree, combine; conspire.*

cōnsequor, -sequī, -secūtus, [con + sequor], *follow, pursue, overtake; obtain, attain, acquire.*

cōnservō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [con + servo], 1, a., *save, spare, maintain.*

Cōnsidius, -ī, m., *Publius Considius,* an officer in Caesar's army. i. 21, 22.

cōnsīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessum, [con + sīdo, *sit down*], 3, n., *settle; halt, encamp, take up an abode, establish one's self.*

cōnsilium, -ī, [consulo], n., *plan, design, scheme, advice, proceeding; wisdom, prudence; authority, council of war.* — **aliquid consilii aut dignitatis,** *any weight* or *standing.* — **de superioris temporis consilio,** *for their previous conduct.* — **consilium inire** or **habere,** *to form a plan.* — **ipsorum esse consilium,** *to be for them to decide.* See IDIOMS.

cōnsimilis, -e, [con + similis], adj., *like, quite like.*

cōnsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum, [con + sisto, *set, place*], 3, n., *stand, stop, stay, remain, halt, post one's self, be posted, make a stand; consist, depend.* — **in orbem consistere,** *to form a circle.* — **spes in velis consistit,** *their hope depends on the sails.*

cōnsobrīnus, -ī, *born of a sister, cousin.* vii. 76.

cōnsōlor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [con + solor, *comfort*], 1, dep., *console, comfort, cheer.*

cōnspectus, -ūs, [cōnspicio], m., *sight, presence.* — **in cōnspectu Caesaris,** *under Caesar's eyes.*

cōnspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, [con + specio, *look*], 3, a., *observe, see, perceive.*

cōnspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, dep., *see, observe, catch sight of.*

cōnspīrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [con + spiro, *breathe*], 1, n., *agree, conspire.*

cōnstanter [con + sto], adv., *steadily, resolutely, uniformly.*

cōnstantia, -ae, [con + sto], f., *firmness; constancy, resolution.*

cōnsternō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [con + sterno], 1, a., *alarm, terrify.*

cōnsternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātum, [con + sterno], 3, a., *strew over, cover.*

cōnstīpō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [con + stipo, *press*], 1, a., *crowd together.* v. 43.

cōnstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, [con + statuo], 1, a., *set up, construct, erect; appoint, fix, settle, determine, bring to a stand; draw up, station, moor* (of a ship).

cōnstō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātum, [con + sto], 1, n., *stand still, remain; consist in, depend on; cost.* — **constat,** *it is certain, well known, evident,* or *clear.*

cōnstrātus, see **consterno.**

cōnsuēscō, -suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum, [con + suēsco, *become used*], 3, n., *acquire a habit, become accustomed, be wont;* pf. used as pres., and plpf. as impf.

cōnsuētūdō, -inis, [consuēsco], f., *habit, practice, custom, usage, mode.* See IDIOMS.

cōnsuētus, see **consuēsco.**

cōnsul, -ulis, m., *consul.* The consuls were the chief magistrates at Rome. There were two chosen annually.

cōnsulātus, -ūs, [cōnsul], m., *consulship.* i. 35.

cōnsulō, -sulere, -suluī, -sultum, 3, a. and n., *consult, deliberate; consult for, care for the interests of;* with acc., **consulere aliquem,** *to consult any one, to ask advice;* — with dat., **consulere ci-**

vitati, *take measures for the good of the state.* See IDIOMS.

cōnsultō [cōnsulo], adv., *on purpose, designedly.*

cōnsultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [intensive from **cōnsulo**], 1, a. and n., *consult.*

cōnsultum, -ī, [cōnsulo], n., *resolution, decree, decision.*

cōnsūmō, -sūmere, -sūmpsī, -sūmptum, [con + **sūmo**], 3, a., *spend, waste, consume, destroy; spend, pass.*

cōnsūmptus, see **consūmo.**

cōnsurgō, -surgere, -surrēxī, -surrēctum, [con + **surgo,** *rise*], 3, n., *rise together, arise.*

contabulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**tabula,** *board*], 1, a., *construct of boards, board, build.* — **murum turribus contabulare,** *to cover the wall with towers.*

contāgiō, -ōnis, [contingo], f., *contact.* vi. 13.

contāminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**con + tango**], 1, a., *taint, pollute.*

contegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tēctum, [con + **tego**], 3, a., *cover up, conceal.*

contemnō, -temnere, -tempsī, -temptum, [con + **temno,** *despise*], 1, a., *despise, hold in contempt.*

contemptiō, -ōnis, [contemno], f., *contempt, scorn.*

contemptus, -ūs, [contemno], m., *contempt, scorn.* — **contemptui esse,** *to be an object of contempt.* ii. 30.

contendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, [con + tendo], 3, a. and n., *strive for, strive, hasten, push forward; fight, strive, contend.*

contentiō, -ōnis, [contendo], f., *struggle, contest, dispute.*

contestor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [con + **testor,** *call to witness*], 1, dep., *to call as witnesses, supplicate, appeal to.* iv. 25.

contexō, -texere, -texuī, -textum, [con + **texo,** *weave*], 3, a., *weave, bind together, join.*

continēns, -entis, pres. part. of **contineo** as adj., *uninterrupted, continuous, adjoining;* — as noun (sc. **terra**), f., *continent, mainland.*

continenter [**continens, con + teneo**], adv., *constantly, incessantly, without interruption.*

continentia, -ae, [continens], f., *self-restraint.*

contineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, [con + teneo], 2, a., *hold together; contain, include; hold, confine, bound, hem in, restrain.* — **continere se,** *to restrain one's self; remain.*

contingō, -tingere, -tigī, -tactum, [con + **tango**], 3, a., *touch, extend to, reach; happen.*

continuātiō, -ōnis, [con + teneo], f., *continuation, succession.*

continuō [continuus], adv., *forthwith, immediately.*

continuus, -a, -um, [con + teneo], adj., *successive, uninterrupted.*

contiō, -ōnis, [for **conventio,** *an assembling*], f., *an assembly; an address.* — **habitā contiōne,** *having delivered an address* or *speech.*

contiōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [contio], 1, dep., *address, harangue.*

contrā, prep. with acc. only, *against, opposite to, opposite, facing;* — adv., *in opposition, on the other hand.* — **contra atque,** *contrary to what.*

contrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, [con + **traho**], 3, a., *bring together, collect, assemble; contract.*

contrārius, -a, -um, [contrā], adj., *opposite, contrary.* — **ex contrāriō,** *on the contrary.*

contrōversia, -ae, [**contrā + verto**], f., *debate, dispute.* — **minuere contrōversiam,** *to settle a dispute.*

contumēlia, -ae, f., *insult, injury, indignity; violence.*

convalēscō, -valēscere, -valuī, no supine, [**con + valeo**], 3, n., *grow strong, get well, recover.*

convallis, -is, [**con + vallis,** *valley*], f., *valley* (enclosed).

convehō, -vehere, -vēxī, -vēctum, [**con + veho**], 3, a., *bring together, collect, convey.* vii. 74.

conveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, [**con + venio**], 4, n. and a., *come together, meet, assemble; to be agreed upon, to be convenient* or *fitting.* See IDIOMS.

conventus, -ūs, [**convenio**], m., *assembly, meeting, court.*

conversus. See **converto.**

convertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, [**con + verto**], 3, a., *turn, direct, turn about, wheel around; change.* — **signa conversa inferre,** *to face about and advance.* — **convertere aciem,** *to face about.* — **itinere conversō,** *turning round.* — **in fugam convertere,** *to put to flight.*

Convictolitāvis, -is, (acc. **Convictolitāvim,** vii. 55), a prominent Aeduan, made chief by Caesar.

convictus. See **convinco.**

convincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victum, [**con + vinco**], 3, a., *conquer completely; prove guilty, convict, establish, prove.* i. 40.

convocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**con + voco**], 1, a., *call together, summon.*

coörior, -orīrī, -ortus sum, [**con + orior**], 4, dep., *arise; spring up, break out.*

coörtus. See **coörior.**

cōpia, -ae, [= **co-opia,** from **con + ops**], f., *quantity, abundance, supply, plenty;* — pl., *forces, troops, supplies, means, resources, wealth.*

cōpiōsus, -a, -um, [**cōpia**], adj., *well supplied, wealthy, rich.*

cōpula, -ae, [**con + apo,** *bind*], f., *band;* pl., *grappling irons* or *hooks.* iii. 13.

cor, cordis, n., *heart.* — **cordi esse,** *to be agreeable* or *dear.* vi. 19.

cōram, adv., [**con + ōs,** *face*], *face to face, in person.* — **cōram adesse,** *to be present.* — **cōram perspicit** or **cernit,** *he sees with his own eyes.*

corium, -ī, n., (thick) *skin, hide.*

cornū, -ūs, n., *horn; trumpet; wing of an army.*

corōna, -ae, f., *crown; circle.* — **sub corōnā vendere,** *to sell into slavery.* See N. to p. 100, 19.

corpus, -oris, n., *body.* — **tōtum corpus,** *the entire works.* vii. 72.

corripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, [**con + rapio,** *seize*], *seize violently; carry off.*

corrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, [**con + rumpo,** *break*], 3, a., *break to pieces; spoil, destroy, ruin.*

cortex, corticis, m. and f., *bark* of a tree. ii. 33.

Cōrus, -ī, m., *the northwest wind.*

coss., contraction for **consulibus.** See N. to p. 48, 2.

cotīdiānus, -a, -um, [**cotīdiē**], adj., *daily; ordinary, usual.*

cotīdie [**quot + diēs**], adv., *daily, every day.*

Cotta, -ae, m. See **Auruncuïeius.**

Cotus, -ī, m., a prominent Aeduan.

crassitūdō, -inis, [**crassus,** *thick*], f., *thickness.*

Crassus, -ī, m.; three of this celebrated family are mentioned in the Gallic War. — *M. Licinius Crassus,* who crushed the army

of Spartacus, B. C. 71. He was triumvir with Caesar and Pompey. See p. 4. He and his son Publius went to Parthia and perished there B. C. 53. — *Publius*, his son, a lieutenant in Caesar's army. — *Marcus*, another son, quaestor in Caesar's army.

crātēs, **-is**, f., *wicker-work; hurdle, fascine.*

crēber, **-bra**, **-brum**, adj., *thick, numerous, frequent.*

crēbrō [crēber], adv., *frequently, often.*

crēdō, **crēdere**, **crēdidī**, **crēditum**, 3, n. and a., *trust, believe, think, suppose; intrust, consign.*

cremō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, 1, a., *burn.* — **ignī cremāre**, *to burn to death.*

creō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, 1, a., *create, make; choose, elect, appoint.*

crēscō, **crēscere**, **crēvī**, **crētum**, 3, n., *grow, increase; become great* or *powerful.*

Crētēs, **-um**, m., *Cretans*, the inhabitants of Crete, now Candia.

crīmen, **-inis**, [cerno], n., *charge, accusation; fault, crime.*

Critōgnātus, **-ī**, m., a chief of the Arverni. vii. 77.

cruciātus, **-ūs**, [crucio, *torture*], m., *torture, cruelty, torment, suffering.*

crūdēlis, **-e**, [crūdus, *bloody*], adj., *cruel, hard-hearted.*

crūdēlitās, **-tātis**, [crūdēlis], f., *cruelty, barbarity.*

crūdēliter [crūdēlis], adv., *cruelly.*

crūs, **crūris**, n., *leg.* vi. 27.

cubīle, **-is**, [cubo, *lie down*], n., *bed.* vi. 27.

culmen, **-inis**, n., *height, summit, top.* iii. 2.

culpa, **-ae**, f., *blame, fault, crime.* — **cōnferre culpam in**, *to throw blame on.*

cultus, **-ūs**, [colo], m., *cultivation, care, mode of life, civilization.*

cum, prep. with abl. only, *with, along with, at the same time with.* — Enclitic with abl. of **ego**, **tu**, **sui**, and **qui**, as **mecum**, **nobiscum**, etc. In composition **cum** becomes **con** or **com**, and implies doing anything in concert with others, or thoroughly and completely.

cum, conj., *when, while, after, since, inasmuch as, although.* See N. to p. 47, 13. — **cum primum**, *as soon as;* **cum . . . tum**, *both . . . and, not only . . . but also.*

cunctātiō, **-ōnis**, [cunctor], f., *delay, tardiness.*

cunctor, **-ārī**, **-ātus sum**, 1, dep., *delay, hesitate, doubt.*

cunctus, **-a**, **-um**, [for **coniunctus**, **con + iungo**], adj., *all together, all.*

cuneātim [cuneus], adv., *in the form of a wedge.* vii. 28.

cuneus, **-ī**, m., *wedge; troops*, arranged in a wedge-like column.

cunīculus, **-ī**, m., lit., *rabbit, coney; burrow;* in military language, *a mine.*

cupidē [cupidus], adv., *eagerly, earnestly.*

cupiditās, **-tātis**, [cupidus], f., *an ardent desire, longing, eagerness, greediness.*

cupidus, **-a**, **-um**, [cupio], adj., *desirous, fond, eager for.*

cupiō, **cupere**, **cupīvī** or **-iī**, **cupītum**, 3, a., *long for, wish, desire, wish well to.*

cūr, adv., *why? for what purpose?*

cūra, **-ae**, f., *care, attention, anxiety, trouble.* — **cūrae mihi erit**, *I will attend to it.* See IDIOMS.

Curiosolites, **-um**, m., a people of the west of Gaul, one of the Armorican states. Their name

survives in *Corseult*, a village with Roman remains, not far from St. Malo.

cūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [cūra], 1, a., *take care, provide for, superintend, arrange.* — **pontem faciendum cūrāre,** *to cause a bridge to be built.*

currō, currere, cucurrī, cursum, 3, n., *run.*

currus, -ūs, [curro], m., *chariot.*

cursus, -ūs, [curro], m., *a running, speed; course.* — **adaequāre cursum,** *to keep up with.* — **cursum tenēre,** *to maintain a straight course.* — **magnō cursū,** *at full speed.*

custōdia, -ae, [custōs], f., *guard, charge.*

custōdiō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, [custōs], 4, a., *guard, defend.*

custōs, -tōdis, c., *guard, keeper, watch.*

D.

D., before proper names, stands for **Decimus.**

D = 500.

Dācus, -ī, m., a *Dacian.* The Dacians occupied the southeast provinces of the modern kingdom of Austria. vi. 25.

damnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [damnum], 1, a., *condemn, sentence.*

damnum, -ī, n., *loss.* vi. 44.

Dānuvius, -ī, m., the *Danube*, the great river of Central Europe. vi. 25.

dē, prep. with abl. only, *from, down from; during, in the course of, in; of, about, concerning, after, in accordance with, for.* — **dē imprōvīsō,** *unexpectedly.*

dēbeō, dēbēre, dēbuī, dēbitum, [de + habeo], 2, a., *owe;* pass., *be due;* when joined to an infinitive of another verb, it may be rendered by *ought.*

dēcēdō, -cēdere, -cēssī, -cēssum, [de + cēdo], 3, n., *retire, withdraw; avoid, shun; die.*

decem, indecl. num. adj., *ten.*

dēceptus, see **dēcipio.**

dēcernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētum, [de + cerno], 3, a., *decide, decree, determine.*

dēcertō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [de + certo, *contend*], 1, n., *fight, engage in battle.*

dēcēssus, -ūs, [de + cēdo], m., *retreat, withdrawal.* — **dēcēssus aestūs,** *ebbing of the tide.*

Decetia, -ae, f., a town on the Loire (now Décize), in the territory of the Aedui. vii. 33.

dēcidō, -cidere, -cidī, no supine, **[de + cado],** 3, n., *fall down* or *off.*

decimus, -a, -um, [decem], num. adj., *tenth.*

Decimus, -ī, m., *Decimus*, a Roman praenomen.

dēcipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, [de + capio], 3, *catch, deceive, cheat.*

dēclārō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [de + clārus], 1, a., *make clear, declare, announce.* i. 50.

dēclīvis, -e, [de + clīvus], adj., *sloping, on the descent, descending.*

dēclīvitās, -tātis, [dēclīvis], f., *declivity, descent.* — **ad dēclīvitātem,** *downwards.*

dēcrētum, -ī, [dēcerno], n., *decree, decision.* — **dēcrētō stāre,** *to abide by the decision.*

decumānus, -a, -um, [decimus], adj., *decuman;* the **decumāna porta** was the main gate of the camp, farthest away from the enemy, and opposite the **porta**

praetōria. It was called **decumāna** because near it were encamped the *tenth* cohorts of the legions. See p. 32.

decuriō, -ōnis, [decem], m., a *decurion,* a cavalry officer at the head of 10 men (= a **decuria**).

dēcurrō, -currere, -cucurrī or **-currī, -cursum,** [de + curro], 3, n., *run down, hasten, move off.*

dēdecus, -oris, [de + decus, *honor*], n., *disgrace, dishonor.*

dēditīcius, -a, -um, [dēdo], adj. and noun, *one who has surrendered, subject.*

dēditiō, -ōnis, [dēdo], f., *surrender.* — **accipere** or **recipere in dēditiōnem,** *to admit to a surrender.* — **venīre in dēditiōnem,** *to surrender.*

dēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, [de + do], 3, a., *give up, surrender, devote.*

dēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -dūctum, [de + dūco], 3, a., *draw* or *lead down* or *away, withdraw, lead, induce, conduct, bring; launch; bring home* (as a bride), *marry.*

dēfatīgātiō, -ōnis, [dēfatīgo], f., *weariness, fatigue, exhaustion.*

dēfatīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [de + **fatīgo,** *weary*], 1, a., *tire out, exhaust, fatigue.*

dēfectiō, -ōnis, [dēficio], f., *desertion, revolt.*

dēfendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum, 3, a., *ward off, repel, defend, guard.*

dēfēnsiō, -ōnis, [dēfendo], f., *defence.*

dēfēnsor, -ōris, [dēfendo], m., *defender.*

dēfēnsus, see dēfendo.

dēferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, [de + **fero**], irr., a., *bring down* or *away, bring; report, announce; confer upon.*

dēfessus, -a, -um, [pf. part. of dē**fetiscor,** *grow weary*], adj., *wearied, worn out, exhausted.*

dēficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, [de + **facio**], 3, a. and n., *fail, desert; revolt.* — **dēficere animō,** *to lose heart.*

dēfīgō, -figere, -fīxī, -fīxum, [de + **fīgo,** *fasten*], 3, a., *drive down, fix, fasten.*

dēfīniō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, [de + **fīnio**], 4, a., *set bounds to, limit, define, fix, assign.*

dēfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, -flūxum, [de + fluo], 3, n., *flow down, flow away.*

dēfore, see **dēsum.**

dēfōrmis, -e, [de + **forma**], adj., *ill-shaped, misshapen, ugly.*

dēfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, n*sheathe,* [de + **fugio**], 3, a. a *from, flee away, shun,* à + **sum**],

dēiciō (or dējicio), -icei*e lack-* -iectum, [de + iacio], 3, a *this down, cast down, dislodge;* **unia** *disappoint.* — **eā spē dēiecti** *ng. appointed in this expectation.*

dēiectus, see dēicio.

dēiectus, -ūs, [de + **iacio**], m., *descent, slope, declivity.*

deinceps [deinde + capio], adv., *one after the other, in succession, in turn.*

deinde [de + inde], adv., *thereafter, afterwards, then, next.*

dēlātus, see dēfero.

dēlectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [freq. of dēlicio], 1, a., *delight, please;* in pass., *take* or *find pleasure in.*

dēlectus, see dēligo.

dēlectus, -ūs, [dēligo], m., *selection; levy* (of soldiers).

dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, 2, a., *destroy, annihilate, overthrow.*

dēlīberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [de + **lībra,** *balance*], 1, a. and n., *weigh well* (in one's mind), *deliberate,*

ponder, consult. — **dēlīberātur,** *the question is discussed.*

dēlibrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [de + liber, *bark*], 1, a., *strip off the bark, peel.* vii. 73.

dēlictum, -ī, [neut. pf. part. of dēlinquo, *do wrong*], n., *offence, fault, crime.*

dēligō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [de + ligo, *bind*], 1, a., *bind fast, tie, fasten.*

dēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, [de + lego], 3, a., *choose, select; levy.*

dēlitēscō, -litēscere, -lituī, no supine, [de + lateo], 3, n., *hide* or *conceal one's self, lie in wait.*

dēmentia, -ae, [de + mēns], f., *madness, folly.* iv. 13.

custōdiis, see dēmeto.

tōs], 4, [illegible]ere, -messuī, -mes-

custōs, [illegible]], 3, a., *cut down,*

watch [illegible]

[illegible] ātum, [de +

[illegible] *move from,*

[illegible]inuere, -minuī,

[illegible], [de + minuo], 3, a.,

[illegible]; *take away from, impair.*

dēmissus, see dēmitto.

dēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, [de + mitto], 3, a., *send down, let down, let fall.* — **sē dēmittere,** *to descend.* — **sē animō dēmittere,** *to lose heart.* — **capite dēmissō,** *with bowed head.*

dēmō, dēmere, dēmpsī, dēmptum, [de + emo], 3, a., *take down* or *off, remove.* v. 48.

dēmōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [de + mōnstro, *show*], 1, a., *point out, show, state; explain.*

dēmoror, -ārī, -ātus sum, [de + moror], 1, dep., *delay, linger, hinder.*

dēmptus, see dēmo.

dēmum, adv., *at length, finally.*

dēnegō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [de + nego], 1, a., *refuse, deny.*

dēnī, -ae, -a, [decem], num. adj., *ten by ten, ten each* or *apiece.*

dēnique, adv., *at last, finally; in a word, in short.*

dēnsus, -a, -um, adj., *thick, closely packed, dense, crowded.*

dēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [de + nūntio], 1, a., *announce, declare; threaten; order.*

dēpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, [de + pello], 3, a., *drive away, dislodge, turn aside.*

dēperdō, -perdere, -perdidī, -perditum, [de + perdo, *destroy*], 3, a., *lose, forfeit.*

dēpereō, -perīre, -periī, no supine, [de + pereo], irr., n., *perish, be lost.*

dēpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, [de + pōno], 3, a., *lay aside, lay down, place; give up.*

dēpopulor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [de + populor], 1, dep., *lay waste, plunder.*

dēportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [de + porto], 1, a., *carry off, remove, convey away.*

dēposcō, -poscere, -poposcī, no supine, [de + posco], 3, a., *demand, require.*

dēpositus, see dēpōno.

dēprecātor, -ōris, [dēprecor] m., *intercessor.* — **eō dēprecātōre,** *by his intercession.*

dēprecor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [de + precor, *pray*], 1, dep., *avert by prayer, pray to be delivered from, beseech; ask for quarter,* iv. 7.

dēprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsum, [de + prehendo], 3, a., *capture, seize; surprise.*

dēprehēnsus, see dēprehendo.

dēprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, [de + premo], 3, a., *press down, sink.*

dēpūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [de + **pugno**], 1, a., *fight* (fiercely).
dēpulsus, see depello.
dērīvō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [de + **rīvus**], 1, a., *draw off;* (of a stream), *turn aside.* vii. 72.
dērogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [de + **rogo**], 1, *withdraw, take away.*
dēscendō, -scendere, -scendī, -scēnsum, [de + **scando,** *climb*], 3, n., *come down, descend; resort to; yield.*
dēsecō, -āre, -secuī, -sectum, [de + **seco**], 1, a., *cut off.* vii. 4.
dēserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum, [de + **sero,** *join*], 3, a., *leave, abandon, desert.*
dēsertor, -ōris, [**dēsero**], m., *a deserter.* vi. 23.
dēsertus, see dēsero.
dēsertus, -a, -um, pf. part. of dēsero as adj., *desert, solitary.*
dēsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, a., *wish for, want, long for, miss; lack, lose.*
dēsidia, -ae, [de + **sedeo,** *sit*], f., *sloth, indolence, idleness.* vi. 23.
dēsīgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [de + **sīgno,** *mark*], 1, a., *mark out, point out, describe; appoint; mean, signify.*
dēsiliō, -silīre, -siluī, -sultum, [de + **salio,** *leap*], 4, n., *leap down, dismount.*
dēsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum, [de + **sisto**], 3, n., *stand off from; leave off, cease, desist, stop.* — **dēsistere sententiā,** *to give up the notion.*
dēspectus, see dēspicio.
dēspectus, -ūs, [**dēspicio**], m., *a looking down* from an elevation, *view;* pl., *heights.* — **dēspectus in mare,** *view of the sea.*
dēspērātiō, -ōnis, [**dēspēro**], f., *despair, hopelessness.*
dēspērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [de + **spēro**], 1, a. and n., *give up hope, despair.* — **dēspērātus, -a, -um,** *despaired of, desperate.*
dēspiciō, -spicere, -spexī, -spectum, [de + **specio,** *look*], 3, a., *look down upon, despise.*
dēspoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [de + **spolio**], 1, a., *despoil, rob, plunder.* ii. 31.
dēstinō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, a., *make fast, bind; determine, appoint.*
dēstituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, [de + **statuo**], 3, a., *put aside, desert, abandon.*
dēstrictus, see **dēstringo.**
dēstringō, -stringere, -strinxī, -strictum, [de + **stringo,** *pluck off*], 3, a., *strip off, unsheathe, draw.*
dēsum, deesse, dēfuī, [de + **sum**], irr., n., *be wanting, fail, be lacking.* — **hoc ūnum dēfuit,** *this was the only drawback.* — **omnia deesse,** *to be a lack of everything.*
dēsuper [de + **super**], adv., *from above.* i. 52.
dēterior, -us, comp. adj., *inferior, worse.* i. 36. — Sup., **dēterrimus.**
dēterreō, -terrēre, -terruī, -territum, [de + **terreo**], 2, a., *frighten* (off); *prevent, deter.* — **dēterrēre nē** or **quīn,** *to prevent from.*
dētestor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [de + **testor,** *call to witness*], 1, dep., *call the gods to witness, curse.*
dētineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, [de + **teneo**], 2, a., *keep back, detain, delay, stop.*
dētractus, see **dētraho.**
dētrahō, -trahere, -traxī, -tractum, [de + **traho**], 3, a., *draw off; take away, withdraw, remove.*
dētrectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [de + **tracto,** *take in hand*], 1, a., *avoid, refuse, escape.* vii. 14.

dētrīmentōsus, -a, -um, [dētrīmentum], adj., *injurious, hurtful.*

dētrīmentum, -ī, [de + tero, *wear away*], n., *injury, loss, damage; defeat.*

dētrūdō, -trūdere, -trūsī, -trūsum, [de + trūdo, *thrust*], 3, a., *thrust off, strip off, remove.*

dēturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [de + turbo, *disturb*], 1, a., *cast down; dislodge, drive away.*

deūrō, -ūrere, -ūssī, -ūstum, [de + ūro, *burn*], 3, a., *burn up, consume.* vii. 25.

deus, -ī, m., *a god, deity.*

dēvehō, -vehere, -vēxī, -vēctum, [de + veho], 3, a., *carry away, remove.*

dēveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, [de + venio], 4, n., *come from; go to, arrive at.* ii. 21.

dēvexus, -a, -um, [deveho], adj., *on the descent, sloping, steep.* vii. 88.

dēvincō, -vincere, -vīcī, -victum, [de + vinco], 3, a., *conquer completely, overcome.* vii. 34.

dēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [de + voco], 1, a., *call down* or *away.* — **in dubium dēvocāre,** *to risk, endanger.* vi. 7.

dēvōtus, pf. part. of dēvoveo as adj., *attached, faithful;* — pl. as noun, *faithful followers.* iii. 22.

dēvoveō, -vovēre, -vōvī, -vōtum, [de + voveo], 2, a., *vow, devote; give up.*

dexter, -era, -erum, and **-tra, -trum,** adj., *right.*

dextra, -ae, (sc. **manus**), f., *the right hand.*

Diablintres, -um, pl., m., a branch of the Aulerci and allies of the Veneti. iii. 9.

diciō, -ōnis, f., *sway, dominion, authority, lordship.*

dicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, a., *dedicate, devote, vow, offer.* — **dicāre in clientēlam,** *to proclaim themselves clients,* vi. 12.

dīcō, dīcere, dīxī, dictum, 3, a., *say, converse, speak, mention, tell; appoint.* — **causam dīcere,** *to plead a case.* See IDIOMS.

dictiō, -ōnis, [dīco], f., *speaking, pleading.*

dictum, -ī, [dīco], n., *saying, word, speech; order.* — **dictō audientēs,** *obedient to his order.*

dīdūco, -dūcere, -dūxī, -dūctum, [dis, *apart,* **+ dūco]**, 3, a., *lead in different directions, draw apart, divide, separate, distribute, scatter.*

diēs, diēī, m. and f., *day.* — **multō diē,** *late in the day.* — **quantum fuit diēī spatium,** *as long as daylight allowed.* — **in diēs,** *from day to day.* — **diem ex diē,** *day after day.*

differō, differre, distulī, dīlātum, [dis, *apart,* **+ fero]**, irr., a. and n., *carry different ways, spread, scatter; put off, delay; differ.*

difficilis, -e, [dis (negative) **+ facilis]**, adj., *difficult, hard.* — **iter difficile,** *a road difficult to pass over, impracticable,* i. 6. Comp. **difficilior,** sup. **difficillimus.**

difficultās, -tātis, [difficilis], f., *difficulty, trouble.*

difficulter [difficilis], adv., *with difficulty.* Comp. **difficilius,** vii. 58.

diffīdō, -fīdere, -fīsus sum, [dis (negative) **+ fīdo,** *trust*], 3, n., *distrust, lack confidence in, despair of.*

diffīsus, -a, -um, part. of **diffido** as adj., *distrusting, doubtful.*

diffundō, -fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum, [dis, *apart,* **+ fundo]**, 3, a., *spread out* in different directions, *extend.*

digitus, -ī, m., *finger*. As a measure, the 16th part of a Roman foot, translated *inch, finger's breadth*, vii. 73. — **digitus pollex,** *thumb*, iii. 13.

dīgnitās, -tātis, [dīgnus], f., *worth, merit; greatness, rank*.

dīgnus, -a, -um, adj., *worthy, worth, deserving*.

diiūdicō (or **dījūdico**), **-āre, -āvī, -ātum, [dis + iūdico],** 1, a. and n., *decide, determine*.

dīlēctus, see **dīligo.**

dīligenter [dīligo], adv., *carefully, punctually, exactly, with painstaking*.

dīligentia, -ae, [dīligo], f., *care, painstaking, activity, earnestness*.

dīligo, -ligere, -lēxī, -lēctum, [dis + lego, *choose*], 3, a., *choose from a number; esteem, esteem highly, love*.

dīmensus, see **dīmētior.**

dīmētior, -mētīrī, -mēnsus sum, [dis + mētior], 4, dep., *measure, measure off*.

dīmicātiō, -ōnis, [dīmicō, *fight*], f., *combat, hot engagement, furious encounter*.

dīmicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [dis + mico], 1, n., *fight*.

dīmidius, -a, -um, [dis + medius], adj., *half*; — as a noun, **dimidium, -ī,** n., *a half*.

dīmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, [dis + mitto], 3, a., *send in different directions, dismiss, send off; let go, lose, abandon*.

dīrēctē [dīrigo], adv., *straight, directly*. iv. 17.

dīrēctus, -a, -um, (pf. part. of **dīrigo**), adj., *made straight, straight*.

dīrigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctum, [dis + rego], 3, a., *set in a straight line, make straight, arrange, draw up*.

dīrimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, [dis + emo, *take*], 3, a., *take apart, break up, break off, put an end to*.

dīripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, [dis + rapio, *seize*], 3, a., *tear asunder, ravage, plunder, pillage*.

dis-, or (abbreviated) **dī-,** adv., always in composition, *apart, asunder, in pieces*.

Dīs, Dītis, m., *Pluto*, god of the lower world. vi. 18.

discēdō, -cēdere, -cēssī, -cēssum, [dis + cēdo], 3, n., *depart, withdraw, leave, march off, forsake, come off*. — **ab armīs discēdere,** *to lay down one's arms*.

disceptātor, -ōris, [discepto, *decide*], m., *arbitrator, umpire, judge*. vii. 37.

discernō, -cernere, -crēvī, -crētum, [dis + cerno], 3, a., *distinguish between, distinguish*. vii. 75.

discēssus, -ūs, [discēdo], m., *departure, a marching off, decamping*.

disciplīna, -ae, [disco, *learn*], f., *instruction, training, discipline, system*.

disclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, [dis + claudo], 3, a., *keep apart, hold apart, separate, divide*.

discō, discere, didicī, no supine, 3, a. and n., *learn*.

discrīmen, -inis, [discerno], n., *risk, danger, crisis*. vi. 38.

discutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussum, [dis + quatio, *shake*], 3, a., *shatter, disperse, remove, clear away*.

dīsiciō (or **disjicio**), **-icere, -iēcī, -iectum, [dis- + iacio],** 3, a., *drive asunder, disperse, scatter, rout*.

dispār, -paris, [dis + par], adj., *unequal, unlike, different*.

disparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [dis + paro], 1, a., *divide, part, separate*. vii. 28.

dispergō, -spergere, -spersī, -spersum, [**dis + spargo,** *scatter*], 3, a., *scatter, scatter about, disperse.*

dispersus, see **dispergo.**

dispōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, [**dis + pōno**], 3, a., *set in various places, distribute, station, post.*

disputātiō, -ōnis, [**disputo**], f., *discussion, debate, dispute.*

disputō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**dis + puto**], 1, a. and n., *treat of, investigate, discuss.* vi. 14.

dissēnsiō, -ōnis, [**dissentio**], f., *difference of opinion, disagreement.*

dissentiō, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum, [**dis + sentio**], 4, n., *differ in opinion, disagree.*

disserō, -serere, -sēvī, -situm, [**dis + sero,** *sow*], 3, a., *plant here and there, place at intervals* in the earth. vii. 73.

dissimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**dissimilis**], 1, a. and n., (lit. *make unlike*), *disguise, conceal.*

dissipō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, a., *scatter.*

dissuādeō, -suādēre, -suāsī, -suāsum, [**dis + suādeo**], 2, a., *advise against, dissuade, oppose.* vii. 15.

distineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, [**dis + teneo**], 2, a., *keep apart, hold off, separate, hinder.*

distō, -stāre, no pf. or supine, [**dis + sto**], 1, n., *stand apart, be separated.*

distrahō, -trahere, -traxī, -tractum, [**dis + traho,** *draw*], 3, a., *wrench asunder, pull apart, divide.*

distribuō, -tribuere, -tribuī, -tribūtum, [**dis + tribuo**], 3, a., *distribute, assign, divide.*

dītissimus, see **dīves.**

diū, adv., *long, for a long time.* — **quam diū,** *as long as.* — Comp., **diūtius,** *longer, too long.* — Sup., **diūtissimē.**

diurnus, -a, -um, [**diēs**], adj., *of the day, by day.*

diūtinus, -a, -um, [**diū**], adj., *long continued.*

diūtissimē, see **diū.**

diūturnitās, -tātis, [**diūturnus**], f., *long continuance, length of time, long duration.*

diūturnus, -a, -um, [**diū**], adj., *long, prolonged.*

dīversus, -a, -um, (part. of **dīverto**), adj., *opposite, contrary; separate, apart; in different directions, different;* as part., *scattered,* ii. 24.

dīves, -itis; comp. **dītior,** sup. **dītissimus,** adj., *rich, wealthy.*

Divicō, -ōnis, m., a chief of the Helvetii, who led their army in the struggle with Cassius, B.C. 107, and headed an embassy to Caesar B.C. 58. i. 13, 14.

dīvidō, -videre, -vīsī, -vīsum, 3, a., *divide, separate.*

dīvīnus, -a, -um, [**dīvus**], adj., *divine, sacred.*

Divitiacus, -ī, m., (1) A Druid and chief of the Aedui, who went to Rome to plead the cause of his countrymen when they were opposed by the Sequani and the Arverni in alliance with Ariovistus. He was faithful to Caesar, who rewarded him by pardoning his brother Dumnorix (i. 18–20) and the Bellovaci (ii. 14, 15) at his intercession. (2) A chief of the Suessiones, who held sway over a large part of Gaul and even Britain. ii. 4.

do, dare, dedī, datum, irr. a., *give, give up, grant; offer, furnish, allow.* — **dare negōtium,** *to commission, direct.* — **dare sē ventō,** *to run before the wind.* — **dare in fugam,** *to put to flight.* — **dare operam,** *to take pains.* — **dare manūs,** *to yield.* See IDIOMS.

doceō, docēre, docuī, doctum, 2, a., *teach, inform, point out, state.*

documentum, -ī, [doceo], n., *evidence, proof, warning.* vii. 4.

doleō, dolēre, doluī, dolitum, 2, n., *suffer; be grieved* or *annoyed.*

dolor, -ōris, [doleo], m., *pain, grief, distress, annoyance, vexation.*

dolus, -ī, m., *fraud, deceit, stratagem.*

domesticus, -a, -um, [domus], adj., *home, at home, internal, their own.* — **domesticum bellum,** *civil war,* v. 9.

domicilium, -ī, [domus], n., *dwelling, abode, habitation.*

dominor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [dominus], 1, dep., *be master, have dominion.*

dominus, -ī, [domo, *tame, conquer*], m., *master, lord.*

Domitius, -ī, *Lucius Domitius Ahenobarbus,* consul with Appius Claudius Pulcher, B. C. 54.

domus, -ūs, [locative form **domī**; cf. A. 70 *f*; G. 67, 2; H. 119, 1], f., *house, home.*

Donnotaurus, -ī, m., *Gaius Valerius Donnotaurus,* a Gaul, son of Gaius Valerius Caburus. vii. 65.

dōnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [dōnum, *gift*], 1, a., *give, present, confer.*

dōnum, -i, [do, *give*], n., *gift, present.*

dorsum, -ī, n., and **dorsus, -i,** m., *back; top* or *ridge* of a mountain.

dōs, dōtis, [do], f., *dowry, marriage portion.* vi. 19.

Druidēs, -um, [Two derivations are given; one from the Greek δρῦς, an oak; the other from the Keltic, *der* an oak, *wydd,* mistletoe, and *dyn,* a man, "a man who derives supernatural information from the mistletoe on the oak"], m., *the Druids.* See p. 40.

Dūbis, -is, m., a river of Gaul, tributary of the Arar (Saône); to-day called *Doubs.* i. 38.

dubitātiō, -ōnis, [dubito], f., *doubt, hesitation.*

dubitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [freq. from **du-hibeo,** i. e., **duo-habeo**], 1, n., *be uncertain, doubt, hesitate.*

dubius, -a, -um, [for **du-hibius, duo-habeo**], adj., *doubtful, uncertain.* — **non dubium est quīn,** *there is no doubt that.*

ducentī, -ae, -a, [duo + centum], adj., *two hundred.*

dūcō, dūcere, dūxī, dūctum, 3, a., *lead, guide, bring, take; construct; think, consider, reckon; protract, prolong, put off.* — **dūcere in mātrimōnium,** *to marry.* — **dūcere uxōrem,** *to marry.*

ductus, -ūs, [dūco], m., *lead, generalship, command.* vii. 62.

dum, conj., *while; until.*

Dumnorix, -igis, m., a chief of the Aedui, and brother of Diviticacus. He married the daughter of Orgetorix, and obtained permission for the Helvetii to pass through the territory of the Sequani. He was always hostile to the Romans, and was killed in B. C. 55 when trying to escape from Caesar.

duo, -ae, -o, [acc. m. **duo,** vii. 33; gen. **duūm,** iii. 17], adj., *two.*

duodecim [duo + decim], indecl. adj., *twelve.*

duodecimus, -a, -um, [duo + decimus], adj., *twelfth.*

duodēnī, -ae, -a, [duo + dēni, *by tens*], adj., *twelve at a time, by twelves.*

duodēvīgintī, -ae, -a, [duo + dē + vīginti], adj., *eighteen.*

duplex, -icis, [duo + plico, *fold*], adj., *twofold, double.*

duplicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**duo + plico,** *fold*], 1, a., *double.*
dūritia, -ae, [**dūrus**], adj., *hardiness; severe mode of life.* vi. 21.
dūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**dūrus**], 1, a., *harden, make hardy.* vi. 28.
Durocortorum, -ī, n., capital of the Remi, now *Rheims,* situated on the Vêle, a branch of the Aisne. vi. 44.
dūrus, -a, -um, adj., *hard, severe, difficult; inclement.*
dux, ducis, [**dūco,** *lead*], m., *general, leader, guide.*

E.

ē, [ē before consonants, **ex** generally before vowels], prep., with abl. only. The fundamental idea is, proceeding from the interior of an object; *from, out of, in accordance with, instead of, in consequence of, on.* — **ex unā, alterā, tertiā, utrāque parte,** *on one, the other, the third, on both sides.* — **ex equīs,** *on horseback.* — **ex ūsū,** *of advantage, advantageously.* See IDIOMS.
eā, [properly abl. of **is,** sc. **parte** or **viā**], adv., *there, on that side.* v. 51.
Eburōnes, -um, m., a Belgic tribe, situated between the Meuse and the Rhine, clients of the Treveri. Under Ambiorix and Catuvolcus they attacked a Roman camp and treacherously murdered those who surrendered under promise of a safe passage. Caesar avenged this by the almost complete extinction of the tribe.
Eburovīces, -um, m., a division of the Aulerci on the south side of the Seine and west of Paris. Their chief town was Mediolanum, now *Evreux.*
ēdīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dīctum, [**ē + dīco**], 3, a., *make known, command.*
ēdiscō, -discere, -didicī, no supine, [**ē + disco**], 3, a., *learn by heart, commit to memory.* vi. 14.
ēditus, -a, -um, [properly part. of edo], adj., *elevated, high.*
ēdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, [**ē + dō**], 3, a., *put forth, exhibit, elevate.*
ēdoceō, -ēre, -docuī, -doctum, [**ē + doceo**], 2, a., *teach, instruct, inform, tell.*
ēdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -dūctum, [**ē + dūco**], 3, a., *lead out, lead forth, draw out.*
effarciō, -īre, -farsī, -fartum, [**ex + farcio,** *stuff*], 4, a., *stop up, fill.* vii. 23.
effēminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**ex + fēmina**], 1, a., *make womanish, weaken, enervate.*
efferō, -ferre, extulī, ēlātum, [**ex + fero**], irr. a., *bring* or *carry out, carry away; spread abroad, publish; lift up.*
efficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, [**ex + facio**], 3, a., *form, bring about, bring to pass, accomplish, effect; produce; build; make, render.*
effodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossum, [**ex + fodio,** *dig*], 3, a., *dig out, tear out.* vii. 4.
effossus, see **effodio.**
effugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitum, [**ex + fugio,** *flee*], 3, a., *escape.*
egēns, egentis, pres. part. of egeō, as adj., *needy.*
egeō, egēre, eguī, no supine, 2, n., *need, lack, be in want.*
egestās, -tātis, [**egeo**], f., *poverty, want, need.* vi. 24.
ego, meī, personal pron., *I;* pl. **nōs, nōstrum,** *we.*

egomet, pl. **nōsmet,** strengthened form of **ego.** vii. 38.

ēgredior, -gredī, -gressus, [ē + **gradior,** *step*], 3 dep., *go out, come forth, leave, land* (from ships).

ēgregiē, [**ēgregius**], adv., *admirably, remarkably well, splendidly.*

ēgregius, -a, -um, [ē + **grex,** *herd*], adj., *eminent, marked, excellent.*

ēgressus, see **ēgredior.**

ēgressus, -ūs, [**ēgredior**], m., *departure, disembarking, landing.*

ēiciō (or **ējicio**), **-icere, -iēcī, -iectum,** [ē + **iacio**], 3, a., *throw* or *cast out, thrust out; expel.* — **sē ēicere,** *rush.*

ēiusmodī (or **ējusmodī**), [**ēius modī**], adv., *of this kind, such.* — **ēiusmodī ut,** *of such a sort that.*

ēlābor, -lābī, -lāpsus sum, [ē + **lābor**], 3, dep., *escape, slip away, get off.*

ēlātus, see **effero.**

Elaver, Elaveris, n., the *Allier,* a river of France, which rises in the Cévennes, and after a northerly course of nearly 200 miles falls into the Loire near Nevers.

ēlectus, [properly part. of **ēligo**], *chosen, picked* (men).

elephantus, -ī, m., *elephant.* vi. 28.

Eleuteti, -ōrum, m. pl., a people of Central Gaul, clients of the Arverni. vii. 75.

ēliciō, -licere, -licuī, -licitum, [ē + **lacio,** *entice*], 3, a., *entice forth, bring* or *draw out.*

ēligō, -ligere, -lēgī, -lēctum, [ē + **lego**], 3, a., *choose out, select, choose.*

Elusātes, -ium, m., a people of Aquitania, between the Ausci and the Tarusates. The name survives in *Eauze.* iii. 27.

ēmigrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ē + **migro,** *depart*], 1, n., *go forth, remove, emigrate.* i. 31.

ēmineo, -minēre, -minuī, no supine, 2, n., *project, stand forth.*

ēminus [ē + **manus,** *hand*], adv., *at a distance, from afar.*

ēmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, [ē + **mitto**], 3, a., *send out; hurl, cast, shoot, discharge; throw away; let go.*

emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptum, 3, a., *buy, purchase.*

ēnāscor, -nāscī, -nātus sum, [ē + **nāscor**], 3, dep., *grow out, shoot out* (of branches). ii. 17.

enim [**nam**], conj., *for, in fact.*

ēnītor, -nītī, -nīsus and **-nīxus sum,** [ē + **nītor**], 3, dep., *struggle, strive, make an effort.*

ēnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ē + **nūntio**], 1, a., *tell, reveal, disclose, report.*

eō, adv., *thither, there; to such a degree;* before comp., *all the;* if **quō** follows, **quō** = *as.* — **eō minus,** *all the less.* — **eō magis,** *all the more.*

eō, īre, īvī or **iī, itum,** irr. n., *go, pass, march.*

eōdem [**īdem**], adv., *to the same place, to the same purpose.*

ephippium, -ī, [Greek], n., *saddlecloths.*

ephippiātus, -a, -um, adj., *furnished with saddle-cloths.* iv. 2.

epistola, -ae, [Greek], f., *letter.* v. 48.

Eporedorix, -igis, m., (1) a chief of the Aedui, who, before Caesar's arrival, had led his tribe against the Sequani. He joined Vercingetorix and was taken prisoner. (2) Another Aeduan chosen to a command in the army which marched to relieve Vercingetorix.

epulae, -ārum, f., *banquet, feast.* vi. 28.

eques, -itis, [**equus**], m., *rider,*

horseman; knight; pl. *horse, cavalry.*

equester, -tris, -tre, [**equus**], adj., *of cavalry, cavalry.*

equitātus, -ūs, [equito, *ride*], m., *cavalry.*

equus, -ī, m., *horse.*

Eratosthenēs, -is, a Greek, born at Cyrene, in Africa, B.C. 276; appointed librarian to the Alexandrian Library, and died B.C. 192, of starvation, because he was tired of life. He acquired fame as a geographer, mathematician, and critic. vi. 24.

ērēctus, -a, -um, (pf. part. of **ērigo**), adj., *high.*

ēreptus, see **eripio.**

ergā, prep. with acc. only, *towards.*

ergō, adv., *therefore, then.*

ērigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctum, [ē + **rego**], 3, a., *set up, erect, build.*

ēripiō, -ripere, -ripuī, -reptum, [ē + **rapio,** *seize*], 3, a., *take* or *snatch away; rescue, deprive, save.* — **sē ēripere,** *flee, escape.*

errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, n., *wander, be mistaken.*

ērumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, [ē + **rumpo,** *break*], 3, a., *break out, sally, make a sortie.*

ēruptiō, -ōnis, [ērumpo], f., *sally, sortie.*

essedārius, -ī, [essedum], m., *a charioteer, one who fights from a chariot.*

essedum, -ī, [Keltic word], n., *war-chariot.*

Esubiī, -ōrum, m. pl., a Gallic people, in Normandy.

et, conj., *and, also;* after **idem,** *as.* — **et . . . et,** *both . . . and.*

etiam [**et** + **iam**], conj., *also, even.*

etsi [**et** + **sī**], conj., *although, even if.*

ēvādō, -vādere, -vāsī, -vāsum, [ē + **vādo,** *walk*], 3, n., *escape.* iii. 19.

ēvellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsum, [ē + **vello,** *pluck*], 3, a., *pull out.* i. 25.

ēveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, [ē + **venio**], 4, n., *turn out, happen.* iv. 25.

ēventus, -ūs, [ēvenio], m., *outcome, issue, chance, result, fate.*

ēvocātus, -ī, [part. of ēvoco used as noun], m., a veteran serving voluntarily after the completion of his time of service; see p. 21.

ēvocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ē + **voco**], 1, a., *call out, summon, invite.*

ēvolō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, [ē + **volo,** *fly*], 1, n., *rush out, dash out.* iii. 28, vii. 27.

ex, see **ē.**

exāctus, see **exigo.**

exagito, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**ex** + **agito,** *drive*], 1, a., *drive out, annoy, harass.*

exāmino, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**exāmen,** *tongue of a balance*], 1, a., *weigh.* v. 12.

exanimātus, -a, -um, pf. part. of **exanimo,** as adj., *out of breath, breathless.*

exanimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**ex** + **animo, anima**], 1, a., *kill;* pass., *be weakened* or *exhausted, die.*

exardēscō, -ardēscere, -arsī, -arsum, [**ex** + **ardēsco,** *burn*], 3, n., *take fire; be incensed.* v. 4.

exaudiō, -audīre, -audīvī, -audītum, [**ex** + **audio**], 4, n., *hear distinctly, clearly perceive.*

excēdō, -cēdere, -cēssī, -cēssum, [**ex** + **cēdo**], 3, n., *leave, withdraw, remove.*

excellō, -cellere, -celluī, -celsum, 3, a., *be eminent, surpass, excel.*

excelsus, -a, -um, (pf. part. of **excello**), adj., *high, elevated, lofty.*

exceptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [freq., **excipio**], 1, a., *catch up,* with the hands. vii. 47.

exceptus, see excipio.

excīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, [ex + caedo], 3, a., *cut out, cut down, destroy.* vii. 50.

excipiō, -cipere, cēpī, -ceptum, **[ex + capio]**, 3, a., *take out, take up; encounter; cut off, catch; receive.*

excitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ex + cito, *move*], 1, a., *erect, raise rapidly; stir up, rouse, animate.*

exclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, **[ex + claudo]**, 3, a., *shut out* or *off, cut off, separate, exclude.*

excōgitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, **[ex + cōgito]**, 1, a., *think out, devise.*

excruciō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, **[ex + crucio**, from **crux**, *cross*], 1, a., *torment, torture.*

excubitor, -ōris, [excubo], m., *sentinel.* vii. 69.

excubō, -cubāre, -cubuī, -cubitum, **[ex + cubo**, *lie down*], 1, n., *lie out of doors, keep watch.*

exculcō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, **[ex + calco**, from **calx**, *heel*], 1, a., *tread down.* vii. 73.

excursiō, -ōnis, [ex + curro], f., *a running out, sally, sortie.* ii. 30.

excūsātiō, -ōnis, [excūso], f., *apology, defence, an excusing.* vi. 4.

excūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ex + causa], *excuse.* iv. 22.

exemplum, -ī, [eximo, lit. *that which is taken out*], n., *example; warning, punishment.*

exeō, -īre, -īvī or -iī, -itum, **[ex + eo]**, irr. n., *go forth* or *out, withdraw, leave.*

exerceō, -ercēre, -ercuī, -ercitum, [ex + arceo], 2, a., *exercise, practice, train.*

exercitātiō, -ōnis, [exercito, freq. from **exerceo]**, f., *practice, exercise, training.*

exercitātus, -a, -um, [exercito], adj., *skilled, trained.*

exercitus, -ūs, [exerceo], m., *army*, as a trained and disciplined body of men.

exhauriō, -haurīre, -hausī, -haustum, [ex + haurio, *drink up*], 4, a., *take out, empty out.* v. 42.

exigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, **[ex + ago]**, 3, a., *drive out, finish, pass, come to an end, spend.*

exiguē [exiguus], adv., *barely, hardly.* vii. 71.

exiguitās, -ātis, [exiguus], f., *smallness, shortness, small number, small extent.*

exiguus, -a, -um, [exigo], adj., *small, scanty.*

eximius, -a, -um, [eximo], adj., *eminent, distinguished, excellent, uncommon.*

exīstimātiō, -ōnis, [existimo], f., *a judging, opinion, judgment.*

exīstimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ex + aestimo, *compute*], 1, a. and n., *think, consider.*

exitus, -ūs, [exeo], m., *a going out; conclusion, result; issue, event.*

expediō, -pedīre, -pedīvī or **-pediī, -pedītum, [ex + pēs]**, 4, a., *disengage, set free; get ready.*

expedītiō, -ōnis, [expedio], f., *an expedition, campaign.*

expedītus, -a, -um, (pf. part. of **expedio**), adj., *ready, unincumbered, light-armed; rapid.* As noun, m., *a light-armed soldier;* see p. 23.

expellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, [ex + pello], 3, a., *drive out* or *away, remove.*

experior, -perīrī, -pertus sum, 4, dep., *put to the test, try; await.*

expiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ex + pio, *appease*] 1, a., *expiate, atone for, make amends for, remedy.*

expleo, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, [**ex + pleo,** *fill*], 2, a., *fill up* or *full, complete.*

explōrātor, -ōris, [**explōro**], m., *spy, scout.*

explōrātus, -a, -um, (pf. part. of **explōro**), adj., *established, certain, sure.*

explōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, a., *search out, investigate, choose out.*

expōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, [**ex + pōno**], 3, a., *set* or *place out; land* from a ship; *state, explain.*

exportō, -are, -āvī, -ātum, [**ex + porto**], 1, a., *carry out.* iv. 18.

exposcō, -poscere, -poposcī, no supine, [**ex + posco**], 3, a., *demand.* vii. 19.

exprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, [**ex + premo**], 3, *press* or *force out, extort, raise.*

expūgnātiō, -ōnis, [**expūgno**], f., *a storming, attack.*

expūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**ex + pugno**], 1, a., *storm, attack; capture.*

expulsus, see **expello.**

exquīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, [**ex + quaero,** *seek*], 3, a., *seek for, inquire, ask, ask for.*

exquīsītus, see **exquīro.**

exsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, [**ex + sequor**], 3, dep., *follow out, maintain, enforce.* i. 4.

exserō, -serere, -seruī, -sertum, [**ex + sero**], 3, a., *thrust out; bare, make bare* (i. e. *thrust out* from the garments). vii. 50.

exsertus, see **exsero.**

exsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum, [**ex + sisto**], 3, n., *make come out; appear, spring up, arise, project.*

exspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**ex + specto**], 1, a. and n., *look out for, wait to see, wait for, wait.*

exspoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**ex + spolio,** *strip off*], 1, a., *deprive, rob.* vii. 77.

exstinguō, -stinguere, -stinxī, -stinctum, [**ex + stinguo,** *quench*], 3, a., *quench, extinguish, destroy utterly.* v. 29.

exstō, -stāre, no pf. or supine, [**ex + sto**], 1, n., *stand out, project.* v. 18.

extruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, [**ex + struo,** *place*], 3, a., *pile up, raise, rear, build.*

exter or **exterus, -a, -um,** adj., *outward, outer.* Comp. **exterior,** *outer.* Sup. **extrēmus,** *last, extreme, at the extremity.* See IDIOMS.

exterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, [**ex + terreo,** *scare*], 2, a., *frighten, strike with terror.*

extimēscō, -timēscere, -timuī, no supine, [**ex + timēsco,** *fear*], 3, a. and n., *fear greatly, dread, be much afraid of.*

extorqueō, -torquēre, -torsī, -tortum, [**ex + torqueo,** *twist*], 2, a., *twist out, extort, force from.*

extrā [contr. from **exterā,** sc. **parte; exter**], prep. with acc. only, *outside of, beyond, without.*

extrahō, -trahere, -traxī, -tractum, [**ex + traho,** *draw*], 3, a., *draw out; waste* [i. e., draw out to no purpose], v. 22.

extrēmum, -ī, [**extrēmus, exter**], n., *end, termination.*

extrūdō, -trūdere, -trūsī, -trūsum, [**ex + trūdo,** *push*], 3, a., *push out, shut out.* iii. 12.

exul, -ulis, m., *an outlaw, exile.* v. 55.

exuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum, 3, a., *strip, strip off, despoil, deprive.*

exūrō, -ūrere, -ūssī, -ūstum, [**ex + ūro,** *burn*], 3, a., *burn up.*

F.

faber, fabrī, m., *artisan, workman*, principally in iron and wood. In the army the **fabri** formed a separate body. Their chief was called **praefectus fabrum** [i. e. **fabrorum**].

Fabius, -ī, m., (1) *Quintus Fabius*, later called *Allobrogicus*, was consul B. C. 121, and defeated the Arverni and Ruteni, together with the Allobroges, near the junction of the Isère (Isara) and the Rhone. i. 45. (2) *Gaius Fabius*, a lieutenant of Caesar. v. 24, vii. 90. (3) *Lucius Fabius*, a centurion of the VIIIth legion, the first to enter Gergovia, but subsequently killed. vii. 47, 50.

facile, [**facilis**], adv., *easily, readily, with no trouble*. Comp. **facilius**, sup. **facillimē**.

facilis, -e, [**facio**], adj., *easy, convenient, not difficult* or *hard*. — comp. **facilior**, sup. **facillimus**.

facinus, -oris, [from **facio**; lit. *something done*, whether good or bad], n., *action, deed, crime*. — **facinus admittere** or **in sē admittere**, *to become guilty of a crime*.

faciō, facere, fēcī, factum, 3, a., *do, make, act, form*; for pass., **fīō, fierī, factus sum**, see **fīo**. — **certiōrem facere**, *to inform*. — **iter facere**, *to march*. — **vim facere**, *to use violence*. — **facere imperāta**, *to obey commands*. — **facere fidem**, *to convince*. See IDIOMS.

factiō, -ōnis, [facio], f., *party, side, political party*.

factū, pass. supine of **facio**.

factum, ī, [**facio**], lit. *what is done*; *deed, action, achievement*.

facultās, -ātis, [**facul, facilis**], f., *ability, capability*; *opportunity, means, supply*; — pl., *resources, goods*.

fāgus, -ī, f., *beech* (tree). v. 12.

fallō, fallere, fefellī, falsum, 3, a. and n., *deceive, disappoint*.

falsus, -a, -um, [part. of **fallo**], adj., *false, ungrounded*. vi. 20.

falx, falcis, f., *a sickle, hook* like a sickle. See N. to vii. 22.

fāma, -ae, [**for**, *speak*], f., *report, rumor, the common talk*.

famēs, -is, f., *hunger, starvation*.

familia, -ae, [**famulus**, *servant*], f., *body of slaves, vassals*; *household, family*; sometimes **familia** includes the whole body of serfs, or retainers, under the authority of a nobleman, = *retinue*, as i. 4.

familiāris, -e, [**familia**], adj., *belonging to a family, private*. — **rēs familiārēs**, *property*. — noun, **familiāris, -is**, m., *an intimate friend, confidant*.

familiāritās, -ātis, [**familiāris**], f., *intimacy, familiar friendship*.

fās [**for, fāri**, *speak*], indecl. n., def., *what is allowable, lawful, right*; applied to things allowable by the laws of God and nature.

fastīgātē [**fastīgātus**], adv., *sloping*. iv. 17.

fastīgātus, -a, -um, [part. of **fastīgo**, *to make pointed*], adj., *sloping, sloping down*. ii. 8.

fastīgium, -ī, n., *the top* of a roof or hill; *sloping side, slope, descent, declivity*.

fātum, -ī, [**for, fāri**, *speak*], n., *what is declared, ordained*, in accordance with the laws of God or nature; *fate, destiny*.

faveō, favēre, fāvī, fautum, 2, n., *be favorable, inclined toward, favor, countenance*.

fax, facis, f., *torch, firebrand*. vii. 24.

fēlīcitās, **-ātis**, [**fēlīx**, *happy*], f., *good fortune, success.*

fēlīciter [**fēlīx**], adv., *with good fortune, luckily, happily, prosperously.*

femen, inis. See **femur.**

fēmina, **-ae**, f., *woman, female.*

femur, **-oris** and (from an old nom. **femen**) **-inis**, n., *thigh.* v. 35; vii. 73.

fera, **-ae**, [f. of **ferus**, used as noun], f., *wild beast.*

ferāx, **-ācis**, [fero], adj., *fertile.* Sup. **ferācissimus**, ii. 4.

ferē, adv., *almost, nearly, for the most part, as a rule, usually, chiefly;* with words denoting space or time, *about.*

ferō, **ferre**, **tulī**, **lātum**, irr. a., *bear; endure; bring, receive, report.* — **signa ferre**, *to advance.* **ferre condiciōnem**, *to propose terms.* See IDIOMS.

ferrāmentum, **-ī**, [**ferrum**], n., *an iron tool.* v. 42.

ferrāria, **-ae**, [**ferrārius**], *iron mine.* vii. 22.

ferrārius, **-a**, **-um**, [**ferrum**], *of iron, made of iron.*

ferreus, **-a**, **-um**, [**ferrum**], adj., *iron, of iron.*

ferrum, **-ī**, n., *iron;* figuratively, *iron point,* i. 25; *sword,* v. 30.

fertilis, **-e**, [fero], adj., *fertile, fruitful, productive.*

fertilitās, **-ātis**, [**fertilis**], f., *fertility.* ii. 4.

ferus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *wild; rude, savage, fierce.*

fervēfaciō, **-facere**, **-fēcī**, **-factum**, [**ferveo** + **facio**], 3, a., *make hot, heat.*

fervēns, **-ntis**, [part. of **ferveo**, *be hot*], *hot, glowing.*

fībula, **-ae**, [**fīgo**, *fasten*], f., *brace.* iv. 17.

fidēlis, **-e**, [**fidēs**], adj., *faithful, trustworthy, true* (friend).

fidēs, **-eī**, f., *good faith, fidelity; pledge of good faith, promise; alliance, confidence, trust.* See IDIOMS.

fīdūcia, **-ae**, [**fidēs**], f., *trust, reliance, confidence, assurance.*

figūra, **-ae**, [connected with **fingo**, *to shape*], f., *form, shape.*

fīlia, **-ae**, f., *daughter.*

fīlius, **-ī**, m., *son.*

fingō, **fingere**, **finxī**, **fictum**, 3, a., *make, shape; feign, invent.* See IDIOMS.

fīniō, **fīnīre**, **fīnīvī**, **fīnītum**, [**fīnis**], 4, a., *bound, define, measure, limit.*

fīnis, **-is**, m., *limit, border, boundary, end;* pl. *borders,* hence *territory, country, land.*

fīnitimus, **-a**, **-um**, [**fīnis**], adj., *bordering on, neighboring;* — as a noun, pl. **fīnitimī**, **-ōrum**, m., *neighbors.*

fīō, **fierī**, **factus sum**, 3, n., *be made; become, take place, happen; come about, come to pass.* — **certior fieri**, *to be informed.*

firmiter [**firmus**], adv., *steadily, firmly.* iv. 26.

firmitūdō, **-inis**, [**firmus**], f., *firmness, strength.*

firmō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, [**firmus**], 1, a., *make firm* or *fast, strengthen, fortify, secure.*

firmus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *strong, vigorous, powerful.*

fistūca, **-ae**, f., *rammer, pile-driver.* iv. 17.

Flaccus, **-ī**, a Roman cognomen.

flāgitō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, 1, a., *ask earnestly, importune, demand.* i. 16.

flamma, **-ae**, f., *flame, fire.*

flectō, **flectere**, **flēxī**, **flēxum**, 3, a., *bend, turn.*

fleō, **flēre**, **flēvī**, **flētum**, 2, n. and a., *weep.*

flētus, **-ūs**, m., *weeping.*

flō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *blow.* v. 7.

flōrēns, -ntis, [part. of **flōreo,** *bloom*], adj., *blooming, flourishing, prosperous, influential.*

flōs, flōris, m., *flower.* vii. 73.

fluctus, -ūs, [**fluo**], m., *flood, flow, wave, billow.*

flūmen, -inis, [**fluo**], n., *flowing water, current, stream, river.* — **adversō flūmine,** *up stream.*

fluō, fluere, flūxī, flūxum, 3, n., *flow.* i. 6, 12.

fodiō, fodere, fōdī, fossum, 3, a., *dig.* vii. 73.

foedus, foederis, n., *treaty, compact, league.* vi. 2.

fore = futurum esse, see **sum.**

forem, = essem, see **sum.**

forīs [old abl., connected with **foris,** *door*], adv., *out of doors, outside.* vii. 76.

forma, -ae, f., *shape, form.*

fors, fortis, [**fero,** *bring*], f., *chance, luck.*

forte [abl. of **fors**], adv., *by chance, by accident.*

fortis, -e, adj., *strong, brave, courageous.*

fortiter [**fortis**], adv., *bravely, courageously.* Comp. **fortius,** sup. **fortissimē.**

fortitūdo, -inis, [**fortis**], f., *courage, bravery.* i. 2.

fortuītō [abl. of **fortuītus,** from **forte**], adv., *by chance.* vii. 20.

fortūna, -ae, [**fors**], f., *luck, lot, fate, chance, fortune, good fortune.*

fortūnātus, -a, -um, [**fortūno, fortūna**], adj., *prosperous, in good circumstances.* vi. 35.

forum, -i, n., *forum,* an open public place in ancient cities used for markets and gatherings of the people.

fossa, -ae, [**fodio**], f., *ditch, trench, intrenchment.*

fovea, -ae, f., *pit, pitfall.* vi. 28.

frangō, frangere, frēgī, frāctum, 3, a., *break; wreck, dash in pieces; wear out.* i. 31.

frāter, -tris, m., *brother;* as a name of honor applied to allies, *brethren,* i. 33, 44.

frāternus, -a, -um, [**frāter**], adj., *of a brother, brotherly.*

fraus, fraudis, f., *deceit, deception.*

fremitus, -ūs, [**fremo,** *make a noise*], m., *uproar, noise, din.*

frequēns, -entis, adj., *crowded, in large numbers.* — **quam frequentissimī,** *in as large numbers as possible.* iv. 11.

frētus, -a, -um, adj., *relying on,* followed by abl.

frīgidus, -a, -um, [**frīgeo,** *be cold*], adj., *cold.* iv. 1.

frīgus, frīgoris, n., *cold, cold weather, "cold spell."*

frōns, frontis, f., *forehead, front.* — **ā fronte,** *in front.*

fructuōsus, -a, -um, [**fructus**], adj., *fruitful, fertile.* i. 30.

fructus, -ūs, m., *fruit, product, profit; income, advantage, enjoyment; crops,* i. 28.

frūmentārius, -a, -um, [**frūmentum**], *having to do with grain* or *supplies; rich in grain.* i. 10. — **rēs frūmentāria,** *supply of grain.*

frūmentātiō, -ōnis, [**frūmentum**], f., *foraging;* pl., *foraging expeditions.*

frūmentor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [**frūmentum**], 1, dep., *get grain* or *supplies, forage.*

frūmentum, -ī, n., *grain;* pl., *crops of grain, grain-crops.* Cf. p. 28.

fruor, fruī, fruitus and **frūctus sum,** 3 dep., *enjoy,* followed by abl. iii. 22.

frūstrā, adv., *in vain, without effect, for nothing.*

Fufius, -ī, m., *Gaius Fufius Cita,* a Roman knight. vii. 3.

fuga, -ae, f., *flight.* — dare in fu-gam, *put to flight, rout.*
fugiō, fugere, fūgī, fugitum, 3, a. and n., *flee; avoid, shun; escape.*
fugitīvus, -a, -um, [fugio], adj., *fleeing;* — as noun **fugitīvus, -ī,** m., *a runaway* (slave). i. 23.
fugō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [fugio], 1, a., *put to flight, rout.* vii. 68.
fūmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [fūmus], 1, a., *smoke.* vii. 24.
fūmus, -ī, m., *smoke.*
funda, -ae, f., *sling.* Cf. pp. 23, 24.
funditor, -ōris, [funda], m., *a slinger.*
fundō, fundere, fūdī, fūsum, 3, a., *pour; scatter, rout, vanquish.*
fungor, fungī, functus sum, 3, dep., *discharge, perform, do,* followed by abl. vii. 25.
fūnis, -is, m., *rope, cable.*
fūnus, -eris, n., *burial, funeral;* pl., *funeral rites.* vi. 19.
furor, -ōris, [furo, *to rage*], m., *rage, madness, fury.*
furtum, -ī, [fūr, *thief*], n., *theft.*
fūsilis, -e, [fundo], adj., *molten.* v. 43.
futūrus, -a, -um, see **sum.**

G.

Gabalī, -ōrum, pl. m., *The Gabali,* a people of Central Gaul, subject to the Arverni. They lived west of the Cévennes.
Gabīnius, -ī, m., *Aulus Gabinius,* a Roman, consul with L. Piso, B.C. 58. i. 6.
gaesum, -ī, n., [Keltic], *a heavy javelin* used by the Gauls. iii. 4.
Gāius, Gāiī or **Gāī,** m., a Roman praenomen, sometimes improperly spelled **Caius;** abbreviation, **C.**
Galba, -ae, m., (1) *Servius Sulpicius Galba,* a lieutenant of Caesar. (2) *Galba,* a chief of the Suessiones, ii. 4, 13.
galea, -ae, f., *helmet* (of leather). ii. 21.
Gallia, -ae, [Gallus], f., *Gaul;* see p. 38.
Gallicus, -a, -um, [Gallus], adj., *Gallic.*
gallīna, -ae, [gallus, *a cock*], f., *hen.* v. 12.
Gallus, -a, -um, adj., *Gallic;* as a noun, m., *a Gaul;* m. pl., **Galli, -ōrum,** *the Gauls.* See pp. 38, 39.
Garumna, -ae, f., *the Garonne.* It rises in the Pyrenees, flows to the northwest and joins the Dordogne below Bordeaux, where both fall into an estuary called the Gironde. i. 1.
Garumnī, -ōrum, pl. m., a tribe in Aquitania near the sources of the Garonne. iii. 27.
Gates, -ium, m., a tribe in Aquitania, on the Garonne. iii. 27.
gaudeō, gaudēre, gāvīsus sum, 2, n., semi-dep., *rejoice, be pleased, be glad.* iv. 13.
gāvīsus, see **gaudeo.**
Geidumnī, -ōrum, pl. m., a people of Belgic Gaul dependent on the Nervii. v. 39.
Genāva, -ae, f., *Geneva, Genf,* a town of the Allobroges, situated at the southwest corner of the lake of the same name. See N. to p. 50, 14.
gener, generī, m., *son-in-law.* v. 56.
generātim [genus], adv., *by tribes* or *peoples.*
gēns, gentis, f., *nation, race, tribe, clan.*
genus, generis, [geno, = gigno], n., *birth, descent; family, class, race; kind, method, nature.*

Gergovia, -ae, f., *Gergovia,* the capital of the Arverni, situated on a lofty plateau about four miles south of Clermont in Auvergne. Caesar besieged the city, but did not take it.

Germānī, -ōrum, m., *Germans.* Cf. p. 43; N. to p. 106, 4; N. to p. 79, 7.

Germānia, -ae, [Germāni], f., *Germany,* bounded, according to the Roman conception, by the Rhine, the Danube, the Vistula, and the Ocean.

Germānicus, -a, -um, [Germāni], adj., *German.* iv. 16.

Germānus, -a, -um, adj., *of* or *from Germany, German.*

gerō, gerere, gessī, gestum, 3, a., *bear, carry; manage, transact, do, carry out; wage, perform, accomplish, fill the office of.* See IDIOMS.

gladius, -ī, m., *sword.* The sword in use in the Roman army was called Spanish (*gladius Hispānicus*) to distinguish it from the Gallic sword. It was about two feet long, double-edged and sharp-pointed, used for both stabbing and cutting. The Gallic sword was used only for cutting.

glāns, glandis, f., *acorn; ball.*

glēba, -ae, f., *lump of earth, clod.* vii. 25.

glōria, -ae, f., *glory, fame, renown.*

glōrior, -ārī, -ātus sum, [glōria], 1, dep., *boast of, glory in.*

Gnēus, -ī, m., a Roman praenomen; abbreviation, **Cn.**

Gobannitiō, -ōnis, m., uncle of Vercingetorix. In concert with others, he expelled Vercingetorix from Gergovia for trying to stir up a revolt against the Romans. vii. 4.

Gorgobina, -ae, f., a city in the land of the Aedui, inhabited by the Boii, and probably situated at the junction of the Allier and the Loire. vii. 9.

Graecus, -a, -um, adj., *Greek, Grecian;* as a noun, *a Greek.*

Grāiocelī (or **Grājocelī**), **-ōrum,** m., a Gallic tribe in the Graian Alps, who joined the Ceutrones and Caturiges in opposing Caesar's passage over the mountains. i. 10.

grandis, -e, adj., *large, great.*

grātia, -ae, [grātus], f., *favor, courtesy; influence, return, requital; friendship, popularity.* — pl., **grātiae, -ārum,** *thanks.* — **grātiā,** *for the sake of,* vii. 43. See IDIOMS.

grātulātiō, -ōnis, [grātulor], f., *joy, rejoicing, congratulation.*

grātulor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [grātus], 1, dep., *congratulate.* i. 30.

grātus, -a, -um, adj., *acceptable, pleasing;* — as a noun, n., *a favor.*

gravis, -e, adj., *heavy, heavily laden, ponderous; severe, hard, serious, troublesome.* — **gravior aetās,** *more advanced age.*

gravitās, -ātis, [gravis], f., *weight, importance; power.*

graviter [gravis], adv., *severely, violently, seriously, with great displeasure* or *annoyance.* Comp. **gravius,** sup. **gravissimē.** See IDIOMS.

gravō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [gravis], 1, a., *load, weigh down;* pass. as dep., *feel displeasure, hesitate, be unwilling.* i. 35.

Grudiī, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe, subject to the Nervii. v. 39.

gubernātor, -ōris, [guberno, *steer*], m., *pilot.*

gustō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [gustus, *a tasting*], 1, a., *taste.* v. 12.

Gutruātus, -ī, m., a leader of the Carnutes. vii. 3.

H.

habeō, habēre, habuī, habitum, 2, a., *have, hold, possess, keep; regard, think, consider, account, repute.* — **habēre sē aliter ac,** *to be different from what.* See IDIOMS.

haesitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, n., [freq. from **haereo**], *stick, stick fast, remain fixed.* vii. 19.

hāmus, -ī, m., *hook.* vii. 73.

harpago, -ōnis, m., *grappling-iron,* a pole with an iron hook at the end. vii. 81.

Harūdes, -um, m., a German tribe that, to the number of 24,000, crossed over into Gaul and joined the army of Ariovistus. They are thought to have come from Jutland.

haud, adv., *not at all, by no means, not.*

Helvētia, -ae, f., *Helvetia,* a country lying between the Jura mountains, the Rhine and Lake of Constance, the Rhone and Lake Geneva, comprising a large part of modern Switzerland. It was divided into four cantons, the names of two of which, Verbigenus and Tigurīnus, are known.

Helvēticus, -a, -um, adj., *Helvetian.* vii. 9.

Helvētius, -a, -um, adj., *Helvetian;* as a noun, **Helvetiī, -ōrum,** pl. m., *the Helvetians.*

Helviī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe in the Province, in the Cévennes. Their capital was Alba, now *Alps,* in Languedoc.

Hercynius, -a, -um, adj., *Hercynian.* The **Silva Hercynia** was a great forest in Germany extending over the central and southern parts.

hērēditās, -ātis, [**hērēs,** *heir*], f., *heirship, inheritance.*

hīberna, -ōrum, [properly neuter pl. of the adj. **hībernus,** from **hiems,** with **castra** understood], pl. n., *winter quarters.*

hībernāculum, -ī, [**hīberno**], n., *winter abode.* — pl., **hībernācula, -ōrum,** *winter quarters.* ii. 35.

Hibernia, -ae, f., *Ireland.* v. 13.

hīc, haec, hōc, dem. pron., *this, he, she, it, as follows.* When contrasted with **ille, hīc** means *the latter,* **ille,** *the former.* When followed by **ut, hīc** frequently = *such.*

hīc, adv., *here, at this point.*

hiemō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**hiems**], 1, n., *winter, pass the winter.*

hiems, hiemis, f., *winter, a storm.*

hinc, [locative form from **hīc**], adv., *hence, from this place* or *point.*

Hispānia, -ae, f., *Spain.*

Hispānus, -a, -um, adj., *Spanish.* v. 26.

hodiē [**hōc** + **diē**], adv., *to-day.*

homō, hominis, c., *human being, man.* — pl., **hominēs, -um,** m., *people, mankind* in general.

honestus, -a, -um, [**honor**], adj., *honorable, upright, distinguished, noble.*

honor or **honos, -ōris,** m., *honor, respect, dignity; public office* or *honor.*

honōrificus, -a, -um, [**honor** + **facio**], adj., *conferring honor, full of honor.* i. 43.

hōra, -ae, f., *hour.* The Roman **hora** was not a fixed period, as with us, but the twelfth part of the day, from sunrise to sunset, or of the night, from sunset to sunrise; the hours therefore varied in length with the season of the year.

horreō, horrēre, horruī, no supine, 2, n. and a., *dread, shudder at.* i. 32.

horribilis, -e, [horreo], adj., *frightful, horrible.* vii. 36.

horridus, -a, -um, [horreo], adj., *frightful, wild.* v. 14.

hortor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, dep., *exhort, urge, encourage, incite.*

hospes, hospitis, m., *guest, friend.*

hospitium, -ī, [hospes], n., *the relation of guest and host, hospitality, friendship.*

hostis, -is, m., (public) *enemy, foe.* — pl., **hostēs**, -ium, m., *the enemy.* See **inimīcus**.

hūc [**hīc**], adv., *hither, here, to this place.*

hūiusmodī or hūjusmodī [hūius + **modī**], *of this sort, such.*

hūmānitās, -ātis, [hūmānus], f., *humanity; refinement, culture.*

hūmānus, -a, -um, [homo], adj., lit., *pertaining to man; cultivated, refined, civilized.*

humerus, -ī, m., *shoulder.* vii. 50.

humilis, -e, [humus, *ground*], adj., *low; poor, humble, insignificant.*

humilitās, -ātis, [humilis], f., *lowness, weakness, insignificance.*

I.

iaceō (or jaceo), iacēre, iacuī, no supine, 2, n., *lie on the ground, lie, lie prostrate* or *dead.* — iacēns, -entis, *one fallen, the fallen.* ii. 27, vii. 25.

iaciō (or jacio), iacere, iēcī, iactum, 3, a., *throw, cast, hurl; throw up, construct.*

iactō (or jacto), -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [freq. of iacio], 1, a., *fling, toss about; discuss.*

iactūra (or jactūra), -ae, [iacio], f., *throwing away, loss, sacrifice.*

iaculum (or jaculum), -ī, [iacio], n., *javelin.* See p. 23.

iam (or jam), adv., *already, now; indeed.* — **ubi iam**, *as soon as.* — **iam anteā**, *some time before.*

ibī, adv., *in that place, there.*

Iccius, -ī, m., a leading man among the Remi. ii. 3, 6, 7.

ictus, -ūs, [ico, *strike*], m., *blow, stab, stroke.*

Id., abbreviation for **Idus**.

idcircō, [id + circā], adv., *on that account, therefore.* v. 3.

īdem, eadem, idem, dem. pron., *the same.*

identidem, [idem, doubled], adv., *from time to time, repeatedly, again and again.*

idōneus, -a, -um, adj., *suitable, convenient, fit; capable.*

Idūs, -uum, f. pl., *the Ides*, a name given to the thirteenth of the month except in March, May, July, and October, when the fifteenth was so called. i. 7.

ignis, -is, m., *fire.* — pl. **ignēs**, *watch-fires*, ii. 33.

īgnōbilis, -e, [in + (g)nōbilis], adj., *unknown, obscure.* v. 28.

īgnōminia, -ae, [in + (g)nōmen], f, lit., *loss of one's good name; disgrace, dishonor.*

īgnōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [in + (g)nōsco, *know*], 1, a., *be ignorant of, not to know, overlook.*

īgnōsco, -gnōscere, -gnōvī, -gnōtum, [in + (g)nōsco, *know*], 3, a. and n., lit., *not to know; pardon, overlook, forgive.*

īgnōtus, -a, -um, part. of **ignōsco**, as adj., *unknown, unfamiliar.*

illātus. See **īnfero**.

ille, illa, illud, dem. pron., *that; he, she, it.* — ille . . . **hīc**, *the former . . . the latter.*

illīc [ille], adv., *there, in that place.*

illigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [in + ligo, *bind*], 1, a., *bind, fasten in* or *on.*

illō [ille], adv., *thither, to that place; to that end.*

illustris, -e, [in + **lustro,** *make bright*], adj., *prominent, distinguished, remarkable.*

Illyricum, -ī, n., *Illyricum*, a general designation of the territory bordering on the east side of the Adriatic.

imbēcillitās, -ātis, [**imbēcillus,** *weak*], *weakness, feebleness.*

imber, imbris, m., *rain, rainstorm.*

imitor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, dep., *copy, imitate.*

immānis, -e, adj., *huge, enormous, immense.*

immineō, -minēre, -minuī, no supine [in + **mineo,** *overhang*], 2, n., *project over, overhang; be near at hand.* vi. 38.

immittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, [in + **mitto**], 3, a., *send into, send against, hurl; sink, let in.*

immolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [in + **mola,** *meal*, i. e. *to sprinkle meal on a victim for sacrifice*], 1, a., *sacrifice, offer* as a sacrifice.

immortālis, -e, [in + **mortālis,** *mortal*], adj., *immortal.*

immūnis, -e, [in + **mūnus**], adj., *free from taxes* or *public duty.*

immūnitās, -ātis, [**immūnis**], f., *freedom* from public service.

imparātus, -a, -um, [in + **parātus**], adj., *not ready, unprepared.*

impedīmentum, -ī, [**impedio**] n., *a hindrance.* — pl. **impedīmenta,** *baggage, heavy baggage.* See p. 23.

impediō, -pedīre, -pedīvī, -pedītum, [in + **pēs**], 4, a., *hinder, obstruct, prevent, embarrass, disorder.*

impedītus, -a, -um, pf. part. of **impedio,** as adj., *incumbered with baggage, hindered, obstructed, embarrassed.*

impellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, [in + **pello**], 3, a., *urge, urge on, drive on; instigate, incite.*

impendeō, -pendēre, no pf., no supine, [in + **pendeo,** *hang*], 2, n., *hang over, overhang.*

impēnsus, -a, -um, [pf. part. of **impendo,** *expend*], as adj., *dear* (in price). iv. 2.

imperātor, -ōris, [**impero**], m., *commander-in-chief, commander, general.*

imperātum, -ī, [**impero**], n., *command, order.*

imperfectus, -a, -um, [in + **perfectus**], adj., *unfinished, incomplete.* vi. 12.

imperītus, -a, -um, [in + **perītus**], adj., *unskilled, inexperienced, unacquainted with.*

imperium, -ī, [**impero**], n., *command, dominion, control, government, military anthority, orders.* — **nova imperia,** *a revolution.*

imperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, a. and n., *command, order, exercise authority; order to furnish, levy, demand.* After **impero, ut** is to be translated by *to,* and **ne** by *not to.* See IDIOMS.

impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, a., *obtain* (by request), *accomplish, bring to pass; gain; succeed* in obtaining one's wish.

impetus, -ūs, [in + **peto**], m., *attack, assault; fury, impetuosity.*

impius, -a, -um, [in + **pius**], adj., *wicked, impious.* vi. 13.

implicō, -āre, -āvī or **-uī, -ātum** or -itum, [in + **plico,** *fold*], 1, a., *entwine, entangle, involve.*

implōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [in + **plōro,** *call out*], 1, a., *beseech, implore, invoke, appeal to.*

impōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, [in + **pōno**], 3, a., *put* or *place on, put; impose; mount.*

importō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [in + porto], 1, a., *bring* or *carry into, import.*

imprīmīs [in + **prīmīs,** abl. pl. of **prīmus**], adv., *among the first, in the first place, chiefly, especially.*

improbus, -a, -um, [in + **probus,** *good*], adj., *bad, shameless.*

imprōvīsus, -a, -um, [in + prō + video], adj., *unforeseen, unexpected.* — dē **imprōvīsō,** *unexpectedly, suddenly.*

imprūdēns, -entis, [contr. from **imprōvidēns,** in + prō + video], adj., *not foreseeing, unawares, off one's guard.*

imprūdentia, -ae, [imprūdens], f., *want of foresight, indiscretion, imprudence, ignorance.*

impūbēs, -eris and **is,** [in + pūbēs], adj., *under age, youthful; unmarried.*

impūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [in + pūgno], 1, a. and n., *attack, assail, charge; fight.*

impulsus, -ūs, [impello], m., *instigation, incitement.* v. 25.

impulsus, pf. pass. part. of **impello.**

impūne [**impūnis,** in + poena], adv., *without punishment, with impunity.* i. 14.

impūnitās, -ātis, [**impūnis,** in + poena], *freedom* or *exemption from punishment, impunity.* i. 14.

īmus, see **īnferus.**

in, prep. with acc. and abl.: with acc. after words implying motion, *to, into, towards, against, upon, over;* with abl., *in, at, during, among, in case of.* See IDIOMS.

inānis, -e, adj., *empty; vain, useless.*

incautē [incautus], adv., *carelessly.* Comp. **incautius,** vii. 27.

incautus, -a, -um, [in + caveo], adj., *off one's guard.* vi. 30.

incēdō, -cēdere, -cēssī, -cēssum, [in + cēdo], 3, n., *advance, proceed; come to, seize* (as grief or fear).

incendium, -ī, [incendo], n., *fire, conflagration.*

incendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsum, [in + candeo, *shine*], 3, a., *set on fire, burn; rouse, excite.*

incēnsus, see **incendo.**

inceptus, see **incipio.**

incertus, -a, -um, [in + certus], adj., *uncertain, doubtful, unreliable.*

incidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsum, [in + cado], 3, n., *fall in with, meet, befall; occur, happen.*

incīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, [in + caedo], 3, a., *cut into, lop off.* ii. 17.

incipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, [in + capio], 3, a. and n., *begin, commence, undertake.*

incīsus, see **incīdo.**

incitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [in + cito, *move rapidly*], 1, a., *urge, urge on, incite, rouse, encourage.*

incōgnitus, -a, -um, [in + cōgnōsco], adj., *unknown.*

incolō, -colere, -coluī, -cultum, [in + colo], 3, a. and n., *live, dwell, settle; inhabit.*

incolumis, -e, adj., *safe, unharmed, uninjured.*

incommodē [incommodus, in + commodus], adv., *inconveniently, unfortunately.* v. 33.

incommodum, -ī, [n. of incommodus], n., *inconvenience, misfortune, disaster, injury, defeat.*

incrēdibilis, -e, [in + crēdo], adj., *not capable of belief, extraordinary, incredible.*

increpitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [freq. of **increpo,** *reprove, chide*], 1, a., *reproach, blame, taunt.*

incumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, -cu-

bitum, [in + cubo, *lie*], 3, n., *lie* or *lean upon, devote one's self to, attend to.*

incursiō, -ōnis, [in + curro], f., *invasion, inroad, attack.*

incursus, -ūs, [in + curro], m., *assault, attack.*

incūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [in + causa], 1, a., *bring a charge against, accuse, chide, blame.*

inde, adv., *from that place, thence; after that, then.*

indicium, -ī, [index, from indico, *reveal*], n., *hint, information, discovery.* — **per indicium** (= **per indicēs**), *through*, or *by, informers*, i. 4.

indīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dīctum, [in + dīco], 3, a., *proclaim, declare, appoint.*

indictus, -a, -um, [in negative + dictus], adj., *unsaid.* — **indictā causā,** *without a hearing.*

indīctus, pf. pass. part. of **indīco.**

indīgnē [indīgnus], adv., *unworthily, shamefully.* — sup. **indīgnissimē.** vii. 38.

indīgnitās, -ātis, [indīgnus], f., *unworthiness, unbecoming behavior; indignity, disgrace, insult.*

indīgnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [indīgnus], 1, dep., *think unworthy, be indignant* or *angry at.*

indīgnus, -a, -um, [in + dīgnus], adj., *unworthy, disgraceful.*

indīligēns, -entis, [in + dīligēns, *attentive*], adj., *careless, heedless.* vii. 71.

indīligenter [indīligens], adv., *carelessly, heedlessly.* Comp., ii. 33.

indīligentia, -ae, [indīligēns], f., *want of energy, carelessness, negligence.* vii. 17.

indūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -dūctum, [in + dūco], 3, a., *lead on* or *in, induce, influence; cover.*

indūctus, see indūco.

indulgentia, -ae, [indulgeo], f., *favor, kindness.* vii. 63.

indulgeō, -dulgēre, -dulsī, -dultum, 2, n., *favor, be kind to.*

induō, -duere, -duī, -dūtum, 3, a., *put on.* — **sē induere,** *to get entangled.*

industriē [abl. of **industrius**], adv., *industriously, diligently.*

indūtiae, -ārum, pl., f., *a truce, armistice.*

Indutiomarus, -ī, m., a leading man among the Treveri, and rival of Cingetorix, who sided with the Romans.

ineō, -īre, -īvī or **-iī, -itum,** [in + eo], irr., a., *enter, enter upon, begin.* — **inīre cōnsilium,** *to form a plan.* — **inīre numerum,** *to estimate the number.*

inermis, -e and **inermus, -a, -um,** [in negative, + arma], adj., *unarmed.*

iners, -ertis, [in negative, + ars], adj., *indolent, idle, unmanly.* iv. 2.

īnfāmia, -ae, [in + fāma], f., *discredit, disgrace, dishonor.*

īnfāns, -antis, [in negative, + for, *speak*], c., lit., *one not speaking; child, infant.*

īnfectus, -a, -um, [in negative, + factus], adj., *not made* or *done, unperformed.* — **infectā rē,** *without gaining one's object.*

īnferō, -ferre, intulī, illātum, [in + fero], irr., a., *bring in, introduce, bring, throw; inflict, infuse, cause, produce, inspire.* — **bellum īnferre,** *to make war.* — **īnferre signa,** *to advance.* See IDIOMS.

īnferus, -a, -um, adj., *below, underneath.* Comp. **īnferior,** *lower, inferior.* Sup., **īnfimus** or **īmus,** *lowest, at the bottom* or *base.*

īnfestus, -a, -um, adj., *hostile, dangerous.*

īnficiō, **-ficere**, **-fēcī**, **-fectum**, [**in** + **ficio**], 3, a., *stain*. v. 14.
īnfidēlis, **-e**, [**in** + **fidēlis**], adj., *unfaithful*. vii. 59.
īnfīgō, **-figere**, **-fīxī**, **-fīxum**, [**in** + **fīgo**, *fix*], 3, a., *fasten in*. vii. 73.
īnfimus. See **īnferus**.
īnfīnītus, **-a**, **-um**, [**in** negative, + **fīnītus**, from **fīnis**], adj., *boundless*, *vast*, *enormous*.
īnfirmitās, **-ātis**, [**īnfirmus**], f., *want of steadiness*, *feebleness*, *fickleness*.
īnfirmus, **-a**, **-um**, [**in** negative + **firmus**], adj., *not strong*, *weak*, *feeble*, *depressed*.
īnflectō, **-flectere**, **-flēxī**, **-flēxum**, [**in** + **flecto**], 3, a., *bend*.
īnflēxus. See **inflecto**.
īnfluō, **-fluere**, **-flūxī**, **-flūxum**, [**in** + **fluo**], 3, n., *flow into*, *flow*.
īnfodiō, **-fodere**, **-fōdī**, **-fossum**, [**in** + **fodio**, *dig*], 3, a., *bury*. vii. 73.
īnfrā, (1), adv., *below*. (2), prep. with acc. only, *below*.
ingēns, **-entis**, adj., *large*, *vast*.
ingrātus, **-a**, **-um**, [**in** + **grātus**], adj., *displeasing*. vii. 30.
ingredior, **-gredī**, **-gressus sum**, [**in** + **gradior**, *step*], 3, dep., *enter*.
iniciō (or **injicio**), **-icere**, **-iēcī**, **-iectum**, [**in** + **jacio**], 3, a., *throw in*, *infuse*; *lay on*.
iniectus (or **injectus**). See **inicio**.
inimīcitia, **-ae**, [**inimīcus**], f., *enmity*. vi. 22.
inimīcus, **-ī**, [**in** negative + **amīcus**], m., *enemy*, *personal enemy* as distinguished from **hostis**, *a public enemy*.
inimīcus, **-a**, **-um**, [**in** negative + **amīcus**], adj., *unfriendly*, *hostile*.
inīquitās, **-ātis**, [**inīquus**], f., *unfairness*, *inequality*, *injustice*; *bad character*; *unfavorable position*.
inīquus, **-a**, **-um**, [**in** negative + **aequus**], adj., *uneven*, *unjust*, *unfavorable*.
initium, **-ī**, [**ineo**], n., *beginning*.
iniungō (or **injungo**), **-iungere**, **-iunxī**, **-iunctum**, [**in** + **iungo**], 3, a., *fix* or *fasten upon*. vii. 77.
iniūria (or **injūria**), **-ae**, [**in** + **iūs**], f., *wrong*, *outrage*, *injustice*, *violence*.
iniūssū (or **injūssū**), [**in** + **iubeo**], m., abl. of obsolete nom., *without orders*.
innāscor, **-nāscī**, **-nātus sum**, [**in** + **nāscor**], 3, dep., *be born in*, *spring up*.
innītor, **-nītī**, **-nīsus** or **-nīxus sum**, [**in** + **nītor**], 3, dep., *lean on*. ii. 27.
innīxus. See **innītor**.
innocēns, **-entis**, [**in** + **noceo**], adj., *harmless*, *blameless*, *innocent*.
innocentia, **-ae**, [**innocēns**], f., *blamelessness*, *integrity*. i. 40.
inopia, **-ae**, [**inops**, *needy*], f., *want*, *lack*, *scarcity*, *poverty*.
inopīnāns, **-antis**, [**in** + **opīnor**, *think*], adj., *not expecting*, *unawares*, *off one's guard*.
inquam, **inquis**, **inquit**, def. verb, *say*. Cf. A. 144 *b*; G. 190, 2; H. 297 II. 2.
īnsciēns, **-entis**, [**in** negative + **scio**], adj., *not knowing*. — **Insciente Caesare**, *without Caesar's knowledge*.
īnscientia, **-ae**, [**insciēns**], f., *ignorance*, *lack* or *want of knowledge*.
īnscius, **-a**, **-um**, [**in** + **scio**], adj., *not knowing*, *ignorant*.
īnsecūtus. See **īnsequor**.
īnsequor, **-sequī**, **-secūtus sum**, [**in** + **sequor**], 3, dep., *pursue*, *follow up*.
īnserō, **-serere**, **-seruī**, **-sertum**, [**in** + **sero**], 3, a., *fasten into* or *to*. iii. 14.

Insidiae, -ārum, [**in** + **sideo**], pl. f., *ambush; artifice; treachery.*

Insidior, -ārī, -ātus sum, [**insidiae**], 1, dep., *lie in wait for,* vi. 34.

Insīgnē, -is, [**insīgnis**], n., *sign, mark, badge, decoration.*

Insīgnis, -e, [**in** + **sīgnum**], adj., *noted, remarkable.*

Insiliō, -silīre, -siluī, -sultum, [**in** + **salio,** *leap*], 4, a., *leap* or *spring upon.* i. 52.

Insimulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**in** + **simulo,** *make like*], 1, a., *charge, accuse.*

Insinuō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**in** + **sinuo,** *curve*], 1, a., *get into, worm one's way into.* iv. 33.

Insistō, -sistere, -stitī, no supine, [**in** + **sisto**], 3, a:, *stand, stand upon; press on, pursue.*

Insolenter [**Insolēns**], adv., *haughtily, insolently.* i. 14.

Inspectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [freq. of **inspicio**], 1, a., *look on.* vii. 25.

Instābilis, -e, [**in** + **stābilis,** from **sto**], adj., *unsteady.* iv. 23.

Instāns, -antis, (part of **Insto**), adj., *impending.* vi. 4.

Instar, n., indecl., *image;* followed by gen., *like.* ii. 17.

Instīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, a., *stir up, urge on.* v. 56.

Instituō, -stituere, -stituī, -stitūtum, [**in** + **statuo**], 3, a., *build, establish; draw up, arrange, devise, form; train; provide, begin.*

Institūtum, -ī, [**Instituo**], n., *plan, custom, usage, institution.*

Institūtus. See **Instituo.**

Instō, -stāre, -stitī, -stātum, [**in** + **sto**], 1, a., *be near at hand, press on, approach.*

Instrūmentum, -ī, [**Instruo**], n., *tool, appliance; furniture.*

Instruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, [**in** + **struo,** *build*], 3, a., *build, construct; set in order, draw up.*

Insuēfactus, -a, -um, [**in** + **sueo** + **facio**], adj., *accustomed, trained.* iv. 24.

Insuētus, -a, -um, [**in** negative + **suēsco,** *be wont*], adj., *unaccustomed.*

Insula, -ae, f., *an island.*

Insuper [**in** + **super**], adv., *above, overhead, on the top.*

integer, -gra, -grum, [**in** + root **tag** in **tango**], adj., *untouched, fresh, vigorous.* — **rē integrā,** *at the outset.*

Integō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tectum, [**in** + **tego**], 3, a., *cover, cover over.*

intellegō, -legere, -lēxī, -lēctum, [**inter** + **lego**], 3, a., *understand, see clearly, perceive, ascertain, know.*

intendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tentum, [**in** + **tendo**], 3, a., *strive.* iii. 26.

intentus, -a, -um, (pf. part. of **intendo**], adj., *attentive, eager, intent.*

inter, prep. with acc. only, *between, among, during.*

intercēdō, -cēdere, -cēssī, -cēssum, [**inter** + **cēdo**], 3, n., *go between, lie between, intervene, pass, happen.*

intercipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, [**inter** + **capio**], 3, a., *cut off, intercept.*

interclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, [**inter** + **claudo**], 3, a., *shut off, cut off, block up, hinder.*

interdīcō, -dīcere, -dīxī, -dictum, [**inter** + **dīco**], 3, a., *forbid, exclude, interdict.* See IDIOMS.

interdiū [**inter** + **diēs**], adv., *in the daytime, by day.*

interdum [**inter** + **dum**], adv., *in the mean time, meanwhile; sometimes.*

intereā [inter + ea], adv., *in the mean time, meanwhile.*

intereō, -īre, -iī, -itum, [inter + eo], 4, n., *go to decay, perish, die.*

interficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, [inter + facio], 3, a., *slay, kill.*

intericiō (or **interjicio**), **-icere, -iēcī, -iectum,** [inter + iacio] 3, a., *throw, lay,* or *place between;* of time, *elapse, intervene.*

interiectus (or **interjectus**), see **intericio.**

interim [inter + old acc. of is], adv., *in the mean time, meanwhile.*

interior, -ius, comp. (no positive), [inter], adj., *inner, interior.* — pl. m., **interiōrēs,** *those living in the interior,* v. 14; *those within* (the city), vii. 82. Sup. **intimus.**

interitus, -ūs, [intereo], m., *death, destruction.* v. 47.

intermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, [inter + mitto], 3, a. and n., *leave off, cease, stop, break, discontinue, abate.*

interniciō, -ōnis, [interneco, *destroy*], f., *slaughter, massacre, utter destruction.* i. 13, ii. 28.

interpellō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [inter + pello], 1, a., *interrupt, disturb, hinder.* i. 44.

interpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, [inter + pōno], 3, a., *place* or *put between, interpose;* of time, *let pass* or *elapse; put forward.* — **fidem interpōnere,** *to pledge one's honor.*

interpres, -pretis, m., *interpreter.*

interpretor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [interpres], *explain, expound.* vi. 13.

interrogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [inter + rogo], 1, a., *ask, question.*

interrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, [inter + rumpo], 3, a., *break down, break up.*

interscindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissum, [inter + scindo], 3, a., *cut down, cut through, destroy.*

intersum, -esse, -fuī, irr., n., *be between, be present, take part in.* — Impers., **interest,** *it concerns, is important.* — **magnī interesse,** *to be of great importance.*

intervallum, -ī, [inter + vallum], n., properly *room between two palisades; distance, interval.*

interveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, [inter + venio], 4, n., *come upon, arrive, appear.*

interventus, -ūs, [intervenio], m., *coming (up), intervention.* iii. 15.

intexō, -texere, -texuī, -textum, [in + texo, *weave*], 3, a., *weave in, interlace.* ii. 33.

intoleranter [intolerāns], adv., *excessively, earnestly.* Comp. **intolerantius,** vii. 55.

intrā [contracted from **interā,** sc. **parte**], prep. with acc. only, *inside of, within.*

intrītus [in negative + tero, *rub*], adj., *unworn, unfatigued.* iii. 26.

intrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [intrō, adv., *within*], 1, a., *enter, go in.*

intrōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, [intrō + dūco], 3, a., *lead in* or *into.*

intrōeō, -īre, -īvī or **-iī, -itum,** [intrō + eo], irr., n. and a., *come in, enter.* v. 43.

introitus, -ūs, [introeo], m., *an entering, entrance.* v. 9.

intrōmissus, see **intrōmitto.**

intrōmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, [intrō + mitto], 3, a., *send in* or *into, let in.*

intrōrsus [intrō + versus, verto], adv., *within, inside.*

intrōrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, [intrō + rumpo, *break*], 3, a., *burst in, break into.* v 51.

intueor, -tuērī, -tuitus sum, [in + **tueor**], 2, dep., *look upon.* i. 32.

intuleram, see **īnfero.**

intus, adv., *within, on the inside.*

inūsitātus, -a, -um, [in negative + **ūsitātus,** *usual*], adj., *strange, unfamiliar, novel.*

inūtilis, -e, [in negative + **ūtilis**], adj., *useless, unserviceable, of no use, disadvantageous.*

inveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, [**in + venio**], 4, a., *come upon, find, discover, learn.*

inventor, -ōris, [**invenio**], m., *discoverer, inventor.* vi. 17.

inveterāscō, -veterāscere, -veterāvī, -veterātum, [in + **vetus**], 3, n., *grow old; settle, become established.*

invictus, -a, -um, [in + **vinco**], adj., *unconquerable, invincible.* i. 36.

invideō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsum, [in + **video**], 2, a., *look askance at, be jealous of, envy.* ii. 31.

invidia, -ae, [invideo], f., *envy.* vii. 77.

inviolātus, -a, -um, [in negative + **violātus,** violo], adj., *sacred, inviolable.* iii. 9.

invītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, a., *invite, entice, summon.*

invītus, -a, -um, adj., *unwilling.* — **sē invītō,** *against his will.*

ipse, -a, -um, dem. pron., *self; himself, herself, itself, themselves; he, they* (emphatic); *very.* — **ipsīus castra,** *his own camp,* i. 21. — **hōc ipsō tempore,** *just at this moment,* vi. 37. — **ipsum esse Dumnorigem,** *that Dumnorix was the very man,* i. 18.

īrācundia, -ae, [**īrācundus**], f., *anger, rage, passion.*

īrācundus, -a, -um, [**īra,** *wrath*], adj., *irritable, passionate.* i. 31.

irrīdeō, -rīdēre, -rīsī, -rīsum, [in + **rīdeo,** *laugh*], 2, a., *laugh at, make fun of, mock.* ii. 30.

irrīdiculē [in negative + **rīdiculē**], adv., *without wit.* — **nōn irrīdiculē,** *wittily, humorously,* i. 42.

irrumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, [in + **rumpo,** *break*], 3, a., *break into, burst* or *rush into.*

irruptiō, -ōnis, [**irrumpo**], f., *sortie, dash, attack.* vii. 70.

is, ea, id, dem. pron., *this* or *that; he, she, it.* — **ēius** (or **ējus**), *his.* Before **ut, is = tālis,** *such.* — With comparatives, **eō** (abl.) = *the, all the.* — **eō magis,** *all the more.*

iste, -a, -ud, dem. pron., *that, that of yours.* vii. 77.

ita [is], adv., *in this way, so, thus; in the following manner, in such a way, accordingly.*

Italia, -ae, f., *Italy.*

itaque [**ita + que = et ita**], adv., *and so, accordingly, therefore, consequently.*

item, adv., *just so, also, in like manner.*

iter, itineris, [eo, **īre**], n., *a journey, march, road.* — **māgnum iter,** *a forced march,* from 20 to 25 miles a day. See IDIOMS, and pp. 29–31.

iterum, adv., *again, a second time.*

Itius, -ī, m., a harbor in Gaul from which Caesar sailed to Britain, probably *Boulogne.* See Desjardins, "Géographie Historique et Administrative de la Gaule Romaine," Vol. i. pp. 348–390.

iūba (or **jūba**), **-ae,** f., *mane.* i. 48.

iubeō (or **jubeo**), **iubēre, iūssī, iūssum,** [**iūs + habeo**], 2, a., *order, command.*

iūdicium (or **jūdicium**), **-ī,** [**iūdex,** *judge*], n., (legal) *judgment, decision; trial; decree; opinion.*

— **iūdicium optimum facere,** *to pass a very favorable opinion.* i. 41.

iūdicō (or **jūdicō**), **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** [**jūs** + **dico**], 1, a., *judge, decide, think, be of the opinion; pronounce, declare.*

iugum (or **jugum**), **-ī,** [**iungo**], n., *yoke, ridge.* — **sub iugum mittere,** *to send under the yoke.* See N. to p. 50, 24.

iūmentum (or **jūmentum**), **-ī,** [for **iugimentum,** from **iungo**], n., *beast of burden, draught animal,* — horse, mule, or donkey.

iunctūra (or **junctūra**), **-ae,** [**iungo**], f., *joining, joint.* iv. 17.

iunctus (or **junctus**), see **iungo.**

iungō (or **jungō**), **iungere, iunxī, iunctum,** 3, a., *join, unite, connect.*

iūnior, see **iuvenis.**

Iūnius (or **Jūnius**), **Q.,** m., *Quintus Junius,* one of Caesar's officers, by birth a Spaniard. v. 27 *et seq.*

Iuppiter (or **Juppiter**), **Iovis,** m., *Jupiter,* son of Saturn, chief god of the Romans. He presided specially over the heavens, and was supposed to hurl the thunderbolts.

Iūra (or **Jūra**), **-ae,** f., *the Jura,* a chain of mountains, extending from the Rhine to the Rhone (about 170 miles), and forming the western frontier of Switzerland.

iūrō (or **jūro**), **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** [**iūs**], 1, n., *take an oath, swear.*

iūs (or **jūs**), **iūris,** n., *right, justice, authority.* — **iūre bellī,** *by the laws of war,* i. 44. — **iūra in hōs,** *rights over these,* vi. 13. See IDIOMS.

iūsiūrandum (or **jūsjūrandum**), **iūrisiūrandī,** [**iūs** + **iūro**], n., *an oath.*

iūssus (or **jūssus**), **-ūs,** [**iubeo**], (used only in abl. sing.), m., *order, command.* vii. 3.

iūstitia (or **jūstitia**), **-ae,** [**iūs**], f., *justice, uprightness, fair-dealing.*

iūstus (or **jūstus**), **-a, -um,** [**iūs**], adj., *just, fair, due.* — **iūsta funera,** *proper, complete, funeral rites.*

iuvenis (or **juvenis**), **-e,** adj., *young.* Comp. **iūnior** (or **iuvenior**), *younger.*

iuventūs (or **juventūs**), **-ūtis,** [**iuvenis**], m., *youth; young men* (capable of bearing arms, i. e. from the seventeenth to the forty-sixth year).

iuvō (or **juvō**), **-āre, iūvi, iūtum,** 1, a., *help, assist.*

iūxtā (or **jūxtā**), adv., *near.*

K.

Kal. = **Kalendae.**

Kalendae, -ārum, f. pl., *the Calends,* the Roman name for the first day of the month. — **Kalendae Aprīlēs,** *the first of April.* i. 6.

L.

L. with proper names = **Lucius.**

Laberius, -ī, Quintus, m., *Quintus Laberius Durus,* a military tribune in Caesar's army. v. 15.

Lābiēnus, -ī, m., *Titus Attius Labienus,* a lieutenant of Caesar's, and the one in whom he placed the most confidence. In the Civil War, however, Labienus sided with Pompey, and was killed at the battle of Munda, B. C. 45.

lābor, lābī, lāpsus sum, 3, dep., *slip; go astray,* v. 3; *fail, be deceived* or *disappointed.* v. 55.

labor, -ōris, m., *toil, exertion, labor, hardship.*

labōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**labor**], 1, n., *strive; be in distress* or *difficulty, be anxious.*

labrum, -ī, [root **lab,** cf. **lambo,** *lick*], n., *lip; edge, rim.*

lāc, lāctis, n., *milk.*

lacessō, -ere, -īvī or **-iī, -ītum,** [**lacio,** *entice*], 3, a., *arouse, provoke, annoy, assail, attack.*

lacrima, -ae, f., *a tear.*

lacrimō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**lacrima**], 1, n., *weep.* vii. 38.

lacus, -ūs, m., *lake.*

laedō, laedere, laesī, laesum, 3, a., *injure, violate.* vi. 9.

laetātiō, -ōnis, [**laetus**], f., *joy, rejoicing.* v. 52.

laetitia, -ae, [**laetus**], f., *joy, delight, pleasure.*

laetus, -a, -um, adj., *glad, pleased.* iii. 18.

languidē [**languidus**], adv., *feebly.* Comp. **languidius,** vii. 27.

languidus, -a, -um, [**languor**], adj., *faint, exhausted.* iii. 5.

languor, -ōris, [**langueo,** *be faint*], m., *faintness, exhaustion.* v. 31.

lapis, -idis, m., *stone.*

lāpsus, see **lābor.**

laqueus, -ī, m., *noose.* vii. 22.

largior, largīrī, largītus sum, 4, dep., *give freely, bribe.*

largiter, adv., *greatly, much.* — **largiter pōsse,** *to have great influence.* i. 18.

largītiō, -ōnis, [**largior**], f., *liberality, bribery.* i. 9.

lassitūdō, -inis, [**lassus,** *weak*], f., *faintness, weariness, exhaustion.*

lātē [**lātus**], adv., *widely, broadly, extensively, to a great extent.* — **longē lātēque,** *far and wide.* Comp. **lātius,** sup. **lātissimē.** — **quam lātissimē,** *as far as possible.*

latebra, -ae, [**lateo**], f., *hiding-place, covert.* vi. 43.

lateō, latēre, latuī, no supine, 2, n., *lie hid, be unnoticed.* ii. 19, iii. 14.

lātissimē, see **lātē.**

lātitūdō, -inis, [**lātus**], f., *width, breadth, extent.*

lātius, see **lātē.**

Latobrigī, -ōrum, pl. m., a tribe about the headwaters of the Danube in South Baden. i. 5, 28, 29.

lātrō, -ōnis, *robber, freebooter.*

lātrōcinium, -ī, [**lātrō**], n., *freebooting, piracy, robbery, plundering.*

lātūrus, see **fero.**

lātus, -a, -um, adj., *broad, wide.*

latus, -eris, n., *side; flank* of an army. — **latus apertum,** *exposed flank,* i. 25. — **ab latere,** *on the flank.* iii. 29.

laudō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**laus**], 1, a., *praise, commend.* v. 8.

laus, laudis, f., *praise, fame, glory.*

lavō, -āre, lāvī, lavātum, lautum, or **lōtum,** 1, a., *wash;* pass. used reflexively, *bathe,* iv. 1.

laxō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, a., *spread* or *open out, extend.* ii. 25.

lēgātiō, -ōnis, [**lēgo,** *despatch*], f., *embassy, deputation, legation.*

lēgātus, ī, [**lēgo,** *despatch*], m., (lit. *one given a commission*), *envoy, ambassador, legate; lieutenant.*

legiō, -ōnis, [**lego,** *choose*], f., (lit. *a chosen number*), *a legion.* The Roman legion consisted regularly of 10 cohorts of infantry and 300 cavalrymen, having a total number of 4200 to 6000 men. But there is evidence to show that in Caesar's army the legions averaged not far from 3600 men each. See N. to p. 121, 24, and study p. 21.

legiōnārius, -a, -um, [**legio**], adj.,

of or *belonging to a legion, legionary.*

Lemannus, -ī, m., (in Caesar always with **lacus**), *Lake Geneva.*

Lemovīces, -um, pl. m., a Gallic tribe between the Santones and the Arverni. Their capital was Augustoritum, now Limoges. They joined the uprising under Vercingetorix, and sent 10,000 men to Alesia.

lēnis, -e, adj., *gentle, smooth.*

lēnitās, -ātis, [lēnis], f., *smoothness, gentleness.* i. 12.

lēniter [**lēnis**], adv., *gently, slightly, slowly.*

Lepontiī, -ōrum, pl. m., a people on the south side of the Alps, between St. Gothard and Lake Maggiore. **iv. 10.**

lepus, -oris, m., *hare.* v. 12.

Leucī, -ōrum, pl. m., a Gallic tribe in the upper part of the Meuse valley, between the Mediomatrici and the Lingones. Chief city, Tullum, now *Toul.* i. 40.

Levacī, -ōrum, pl. m., a Belgic tribe about Ghent, dependents of the Nervii. v. 39.

levis, -e, adj., *light, weak, slight.*

levitās, -ātis, [levis], f., *lightness, fickleness, instability.*

levō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [levis], 1, a., *lighten, relieve.* v. 27.

lēx, lēgis, f., *law, enactment, decree.*

Lexoviī, -ōrum, pl. m., a Gallic tribe on the coast west of the mouth of the Seine, conquered by Sabinus. They joined the uprising under Vercingetorix with 3000 men. Their capital was Noviomagus, now *Lisieux,* in the department of Calvados.

libenter [**libens,** *glad*], adv., *willingly, cheerfully.*

līber, -era, -erum, adj., *free, independent.*

līberālitās, -ātis, [**līber**], f., *generosity, liberality, kindness.*

līberāliter [**līberālis**], adv., *graciously, courteously, kindly.*

līberē [**līber**], adv., *freely, boldly.*

līberī, -ōrum, [from **līber,** i. e. the *free* part of the family], pl. m., *children.*

līberō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**līber**], 1, a., *set free, free, release.*

lībertās, -ātis, [**līber**], f., *freedom, independence, liberty.*

lībrīlis, -e, [**lībra,** *scales*], adj., *weighing a pound, of a pound weight.* vii. 81.

licentia, -ae, [**licet**], f., *lawlessness, presumption.* vii. 52.

liceor, licērī, licitus sum, 2, dep., *bid* (on goods at an auction). i. 18.

licet, licēre, licuit and **licitum est,** 2, n., impers., *it is allowed, lawful, permitted.* — **licet mihi,** *I am allowed, I may.* — **petere ut liceat,** *to ask permission.*

Liger, -eris, m., *the Loire,* the largest river in France. It rises in the Cévennes, and after a course of over 500 miles empties into the Atlantic.

līgnātiō, -ōnis, [**līgnum**], f., *cutting wood, getting wood.* v. 39.

līgnātor, -ōris, [**līgnum**], m., *woodcutter, one sent to get wood.* v. 26.

līlium, -ī, n., *lily.* Cf. N. to p. 203, 20.

līnea, -ae, [**līnum,** *thread*], f., *line.* vii. 23.

Lingones, -um, pl. m., a Gallic tribe situated about the sources of the Marne and Seine. Their chief town was Andematunnum, now *Langres.*

lingua, -ae, f., *tongue; language.*

lingula, -ae, [**lingua**], f., *a tongue of land.* iii. 12.

linter, -tris, f., rarely m., *boat, skiff.*
līnum, -ī, n., *flax.* iii. 13.
līs, lītis, f., *strife, lawsuit, damages* (adjudged by law). v. 1.
Liscus, -ī, m., chief magistrate of the Aedui with Divitiacus. i. 16, 17.
Litaviccus, -ī, m., a prominent Aeduan who entered into a conspiracy against Caesar, and took refuge in Gergovia. vii. 37, etc.
littera, -ae, f., *a letter* of the alphabet. — pl. **litterae, -ārum,** *writing,* vi. 14; *letter, despatch.*
lītus, -oris, n., *shore* of the sea, *strand, beach.*
locus, -ī, pl. **locī** (not in Caesar), and **loca,** m., *place, ground; room; position, rank, situation.* See IDIOMS.
locūtus. See **loquor.**
longē [**longus**], adv., *at a distance, far, by far.* Comp. **longius,** sup. **longissimē.** — **quam longissimē,** *as far as possible.* See **lātē.**
longinquus, -a, -um, [**longus**], adj., *far removed, remote, distant; long-continued, prolonged, lasting.*
longitūdō, -inis, [**longus**], f., *length.*
longurius, -ī, [**longus**], m., *a long pole.*
longus, -a, -um, adj., *long,* of space (distance) or of time; *distant.* — **nāvis longa,** *a war-ship, galley.* — Comp. **longior,** sup. **longissimus.**
loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, 3, dep., *speak, say, converse.*
lōrīca, -ae, f., *a* (leather) *cuirass, coat of mail;* as a military term, *breastwork,* v. 40 and vii. 72, 86.
Lucānius, Q., -ī, m., *Quintus Lucanius,* a brave centurion. v. 35.
Lucterius, -ī, m., a Cadurcan, an efficient helper of Vercingetorix in the great uprising of the Gauls, B. C. 52. vii. 5, etc.
Lugotorix, -igis, m., a British chief who was captured in an attack on Caesar's camp. v. 22.
lūna, -ae, f., *moon; goddess of the moon,* vi. 21.
Lutētia, -ae, f., a city of the Parisii on an island in the Seine, *Paris.* Cf. N. to p. 151, 10.
lūx, lūcis, f., *light, daylight.* — **prīma lūx,** *daybreak.*
luxuria, -ae, [**luxus,** *excess*], f., *high living, luxury.*

M.

M. with proper names = *Marcus.*
M'. with proper names = *Manius.*
M as designation of number = 1000.
māceria, -ae, [**mācero,** *soften*], f., (originally applied to a *wall built of soft clay*), *wall, enclosure.*
māchinātiō, -ōnis, [**māchinor,** *contrive*], f., *contrivance, machine.*
maestus, -a, -um, [**maereo,** *mourn*], adj., *sad, dejected.* vii. 80.
magis (comp. of **māgnus**), adv., *more, rather.* — **eō magis,** *all the more.* Sup. **māximē,** *very greatly, exceedingly, chiefly, especially.* — **quam māximē,** *as much as possible.*
magistrātus, -ūs, [**magister**], m., *magistracy,* (high) *civil office; magistrate.*
māgnificus, -a, -um, [**māgnus** + **facio**], adj., *splendid, magnificent.* vi. 19.
māgnitūdō, -inis, [**māgnus**], f., *greatness, extent; stature, size.*
māgnoperē [for **māgnō opere, māgnus** + **opus**], adv., *very much, greatly, specially, deeply.*
māgnus, -a, -um, adj., *great, large, powerful.* Comp. **māior** (or

mājor); sup. **māximus,** *greatest, very great, largest, very large.*

māiestās (or **mājestās**), **-ātis,** [**māgnus**], f., *greatness, dignity.*

māiōrēs (or **mājōrēs**), **-um,** (properly comp. of **māgnus**), pl. m., *those greater* or *older.* — **māiōrēs nātū,** *old men, ancestors.*

malacia, -ae, [Greek], f., *a calm, dead calm.* iii. 15.

male [**malus,** *bad*], adv., *badly, ill, unsuccessfully.* Comp. **pēius** (or **pējus**), sup. **pessimē.**

maleficium, -ī, [**male** + **facio**], n., *mischief, outrage, harm.*

Mallius, -ī, L., m., *Lucius Mallius,* a Roman proconsul; see N. to p. 102, 9.

mālō, mālle, māluī, no supine, [**magis** + **volo**], irr. a., *prefer, had rather.*

malus, -a, -um, adj., *bad, evil.* Comp. **pēior** (or **pējor**), sup. **pessimus.**

mālus, -ī, m., *upright pole* or *beam; mast* of a ship.

mandātum, -ī, [**mando**], n., *order, commission, injunction, instruction.*

mandō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**manus** + **do**], 1, a., *commission, entrust, order, command.*

Mandubiī, -ōrum, pl. m., a people of Gaul situated between the Aedui and Lingones. Their capital was Alēsia, now *Alise Ste. Reine.* vii. 68, etc.

Mandubracius, -i, m., a chief of the Trinobantes in Britain who attached himself to Caesar, v. 20, 22.

māne, adv., *in the morning.*

maneō, manēre, mānsī, mānsum, 2, n., *stay, remain; abide by.*

manipulāris, -e, [**manipulus**], m., *of* or *belonging to a maniple* or *company.*

manipulus, -ī, [**manus** + **pleo,** because the first standard of a maniple was a *handful* of hay or straw raised on a pole], m., *a company* of soldiers, *maniple.* See p. 21.

Manius, -ī, m., a Roman praenomen.

mānsuēfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, [**mānsuētus,** *tame,* + **facio**], 3, a., *tame.* vi. 28.

mānsuētūdō, -inis, [**mānsuētus,** *tame*], f., *gentleness, compassion.*

manus, -ūs, m., *hand; band* or *troop* of men, (military) *force.*

Marcomanī, -ōrum, pl. m., [German word, = *men of the border*], a German tribe situated between the Neckar, Main, and Danube. i. 51.

Mārcus, -ī, m., a Roman praenomen, from which our "Mark" comes.

mare, -is, n., *the sea.*

maritimus, -a, -um, [**mare**], adj., *of, by, near, bordering on, the sea; sea-.* — **rēs maritimae,** *naval operations,* iv. 23.

Marius, -ī, m., a Roman praenomen.

Marius, C., -ī, m., *Gaius Marius,* a Roman born B. C. 157, near Arpinum, and famous for his victories over the Cimbri and Teutones. He was seven times consul, and the bitter foe of the aristocratic party. He died B. C. 86. i. 40.

Mars, Martis, m., *Mars,* the Roman god of war, vi. 17. — **aequō Marte,** see **aequus.**

mās, maris, m., *male.* vii. 26.

matara, -ae, [Keltic word], f., *Keltic javelin, pike.*

māter, -tris, f., *a mother.* — **mātrēs familiae,** *matrons.*

māteria, -ae, (acc. **māteriem,** from nom. **māteriēs,** vii. 24), f., *material; timber, wood.*

māterior, -ārī, -ātus sum, [**māteria**], 1, dep., *procure timber, get wood.* vii. 73.

Matisco, -ōnis, f., a town of the Aedui, on the Saône, now Maçon. vii. 90.

mātrimōnium, -ī, [**māter**], n., *marriage.* See IDIOMS under **dūcere.**

Mātrona, -ae, f., *the Marne,* the most important tributary of the Seine, into which it flows a little above Paris. i. 1.

mātūrē [**mātūrus**], adv., *early.* Comp. **mātūrius,** sup. **mātūrrimē.** — **quam mātūrrimē,** *as early as possible,* i. 33.

mātūrēscō [**mātūrus**], **-tūrēscere, -tūruī,** no supine, 3, n., *ripen.* vi. 29.

mātūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**mātūrus**], 1, a. and n., *make haste, hasten.*

mātūrus, -a, -um, adj., *ripe, early.*

māximē [**māximus**], see **magis.**

māximus, see **māgnus.**

medeor, -ērī, no pf. or supine, 2, dep. n. and a., *heal, remedy* (with dat.). v. 24.

mediocris, -cre, [**medius**], adj., *common, ordinary, moderate.*

mediocriter [**mediocris**], adv., *moderately, in a slight degree.* — **nōn mediocriter,** *in a high degree,* i. 39.

Mediomatricī, -ōrum, or **Mediomatrices, -um,** m. pl., a Gallic people between the head-waters of the Meuse and the Rhine. Their capital was Divodurum, later called Mettis, now *Metz.* iv. 10, vii. 75.

mediterrāneus, -a, -um, [**medius + terra**], adj., *inland, central.*

medius, -a, -um, adj., *in the middle, intermediate, mid.* — **medius utrīusque,** *half way between both,* i. 34. — **de mediā nocte,** *after midnight.* — **ad mediam noctem,** *to* (about) *midnight.*

Meldī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Meldi,* a Gallic people on the Marne, east of the Parisii. v. 5.

melior, adj., see **bonus.**

melius, adv., see **bene.**

membrum, -ī, n., *limb* (as part of the body).

meminī, -isse, def., a. and n., (only in tenses formed from the pf.), *remember, bear in mind.*

memoria, -ae, [**memor,** *mindful*], f., *memory, recollection, remembrance.* — **memoriā tenere,** *recollect.* — **memoriā nostrā,** *in our own day.* — **memoriā proditum,** *reported, handed down, by tradition.*

Menapiī, -ōrum, m. pl., a Belgic people between the Meuse and the Schelde.

mendācium, -ī, [**mendāx,** *false*], n., *lie, falsehood.* vii. 38.

mēns, mentis, f., *the mind.* — **mente et animō,** *heart and soul.*

mēnsis, -is, m., *month.*

mēnsūra, -ae, [**mētior**], f., *a measure.* — **mēnsūra ex aquā,** *water-clock.*

mentiō, -ōnis, [root **men** in **memini**], f., *mention.* vi. 38.

mercātor, -ōris, [**mercor,** *trade*], m., *trader, merchant.*

mercātūra, -ae, [**mercor,** *trade*], f., *trade, traffic; merchandise.* vi. 17.

mercēs, -ēdis, [**mereo,** *earn*], f., *pay, hire.* i. 31.

Mercurius, -ī, [**mercēs**], m., Mercury, son of Jupiter and Maia, — the messenger of the gods, the source of prosperity, the patron of traders and thieves; also the god of eloquence and the con-

ductor of departed souls to the lower world.

mereō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, 2, a. and n.; and

mereor, -ērī, -itus sum, 2, dep., *gain, earn, deserve; serve.*

merīdiānus, -a, -um, [**merīdiēs**], adj., *of mid-day* or *noon.* — **merīdiānō fere tempore,** *about noon,* v. 8.

merīdiēs, -ēī, [**medius + diēs**], m., *mid-day; the south.*

meritum, -ī, [**mereor**], n., *desert, merit, service.*

meritus, see **mereor.**

Messāla, -ae, m., *Marcus Messala,* a Roman, consul B. C. 61. i. 2, 35.

met, enclitic, *self.* — **nōsmet,** *ourselves,* vii. 38.

mētior, mētīrī, mēnsus sum, 4, dep., *measure, measure out, distribute;* used passively, *be measured out,* i. 16, 23.

Metiosedum, -ī, n., a town of the Senones, on an island in the Seine, 28 miles above Paris; later called Melodūnum, now *Melun.*

Metius, -ī, m., *Marcus Metius,* a Roman sent by Caesar as an envoy to Ariovistus, detained by him, but afterwards rescued by Caesar. i. 47, 53.

metō, metere, messuī, messum, 3, a., *reap.* iv. 32.

metus, -ūs, m., *fear, apprehension.* Cf. n. to p. 67, 2.

meus, -a, -um, adj., *my, mine.*

mīles, -itis, c., *soldier, foot-soldier.*

mīlitāris, -e, [**mīles**], adj., *military.* — **rēs mīlitāris,** *the art of war, military operations.*

mīlitia, -ae, [**mīles**], f., *military service.*

mīlle, indecl. adj., (sometimes used as noun), *a thousand.* — pl. **mīlia, -um,** as noun, n., *thousand, thousands.*

Minerva, -ae, f., *Minerva,* the goddess of wisdom and the arts. vi. 17.

minimē [**minimus,** sup. of **parvus**], adv., *least, very slightly, by no means.*

minimus, -a, -um, adj., (sup. of **parvus**), *least, smallest.*

minor, -us, adj., comp. of **parvus,** *less, smaller.*

Minucius, -ī, m., *L. Minucius Basilus,* one of Caesar's officers, employed in the war against Ambiorix, and later stationed in winter quarters among the Remi. He took part with Caesar in the Civil War, but became one of Caesar's assassins, and the year after Caesar's death was killed by his own slaves. vi. 29, vii. 90.

minuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum, [**minus**], 3, a. and n., *lessen, diminish, reduce, put an end to; settle* (controversies).

minus [**minor**], adv., comp. of **parvē,** *less, not so much, not.* — **nihilō minus,** *notwithstanding, not a whit the less, none the less.*

mīror, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, dep., *wonder at, wonder, be astonished.*

mīrus, -a, -um, [**mīror**], adj., *strange, marvellous, astonishing.*

miser, -era, -erum, adj., *wretched, unfortunate, pitiable.*

misericordia, -ae, [**miser + cor**], f., *pity, compassion, mercy.*

miseror, -ārī, -ātus sum, [**miser**], 1, dep., *lament, deplore.*

missus, -ūs, [**mitto**], m., *a sending, despatching.* — **missū Caesaris,** *being sent by Caesar.*

missus, -a, -um, pf. pass. part. of **mitto.**

mītissimē, adv., sup. of **mītē,** *very gently, very kindly.* vii. 43.

mittō, mittere, mīsī, missum, 3, a., *send, despatch*; of weapons, *throw, hurl, launch, shoot*.

mōbilis, -e, [moveo], adj., *fickle, changeable*. iv. 5.

mōbilitās, -tātis, [mōbilis], f., *speed, rapid movement; fickleness, changeableness*.

mōbiliter, [mōbilis], adv., *easily*.

moderor, -ārī, -ātus, [modus], 1, dep., *check, manage, regulate*.

modestia, -ae, [modus], f., *self-control; subordination*. vii. 52.

modo [modus], adv., *only, even, just, at least*; of time, *lately, just now*.—**non modo, . . . sed etiam,** *not only, . . . but also*.

modus, -ī, m., *manner, fashion, style, measure, amount*.

moenia, -ium, n. pl., *walls* (of a city), *fortifications*.

mōlēs, -is, f., *mass, mound, dam*. iii. 12.

molestē, [molestus, *troublesome*], adv., *with trouble* or *annoyance*.—**ferre molestē,** *to be annoyed* or *vexed*. ii. 1.

mōlīmentum, -ī, n., *effort*, (great) *exertion*. i. 34.

molitus, see **molo**.

molliō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, [mollis], 4, a., *soften, make easy*. vii. 46.

mollis, -e, adj., *pliant, gentle, smooth; weak, yielding*.

mollitia, -ae (vii. 77) and

mollitiēs, -ēī, (vii. 20), [mollis], f., *weakness, irresolution*.

molō, -ere, -ui, -itum, 3, a., *grind*. i. 5.

mōmentum, -ī, [for movimentum, from moveo], n., *influence, weight, importance, account*.

Mona, -ae, f., the island Anglesey in the Irish sea. v. 13.

moneō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, 2, a., *advise, warn, remind*.

mōns, montis, m., *a mountain, height*.—**summus mōns,** *top of the height*, i. 22.—**rādīces montis,** *foot of the mountain* or *height*.

mora, -ae, f., *delay*.

morātus, -a, -um, see **moror**.

morbus, -ī, m., *disease, sickness*.

Morinī, -ōrum, m. pl., a powerful Belgic tribe, on the sea coast to the north of the Somme and opposite Kent.

morior, morī, mortuus sum, 3, dep., *die*.

Moritasgus, -ī, m., chief of the Senones and brother of Cavarinus. v. 54.

moror, -ārī, -ātus sum, [mora], 1, dep., *delay, stay, stop, linger*.

mors, mortis, [morior], f., *death*.

mortuus, -a, -um, pf. part. of **morior**.

mōs, mōris, m., *usage, custom, wont*;—pl. *customs; character, manners*.

Mosa, -ae, f., *the Meuse*, or *Maas*, which rises in the hills west of the Vosges, pursues a northerly course till joined by the Waal, then flows westward into the North Sea.

mōtus, -ūs, [moveo], m., *movement, disturbance; revolt, uprising*.

moveō, movēre, mōvī, mōtum, 2, a., *move, set in motion, remove*.—**castra movēre,** *to break camp*.

mulier, -eris, f., *woman*.

mūliō, -ōnis, [mūlus], m., *a muleteer, mule-driver*. vii. 45.

multitūdō, -inis, [multus], f., *a multitude, large body, great number*.

multō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [multa, *a fine*], 1, a., *fine, deprive of* by way of fine. vii. 54.

multō or **multum** [multus], adv., comp. **plūs,** sup. **plūrimum,**

much, by far, greatly. — **multum pŏsse** or **valēre,** *to have great power, influence.*

multum, adv., see **multo.**

multus, -a, -um, adj., comp. **plūs,** sup. **plūrimus,** *much;* pl. *many.* — **multō diē,** *when the day was far spent.* — **multum esse,** *to be much engaged.* See IDIOMS.

mūlus, -ī, m., *mule.* vii. 45.

Mūnātius, -ī, m., *L. Munatius Plancus,* a lieutenant of Caesar's, appointed with M. Crassus and C. Trebonius to the command of three legions which wintered in Belgium. v. 24, 25.

mundus, -ī, m., *the world, universe.* vi. 14.

mūnīmentum, ī, [**mūnio**], n., *fortification, defence.* ii. 17.

mūniō, -īre, -īvī or **-iī, -ītum,** [**moenia**], 4, n. and a., *fortify, protect, secure, guard.* — **munīre iter,** *build a road,* vii. 58.

mūnītiō, -ōnis, [**mūnio**], f., *a fortifying; the building of fortifications; the fortified works, intrenchments, defences.*

mūnītus, -a, -um, see **mūnio.**

mūnus, -eris, n., *duty, service, function; present, gift.* — **mūnus mīlitiae,** *military service,* vi. 18.

mūrālis, -e, [**mūrus**], adj., *of* or *belonging to a wall, wall-.* — **mūrāle pīlum,** *wall-pike,* v. 40.

mūrus, -ī, m., *wall.*

musculus, -ī, [dimin. of **mūs**], *a little mouse;* in military language, a strongly built, wooden *shed,* used in sieges to shelter soldiers who were approaching the walls of the town.

mutilus, -a, -um, adj., *maimed, broken.* — **mutilae cornibus,** *without horns,* vi. 27.

N.

nactus, -a, -um, see **nanciscor.**

nam, conj., *for,* introducing a confirmation or explanation.

Nammēius (or **Nammējus**), **-ī,** m., a Helvetian sent to ask Caesar's permission to pass through the Province. i. 7.

Namnētes, -um, m. pl., a Gallic tribe near the mouth of the Loire, invited by the Veneti to aid in opposing Caesar. Their chief town was Condivincum, now *Nantes.* iii. 9.

namque [**nam** + **que**], conj., *for indeed, for truly; and with good reason, for.*

nanciscor, -ciscī, nactus and **nanctus sum,** 3, dep., *obtain, get, find, secure; gain, get hold of.*

Nantuātes, -um, m. pl., a Gallic tribe south of Lake Geneva, in the region now called *Chablaix.*

Narbō, -ōnis, m., a town in the Province, now called *Narbonne.*

nāscor, nāscī, nātus sum, 3, dep., *be born, produced, reared; rise, spring.*

Nasua, -ae, m., a chief of the Suebi, with his brother Cimberius at the head of 100 cantons of the Suebi that resolved to cross the Rhine. i. 37.

nātālis, -e, [**nātus**], adj., *natal, birth-.* — **diēs nātālis,** *birth-day.* vi. 18.

nātiō, -ōnis, [**nāscor**], f., *tribe, people, nation.*

nātīvus, -a, -um, [**nātus**], adj., *natural.* vi. 10.

nātūra, -ae, [**nātus, nāscor**], f., *nature, character; natural features, situation.* — **nātūra flūminis,** *the current of the river,* iv. 17. **nātūrā et opere (manū),** *naturally and artificially.*

nātus, **-ūs**, [**nāscor**], (used only in abl. sing.), m., *birth*. — **māiōrēs nātū**, *old men*.
nauta, **-ae**, [contracted from **nāvita**], m., *sailor*, *seaman*.
nauticus,**-a**,**-um**,[**nauta**],*nautical*.
nāvālis, **-e**, [**nāvis**], adj., *naval*. — **nāvālis pūgna**, *sea-fight*.
nāvicula, **-ae**, [dim. of **nāvis**], f., *a small vessel*, *boat*, *skiff*. i. 53.
nāvigātiō, **-ōnis**, [**nāvigo**], f., *a voyage*, *sailing*.
nāvigium, **-ī**, [**nāvigo**], n., *a vessel*, *boat*. — **speculātōrium nāvigium**, *spy-boat*. iv. 26.
nāvigō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, [**nāvis** + **ago**], 1, n. and a., *sail*, *go by water*.
nāvis, **-is**, f., *a ship*, *vessel*. — **nāvis longa**, *war-ship*, *galley*. — **nāvis onerāria**, *a transport*.
nāvō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, [(**g**)**nāvus**, *busy*], 1, a., *do with zeal*. — **nāvāre operam**, *act vigorously*, *do one's best*. ii. 25.
nē, (1) conj., *that . . . not*, *lest*, *not to;* — after words of fearing, *that;* — after words of beseeching, ordering, commanding, *not to*. — **nē quis**, *that no one*. — **nē qua spēs**, *that no hope*. — **dēterrēre nē**, *to frighten from*.
(2) adv, *not*, (*a*) in **nē . . . quidem**, *not . . . even;* the word emphasized is always put between **nē** and **quidem**. (*b*) In negative imperative sentences, *not;* as **nē tribueret**, *he should not assign*.
-ne, enclitic interrog. particle, *whether*. — **-ne . . . an** or **-ne . . . -ne**, *whether . . . or*.
nec, conj., see **neque**.
necēssāriō [**necēssārius**], adv., *unavoidably*, *of necessity*.
necēssārius, **-a**, **-um**, [**necēsse**], adj., *urgent*, *necessary*, *needful*.
necēssārius, **-ī**, m., [adj. used as noun], *intimate friend*, *relative;* — pl., *relatives*, *kinsmen*.
necēsse, indecl. adj., *necessary*, *unavoidable*, *inevitable*, *needful*.
necēssitās, **-tātis**, [**necēsse**], f., *necessity*, *need*, *urgency*, *pressure*.
necēssitūdō, **-inis**, [**necēsse**], f., *friendship*, *intimacy*. i. 43.
necne, conj., *or not*. i. 50.
necō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, 1, a., *put to death*, *kill*, *destroy*.
necubi, [**nec** + **ubi**], conj., *that nowhere*, *lest anywhere*. vii. 35.
nefārius, **-a**, **-um**, [**nefās**], adj., *wicked*, *atrocious*.
nefās [**ne** + **fās**], n., indecl., *a crime* against divine law, *impious deed*. — **nefās est**, *it is wrong*, *is not permitted*. vii. 40.
nēglegō, **-legere**, **-lēxī**, **-lēctum**, [**nec** + **lego**], 3, a., *slight*, *neglect*, *be indifferent to*, *despise*.
negō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, [**ne** + **āio**, **ājo**], 1, n. and a., *deny*, *say . . . not* or *no*, *refuse;* often = **dicit non**.
negōtior, **-ārī**, **-ātus sum**, [**negōtium**], 1, dep., *transact* or *carry on business*.
negōtium, **-ī**, [**nec** + **ōtium**], n., *business*, *enterprise*, *effort*, *labor*. — **nihil negōtii** or **nōn quicquam negōtii**, *no trouble*.
Nemētes, **-um**, m. pl., a German tribe, living, in Caesar's time, west of the Rhine and north of the Triboces. Their capital was Noviomagus, now *Spires* (or *Speier*).
nēmō, **-inis**, [**nē** + **homō**], c., *no one*, *nobody*.
nēquāquam [**nē** + **quāquam**, *anywhere*], adv., *not at all*, *by no means*.
neque or **nec** (in Caesar **nec** is not found before vowels), [**nē** +

que], adv., *nor, and . . . not.* — **neque . . . neque** or **nec,** *neither . . . nor.*

nē . . . quidem, see **nē.**

nēquīquam [nē + quīquam], adv., *in vain, to no purpose.*

Nervicus, -a, -um, adj., *Nervian, of the Nervii.* iii. 5.

Nervius, -ī, m., *a Nervian.* — **Nervii, -ōrum,** pl., m., *the Nervii,* a leading tribe of Belgic Gaul, east of the Atrebates. Their capital was Bagacum, now *Bavay.* Caesar defeated them at the Sambre with great slaughter; but afterwards they joined the Eburones in an attack on Cicero's camp, and sent 5000 men to Alesia. ii. 15; v. 24, etc.

nervus, -ī, m., *sinew, muscle.* — pl. *power, force.*

neu, see **nēve.**

neuter, -tra, -trum, gen. **neutrīus,** [ne + uter], pron., *neither.*

nēve, or **neu,** [nē + ve, *or*], conj., *nor; and . . . not.* — **nēve . . . nēve,** *neither . . . nor.*

nex, necis, f., *death* by violence, *slaughter.* — **vitae necisque potestās,** *power over life and death, absolute power.*

nihil [nē + **hilum,** *a trifle*], n., indecl., *nothing, not at all.* See IDIOMS.

nihilō, abl. of degree of difference from **nihilum,** *by nothing, none the . . .*; as, **nihilo minus,** *none the less.*

nimis, adv., *too much, excessively.* vii. 36.

nimius, -a, -um, [nimis], adj., *excessive, too much, too great.* vii. 29.

nisi [nē + sī], conj., *if not, unless, except.*

Nitiobroges or **Nitiobriges, -um,** m. pl., a tribe in Aquitania on the Garonne. Chief town, Agīnum, now *Agen.* vii. 7, *et al.*

nītor, nītī, nīsus or **nīxus sum,** 3, dep., *strive, endeavor; rely upon.*

nix, nivis, f., *snow.* vii. 8, 55.

nōbilis, -e, [nōsco], adj., *noted, famous, noble.*

nōbilitās, -tātis, [nōbilis], f., *nobility; the nobles, men of rank.*

nocēns, -entis, pres. part. of **noceō,** used as adj., *guilty;* used as noun, *a criminal,* vi. 9.

noceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, 2, n., *hurt, harm, injure, molest.* — **neque eīs nocērī pōsse,** *and that no harm could be done them,* iv. 14.

noctū [nox], adv., *by night, at night.*

nocturnus, -a, -um, [noctū], adj., *nightly, by night.*

nōdus, -ī, m., *knot; node* or *knob* on the joint of an animal, vi. 27.

nōlō, nōlle, nōluī, [ne + volo], irr., n. and a., *be unwilling, not wish, not want.* — **nōlī** or **nōlīte,** *do not.*

nōmen, -inis, [nōsco], n., *name, title, reputation, renown; account.* — **suō nōmine,** *on his* (*their*) *own account.*

nōminātim [nōmino], adv., *by name.*

nōminō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [nōmen], 1, a., *name, call* by name; *mention,* ii. 18.

nōn, adv., *not, no.*

nōnāgintā, num. adj., *ninety.*

nōndum [nōn + dum], adv., *not yet.*

nōnnihil [nōn + nihil], adv., *to some extent, somewhat.* iii. 17.

nōnnullus, -a, -um, [nōn + nullus], adj., *some, several.*

nōnnumquam [nōn + numquam], adv., *sometime, sometimes.*

nōnus, -a, -um, [for **novnus,** from **novem**], adj., *ninth.*

Nōrēia (or **Nōrēja**), **-ae,** f., the chief town of the Nōrici, where the Romans were defeated by the Cimbri B.C. 113; now *Neumarkt.* i. 5.

Nōricus, -a, -um, adj., *of the Norici, Norican,* i. 5; nom. sing. fem. as noun, *a Norican woman,* i. 53.

nōscō, nōscere, nōvī, nōtum, 3, a., *obtain a knowledge of, learn.* In pf. tense and its derivatives, *know, be acquainted* or *familiar with.*

nōsmet, acc. pl. of **ego** with **met** added. See **met.**

noster, -tra, -trum, [**nōs**], adj., *our, our own.* — m. pl., **nostri** as noun, *our men, our side.*

nōtitia, -ae, [**nōsco**], f., *knowledge.*

nōtus, -a, -um, part. of **nōscō** used as adj., *known, well-known, familiar.*

novem, indecl. num. adj., *nine.*

Noviodūnum, -ī, [Keltic word meaning *Newtown*], n., (1) a town of the Bituriges on the Loire, now *Nouan,* near Orléans, vii. 12, 14. (2) a town of the Aedui on the Loire, now *Nevers,* vii. 55. (3) a town of the Suessiones on the Aisne, now *Soissons,* ii. 12.

novitās, -tātis, [**novus**], f., *novelty, rareness, strangeness.*

novus, -a, -um, adj., *new, fresh.* Sup. **novissimus.** — **novissimum agmen** or **novissimī** (m. pl.), *the rear.* — **novae rēs,** *a revolution.*

nox, noctis, f., *night.* — **prīmā nocte,** *at nightfall,* i. 27. — **dē mediā nocte** (*just*) *after, about, midnight.* — **multā nocte,** *late at night, when the night was far spent.*

noxa, -ae, [for **nocsa** from **noceo**], f., *offence, crime.* vi. 16.

nūbō, nūbere, nūpsī, nūptum, 3, n., *veil one's self; marry* or *wed* a man. i. 18.

nūdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**nūdus**], 1, a., *strip, expose, lay open* or *bare.*

nūdus, -a, -um, adj., *naked, unprotected, bare.*

nullus, -a, -um, gen. **nullīus,** dat. **nullī,** [**nē** + **ullus**], adj., *none, no;* as noun, *no one, none.*

num, interrog. particle, expects the answer No. — **num etiam,** etc., *could he also? he could not, could he?* i. 14.

nūmen, -inis, [**nuō,** *nod*], n., *power, majesty* (of the gods), *divinity.* vi. 16.

numerus, -ī, m., *number, amount, account.*

Numidae, -ārum, [Greek, νομάς, *wanderer*], m. pl., *the Numidians,* a people living on the north coast of Africa, in the modern Algiers. See N. to p. 80, 9.

nummus, -ī, m., *money, piece of money.* v. 12.

numquam [**nē** + **umquam**], adv., *never.*

nunc, adv., *now.*

nūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**nūntius**], 1, a., *tell, announce, send word, report.* — **quā rē nūntiātā,** *after the news of this.* — **nūntiātur,** *word is brought, it is reported.*

nūntius, -ī, m., *messenger; message, tidings.*

nuper [for **novum-per** from **novus**], adv., *lately, recently.*

nusquam [**nē** + **usquam**], adv., *nowhere, in no place.* vii. 17.

nūtus, -ūs, [**nuo,** *nod*], m., *nod, hint, command.*

O.

ob, prep. with acc. only, *on account of, for.* — **ob eam (hanc) causam,** *for this reason.* — **ob eam rem,** *on that account, therefore.* — **quam ob rem,** *wherefore.*

obaerātus, -a, -um, [ob + aes], adj., *in debt;* as noun, *a debtor.*

obdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, [ob + dūco], 3, a., *lead towards, prolong.* ii. 18.

obeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, [ob + eō], irr., a., *attend to, perform.* v. 33.

obicio (or **objicio**), **-icere, -iēci, -iectum,** [ob + iacio], 3, a., *throw* or *put in the way, place in front, expose.*

obiectus (or **objectus**), **-a, -um,** [obiciō], adj., *lying in the way, situated between, opposite.*

obitus, -ūs, [ob + eo], m., *destruction, death.* ii. 29.

oblātus, see **offero.**

oblīquē [oblīquus], adv., *slantingly, obliquely.* iv. 17.

oblīquus, -a, -um, adj., *oblique, slanting.* vii. 73.

oblīviscor, -līviscī, -lītus sum, 3, dep., *forget* (with gen. of thing forgotten).

obsecrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ob + **sacer,** *sacred*], 1, a., *beseech* in the name of all that is sacred, *implore, beg.*

obsequentia, -ae, [obsequor, *comply*], f., *compliance.* vii. 29.

observō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ob + **servo**], 1, a., *observe, regard, watch, mark.*

obses, -idis, [obsideo], c., *a hostage.* Cf. N. to p. 51, 21.

obsessiō, -ōnis, [obsideo], f., *siege, blockade.*

obsessus, see **obsideo.**

obsideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum, [ob + sedeō], 2, a., *besiege, blockade, occupy.*

obsidiō, -ōnis, [obsideo], f., *siege, blockade; oppression.*

obsīgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ob + **sīgno,** *mark*], 1, a., *seal.* i. 39.

obsistō, -sistere, -stitī, -stitum, [ob + sisto], 3, n., *resist, withstand.* vii. 29.

obstinātē [obstinātus, obstinō, from obsto], adv., *firmly.* v. 6.

obstrictus, -a, -um, [part. of obstringō], *bound, under obligation.*

obstringō, -stringere, -strinxī, -strictum, [ob + stringo, *tie*], 3, a., *bind.*

obstruō, -struere, -strūxī, -strūctum, [ob + struo, *pile*], 3, a., *close* or *stop up.*

obtemperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ob + tempero], 1, n., *submit.*

obtestor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [ob + testor], 1, dep., *implore, adjure* (with invocation of the gods).

obtineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, [ob + teneo], 2, a., *get possession of, obtain; hold, occupy, possess, inhabit.*

obveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, [ob + veniō], 4, n., *fall in with, encounter, fall to the lot of.*

obviam [ob + via], adv., *in the way, towards.* — **obviam venīre,** *to come to meet, make an advance.* vii. 28.

occāsiō, -ōnis, [occido], f., *opportunity, favorable moment; dash, surprise.* vii. 45.

occāsus, -ūs, [occido], m., *a going down, setting.* — **occāsus solis,** *sunset,* ii. 2, et al.; *the west,* i. 1, iv. 28.

occidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsum, [ob + cado], 3, n., *fall,* vi. 37; of the sun, *set,* v. 13.

occīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, [ob + caedo], 3, a., *kill, slay.*

occultātiō, -ōnis, [occulto], f., *concealment.* vi. 21.
occultē [occultus], adv., *secretly.* vii. 83.
occultō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [freq. of **occulo,** *cover,* **ob + colo**], 1, a., *hide, conceal; keep secret.*
occultus, -a, -um, [part. of **occulo,** *cover,* **ob + colo**], adj., *hidden, secret, concealed.* — **in occultō,** *in a secluded place, in secret.*
occupātiō, -ōnis, [occupo], f., *engagement, occupation.* — **occupātiōnēs reīpūblicae,** *business of state,* iv. 16.
occupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ob + capio], 1, a., *seize, seize upon, get* or *take possession of, hold, engage.* — **occupārī in** (with abl.), *to be engaged in, busy with.*
occurrō, -currere, -currī (rarely **-cucurrī**), **-cursum,** [ob + curro], 3, n., *run to meet, meet; meet with, fall in with, find; encounter.* — **ab nostris occurrebātur,** *our men arranged.*
Oceanus, -ī, m., *the ocean, the sea,* often referring to the Atlantic.
Ocelum, -ī, n., a city of the Graioceli in the Cottian Alps, now *Usseau* (or *Oulx*), in Piedmont, west of Turin. i. 10.
octāvus, -a, -um, [octo], adj., *eighth.*
octingentī, -ae, -a, [octo + centum], adj., *eight hundred.*
octo, indecl. adj., *eight.*
octodecim, indecl. adj., *eighteen.*
Octodūrus, -ī, m., chief city of the Veragri, on the river Dranse not far from its junction with the Rhone; now *Martigny.* iii. 1.
octōnī, -ae, -a, [octo], distributive num. adj., *eight each, eight at a time.* vii. 73, 75.
oculus, -ī, m., *the eye.*
ōdī, ōdisse, def., (only pf. and tenses formed from pf. in use; pf. translated as if present), *hate.*
odium, -ī, [ōdī], n., *hatred.*
offendō, -fendere, -fendī, -fēnsum, 3, a., *harm, hurt, wound.*
offēnsiō, -ōnis, [offendo], f., *a hurting, wounding.* i. 19.
offerō, -ferre, obtulī, oblātum, [ob + fero], irr. a., *bring before, present, offer, confer, expose.*
officium, -ī, [for **opificium, opus + facio**], n., *service, duty, allegiance.* — **officium praestāre,** *to do one's duty.* — **in, ab officiō,** *in, from allegiance.*
Ollovicō, -ōnis, m., a king of the Nitiobroges. vii. 31.
omittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, [ob + mitto], 3, a., *lay aside, throw away, neglect, pass over.*
omnīnō, [omnis], adv., *in all, altogether, in general;* after negatives = *at all;* with numerals = *in all, altogether, only.* — **nihil omnīno,** *nothing at all.*
omnis, -e, adj., *every, all.* — **Gallia omnis,** *Gaul as a whole.*
onerārius, -a, -um, [onus], adj., *with a load.* — **nāvis onerāria,** *transport-ship, freight-ship.*
onerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [onus], 1, a., *load.* v. 1.
onus, -eris, n., *load, burden, weight, cargo.*
opera, -ae, [opus], f., *work, pains, aid, assistance.* — **dare operam,** *to take pains.*
opīniō, -ōnis, [opīnor, *think*], f., *belief, notion, good opinion, report, reputation, expectation.* — **opīniō timōris,** *impression of fear.* — **iūstitiae** (gen.) **opīniō,** *reputation for fair dealing.* — **praeter opīniōnem,** *contrary to expectation.* — **celerius omni opīniōne,**

sooner than any one had expected.

oportet, oportēre, oportuit, 2, impers., *it is necessary, needful;* (I, you, he, they) *ought; it behooves;* usually with infin. and acc.

oppidānus, -a, -um, [oppidum], adj., *of the town.* — m. pl. **oppidānī,** as noun, *townspeople, inhabitants of the town.*

oppidum, -ī, n., *a* (fortified) *town, walled town.*

oppōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, [ob + pōno], 3, a., *place* or *set against* or *opposite; oppose.*

opportūnē [opportūnus], adv., *conveniently, seasonably.*

opportūnitās, -ātis, [opportūnus], f., *fitness, favorable condition* or *situation, advantage.*

opportūnus, -a, -um, [ob + portus, i. e. *at* or *before the port*], adj., *fit, suitable.*

opprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, [ob + premo], 3, a., *weigh down; overwhelm, crush, destroy; surprise.*

oppūgnātiō, -ōnis, [oppūgno], f., *a storming* (of a city), *assault, attack, besieging.*

oppūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ob + pūgno], 1, a., *attack, storm* (a city or camp).

ops, opis, f., *power, might, help.* — pl. **opēs,** *wealth, resources, means, influence, strength.*

optātus, -a, -um, (pf. part. of opto), adj., *desired, agreeable.* vi. 42.

optimē [optimus], adv., sup. of **bene,** *best, in the best manner, most excellently.*

optimus, see **bonus.**

opus, n., indecl., *necessity, need.* — **opus est,** *there is need, it is necessary;* the *thing needed* is put either in the nom. or in the abl.

opus, operis, n., *work, labor; structure, fortification; siege-engine.* — **māgnō opere** or **māgnopere,** *very much, exceedingly.* — **quantō opere,** *how much, how deeply.* — **tantō opere** or **tantopere,** *so much, so greatly, as.*

ōra, -ae, f., *coast, shore.* — **ōra maritima,** *sea-coast.*

ōrātiō, -ōnis, [ōro, *speak*], f., *speech, words, address.*

ōrātor, -ōris, [ōro, *speak*], m., (lit. *speaker*), *envoy.* — **ōrātōris modō,** *as an ambassador,* iv. 27.

orbis, -is, m., *circle.* — **in orbem consistere,** *to form a circle* (military phrase), v. 33. — **orbis terrārum,** *the world,* vii. 29.

Orcynia, -ae, f., the Greek name for the Hercynian forest. vi. 24.

ordō, -inis, m., *row, company, order; rank; century* (half a maniple); *centurion.* — **ordinēs servāre,** *to keep the ranks.*

Orgetorix, -igis, m., *Orgetorix,* a prominent Helvetian, who formed a conspiracy with a view to the conquest of Gaul and becoming its king. On discovering the plot the Helvetii sought to bring him to trial, but he evaded judgment by suicide. i. 2, et seq.

oriēns, -entis, (pres. part. of **orior**), adj., *rising.* — **orientem solem,** *the rising sun,* i. e. *the east.*

orior, orīrī, ortus sum, 4, dep., *rise, arise, begin, spring from.* — **oriente sole,** *at sunrise,* vii. 3. — **ortā lūce,** *at daybreak,* v. 8.

ōrnāmentum, -ī, [orno], n., *decoration, adornment, honor.* i. 44, vii. 15.

ōrnātus, -a, -um, part. of **ōrno** as adj., *equipped.* — sup. **ōrnātissimus,** *completely equipped.* iii. 14.

ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, a., *furnish, equip.* vii. 33.

ōrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [ōs, *mouth*], 1, a., lit. *speak*), *plead, beg, entreat.*

ortus, -ūs, [orior], m., *rising.* vii. 41.

ortus, see orior.

ōs, ōris, n., *mouth, face, countenance.*

Osismī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe in Brittany (*Bretagne*) that assisted the Veneti in the war with Caesar, B. C. 56. ii. 34, iii. 9, vii. 75.

ostendō, -tendere, -tendī, -tēnsum or **tentum,** [ob + tendo], 3, a., *show, display, point out, set forth, declare.*

ostentātiō, -ōnis, [ostento], f., *display, show.*

ostentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [freq. of ostendo], 1, a., *display, show.*

ōtium, -ī, n., *rest, peace.* vii. 66.

ōvum, -ī, n., *egg.* iv. 10.

P.

P. with proper names = **Publius.**

pābulātiō, -ōnis, [pābulum], f., *a foraging, getting fodder.*

pābulātor, -ōris, [pābulum], m., *forager.* v. 17.

pābulor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [pābulum], 1, dep., *forage, seek fodder.*

pābulum, -ī, n., *fodder, forage.*

pācātus, -a, -um, (pf. part. of pāco), adj., *peaceful, quiet.*

pācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [pāx], 1, a., *subdue, pacify.*

pactum, -ī, n., *bargain, agreement; manner.* vii. 83.

Padus, -ī, m., the *Po,* the largest river of Italy, which rises in the Cottian Alps, and after an easterly course of 400 miles empties into the Gulf of Venice. v. 24.

Paemānī, -ōrum, m., a Belgic tribe east of the Meuse and south of the Aduatuci. ii. 4.

paene, adv., *almost, nearly.*

paenitet, -ēre, -uit, impers. 2, *it repents.* — **eōs paenitet,** *they are sorry, regret.* iv. 5.

pāgus, -ī, m., *district, canton.* The word still survives in "pays," as "Pays de Vaud" in Switzerland.

palam, adv., *openly, publicly.*

palma, -ae, f., *the palm* of the hand, *the hand.* vi. 26.

palūs, -ūdis, f., *marsh, swamp, bog, morass.*

palūster, -tris, -tre, [palūs], adj., *marshy, swampy.* vii. 20.

pandō, pandere, pandī, pānsum or **passum,** 3, a., *stretch, stretch out.* — **passīs manibus,** *with outstretched hands.*

pār, paris, adj., *like, similar, equal, same.* — **pār atque,** *same as.*

parātus, -a, -um, (pf. part. of paro), adj., *ready, prepared, equipped.*

parcē [parcus], adv., *sparingly.* vii. 71.

parcō, parcere, pepercī and **parsī, parcitum** and **parsum,** 3, n., *spare, give quarter* (with dat.). — **nōn parcitur,** *no quarter is given.*

parēns, -entis, [pario], c., *father* or *mother, parent.*

parentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [parens], 1, n., (lit. *to make a solemn offering to the gods in honor of deceased parents or relatives,* hence), *avenge, take vengeance* for the death of any one. vii. 17.

pāreō, pārēre, pāruī, pāritum and **paritum,** 2, n., *obey, submit to, be subject to.*

pariō, parere, peperī, partum and **paritum,** 3, a., *bring forth, produce, obtain, get, acquire.*

Parīsiī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic people on the Seine; their capital was *Lutetia*, now Paris.

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, a., *prepare, get ready; obtain, equip, intend; purchase*, iv. 2.

pars, partis, f., *part, portion, share, number; region, district; side, direction.* — **pars māior,** *the majority.* — **ūnā ex parte,** *on one side.* — **in omnēs partēs** or **in omnīs partīs,** *in every direction.*

partim [old acc. of **pars**], adv., *partly.*

partior, partīrī, partītus sum, [**pars**], 4, dep., *divide;* part. **partītus** used in a pass. sense, vi. 6, 33; vii. 24.

partus, see **pario.**

parum, adv., *too little, not enough.*

parvulus, -a, -um, [**parvus**], adj., *very small* or *young, trifling;* as noun, **parvulus, -ī,** m., *a child.* — **ab parvulīs,** *from early childhood.*

parvus, -a, -um, adj., comp. **minor,** sup. **minimus,** *small, trifling, insignificant.* — **quam minimum spatiī,** *as little time as possible,* iii. 19.

passim [**passus,** from **pando**], adv., *in all directions.* iv. 14.

passus, -ūs, m., *step, pace;* as a measure of length reckoned from heel to heel (like our military step) = 2 ordinary steps = 5 Roman feet = 4 feet, 10¼ inches by English measurement. — **mīlle passuum,** pl. **mīlia passuum,** *a mile,* = 5000 Roman feet = 4854 English feet.

passus, see **pando.**

patefaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, [**pateo + facio**], 3, a., *open;* pass., **patefīo, -fierī, -factus sum.**

patēns, -entis, (pres. part. of **pateo**), adj., *open.*

pateō, patēre, patuī, no supine, 2, n., *be open, stand open, extend.*

pater, -tris, m., *a father.* — pl. **patrēs,** *fathers, forefathers.*

patienter [**patior**], adv., *patiently.* vii. 77.

patientia, -ae, [**patior**], f., *endurance, forbearance.*

patior, patī, passus sum, 3, dep., *suffer, bear, permit, endure*

patrius, -a, -um, [**pater**], adj., *ancestral, of (their) forefathers,* ii. 15.

patrōnus, -ī, [**pater**], m., *protector, patron.* vii. 40.

patruus, -ī, [**pater**], m., *a father's brother; uncle.* vii. 4.

paucitās, -ātis, [**paucus**], f., *fewness, small number.*

paucus, -a, -um, adj., *few, little.* — pl. m., **paucī, -ōrum,** as noun, *a few, only a few;* pl. n., **pauca, -ōrum,** *a few words,* i. 44.

paulātim [**paulum**], adv., *a little, gradually.*

paulisper [**paulum**], adv., *a short time.*

paulō [properly abl. of degree of difference, from **paulus**], adv., (by) *a little, just a little.*

paululum [**paulus**], adv., *a little, gradually.* ii. 8.

paulum [properly neut. acc. of **paulus**], adv., *a little.*

paulus, -a, -um, adj., *little.*

pāx, pācis, f., *peace.* — **pāce ūtī,** *to keep quiet.*

peccō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, n., *do wrong.* i. 47.

pectus, -oris, n., *the breast.* vii. 47.

pecūnia, -ae, [**pecus,** *cattle*], f., *money.*

pecus, -oris, n., *cattle.*

pedālis, -e, [**pēs**], adj., *measuring a foot, a foot thick.* iii. 13.

pedes, -itis, [**pēs**], m., *foot soldier;* pl. **peditēs, -um,** *infantry.*

pedester, -tris, -tre, [pēs], adj., *on foot.* — **pedestrēs copiae,** *infantry.* — **pedestre proelium,** *a battle on land.*
peditātus, -ūs, [pedes], m., *infantry.*
Pedius, Q., -ī, m., *Quintus Pedius,* nephew and lieutenant of Caesar. He was also Caesar's heir, and consul with Augustus, B. C. 43, but soon died.
pēior, see **malus.**
pellis, -is, f., *skin, hide.*
pellō, pellere, pepulī, pulsum, 3, a., *drive out* or *off, defeat, conquer.*
pendō, pendere, pependī, pēnsum, 3, a., *weigh; pay.*
penes, prep. with acc. only, *in the power of, in the possession of.*
penitus, adv., *entirely, completely.* vi. 10.
per, prep. with acc. only, *through, by means of, by;* in composition, *through, thoroughly, very.*
peragō, -agere, -ēgī, -āctum, [per + ago], 3, a., *finish, complete.*
perangustus, -a, -um, [per + angustus], adj., *very narrow.* vii. 15.
perceptus, see **percipio.**
percipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, [per + capio], 3, a., *get, receive; hear.*
percontātiō, -ōnis, [percontor, *inquire***],** f., *asking, questioning, inquiry.*
percurrō, -currere, -cucurrī or **-currī, -cursum, [per + curro],** 3, n., *run through; run along.* iv. 33.
percussus, see **percutio.**
percutiō, -cutere, -cussī, -cussum, [per + quatio, *shake***],** 3, a., *strike down, kill.* v. 44.
perdiscō, -discere, -didicī, no supine, **[per + disco],** 3, a., *learn thoroughly, get by heart.* vi. 14.
perditus, -a, -um, (pf. part. of **perdo,** *destroy*), adj., *abandoned, desperate;* often used as noun.
perdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, [per + dūco], 3, a., *bring, conduct, convey; bring over, persuade, construct, prolong.*
perendinus, -a, -um, [perendiē, *day after to-morrow***],** adj., *after to-morrow.* v. 30.
pereō, -īre, -īvī or **-iī, -itum, [per + eo],** irr., n., *perish, be lost.*
perequitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [per + equito, *ride***],** 1, a., *ride about* or *around, ride through.*
perexiguus, -a, -um, [per + exiguus], adj., *very small.* v. 15.
perfacilis, -e, [per + facilis], adj., *very easy.*
perfectus, see **perficio.**
perferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, [per + fero], irr., a., lit. *carry through; convey, carry, bring, report; submit to, endure.*
perficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, [per + facio], 3, a., *finish, complete, perform, carry out, cause.*
perfidia, -ae, [perfidus], f., *faithlessness, treachery.*
perfringō, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctum, [per + frango], 3, a., *break through.*
perfuga, -ae, [perfugio], m., *runaway, deserter.*
perfugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitum, [per + fugio], 3, n., *flee, desert.*
perfugium, -ī, [perfugio], n., *place of refuge, refuge.* iv. 38.
pergō, pergere, perrēxī, perrēctum, [per + rego], 3, n., *go on, advance.* iii. 18.
perīclitor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [perīculum], 1, dep., *try, risk, venture, be in danger.*
perīculōsus, -a, -um, [perīculum], adj., *dangerous.*

perīculum, -ī, n., *trial, attempt; risk, danger.*
perītus, -a, -um, *skilled, practised; familiar with.*
perlātus, see **perfero**.
perlēctus, see **perlego**.
perlego, -**legere**, -**lēgī**, -**lēctum**, [**per** + **lego**], 3, a., *read through.* v. 48.
perluō, -**luere**, -**luī**, -**lūtum**, [**per** + **luo**, *wash*], 3, a., *wash thoroughly;* — pass. used reflexively, *bathe.* vi. 21.
permāgnus, -a, -um, [**per** + **māgnus**], adj., *very large* or *great.* vii. 31.
permaneō, -**manēre**, -**mānsī**, -**mānsum**, [**per** + **maneo**], 2, n., *continue, stay, remain.*
permisceō, -**miscēre**, -**miscuī**, -**mīxtum** or -**mīstum**, [**per** + **misceo**, *mix*], 2, a., *mix, mingle.* vii. 62.
permittō, -**mittere**, -**mīsī**, -**missum**, [**per** + **mitto**], 3, a., *grant, allow, permit; give over, entrust,*
permīxtus, see **permisceo**.
permōtus, see **permoveo**.
permoveō, -**movēre**, -**mōvī**, -**mōtum**, [**per** + **moveo**], 2, a., *rouse, greatly disturb, alarm; influence, induce.*
permulceō, -**ēre**, -**sī**, -**sum** [**per** + **mulceo**, *soothe*], 2, a., *calm, soothe.* iv. 6.
permulsus, see **permulceo**.
perniciēs, ēī, [**per** + **nex**], f., *ruin, destruction.*
perpaucī, -ae, -a, [**per** + **paucus**], adj., *very few;* often as noun, *a very few.*
perpendiculum, -ī, [**perpendo**, *weigh carefully*], n., *plumb line.* — **ad perpendiculum**, *perpendicularly,* iv. 17.
perpetior, -**petī**, -**pessus sum**, [**per** + **patior**], 3, dep., *bear, endure.* vii. 10.
perpetuō [abl. of **perpetuus**], adv., *continually, constantly; always, for ever.*
perpetuus, -a, -um, [**per** + **peto**], adj., *continuous, unbroken, entire, perpetual.* — **in perpetuum**, *for ever, ever after.*
perquīrō, -**quīrere**, -**quīsīvī**, -**quīsītum**, [**per** + **quaero**], 3, a., *inquire about.* vi. 9.
perrumpō, -**rumpere**, -**rūpī**, -**ruptum**, [**per** + **rumpo**, *break*], 3, a., *break through, make a way through, demolish.*
perruptus, see **perrumpo**.
perscrībō, -**scrībere**, -**scrīpsī**, -**scrīptum**, [**per** + **scrībo**], 3, a., *write* a full account of, *report* in writing.
persequor, -**sequī**, -**secūtus**, [**per** + **sequor**], 3, dep., *follow up, pursue, avenge.*
persevērō, -**āre**, -**āvī**, -**ātum**, [**persevērus**, *very strict*], 1, n., *continue steadfastly, persist.*
persolvō, -**solvere**, -**solvī**, -**solūtum**, [**per** + **solvo**], 3, a., *pay in full, pay.* — **poenās persolvere**, *to pay the penalty,* i. 12.
perspectus, see **perspicio**.
perspiciō, -**spicere**, -**spexī**, -**spectum**, [**per** + **specio**, *look*], 3, a., *see, inspect, survey; perceive, ascertain, recognize, prove.*
perstō, -**stāre**, -**stitī**, -**stātum**, [**per** + **sto**], 1, n., *stand firmly, persist.* vii. 26.
persuādeō, -**suādēre**, -**suāsī**, -**suāsum**, [**per** + **suādeo**, *persuade*], 2, a. and n., *convince, persuade, prevail upon, induce.* — **mihi persuādētur**, *I am convinced.*
perterreō, -**terrēre**, -**terruī**, -**territum**, [**per** + **terreo**], 2, a., *greatly alarm, frighten, terrify, dismay.*

pertinācia, -ae, [pertināx, per + tenāx, from **teneo]**, f., *obstinacy.*

pertineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, no supine, **[per + teneo], 2,** n., *reach out, extend; pertain to, concern, belong to, have to do with.*

perturbātiō, -ōnis, [perturbo], f., *confusion.* iv. 29.

perturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [per + turbo, *disturb*], 1, a., *disturb greatly, disorder, confuse, embarrass.*

pervagor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [per + vagor], 1, dep., *roam about.* vii. 9.

perveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, [per + venio], 4, n., *come, arrive, reach; fall to,* vi. 19.

pēs, pedis, m., *foot.* — **pedem referre,** *to retreat.*

petītus, see **peto.**

petō, petere, petīvī or **petiī, petītum,** 3, a., *aim at, attack; seek; try to get* or *reach,* ii. 23; *ask, request.* — **petere ut liceat,** *to ask permission.*

Petrocoriī, -ōrum, pl. m., a Gallic people north of the Dordogne (*Duranius*); their chief city was Vesunna, now *Périgueux.* vii. 75.

Petrōnius, -ī, m., *Marcus Petronius,* a centurion of the eighth legion who at Gergovia sacrificed his life to save his men. vii. 50.

Petrosidius, L., -ī, m., *Lucius Petrosidius,* a standard bearer in Caesar's army. v. 37.

phalanx, -angis, (Greek acc. pl. **phalangas,** i. 52), [φάλαγξ], *compact host* or *mass, phalanx;* see N. to p. 59, 9.

Pictones, -um, m., a Gallic people bordering on the Atlantic south of the Loire, who furnished Caesar with ships for his campaign against the Veneti. The name survives in *Poitou.*

pietās, -ātis, [pius, *dutiful*], f., *duty to country* or *parents, loyalty, patriotism.* v. 27.

pīlum, -ī, n., a kind of *javelin; pike.* See p. 23.

pīlus, -ī, [pīlum], m., (usually joined with **prīmus**), a maniple of the triarii, composed of the oldest and bravest soldiers; for the triarii, though having the third place from the front in the usual battle order, held the first rank in honor. — **prīmī pīlī centuriō,** the first centurion of the first maniple of the triarii, *i. e.* the first centurion of the legion in rank.

pinna, -ae, f., *feather;* in military language, *battlement,* v. 40, vii. 72.

Pirustae, -ārum, m., a tribe in Illyricum. See N. to p. 123, 15. v. 1.

piscis, -is, m., *fish.* iv. 10.

Pīsō, -ōnis, m., (1) *L. Piso,* consul B. C. 112; killed B. C. 107, when serving as lieutenant with the consul Cassius, who was utterly defeated by the Tigurini in the territory of the Allobroges, i. 12. (2) *L. Calpurnius Piso Caesonius,* consul with *Aulus Gabinius,* B. C. 58, and father-in-law of Caesar, i. 6, 12. — (3) *M. Pupius Piso Calpurnianus,* consul with *M. Messala,* B. C. 61, i. 2, 35. — (4) *Piso,* an Aquitanian killed in a skirmish with the Germans, iv. 12.

pix, picis, f., *pitch.*

placeō, placēre, placuī, placitum, 2, n., *please, be agreeable* or *welcome to;* often used impersonally, as **Caesari placuit,** *Caesar resolved.*

placidē, [placidus], adv., *quietly, calmly.* vi. 8.

plācō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, a., *appease.* vi. 16.

Plancus, -ī, m., *Lucius Munatius Plancus*, a lieutenant of Caesar's.

plānē, [plānus], adv., *clearly, entirely.*

plānitiēs, -ēī, [plānus], f., *a plain; level ground.*

plānus, -a, -um, adj., *level, flat.*

plēbs, plēbis, or **plēbēs, -ēī**, f., *the common folk, the common people, the populace.*

plēnē [plēnus], adv., *fully, completely.* iii. 3.

plēnus, -a, -um, adj., *full.*

plērumque [acc. of **plērusque**], adv., *mostly, generally, usually, for the most part.*

plērusque, -aque, -umque, [plērus, *very many*], adj., *very many, most;* often in pl. as noun, **plērīque**, etc., *the most, the greater part, the majority, most.*

Pleumoxiī, -ōrum, m., a Gallic tribe, dependents of the Nervii, in West Flanders, east of the Suessiones. v. 39.

plumbum, -ī, n., *lead.* — **plumbum album**, *tin*, v. 12.

plūrēs and **plūrimus**, see **multus.**

plūs and **plūrimē**, see **multum.**

pluteus, -ī, m., *a breastwork*, made of planks or wickerwork covered with hides, sometimes pushed forward on rollers to protect an advancing party, sometimes placed on walls or towers.

pōculum, -ī, n., *drinking cup, beaker.* vi. 28.

poena, -ae, f., *compensation, punishment, penalty.* — **poenās pendere** or **persolvere**, *to pay the penalty.*

pollex, pollicis, m., *thumb, great toe.* — **digitus pollex**, *thumb*, iii. 13.

polliceor, -licērī, -licitus sum, 2, dep., *promise, offer.*

pollicitātiō, -ōnis, [polliceor], f., *promise.*

pollicitus, see **polliceor.**

Pompēius (or **Pompējus**), **Cn., -ī**, m., *Gneus Pompeius, Pompey*, Caesar's father-in-law and rival; born B. C. 106, conquered by Caesar at the battle of Pharsālus, and murdered in Egypt B. C. 48. See pp. 3–6.

pondus, ponderis, n., [from **pendo**, *weigh*, just as our word "weight" from "weigh"], *weight.*

pōnō, pōnere, posuī, positum, 3, a., *place, put, lay down, set aside; appoint, station, regard; pitch;* pass. *to be situated, dependent.* — **castra pōnere**, *to pitch camp, encamp.*

pōns, pontis, m., *bridge.*

populātiō, -ōnis, [populor], f., *a laying waste, ravaging.* i. 15.

populor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, dep., *lay waste, devastate, desolate.*

populus, -ī, m., *people* (as a political whole).

porrēctus, -a, -um, (pf. part. of **porrigo**), adj., *level.*

porrigō, -rigere, -rēxī, -rēctum, [por, = pro, + rego], 3, a., *reach out, stretch forth, extend.*

porrō, adv., *moreover, furthermore.* v. 27.

porta, -ae, f., *gate* (of a city or camp).

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, a., *carry, bring, convey.*

portōrium, -ī, [root **por** in **porto**, *carry*], n., *toll, tax, customs* (duties). See N. to p. 56, 1.

portus, -ūs, [root **por** in **porto**], m., *harbor, port, haven.* — **portus Itius**, *Boulogne.*

poscō, poscere, poposcī, no supine, 3, a., *demand, ask for urgently.*

positus, -a, -um, pf. part. of **pono,** used as adj., *situated, dependent.*

possessiō, -ōnis, [possīdo], f., *possession.*

possideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, -sessum, [sedeo], 2, a., *hold, occupy, possess.*

possīdo, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessum, [causat. of **possideo**], 3, a., *take possession of.* iv. 7.

possum, pōsse, potuī, no supine, [**potis,** *able* + **sum**], irr., n., *be able;* pres. = *I can,* impf. and pf. = *I could.* — **multum, plūrimum pōsse,** *to have great, very great power.*

post, adv., *after, later;* often with abl. of degree of difference, as **annō post,** *a year later, the following year.* — **paucīs post diēbus,** *a few days later* or *after.*

post, prep. with acc. only, *behind, after.* — **post tergum,** *in the rear.* **post mediam noctem,** *after midnight.*

posteā [**post ea**], adv., *afterwards.*

posteāquam [**posteā + quam**], conj., *after that, after.*

posterus, -a, -um, [post], adj., *the following, next.* — pl. m., **posterī, -ōrum,** as noun, *posterity.* — Comp. **posterior,** sup. **postrēmus** or **postumus.**

postpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, [post + pōno], 3, a., *put after* or *second, esteem less, lay aside.* — **omnibus rebus postpositīs,** *laying everything else aside,* v. 7.

postpositus, see **postpōno.**

postquam [post + quam], conj., *after that, after, when;* **post** and **quam** are often separated by intervening words.

postrēmō [abl. neut. of **postrēmus,** from **posterus**], adv., *at last, finally.*

postrīdiē [locative form from **posterus + diē**], adv., *the next day.* — **postrīdiē ēius diēī,** *the next day, the following day.*

postulātum, -ī, [postulo], n., *demand, request.*

postulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, a., *ask, request, require, claim, demand.*

potēns, -entis, [pres. part. of **possum**], adj., *powerful.*

potentātus, -ūs, [potens], m., *power, headship, supremacy.* i. 31.

potentia, -ae, [potens], f., *might, power, influence.*

potestās, -ātis, [possum], f., *might, power, lordship; possibility, opportunity, permission.*

potior, potīrī, potītus sum, [**potis,** *able*], 4, dep., *get possession of, become master of, acquire, obtain,* followed by either abl. or gen.; old form of gerundive, **potiundī** (ii. 7), **potiundōrum** (iii. 6).

potius, [comp. of **potis,** *able*], adv., *rather, more, preferably.* Sup. **potissimum.**

prae, prep. with abl. only, *in comparison with* (ii. 30), *on account of* (vii. 44).

praeacūtus, -a, -um, [prae + acūtus], adj., *sharpened at the end, sharpened, pointed.*

praebeo, praebēre, praebuī, praebitum, [prae + habeo], 2, a., *hold forth, offer, show, furnish, present* (to view).

praecaveō, -cavēre, -cāvī, -cautum, [prae + caveo], 2, n., *guard against take precautions.* i. 38.

praecēdō, -cēdere, -cēssī, -cēssum, [prae + cēdo], 3, a., *go before; surpass.* i. 1.

praeceps, -cipitis, [prae + caput], adj., *headlong, with great*

speed, head over heels; steep, precipitous.

praeceptum, -ī, [**praecipio**], n., *teaching, counsel; order, command, instructions.*

praecipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, [**prae + capio**], 3, a., *order, direct, instruct; suspect,* vii. 9.

praecipitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**praeceps**], 1, a., *hurl headlong, fling.*

praecipuē [**praecipuus**], adv., *especially, specially, particularly.*

praecipuus, -a, -um, [**praecipio**], adj., *special, particular.* v. 54.

praeclūdō, -clūdere, -clūsī, -clūsum, [**prae + claudo**], 3, a., *close, block.* v. 9.

praecō, -ōnis, m., *herald, crier.* v. 51.

Praeconīnus, see **Valerius.**

praecurrō, -currere, -cucurrī or **-currī, -cursum,** [**prae + curro**], 3, n., *run forward, outstrip.*

praeda, -ae, [for **praehenda,** from **praehendo**], f., lit. *that which is caught; booty, spoil.*

praedicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**prae + dico**], 1, a. and n., *make known, assert, declare, proclaim, announce; boast,* i. 44.

praedor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [**praedō,** *plunderer*], 1, dep., *pillage, plunder, get booty.*

praedūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, [**prae + dūco**], 3, a., *draw before, build before.*

praefectus, see **praeficio.**

praefectus, -ī, [**praeficio**], m., *officer, leader, commander,* of troops in general, vii. 76; of auxiliary troops, i. 39, iii. 7, iv. 22; of cavalry, *cavalry captain,* iii. 26, iv. 11, vii. 66.

praeferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, [**prae + fero**], irr., a., *put before, prefer.*

praeficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, [**prae + facio**], 3, a., *put over, place over* or *in command of, appoint.*

praefīgō, -fīgere, -fīxī, -fīxum, [**prae + fīgo,** *fasten*], 3, a., *fix* or *place in front* — **sudibus praefīxīs,** *by driving stakes in front.*

praemetuō, -metuere, -metuī, no supine, [**prae + metuo,** *fear*], 3, a. and n., *fear for, be anxious.* vii. 49.

praemittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, [**prae + mitto**], 3, a., *send forward, send before* or *in advance.*

praemium, -ī, [lit. *what one gets before* or *better than others,* from **prae + emo**], n., *reward.*

praeoccupō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**prae + occupo**], 1, a., *take possession of beforehand, preoccupy; gain complete control of,* vi. 41.

praeoptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**prae + opto,** *choose*], 1, a., *choose rather, prefer.* i. 25.

praeparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**prae + paro**], 1, a., *make ready beforehand, prepare.*

praepōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, [**prae + pōno**], 3, a., *set over, place in command of.*

praerumpō, -rumpere, -rūpī, -ruptum, [**prae + rumpo,** *break*], 3, a., *break, break off.*

praeruptus, -a, -um, [pf. part. of **praerumpo**], adj., *steep, precipitous.*

praescrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, [**prae + scrībo**], 3, a., *order, direct, command.*

praescrīptum, -ī, [**praescrībo**], n., *order, instructions.* i. 36.

praesēns, -entis, (pres. part. of **praesum**), adj., *at hand, present.* **in praesentia** (sc. tempora), *for the present, at hand, for the moment.*

praesentia, -ae, [**praesēns**], f., *presence*, v. 43. For **in praesentia,** see **praesēns.**

praesentiō, -sentīre, -sēnsī, -sēnsum, [**prae + sentio**], 4, a., *perceive beforehand.*

praesēpiō, -sēpīre, -sēpsī, -sēptum, [**prae + sēpio,** *fence in*], 4, a., *fence in close, block up.* vii. 77.

praesēptus, see **praesēpio.**

praesertim [**prae + sero,** *join*], adv., *especially, particularly.*

praesidium, -ī, [**praeses,** *guard*], n., *guard, garrison, protection; fortress, redoubt.*

praestō, -stāre, -stitī, -stitum, [**prae + sto**], 1, a. and n., *show, display, supply; excel, surpass; discharge, perform.* Impers. **praestat,** *it is preferable, it is better.* — **officium praestāre,** *to do one's duty.*

praestō, adv., *at hand.* — **praestō esse,** *to meet.* v. 26.

praesum, -esse, -fuī, no supine, [**prae + sum**], irr., n., *be* or *preside over, be at the head of, have command of.*

praeter, prep. with acc. only, *beyond, except, contrary to.*

praetereā [**praeter + ea**], adv., *besides.*

praetereō, -īre, -īvī or **-iī, -itum,** [**praeter + eo**], irr., a. and n., *pass over, pass, go by.*

praeteritus, see **praetereo.**

praetermittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, [**praeter + mitto**], 3, a., *pass over, let slip* or *go by.*

praeterquam [**praeter + quam**], adv., *except, beyond, besides.*

praetor, -ōris, [for **praeitor,** from **praeëo**], m. (1) *general, commander*, i. 21. (2) *praetor*, a Roman magistrate whose duties were judicial; *judge.* The *praetor urbanus* decided cases between Roman citizens, the *praetor peregrinus* cases between citizens and foreigners.

praetōrius, -a, -um, [**praetor**], adj., *of* or *belonging to the commander, praetorian.* — **praetōria cohors,** *general's cohort, general's body-guard.* — **porta praetōria,** the gate of the camp on the side facing the enemy, directly opposite the **porta decumāna.**

praeūro, -ūrere, -ūssī, -ūstum, [**prae + ūro**], 3, a., *burn at the end.*

praeūstus, -a, -um, (pf. part. of **praeūro**), adj., *burnt at the end* (in order to make hard).

praevertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, [**prae + verto**], 3, a., *outstrip, anticipate* (*in order to hinder*). vii. 33.

prāvus, -a, -um, adj., *bad, wicked.* vii. 39.

premō, premere, pressī, pressum, 3, a., *press, harass, oppress;* pass., *be hard pressed, weighed down* or *oppressed, be in need* or *in danger.*

prendō (for **prehendo**), **prendere, prendī, prēnsum,** 3, a., *take, grasp.* i. 20.

pretium, -ī, n., *price, value.*

prex, precis, f., generally used in plural, *prayer, entreaty, supplication; curse.*

prīdiē [root, **pri,** in **prior,** + **diē**], adv., *the day before.*

prīmipīlus, -ī, [**prīmus + pīlus**], m., *chief centurion;* = **prīmus pīlus.** See **pīlus.**

prīmō [abl. of **prīmus**], adv., *at first, in the first instance.*

prīmum [acc. of **prīmus**], adv., *first, in the first place.* — **quam prīmum,** *as soon as possible.* — **cum prīmum,** *as soon as.*

prīmus, -a, -um, adj., *first, foremost.* Compared, **prior, prī-**

mus. — **prīmā lūce,** *at daybreak.* — **prīmā nocte,** *at nightfall.*

prīnceps, -ipis, [prīmus + capio], m., *head man, chief, leading man, prince.*

prīncipātus, -ūs, [prīnceps], m., *chief authority* (in a state); *headship, leadership.*

prior, -us, adj., *former, previous, first;* pl. m., **priōrēs,** as noun, *those in advance,* ii. 11. Sup. **prīmus.**

prīstinus, -a, -um, [prior], adj., *former, old.*

prius [prior], adv., *before, sooner, earlier.*

priusquam [prius + quam], conj., *before, sooner than;* **prius** and **quam** are often separated by intervening words.

prīvātim [prīvātus], adv., *privately, individually, as individuals* (opposed in meaning to **pūblicē**).

prīvātus, -a, -um, [prīvo, *set apart* from the state], adj., *private;* as noun, m., *private individual.*

prō, prep. with abl. only, *in front of, before; for, in behalf of; in proportion to; as, on account of.* See IDIOMS.

probō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [probus], 1, a., *approve, think highly of; show to be worthy,* v. 44; *prove,* v. 27.

prōcēdō, -cēdere, -cēssī, -cēssum, [pro + cēdo], 3, n., *advance, press forward.*

prōclīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [pro + clīnō, *bend*], 1, a., *bend* or *lean forward;* pf. pass. part., *tottering to its fall,* vii. 42.

prōcōnsul, -ulis, [pro + cōnsul], m., *a proconsul,* one who, having held the office of consul, was assigned to the government of a province. iii. 20, vi. 1.

procul, adv., *at a distance, from afar, far off.*

prōcumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, -cubitum, [pro + cumbo, cubo, *lie down*], 3, n., *fall, sink down, be beaten down; lie down,* vi. 27.

prōcūrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [pro + cūro], 1, a., *look after, have charge of.* vi. 13.

prōcurrō, -currere, -cucurrī or **-currī, -cursum, [pro + curro],** 3, n., *rush forward, hasten forward.*

prōdeō, -īre, -īvī or **-iī, -itum, [pro + eo],** irr., n., *advance, come out* or *forth.*

prōdesse, see **prōsum.**

prōditiō, -ōnis, [prōdo], f., *a betraying, treachery.*

prōditor, -ōris, [prodo], m., *traitor, betrayer.* vi. 23.

prōditus, see **prōdo.**

prōdō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, [pro + do], 3, a., *give forth, make known; transmit; betray, surrender.*

prōdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -dūctum, [pro + dūco], 3, a., *bring out, lead forth; extend, prolong.*

prōdūctus, see **prodūco.**

proelior, -ārī, -ātus sum [proelium], 1, dep., *fight.*

proelium, -ī, n., *battle, combat, engagement.*

profectiō, -ōnis, [proficiscor], f., *departure, setting out.*

prōfectus, see **prōficio.**

profectus, see **proficiscor.**

prōferō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, [pro + fero], irr., a., *bring out, bring forth.*

prōficiō, -ficere, -fēci, -fectum, [pro + facio], 3, a., *advance; effect, gain.*

proficiscor, -fiscicī, -fectus sum, [pro + facio, faciscor], 3, dep., *set out, depart, proceed.*

profiteor, -fitērī, -fessus sum, [**pro + fateor,** *confess*], 2, dep., *profess, declare, promise.*

prōflīgō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**pro + flīgo,** *strike*], 1, a., *put to flight, rout.*

prōfluō, -fluere, -flūxī, -flūxum, [**pro + fluo**], 3, n., *flow from, rise* (of a river). iv. 10.

profugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitum, [**pro + fugio**], 3, n., *flee, escape.*

prōgnātus, -a, -um, [**pro + (g)nātus,** from **(g)nāscor**], adj., *sprung from.*

prōgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, [**pro + gradior,** *step*], 3, dep., *advance, go forward, proceed.*

prōgressus, see **prōgredior.**

prohibeō, -hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitum, [**pro + habeo**], 2, a., *hold, restrain, keep off; cut off, shut off.*

prōiciō (or **prōjicio**), **-icere, -iēcī, -iectum,** [**pro + iacio**], 3, a., *throw, throw away; fling, cast; reject.*

proinde [**pro + inde**], adv., *henceforth, therefore.*

prōmineō, -minēre, -minuī, no supine, 2, n., *bend forward.* vii. 47.

prōmiscuē [**prōmiscuus, pro + misceo,** *mix*], adv., *in common, promiscuously.*

prōmissus, -a, -um, (pf. part. of prōmitto), adj., *long, flowing* (of hair). v. 14.

prōmōtus, see **promoveo.**

prōmoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, [**pro + moveo**], 2, a., *move* or *push forward.*

prōmptus, -a, -um, [pf. part. of **prōmo,** *bring forward*], adj., *ready.* iii. 19.

prōmuntūrium, -ī, [**prōmineo**], n., *headland.* iii. 12.

prōnē [**prōnus**], adv., *bending forward, leaning forward.* iv. 17.

prōnūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**pro + nūntio**], 1, a., *tell, announce, declare.* — **prōnūntiātur,** *notice is given.*

prope [comp. **propius,** sup. **proximē**], adv., *near, nearly, almost;* often followed by the acc., *near.* — **proximē** or **proxumē,** *nearest, next, very near; last, latest, most recently.*

prōpellō, -pellere, -pulī, -pulsum, [**pro + pello**], 3, a., *drive away, put to flight, rout, repel, defeat.*

properō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**properus,** *quick*], 1, a. and n., *hurry, make haste, hasten.*

propinquitās, -ātis, [**propinquus**], f., *nearness, vicinity; near approach, relationship.*

propinquus, -a, -um, [**prope**], adj., *near, neighboring;* pl. m. and f., as noun, *relatives.*

propior, -us, sup. **proximus,** [**propis, prope**], adj., positive wanting, *nearer.* — **proximus, -a, -um,** *nearest, next, last,* of space or time. — **proximā nocte,** *on the following night.*

propius, see **prope.**

prōpōnō, -pōnere, -posuī, -positum, [**pro + pōno**], 3, a., *put forward, present; declare, explain; promise, intend; raise,* ii. 20.

prōpositus, see **prōpōno.**

prōprius, -a, -um, adj., *one's own, particular, peculiar.*

propter, prep. with acc. only, *on account of, in consequence of.*

propterea [**propter + ea**], adv., *for this reason, therefore.* — **propterea quod,** *because;* see N. to p. 47, 6.

prōpūgnātor, -ōris, [**prōpūgno**], m., *combatant, defender.* vii. 25.

prōpūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**pro + pūgno**], 1, n., *fight, attack.*

prōpulsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [freq. of **propello**], 1, a., *drive off, ward off, repel.*

prōra, -ae, f., *prow, forepart of a ship.* iii. 13.

prōruō, -ere, -uī, -utum, 3, a., *hurl down.*

prōsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, [**pro + sequor**], 3, dep., *follow up* or *after, pursue; address.*

prōspectus, -ūs, [**prōspicio**], m., *view, sight.* — **in prōspectū,** *in sight, visible,* v. 10.

prōspiciō, -spicere, -spēxī, -spectum, [**pro + specio,** *look*], 3, a., *look out; provide for.*

prōsternō, -sternere, -strāvī, -strātum, [**pro + sterno,** *scatter*], 1, a., *destroy.* vii. 77.

prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, no supine, irr., n., *be of advantage to.* vi. 40.

prōtegō, -tegere, -tēxī, -tectum, [**pro + tego**], 3, a., *cover, protect.* v. 44.

prōterreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, [**pro + terreo**], 2, a., *frighten away, scare off.*

prōtinus [**pro + tenus**], adv., *forthwith, at once, immediately.*

prōturbō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**pro + turbo,** *disturb*], 1, a., *drive away, repulse.*

prōvēctus, see **prōveho.**

prōvehō, -vehere, -vēxī, -vēctum, [**pro + veho**], 3, a., *carry forward;* pass **prōvehor, -vehī, -vēctus sum,** often used in a middle sense, *proceed, drive, sail, sail along.*

prōveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, [**pro + venio**], 4, n., *come forth; grow,* v. 24.

prōventus, -ūs, [**prōvenio**], m., *result, issue, outcome.*

prōvideō, -vidēre, -vīdī, -vīsum, [**pro + video**], 2, a., *foresee, perceive, provide.*

prōvincia, -ae, f., *province, subject territory;* in Caesar often *the Province,* i. e. that part of Gaul subdued by the Romans before Caesar's campaigns. It was bounded on the north by the upper part of the Rhone, on the west by the Cévennes Mts. and the Upper Garonne, and on the south by the Mediterranean. See p. 38 and map.

prōvinciālis, -e, [**prōvincia**], adj., *of* or *belonging to the province.* vii. 7.

prōvīsus, see **prōvideo.**

prōvolō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**pro + volo,** *fly*], 1, n., *dash forth.* ii. 19.

proximē, proxumē, see **prope.**

proximus, -a, -um, see **propior.**

prūdentia, -ae, [**prūdens,** which is contracted from **prō-vidēns,** *far-seeing*], f., *foresight, prudence.* ii. 4.

Ptianiī, -ōrum, pl. m., a tribe in Aquitania south of the Tarusates; the name perhaps survives in the town *Pau.*

pūberēs, -um, [adj. **pūbēs** used as noun], pl. m., *adults.* v. 56.

pūblicē [**pūblicus**], adv., *in the name of the state, as a state,* opposed in meaning to **prīvātim.**

pūblicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**pūblicus**], 1, a., *make public; confiscate.*

pūblicus, -a, -um, [contracted from **populicus,** from **populus**], adj., *of* or *belonging to the state, public, common.* — **lītterae pūblicae,** *state documents,* v. 47. — **pūblicum cōnsilium,** *state decision.*

Publius, -ī, a Roman praenomen.

pudet, pudēre, puduit or **puditum est,** 2, impers. form of **pudeo,** *it causes a feeling of shame, one is* or *feels ashamed.* vii. 42.

pudor, -ōris, [pudeo], m., *shame, sense* or *feeling of shame.*

puer, puerī, m., *child, boy.*

puerīlis, -e, [puer], adj., *of a child* or *boy.* — **puerīlī aetāte,** *while a child, during the age of childhood.* vi. 18.

pūgna, -ae, f., *fight, combat, battle.*

pūgnō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, [pūgna], 1, n., *fight, combat, engage.* — **pūgnātum est,** *the battle raged.*

pulcher, -cra, -crum, adj., *beautiful,* vii. 15; *noble,* vii. 77.

Puliō, -ōnis, m., a centurion, the rival of Vorenus. v. 44.

pulsus, see **pello.**

pulsus, -ūs, [pello], m., *stroke.* iii. 13.

pulvis, pulveris, m., *dust.* iv. 32.

puppis, -is, f., *stern, hinder part* of a ship, iii. 13, 14.

purgō, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, [for **pūrigo,** from **pūrum + ago**], 1, a., *clean; free from blame, excuse.* — **suī purgandī causā,** *in order to excuse themselves.*

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, a., *think, consider, decide.*

Pȳrēnaeus, -a, -um, [Greek word], adj., in **Pȳrēnaeī montēs,** *the Pyrenees,* the mountain range dividing France from Spain.

Q.

Q. with names = **Quīntus.**

quā [abl. fem. of **quī,** originally sc. **viā** or **parte**], adv., *where; as far as,* vii. 36.

qua, nom. sing. fem., and neut. pl., of the indefinite pron., **quis** or **quī.**

quadrāgēnī, -ae, -a, [quadrāgintā], num. distributive adj., *forty each.*

quadrāgintā, adj., indecl., *forty.*

quadringentī, -ae, -a, [quattuor + centum], adj., *four hundred.*

quaerō, quaerere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, 3, a., *seek* or *look for, ask, inquire.*

quaestiō, -ōnis, [quaero], f., *inquiry; examination, investigation.*

quaestor, -ōris, [quaero], m., (1) *questor, state-treasurer,* the lowest in rank of the great officers of state. (2) *quarter-master,* an officer accompanying the army on campaigns in charge of money and supplies, sometimes also detailed for military service in charge of troops.

quaestus, -ūs, [quaero], m., *getting* money, *gain.* vi. 17.

quālis, -e, [quis], interrogative adj., *of what sort? what sort of?*

quam [quis], adv., *how much, how;* with superlatives (with or without **possum**), *as possible;* after comparatives and comparative expressions, *than, as;* with expressions of time, *after.* — **quam vetus,** *how old.* — **quam diū,** *as long as.* — **nāvēs quam plūrimās,** *as many ships as possible.* — **quam celerrimē,** *as quickly as possible.* — **post diem quartum quam,** *the fourth day after.* See Idioms.

quamobrem [quam + ob + rem], adv., *wherefore.*

quamvīs [quam + volo], adv., (lit. *as* or *however much you will*), *however much* or *many.* — **quamvīs paucī,** *no matter how few,* iv. 2.

quandō, adv., *ever, at any time.* iii. 12.

quantō [abl. of degree of difference, from **quantus**], adv., *by how much.* — **quantō . . . tantō,** *as . . . so.*

quantŏpere [**quantus** + **opus**], adv., *how much, how deeply* or *greatly.*

quantum [acc. of **quantus**], adv., *how much, how far, as far as.*

quantus, -a, -um, adj., *how great, how much, how large;* after **tantus,** *as;* **tantum — quantum,** *so much* (or *far*) — *as;* as noun with partitive gen., **quantum bonī,** *how much advantage;* **quantum agrī,** *as much land,* etc.

quantusvīs, quantavīs, quantumvīs, [**quantus** + **volo**], adj., *however great, no matter how great.* v. 28.

quāre [**quā** + **rē**], adv., *wherefore, why;* often = **propter quod,** as in i. 14, or **propter quās** (**rēs** or **causās**), as in i. 33.

quartus, -a, -um, [**quattuor**], adj., *fourth.*

quasi [**quam** + **sī**], conj., *as if.* vii. 38.

quattuor, adj., indecl., *four.*

quattuordecim [**quattuor** + **decem**], adj., indecl., *fourteen.*

que, conj., *and,* always appended to another word, which in construction belongs after it.

quemadmodum [**quem** + **ad** + **modum**], adv., *in what way, how.*

queror, querī, questus sum, 3, dep., *complain, lament.*

questus, see **queror.**

quī, quae, quod, rel. pron., *who; which;* at the beginning of a clause often best rendered by a relative or demonstrative pron., with or without *and;* when with the subj. expressing cause, *since he* (or *they*), *because he* (or *they*); when with the subj. expressing characteristic result, often rendered *as, so that he* (*it, they*), *that he* (*it, they*), etc. Cf. p. 378. — **idem quī,** *the same as.*

quī, quae or **qua, quod,** indef. pron., *any, any one,* or *anything,* used both as adj. and as noun. — **sī quī,** *if any one.*

quicquam, see **quisquam.**

quīcumque, quaecumque, quodcumque, indef. pron., *whoever, whatever, whichever.*

quīdam, quaedam, quoddam and **quiddam,** indef. pron., *a certain, a certain one;* pl. *some, certain.*

quidem, adv., *indeed, at least.* — **nē . . . quidem,** *not even;* the word emphasized is always placed between **nē** and **quidem.**

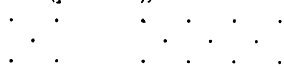
quiēs, -ētis, f., *rest, repose, quiet.*

quiētus, -a, -um, [part. of **quiēsco,** from **quiēs**], adj., *at rest, calm, quiet, peaceful.*

quīn [old abl. **quī** + **nē**], conj., *that not, but that, without;* after words expressing doubt or suspicion, *that;* after **retineo, prohibeo,** etc., trans. by *from* with a participle. — **quīn etiam,** *moreover.*

quīnam, quaenam, quodnam, interr. pron., *who pray? what then?* used as noun (= **uter**), *which of the two,* v. 44.

quīncunx, -uncis, [**quīnque** + **ūncia**], f., *a quincunx,* i. e. an arrangement of trees or other objects like the five spots on the dice (*quincunx*), thus:



quīndecim [**quīnque** + **decem**], indecl. adj., *fifteen.*

quīngentī, -ae, -a, [**quīnque** + **centum**], adj., *five hundred.*

quīnī, -ae, -a, num. distributive adj., *five each, five at a time.*

quīnquāgintā, indecl. adj., *fifty.*

quīnque, indecl. adj., *five.*

quīntus, -a, -um, [quīnque], adj., *fifth*.

Quīntus, -ī, m., a Roman praenomen.

quis, quae, quid, interr. pron., *who? which? what?* — Neut. **quid**, with partitive gen., **quid cōnsiliī**, *what plan?* etc.; neut. **quid**, as adverbial acc. (= **cur**), *why?* **quid sectāminī**, *why do ye pursue?*

quis, quae or **qua, quid**, indef. pron., *any one* or *anything, any.* — **sī quis**, *if any one.* — **nē quis**, *that not any one = that no one.* — Neut. **quid**, with partitive gen., *any;* as, **sī quid cōnsiliī**, *if any plan.*

quispiam, quaepiam, quodpiam and **quidpiam**, indef. pron., *some, any, some one.*

quisquam, quaequam, quicquam, indef. pron., *any one, anything.*

quisque, quaeque, quidque or **quodque**, indef. pron., *each, every, every one.* — With superlatives **quisque** = *all*, the adj. being translated as positive; as, **optimus quisque**, *all the nobles.*

quisquis, quaequae, quicquid or **quodquod**, indef. rel. pron., *whoever, whatever.*

quīvīs, quaevīs, quidvīs or **quodvīs**, [qui + volo], indef. pron., *any one you please, any.*

quō, see **quī**.

quō [dat. or abl. of **quī**], adv., (1) relative and interrogative adv., *whither, where;* (2) indefinite adv., after **sī** and **nē**, *to any place, at any point, anywhere.*

quō [abl. of **quī**], final conj., used especially with comparatives and followed by subj., *in order that, that, that thereby.* — **quō minus**, *that not*, often best trans. by *from* with a participle.

quoad [for **quod ad, ad + quod**], conj., *as long as; until, till.*

quod [acc. of **quī**], conj., *because, inasmuch as, supposing that, as to* or *in regard to the fact that, so far as.* — **proptereā quod**, *because;* see N. to p. 47, 6. — **quod sī**, *but if, now if.*

quō minus, see **quō**.

quoniam [quom, old form of cum, + iam], conj., *since, seeing that, because.*

quoque, conj., following the emphatic word of a clause, *also, too.*

quōque, abl. of **quisque**, which see.

quōque = **et quō**.

quōqueversum and **quōqueversus**, [quōquō + versus], adv., *in every direction, in all directions.*

quot, indecl. adj., *how many.*

quotannīs [quot + abl. pl. of annus], adv., *yearly, every year.*

quotiēns [quot], adv., *how often, as often as.*

R.

rādīx, -īcis, f., *root;* with **montis** or **collis**, *foot.* — **rādīcēs montis**, *the foot* or *base of the height.*

rādō, rādere, rāsī, rāsum, 3, a., *shave.* v. 14.

rāmus, -ī, m., *branch, bough* (of a tree).

rapiditās, -ātis, [rapidus, *swift*], f., *swiftness.* iv. 17.

rapīna, -ae, [rapio, *seize*], f., *pillage, plundering.* i. 15.

rārus, -a, -um, adj., *not thick; few, scattered, in small parties.*

rāsus, see **rādo**.

ratiō, -ōnis, [reor, *reckon*], f., *reckoning, calculation, account;*

plan, theory, method, science; reason, ground.

ratis, -is, f., *raft.*

Rauricī, -ōrum, pl. m., a tribe near the Rhine in the vicinity of Bâsle, that joined the Helvetii in their great migration. i. 1, etc.

re-, red-, an inseparable particle, used only in composition, *again, back.*

rebelliō, -ōnis, [**re + bellum**], f., *renewal of fighting, uprising.*

recēdō, -cēdere, -cēssī, -cēssum, [**re + cēdō**] 3, n., *go back, withdraw.* v. 43.

recēns, -ēntis, adj., *recent, late, fresh.*

recēnseō, -cēnsēre, -cēnsuī, -cēnsum and **cēnsītum,** [**re + cēnseo**], 2, a., *review.* vii. 76.

receptāculum, -ī, [**recipio**], n., *place of shelter, retreat.* vii. 14.

receptus, see **recipio.**

receptus, -ūs, [**recipio**], m., *drawing back, retreat.*

recēssus, -ūs, [**recēdo**], m., *a going back, receding.* — **recēssum dare,** *to give a chance to draw back, retreat,* v. 43.

recidō, -cidere, -cidī, -cāsum, [**re + cado**], 3, n., *fall back, return.* vii. 1.

reciperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**re + capio**], 1, a., *get back* or *again, recover.*

recipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, [**re + capio**], 3, a., *take back, get back, receive, recover, win; admit; retreat.* — **sē recipere,** *to retreat.* — **recipere in dēditiōnem,** *to admit to a surrender, receive into submission.*

recitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**re + cito,** *quote*], 1, a., *read aloud.* v. 48.

reclīnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**re + clīno,** *lean*], 1, n., *lean back;* pf. part. **reclīnātus,** *leaning back,* vi. 27.

rēctē [**rēctus**], adv., *rightly, properly.*

rēctus, -a, -um, [**rego**], adj., *straight, direct.*

recuperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**re + capio**], 3, a., *get back, regain, recover.*

recūsō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**re + causa**], 1, a., *refuse, decline, shrink;* when followed by **quō minus** or **quīn** with the subj. these are to be trans. by *to* with the infin.

rēda, -ae, [Keltic word], f., *wagon* (with four wheels).

redāctus, see **redigo.**

redditus, see **reddo.**

reddō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, [**red + do**], 3, a., *give back, restore, return; render, dispense.*

redēmptus, see **redimo.**

redeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, [**red + eo**], irr., n., *go back, return; sink back,* vii. 54; *be reduced,* v. 48; *fall to the lot of, be referred,* vi. 11.

redigō, -ere, -ēgī, -āctum, [**red + ago**], 3, a., *drive back, reduce; render, make,* iv. 3, ii. 27.

redimō, -imere, -ēmī, -ēmptum, [**red + emo**], 3, a., *buy back, purchase; farm* (revenues).

redintegro, -āre, -āvi, -ātum, [**red + integro,** *make whole*], 1, a., *commence again, renew; revive.*

reditiō, -ōnis, [**redeo**], f., *a going back, returning.* i. 5.

reditus, -ūs, [**redeo**], m., *a returning, return.*

Redones, -um, m. pl., a Gallic people in Brittany (Bretagne); the name survives in the town *Rennes.*

redūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -dūctum, [**re + dūco**], 3, a., *lead back, bring* or *conduct back; draw back;*

pull back, vii. 22; *prolong back*, vii. 72.

refectus, see **reficio.**

referō, -ferre, -tulī, -lātum, [**re** + **fero**], 3, a., *bring* or *carry back; report, announce.* — **pedem referre,** *retreat.* — **gratiam referre,** *make return, requite.*

reficio, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, [**re** + **facio**], 3, a., *repair, refit; refresh.*

refrāctus, see **refringo.**

refringo, -fringere, -frēgī, -frāctum, [**re** + **frango**], *break, break down.*

refugiō, -fugere, -fūgī, -fugitum, **re** + **fugio**], 3, n. and a., *flee back* or *away, retreat, escape.*

regiō, -ōnis, [**rego,** *keep straight*], f., *direction, line; boundary; region, tract, territory.* — **rēctā regiōne,** *in the direct line, parallel with,* vi. 25.

rēgius, -a, -um, [**rēx**], adj. *kingly, royal.* vii. 32.

rēgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**rēgnum**], 1, n. and a., *be king, reign.* v. 25.

rēgnum, -ī, [**rēx**], n., *kingship, sovereignty; absolute power* or *authority.*

regō, -ere, rēxī, rēctum, *regulate, manage,* iii. 13; *conduct,* vi. 17.

regredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, [**re** + **gradior,** *step*], 3, dep., *step back, withdraw.* v. 44.

rēiciō (or **rējicio**), **-icere, -iēcī, -iectum,** [**re** + **iacio**], 3, a., *hurl back; drive back, repulse; throw away,* i. 52.

rēiectus, see **rēicio.**

relanguēscō, -ere, -uī, no supine, [**re** + **languēsco**], 3, n., *become enfeebled* or *enervated.* ii. 15.

relātus, see **refero.**

relēgō, -āre, -āvī, ātum, [**re** + **lēgo,** *depute*], 1, a., *banish, remove.* v. 30.

relictus, see **relinquo.**

religiō, -ōnis, [**re** + root **lig** in **ligo,** *bind*], f., *religious scruple, religious feeling* or *obligation.* See IDIOMS.

relinquō, -linquere, -līquī, -lictum, [**re** + **linquō,** *quit*], 3, a., *leave, leave behind.*

reliquus, -a, -um, [**relinquo**], adj., *remaining, left, the rest.* — **nihil esse reliquī,** *that nothing is left.* **in reliquum tempus,** *for all time to come.*

remaneō, -manēre, -mānsi, no supine, [**re** + **maneō**], 2, n., *remain, stay behind.*

rēmēx, -igis, [**rēmus** + **ago**], m., *rower.* iii. 9.

Rēmī, -ōrum, m. pl., a leading Gallic tribe, situated about the headwaters of the Aisne; capital, Durocortorum, now *Rheims.* They sided with Caesar, and were rewarded by him with great privileges.

rēmigō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**rēmēx**], 1, n. and a., *row.* v. 8.

remigrō, -āre, no pf., no supine, [**re** + **migro,** *remove*], 1, n., *move back, return.*

reminiscor, -miniscī, no pf., no supine, [**re** + root **men** in **mēns**], 3, dep., *remember, recollect,* followed by the gen. i. 13.

remissus, -a, -um, [**remittō**], adj., *relaxed;* comp. **remissior,** *less severe,* v. 12.

remittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, [**re** + **mitto**], 3, a., *send back, give up; relax.*

remollēscō, -lēscere, no pf., no supine, [**re** + **mollēsco,** *grow soft*], 3, n., *become weak, lose their strength.* iv. 2.

remōtus, -a, -um, [removeo], adj., *far off, remote.*
removeō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, [re + moveo], 2, a., *remove, dismiss, get rid of.*
remūneror, -ārī, -ātus sum, [re + mūnus], 1, dep., *recompense, repay.* i. 44.
rēmus, -ī, m., *oar.*
Rēmus, -ī, m., one of the Remi.
rēnō, ōnis, [Keltic word], m., *reindeer skin.* vi. 21.
renovō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [re + novus], 1, a., *renew.*
renūntiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [re + nūntio], 1, a., *bring back word, report; declare elected.*
repellō, -pellere, reppulī, repulsum, [re + pello], 3, a., *drive back, repulse.*
repentē, [abl. of repēns, *sudden*], adv., *suddenly.*
repentīnō [abl. of repentīnus], adv., *suddenly, unexpectedly,* ii. 33.
repentīnus, -a -um, [repēns, *sudden*], adj., *hasty, sudden, unexpected.*
reperiō, -perīre, repperī or reperī, repertum, [re + pariō], 4, a., *find, discover, ascertain.*
repetō, -petere, -petīvī or -petiī, -petītum, [re + peto], 3, a., *seek again, demand, exact.*
repleō, -plēre, -plēvī, -plētum, [re + pleo, *fill*], 2, a., *fill up, supply amply.* vii. 56.
reportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [re + porto], 1, a., *carry back.*
reposcō, -poscere, no pf., no supine, [re + posco], 3, a., *demand, require.* v. 30.
repraesentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [re + praesens], 1, a., *do at once or forthwith.* i. 40.
reprehendō, -hendere, -hendī, -hēnsum, [re + prehendo], 3, a., *hold back; criticise, blame, rebuke.*
repressus, see reprimo.
reprimō, -primere, -pressī, -pressum, [re + premo], 3, a., *restrain, check.*
repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [repudium, *divorce*, from pudet], 1, a., *reject, scorn.* i. 40.
repūgnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [re + pūgno], 1, n. and a., *oppose, resist.*
repulsus, see repello.
requīrō, -quīrere, -quīsīvī, -quīsītum, [re + quaero], 3, a., *require, demand; wish back again,* vii. 63.
rēs, reī, f., *matter, affair; circumstance, fact, transaction; object, project, business.* — **rēs mīlitāris**, *warfare, military science.* — **rēs novae**, *a revolution.* — **rēs pūblica**, *the state, public business.* See IDIOMS.
resarciō, -sarcīre, -sarsī, -sartum, [re + sarcio, *mend*], 4, a., *repair, make good.* vi. 1.
rēscindō, -scindere, -scidī, -scissum, [re + scindo], 3, a., *cut down, break up.*
rēscīscō, -scīscere, -scīvī or -sciī, -scītum, [re + scīsco, *inquire*], 3, a., *discover, find out.* i. 28.
rēscrībō, -scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum, [re + scrībo], 3, a., *transfer* from one service to another; *re-enlist.* i. 42.
reservō, -are, -āvī, -ātum, [re + servo], 1, a., *keep back, reserve, keep.*
resideō, -sidēre, -sēdī, no supine, [re + sedeo, *sit*], 2, n., *remain behind, be left.* vii. 77.
resīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, no supine, [re + sīdo, *sit down*], 3, n., *settle down, subside.* vii. 64.
resistō, -sistere, -stitī, no supine, [re + sisto, *set*], 3, n., *resist, oppose, withstand; halt.*

rēspiciō, -spicere, -spēxī, -spectum, [**re + specio,** *look*], 3, n. and a., *look back; be mindful of, regard.*

rēspondeō, -spondēre, -spondī, -spōnsum, [**re + spondeo,** *promise*], 2, n., *answer, reply.*

rēspōnsum, -ī, [**rēspondeo**], n., *answer, reply.*

rēspūblica, reīpūblicae, [**rēs + pūblica**], f., *the state.*

rēspuō, -spuere, -spuī, no supine, [**re + spuō,** *spit*], 3, a., *spit out; reject.* i. 42.

rēstinguō, -stinguere, -stinxī, -stinctum, [**re + stinguo,** *quench*], 3, a., *put out, extinguish.*

rēstituō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum, [**re + statuō**], 3, a., *replace, restore, rebuild.*

retineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, [**re + teneo**], 2, a., *restrain, detain, retain, keep back, keep, maintain.*

retrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -trāctum, [**re + traho**], 3, a., *bring back* (by force). v. 7.

revellō, -vellere, -vellī, -vulsum, [**re + vello,** *pull*], 3, a., *pull back, tear away, tear down.*

reversus, see **revertor.**

revertō, -vertere, -vertī, -versum, [**re + verto**], 3, n., common only in pf. tenses, *return.*

revertor, -vertī, -versus sum, [**re + vertō**], 3, dep., *return.*

revinciō, -vincīre, -vinxī, -vinctum, [**re + vinciō**], 4, a., *bind together, fasten.*

revocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**re + vocō**], 1, a., *call back, recall.*

rēx, rēgis, [**rego,** *rule*], m., *king, ruler.*

Rhēnus, -ī, m., *the Rhine,* which rises in Switzerland and enters the German Ocean by several mouths, after a course of over 800 miles. Caesar bridged it twice. See N. to p. 106, 4; 109, 30; notes to Book IV., Chap. 17.

Rhodanus, -ī, m., *the Rhone;* it rises in Switzerland, and, after running through the Valais, the Lake of Geneva, and France, empties into the Gulf of Lyons, after a course of about 500 miles.

rīpa, -ae, f., *bank* of a stream.

rīvus, -ī, m., *stream, brook.*

rōbur, -oris, n., *oak.* iii. 13.

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, a., *ask, request.*

Rōma, -ae, f., *Rome.*

Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj., *Roman;* as noun, **Romānus, -ī,** m., *a Roman.*

Roscius, -ī, m., *Lucius Roscius,* one of Caesar's officers sent to winter with a legion in the territory of the Esubii. v. 24, 53.

rostrum, -ī, [**rodo,** *gnaw*], n., *beak,* especially the projecting end of a ship's prow, which was covered with iron, and in fighting used as a ram. See p. 36.

rota, -ae, f., *wheel.*

rubus, -ī, m., *bramble-bush.* ii. 17.

Rūfus, -ī, m., a Roman surname.

rūmor, -ōris, m., *rumor, report.*

rūpēs, -is, [**rumpo,** *break*], f., *cliff, steep rock.* ii. 29.

rūrsus [for **revorsus,** from **reverto**], adv., *on the contrary, again, anew.*

Rūtēnī, -ōrum, m. pl., a Gallic tribe, west of the Cévennes, who were induced by Lucterius, the Cadurcan, to join Vercingetorix. Chief city Segodunum, later called Civitas Rutenorum, now *Rhodez.*

Rūtilus, -ī. m., *M. Sempronius Rutilus,* one of Caesar's cavalry officers. vii. 90.

S.

Sabīnus, see **Q. Titurius.**

Sabis, -is, m., *the Sambre*, a river in Belgic Gaul which joins the Meuse at Charleroi. On its banks Caesar defeated the Nervii, B. C. 57. ii. 16, 18.

sacerdōs, -dōtis, [sacer, *sacred* + do], c., *priest.*

sacrāmentum, -ī, [sacer, *sacred*], n., *oath.*

sacrificium, -ī, [sacer, *sacred* + facio], n., *sacrifice.*

saepe [saepis, *frequent*], adv., *often, frequently.* — **minime saepe,** *very seldom.* Comp. **saepius,** *too often, repeatedly.*

saepenumerō [saepe + numero], adv., *frequently, repeatedly.*

saevio, -īre, -iī, -ītum, [saevus, *fierce*], 4, n., *rage, be furious.* iii. 13.

sagitta, -ae, f., *arrow.*

sagittārius, -ī, [sagitta], m., *archer, bowman.*

sagulum, -ī, [dim. of **sagum**, *mantle*], n., *a small cloak.*

saltus, -ūs, m. *wooded valley, defile* in the forest.

salūs, -ūtis, [salveo, *be well*], f., *health, welfare, safety, protection.*

Samarobrīva, -ae, f., a town of the Ambiani on the Samara (Somme), later called Ambiani, now *Amiens.*

sanciō, **sancīre**, **sanxī**, **sanctum**, 4, a., *render sacred, bind, confirm, ratify.*

sanctus, -a, -um, [sancio], adj., *hallowed, sacred.*

sanguis, -inis, m., *blood.*

sānitās, -tātis, [sānus], f., *soundness* of mind, *good sense.*

sānō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [sānus], 1, a., *make sound, cure, remedy.*

Santones, -um, m. pl., or

Santonī, -ōrum, m. pl., a Gallic people on the sea-coast north of the Garonne; they helped Caesar against the Veneti, but sent 12,000 men to the aid of Alesia; chief city, Mediolanum, now *Saintes*; the name survives also in *Saintonge.*

sānus, -a, -um, adj., *sound, healthy, rational.* — **prō sanō,** *as a prudent man,* v. 7.

sapiō, -ere, -īvī or -iī, no supine, 3, n. and a., *taste; be sensible, understand.* v. 30.

sarcina, -ae, [sarcio], f., *baggage, pack,* the load that each soldier carried on his back. See p. 23.

sarmentum, -ī, [sarpo, *prune*], n., *twig;* in pl. *faggot, fascine.* iii. 18.

satis, adv., *enough, sufficiently, tolerably, rather;* often used with partitive gen., as **satis causae,** *sufficient reason.*

satisfaciō, -facere, -fēcī, -factum, [satis + facio], irr., n., *satisfy, apologize, give satisfaction.*

satisfactiō, -ōnis, [satisfacio], f., *apology, excuse.*

satus, see **sero.**

saucius, -a, -um, adj., *wounded.*

saxum, -ī, n., *stone, rock.*

scāla, -ae, [scando, *climb*], f., *ladder.*

Scaldis, -is, m., *the Schelde,* which rises in France in the department of the Aisne, and enters the sea below Antwerp.

scapha, -ae, [σκάφη], f., *skiff, light boat.*

scelerātus, -a, -um, [scelus], adj., *wicked, infamous.*

scelus, **sceleris**, n., *sin, crime.*

scienter [scio], adv., *cleverly, wisely.* Comp. **scientius,** vii. 22.

scientia, -ae, [scio], f., *knowledge, skill.*

scindō, scindere, scidī, scissum, 3, a., *tear* or *break down*.

sciō, scīre, scīvī, scītum, 4, a., *know, understand*.

scorpiō, -ōnis, m., *scorpion*, a military engine for throwing darts, stones, and other missiles. vii. 25.

scrībō, scrībere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, 3, a., *write, write down*.

scrobis, -is, m. and f., *pit, wolf-pit;* see p. 203, 19–28, and N.

scūtum, -i, n., (oblong) *shield, buckler*. See p. 24, and Plate IV. 3.

secius, see **secus.**

secō, -āre, -uī, -tum, 1, a., *cut, cut off*. vii. 14.

sēcrētō [sēcerno, *separate*], adv., *secretly, privately*.

sectiō, -ōnis, [seco], f., *booty*. ii. 33.

sector, -ārī, -ātus sum, [freq. of sequor], 1, dep., *pursue, chase*. vi. 35.

sectūra, -ae, [seco], f., *diggings, excavations*. iii. 21.

secundum [sequor], prep. with acc. only, *along, next to, by the side of, according to*.

secundus, -a, -um, [sequor], adj., *second; propitious, fortunate, favorable*.

secūris, -is [seco], f., *axe;* with reference to the axe of the lictor, *authority, power*, vii. 77.

secus, adv., *otherwise;* comp. **secius.** — **nihilo secius,** *none the less, nevertheless*.

sed, conj., *but; yet, but yet*.

sēdecim [sex + decem], indecl. num. adj., *sixteen*.

sēdēs, -is, [sedeo, *sit*], f., *seat; habitation, abode, settlement*.

sēditiō, -ōnis, [sēd, = sine, + itio, from ire, lit. *a going apart*], f., *mutiny, revolt, sedition*.

sēditiōsus, -a, -um, [sēditio], adj., *seditious, mutinous*.

Sedulius, -ī, m., a chief of the Lemovices, killed in an engagement outside the lines around Alesia. vii. 88.

Sedūnī, -ōrum, m. pl., a tribe near the head-waters of the Rhone; chief town, Sedunum, now *Sion* (*Sitten*).

Sedusiī, -ōrum, m. pl., a German tribe situated between the rivers Main and Neckar. i. 51.

seges, -etis, f., *crop, standing grain*. vi. 36.

Sēgnī, -ōrum, m. pl., a tribe between the Eburones and the Treveri: the name survives in *Sègne*. vi. 32.

Segontiacī, -ōrum, m. pl., a British tribe living in Hampshire. v. 21.

Segovax, -actis, m., one of the four rulers in Kent at the time of Caesar's invasion. v. 22.

Segusiāvī, -ōrum, m. pl., a Gallic tribe, clients of the Aedui, near modern Lyons.

semel, adv., *once*.

sēmentis, -is, [sēmen, *seed*], f., *sowing, planting*.

sēmita, -ae, f., *path, by-way*.

semper, adv., *always, ever, constantly*.

Semprōnius, -ī, m., *M. Sempronius Rutilus*, an officer under Caesar. vii. 90.

senātor, -ōris, [senex], m., originally, member of the Roman Senate, *Senator;* applied by Caesar to members of the Gallic state-councils, *councillor, senator*.

senātus, ūs, [senex], m., *council of elders, Senate*.

senex, -is, m., *an old man*.

sēnī, -ae, -a, [sex], num. distrib. adj., *six each*.

Senones, -um, m. pl., a powerful Gallic tribe west of the Seine and Yonne; capital, Agedincum, now *Sens*.

sententia, -ae, [sentio], f., *opinion, view, notion; decision, judgment.*

sentiō, sentīre, sēnsī, sēnsum, 4, a., *perceive, think; be aware, feel, know.*

sentis, -is, m., *thorn, brier.* ii. 17.

sēparātim [sēparo], adv., *separately, apart.*

sēparātus, -a, -um, [part. of sēparo], adj., *separated, marked off,* iv. 1.

sēparō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [sē, *aside,* + paro], 1, a., *separate, part.* vii. 63.

sēpēs, -is, f., *hedge.*

septem, indecl. num. adj., *seven.*

septentriō, -ōnis, [septem + trio, *a plough-ox*], m., generally in pl. **septentriōnēs, -um,** *the seven plough oxen,* properly the seven stars which form the constellation of the Great Bear; hence *the North.*

septimus, -a, -um, [septem], adj., *the seventh.*

septingentī, -ae, -a, [septem + centum], num. adj., *seven hundred.*

septuāgintā, indecl. num. adj., *seventy.*

sepultūra, -ae, [sepelio, *bury*], f., *burial.* i. 26.

Sēquana, -ae, *the Seine,* which rises in the Côte d' Or, flows northwesterly, and after a course of 470 miles enters the sea at Hâvre.

Sēquanī, -ōrum, m. pl., a powerful Gallic tribe west of the Jura; chief town Vesontio, now *Besançon,* on the Doubs. In order to protect themselves from the Aedui their neighbors, they, together with the Arverni, sought the help of Ariovistus, who demanded a large part of their territory in payment, and held them in subjection. Cf. N. to p. 62, 12.

Sēquanus, -a, -um, adj., *Sequanian,* i. 31; as noun, m., *a Sequanian,* i. 3.

sequor, -quī, -cūtus sum, 3, dep., *follow, pursue; ensue.*

sermō, -ōnis, [sero, *weave*], m., lit. *connected discourse; talk, conversation, discourse.*

sērō [sērus, *late*], adv., *too late.* v. 29.

serō, serere, sēvī, satum, 3, a., *plant, sow.* v. 14.

Sertōrius, -ī, m., *Quintus Sertorius,* a famous Roman general of the party of Marius. He was an Italian, born at Nursia, and the opponent of Sulla, against whom he carried on war in Spain for several years, till he was murdered, B. C. 72. iii. 23.

servīlis, -e, [servus], adj., *servile, of slaves.* i. 40, vi. 19.

serviō, -īre, -īvī or **-iī, -ītum,** [servus], 4, n., *be the slave of, follow, devote one's self to.*

servitūs, -tūtis, [servus], f., *slavery, bondage, subjection.*

Servius, -ī, m., a Roman praenomen.

servō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, a., *save, keep, watch.*

servus, -ī, [servo, *save,* because slaves were generally captives whose lives were spared], m., *slave.*

sēsquipedālis, -e, [sēsqui, *one half more,* + pēs], adj., *a foot and a half* in width or thickness. iv. 17.

seu or **sīve,** [sī, *if* + ve, *or*], conj., *whether, either.* — **seu . . . seu,** *whether . . . or, either . . . or.*

sevēritās, **-tātis**, [**sevērus**, *severe*], f., *sternness*, *rigor*, *stringency*. vii. 4.

sēvocō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, [**sē**, *aside*, + **voco**], 1, a., *call apart* or *aside*. v. 6.

sēvum, **-ī**, n., *fat*, *tallow*. vii. 25.

sex, indecl. num. adj., *six*.

sexāgintā, indecl. num. adj., *sixty*.

sexcentī, **-ae**, **-a**, [**sex** + **centum**], num. adj., *six hundred*.

sexdecim [**sex** + **decem**], indecl. num. adj., *sixteen*.

Sextius, **-ī**, m., (1) *Titus Sextius*, one of Caesar's lieutenants. (2) *P. Sextius Baculus*, a brave centurion in Caesar's army.

sī, conj., *if*, *whether*. — **quod sī**, *but if*, *and if*, *now if*.

Sibuzātes, **-um**, m. pl., a people of Aquitania, near the Pyrenees. iii. 27.

sīc, adv., *so*, *in this way*, *thus*. — **sīc . . . ut**, *just as*, v. 31.

siccitās, **-tātis**, [**siccus**, *dry*], f., *dryness*, *drouth*.

sīcut [**sīc** + **ut**], adv., *just as*.

sīcutī [**sīc** + **utī**], adv., *just as if*.

sīdus, **-eris**, n., *constellation*. vi. 14.

sīgnifer, **-ferī**, [**sīgnum** + **fero**], m., *standard-bearer*, *ensign*. ii. 25.

sīgnificātiō, **-ōnis**, [**sīgnum** + **facio**], f., *sign*, *signal*, *intimation*; *demeanor*, vii. 12.

sīgnificō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, [**sīgnum** + **facio**], 1, a. and n., *show by signs*, *show*, *intimate*, *give an intimation*.

sīgnum, **-ī**, n., *standard*, *signal*. See IDIOMS, and p. 26.

Silānus, **-ī**, m., *Marcus Silanus*, a lieutenant of Caesar. vi. 1.

silentium, **-ī**, [**silēns**, *silent*], n., *silence*.

Silius, **-ī**, m., *T. Silius*, a military tribune under P. Crassus. iii. 7, 8.

silva, **-ae**, f., *a wood*, *forest*.

silvestris, **-e**, [**silva**], adj., *wooded*, *woody*.

similis, **-e**, adj., *like*. Comp. **similior**; sup., **simillimus**.

similitūdō, **-inis**, [**similis**], f., *resemblance*, *similarity*.

simul, adv., *at the same time*, *at once*. — **simul . . . simul**, *both . . . and*, *partly . . . partly*. — **simul atque**, *as soon as*.

simulācrum, **-ī**, [**simulo**, *make like*], n., *image*, *representation*.

simulātiō, **-ōnis**, [**simulo**], f., *pretence*, *deceit*.

simulatque or **simulac**, = **simul atque**, adv., *as soon as*.

simulō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, [**similis**], 1, a., *make like*; *pretend*, *feign*.

simultās, **-tātis**, [**simul**], f., *rivalry*, *jealousy*.

sīn [**sī** + **nē**], conj., *but if*.

sincērē [**sincērus**, *pure*], adv., *frankly*, *honestly*. vii. 20.

sine, prep. with abl. only, *without*.

singillātim, [**singulī**], adv., *one by one*, *singly*.

singulāris, **-e**, [**singulī**], adj., *one by one*, *solitary*, *single*; *singular*, *matchless*, *extraordinary*.

singulī, **-ae**, **-a**, num. distributive adj., *one to each*, *one by one*, *one apiece*; *separate*, *single*.

sinister, **-tra**, **-trum**, adj., *left*.

sinistra, **-ae**, [sc. **manus**], f., *the left hand*. — **sub sinistrā**, *on the left*, v. 8.

sinistrōrsus [**sinister** + **verto**], adv., *to the left*. vi. 25.

sinō, **sinere**, **sīvī**, **situm**, 3, a., *permit*, *let*. iv. 2.

sīquidem [**sī** + **quidem**], conj., *if only*, *in so far as*. vi. 36.

situs, **-ūs**, [**sino**], m., *situation*, *site*.

sīve or **seu** [**sī** + **ve**], conj., *or if*. **sīve . . . sīve**, *whether . . . or*, *either . . . or*, *it might be . . . or*.

socer, -erī, m., *father-in-law.* i. 12.
societās, -tātis, [socius], f., *alliance, league.*
socius, -ī, m., *comrade, ally, confederate.*
sōl, sōlis, m., *the sun.* — **ad orientem sōlem,** *towards the rising sun,* i. e. *the east.* — **ad occidentem sōlem,** *towards the setting sun,* i. e. *the west.*
sōlātium, -ī, [sōlor, *console*], n., *consolation.* vii. 15.
soldurius, -ī, m., *retainer, follower.* iii. 22. See N. to p. 103, 3.
soleō, -ēre, -itus sum, semi-dep. 2, n., *be wont.*
sōlitūdō, -inis, [sōlus], f., *solitude; a wilderness.*
sollertia, -ae, [sollus, *all* + **ars],** f., *skill, cleverness, versatility.* vii. 22.
sollicitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [sollicitus, *agitated*], 1, a., *instigate, urge, incite, tamper with, tempt.*
sollicitūdō, -inis, [sollicitus], f., *anxiety, apprehension.*
solum, -ī, n., *the soil.* — **solum agrī,** *the bare ground,* i. 11. — **solum fossae,** *the bottom of the trench,* vii. 72.
sōlum [acc. of **sōlus**], adv., *only.*
sōlus, -a, -um, gen. **sōlīus,** adj., *only, alone.*
solvō, solvere, solvī, solūtum, 3, a., *loose; set sail.* — **solvit (nāvēs** understood), *he set sail,* iv. 23.
sonitus, -ūs, [sono, *sound*], m., *noise, sound.* vii. 60, 61.
Sontiātes, -um, m. pl., a tribe in Aquitania, south of the Garonne. iii. 20, 21. See N. to p. 102, 29.
sonus, -ī, m., *a sound.* vii. 47.
soror, -ōris, f., *sister.* — **soror ex matre,** *half-sister on the mother's side,* i. 18.
sors, sortis, f., *lot, chance.*
spatium, -ī, n., *space, distance, interval, time, period, duration.* — **quantum fuit diēī spatium,** *as the length of the day permitted.* — **ab tantō spatiō,** *at such a distance.* — **nactus spatium,** *having gained time.*
speciēs, -iēī, [specio, *look*], f., *sight, show, appearance, pretence.* — **ad speciem,** *for show,* i. 51.
spectō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [freq. of **specio,** *look*], 1, a. and n., *look at, regard, face.*
speculātor, -tōris, [speculor], m., *spy, scout.*
speculātōrius, -a, -um, [speculor], adj., *scouting, spying.* — **nāvigium speculātōrium,** *spy-boat,* iv. 26.
speculor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [specio, *look*], 1, dep., *watch, reconnoitre.* i. 47.
spērō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, a. and n., *hope, expect, wish.*
spēs, speī, f., *hope, expectation.* — **in spem venīre,** *entertain the hope, begin to have hopes.*
spīritus, -ūs, [spīro, *breathe*], m., *breath, air.* — pl. *pride, airs.*
spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [spolium, *booty*], 1, a., *strip, despoil, plunder.*
sponte, abl., and **spontis,** gen. (only forms in use of an obsolete nom. **spōns**), f., *of one's own accord, willingly.* — **suā sponte,** *by their own influence,* i. 9.
stabiliō, -īre, -īvī, -ītum, [stabilis, *steady*], 4, a., *keep steady, fix.* vii. 73.
stabilitās, -tātis, [stabilis, *steady*], f., *firmness, steadiness.* iv. 33.
statim [sto], adv., *instantly, at once, straightway.* i. 53, ii. 11.
statiō, -ōnis, [sto], f., *outpost, picket, guard.* — **in statiōne,** *on guard.* iv. 32, vi. 38.
statuō, -uere, -uī, -ūtum,[status],

3, a., *place, determine, judge; resolve; take measures.*
statūra, -ae, [sto], f. *height, stature.*
status, -ūs, [sto], m., *position, situation, condition.*
stimulus, -ī, m., *a goad; a sharp stake* set in the ground as an obstacle to the advance of the enemy, vii. 73, 82.
stīpendiārius, -a, -um, [stipendium], adj., *tributary, subject to tribute.* — **stīpendiāriī,** m. pl., *tributaries.*
stīpendium, -ī, [stips, *gift* + pendo, *weigh*], n., *tribute.*
stīpes, -itis, m., *log, trunk of a tree.* vii. 73.
stirps, -is, f. and m., *stock, race, family.*
stō, stāre, stetī, statum, 1, n., *stand; stand one's ground.*
strāmentum, -ī, [sterno, *strew*], n., *thatch* of houses, v. 43; *pack-saddle,* vii. 45.
strepitus, -ūs, [strepo, *make a noise*], m., *noise, uproar.*
studeō, -ēre, -uī, no supine, 2, n., *desire, be eager for, strive at, give attention to, pay heed to.* — **novīs rēbus** or **imperiīs studēre,** *to desire a revolution.*
studiōsē [studiōsus, *eager*], adv., *eagerly.*
studium, -ī, [studeo], n., *zeal, eagerness, energy, enthusiasm; good-will; a pursuit.*
stultitia, -ae, [stultus, *foolish*], f., *folly, lack of foresight.* vii. 77.
sub, prep. with acc. after verbs of motion, otherwise with abl., *under, near to, close to, at the foot of;* with words denoting time, *about, during.* See IDIOMS.
subāctus, see **subigo.**
subdolus, -a, -um, [sub + dolus], adj., *crafty, cunning.* vii. 31.
subdūcō, -dūcere, -dūxī, -ductum, [sub + dūco], 3, a., *draw up, haul on shore.*
subductiō, -ōnis, [subdūco], f., *hauling on shore.* v. 1.
subeō, -īre, -iī, -itum, [sub + eo], irr. a., *come up, approach, enter; undergo, suffer.*
subfodiō, -fodere, -fōdī, -fossum, [sub + fodio], 3, a., *stab underneath* or *in the belly.* iv. 12.
subfossus, see **subfodio.**
sūbiciō (or subjicio), **-icere, -iēcī, -iectum,** [sub + iacio], 3, a., *throw from beneath, throw up, expose; subdue.*
subiectus, -a, -um, [subicio], adj., *subject to; lying near, adjacent.*
subigō, -igere, -ēgī, -āctum, [sub + ago], 3, a., *subdue, conquer.* vii. 77.
subitō, [abl. of subitus], adv., *suddenly, on a sudden.*
subitus, -a, -um, [subeo], adj., *sudden, unexpected.*
sublātus, see **tollo.**
sublevō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [sub + levo], 1, a., *raise up, sustain; assist, relieve.*
sublica, -ae, f., *stake, pile.*
subluō, -luere, no pf., **-lūtum,** [sub + luo], 3, a., *wash.* vii. 69.
subministrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [sub + ministro, *serve*], 1, a., *supply, provide.*
submittō or **summittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum,** [sub + mitto], 3, a., *send* or *despatch secretly.*
submoveō, -movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum, [sub + moveo], 2, a., *drive off, disperse.*
subruō, -ruere, -ruī, -rutum, [sub + ruo, *fall*], 3, a., *undermine.*
subsequor, -sequī, -secūtus sum, [sub + sequor], 3, dep., *follow close upon, follow.*

subsidium, -ī, [**subsideo**], n., *a reserve, reserve force, auxiliaries; support, relief, re-enforcement, aid, resource.* — **mittere subsidiō,** *to send help,* i. 52.

subsīdō, -sīdere, -sēdī, -sessum, [**sub + sīdo,** *sit*], 3, n., *stay, remain behind.* vi. 36.

subsistō, -sistere, -stitī, no supine, [**sub + sisto,** *set*], 3, n., *halt, make a stand, hold out.*

subsum, -esse, -fuī, [**sub + sum**], irr. n., *be near* or *close at hand.*

subtrahō, -trahere, -trāxī, -tractum, [**sub + traho**], 3, a., *carry off, withdraw.*

subvectiō, -ōnis, [**subveho**], f., *transportation, conveyance,* vii. 10.

subvehō, -vehere, -vēxī, -vectum, [**sub + veho**], 3, a., *carry up.* i. 16.

subveniō, -venīre, -vēnī, -ventum, [**sub + venio**], 4, n., *come to the help of, assist.*

succēdō, -cēdere, -cēssī, -cēssum, [**sub + cēdo**], 3, n., *come up, approach, advance; prosper, succeed.*

succendō, -cendere, -cendī, -cēnsum, [**sub + candeo**], 3, a., *set on fire, kindle.*

succēssus, -ūs, [**succēdo**], m., *an advance, rapid approach.* ii. 20.

succīdō, -cīdere, -cīdī, -cīsum, [**sub + caedo**], 3, a, *cut down; ravage.*

succumbō, -cumbere, -cubuī, -cubitum, [**sub + cumbo, = cubo**], 3, n., *yield.* vii. 86.

succurrō, -currere, -currī, -cursum, [**sub + curro**], 3, n., *run up, rush to aid, succor.*

sudis, -is, f., *stake, pile.*

sūdor, -ōris [**sudo,** *sweat*], m., *sweat; toil, fatigue.* vii. 8.

Suēba, -ae, f., *a Swabian woman.* i. 53.

Suēbī, -ōrum, m. pl., *the Swabians,* a numerous German people settled in the regions now known as Bavaria and Würtemberg.

Suessiōnes, -um, m. pl., a Gallic tribe between the Marne and the Isère; their name survives in *Soissons.*

sufficiō, -ficere, -fēcī, -fectum, [**sub + facio**], 3, a., *suffice, hold out.* vii. 20.

suffrāgium, -ī, n., *vote.*

Sugambrī, -ōrum, m. pl., a powerful German tribe between the Sieg and the Lippe. They gave protection to the fugitives of the Usipetes and Tencteri, and Caesar thereupon invaded their territory.

suggestus, -ūs, [**suggero,** *raise*], m., *elevation, platform.* vi. 3.

suī, sibi, sē or **sēsē,** (nom. wanting), reflex. pron., *himself, herself, itself, themselves, him, her,* etc.

Sulla, -ae, m., *L. Cornelius Sulla,* the great Dictator, the champion of the aristocracy and the foe of Marius. He was born B.C. 138, and died B.C. 78. i. 21.

Sulpicius, -ī, m., *Publius Sulpicius Rufus,* one of Caesar's lieutenants. iv. 22; vii. 90.

sum, esse, fuī, irr. n., *be, exist;* with gen. *belong to, be the part* or *duty of;* with dat., *be for, serve for;* with abl. *have, possess.* See IDIOMS.

summa, -ae, [**summus**], f., *the total, whole amount; main thing, chief point; general management, control.* See IDIOMS.

summum, -ī, [neut. of **summus**], *the highest point* or *part, top, summit.* — **ab summō,** *from the top, from above; from the point,* vi. 26.

summus, -a, -um, (sup. of **superus**), adj., *highest, greatest, very great, very large, chief, most important; utmost, extreme, consummate, all.* — **summus mōns,** *the top of the height.* See IDIOMS.

sūmō, sūmere, sūmpsī, sūmptum, [**sub + emo,** *take*], 3, a., *take, assume, employ, spend.* See IDIOMS.

sūmptuōsus, -a, -um, [**sūmptus**], adj., *costly.* vi. 19.

sūmptus, -tūs, [**sūmo**], m., *expense.* i. 18.

superbē [**superbus,** *proud*], adv., *haughtily.* i. 31.

superior, -us, (comp. of **superus**), adj., *higher, superior, upper; former, previous.* — **superiōre nocte,** *the previous night.*

superō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**super,** *above*], 1 n. and a., *surmount, conquer, vanquish, defeat, triumph; survive, remain.*

supersedeō, -sedēre, -sēdī, -sessum, [**super,** *above* + **sedeo,** *sit*], 2, n., *refrain from.* ii. 8.

supersum, -esse, -fuī, [**super,** *above* + **sum**], irr. n., *remain, survive.*

superus, -a, -um, [**super,** *above*], adj., *above, on high.* Comp. **superior,** sup. **summus** or **suprēmus,** which see.

suppetō, -petere, -petīvī or **petiī, petītum,** [**sub + peto**], 3, n., *be at hand, hold out.*

supplēmentum, -ī, [**suppleo,** *fill up*], n., *re-enforcement.*

supplex, -icis, [**sub + plico,** *bend*], c., *a suppliant.* ii. 28.

supplicātiō, -ōnis, [**supplico,** *implore*], f., *thanksgiving.*

suppliciter [**supplex**], adv., *humbly.* i. 27.

supplicium, -ī, [**supplex**], n., *punishment, execution.*

supportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**sub + porto**], 1, a., *carry* or *bring up, convey.*

suprā, adv., and prep. with acc. only, *above, before, over.*

suscipiō, -cipere, -cēpī, -ceptum, [**sub + capio**], 3, a., *undertake, assume.*

suspectus, -a, -um, adj., *mistrusted, suspected.* v. 54.

suspīciō, -ōnis, [**suspicor**], f., *mistrust, suspicion.*

suspicor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [**suspicio**], 1, dep., *suspect, mistrust, surmise.*

sustentō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [freq. of **sustineo**], 1, a., *sustain, endure, bear, hold out.*

sustineō, -tinēre, -tinuī, -tentum, [**sub + teneo**], 2, a., *bear, hold up, check, uphold; pull up.*

sustulī, see tollo.

suus, -a, -um, adj. pron., *his, her, its, their,* with or without *own;* as noun, m. pl. **suī,** *one's friends, party, side.* — neut. pl. **sua,** *his* or *their property.*

T.

T. with proper names = **Titus.**

tabernāculum, -i, [**taberna,** *booth*], n., *tent, hut.* See pp. 32, 33.

tabula, -ae, f., *writing-tablet; list.* i. 29.

tabulātum, -ī, [**tabula**], n., *floor, story.* vi. 29.

taceō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, 2, n. and a., *be silent; say nothing, pass over in silence.* i. 17.

tacitus, -a, -um, [**taceo**], adj., *silent.* i. 32.

tālea, -ae, f., *rod, bar.*

tālis, -e, adj., *such.*

tam, adv., *so, so very.*

tamen, adv., *yet, still, for all that, however, nevertheless.*

Tamesis, **-is**, m., *the Thames.* v. 11, 18.

tametsī [tamen + **etsī**], adv., *although.*

tandem [tam], adv., *at length, finally.* — In questions, *pray, now.*

tangō, tangere, tetigī, tactum, 3, a., *touch, border on.* v. 3.

tantopere [= **tantō opere**], adv., *vehemently.*

tantulus, -a, -um, (dim. of **tantus**), adj., *so very small, slight, trifling.*

tantum [acc. of **tantus**], adv., *only, so much, so far, merely.*

tantummodo [**tantum** + **modo**], adv., *only.* iii. 5.

tantundem [acc. neut. of **tantusdem**], adv., *just so much.* vii. 72.

tantus, -a, -um, adj., *so great, so large, such, so extensive* or *important.* — **tantī**, as gen. of value, *of so great account, so great,* i. 20.

Tarbellī, -ōrum, m. pl., a people in the southwest corner of Aquitania; the name survives in the city *Tarbes.* iii. 27.

tardē [**tardus**], adv., *slowly;* comp. **tardius**, iv. 23.

tardō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**tardus**], 1, a., *check, delay, impede, hinder,*

tardus, -a, -um, adj., *slow;* comp. **tardior**, *less active,* ii. 25.

Tarusātes, -ium, m. pl., a people in the west part of Aquitania; the name survives in the town *Tartas.* iii. 23, 29.

Tasgetius, -ī, m., a chief of the Carnutes whom Caesar restored to supreme power. v. 25, 29.

taurus, -ī, m., *bull.* vi. 28.

Taximagulus, -ī, m., a Briton, one of the four kings in Kent. v. 22.

taxus, -ī, f., *yew* (*a tree*). vi. 31.

Tectosages, -um, m. pl., a division of the Volcae, who lived in the western part of the Province. Their capital was Tolōsa, now *Toulouse.* vi. 24.

tectum, -ī, [tego], n., *roof; house.*

tegimentum, -ī, [tego], n., *a covering.* ii. 21.

tegō, tegere, tēxī, tectum, 3, a., *cover; hide, conceal, protect.*

tēlum, -ī, n., *dart, spear.*

temerārius, -a, -um, [temerē], adj., *rash, heedless, reckless.*

temerē, adv., *rashly, blindly, without good reason.*

temeritās, -tātis, f., *rashness, hastiness, foolhardiness.*

tēmō, -ōnis, m., *the pole* of a wagon or chariot. iv. 33.

temperantia, -ae, [**temperans**, *temperate*], f., *moderation, self-control.* i. 19.

temperātus, -a, -um, [tempero], adj., *temperate, mild.* v. 12.

temperō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**tempus**], 1, a. and n., *refrain, control one's self, forbear.*

tempestās, -tātis, [**tempus**], f., *weather; bad weather, a storm.*

temptō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [freq. of **tendo**], 1, a., *try, attempt; attack, assail; try to win over,* vi. 2.

tempus, -oris, n., *a period of time; time, period; season; occasion, circumstances.* — **prō tempore**, *according to the emergency.* — **in reliquum tempus**, *for the future.* — **omnī tempore**, *always.*

Tencterī, -ōrum, m. pl., a German tribe who, being hard pressed by the Suebī, with the Usipetes settled in the lower Rhine region near the Lippe.

tendō, tendere, tetendī, tēnsum and **tentum**, 3, a., *stretch, extend; pitch one's tent* or *tents, encamp.*

tenebrae, -ārum, f., *darkness.* vii. 81.

teneō, tenēre, tenuī, tentum, 2, a., *hold, have possession of, keep; hold in, keep in, restrain, hem in, bind.* — **sē tenēre,** *to remain.* — **memoriā tenēre,** *to remember.*

tener, -era, -erum, adj., *tender, young.* ii. 17.

tenuis, -ē, adj., *thin; little, poor, slight; weak, feeble, infirm, delicate.*

tenuitās, -ātis, [**tenuis**], f., *thinness; weakness; poverty,* vii. 17.

tenuiter [**tenuis**], adv., *thinly.* iii. 13.

ter, num. adv., *three times, thrice.* i. 53.

teres, -etis, [**tero,** *rub*], adj., *well-turned, round, smooth, tapering.* vii. 73.

tergum, -ī, n., *back.* — **ā tergō, post tergum,** *in the rear.* — **terga vertere,** *to flee.*

ternī, -ae, -a, [**trēs**], distrib. adj., *three by three, by threes, three each.*

terra, -ae, f., *earth; land, ground, soil; territory, district, region.* — **orbis terrārum,** *the world.*

Terrasidius, -ī, m., a Roman officer despatched to the Esubii to procure grain. iii. 7, 8.

terrēnus, -a, -um, [**terra**], adj., *of earth, earthy.* i. 43.

terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, 2, a., *frighten, terrify, alarm; deter* or *frighten* from any action.

territō, -āre, āvī, -ātum, [freq. of **terreo**], 1, a., *frighten greatly, terrify.* — **territāre metū,** *to fill with apprehension.*

terror, -ōris, [**terreo**], m., *fear, dread, alarm, terror.* — **inferre terrōrem,** *to inspire alarm.*

tertius, -a, -um, [**trēs**], num. adj., *third.*

testāmentum, -ī, [**testis**], n., *will, testament* (in a legal sense). i. 39.

testimōnium, -ī, [**testis**], n., *witness, proof, evidence, testimony.*

testis, -is, c., *witness.*

testūdō, -inis, f., *tortoise; testudo,* a covering formed by the soldiers' shields held above their heads and overlapping so as to ward off weapons thrown down upon them from above (see Plate V. 6); the term *testudo* was applied also to different kinds of sheds under which soldiers worked when besieging a city (see Plate V. 1, 10).

Teutomatus, -ī, m. a king of the Nitiobroges who joined Vercingetorix with a large cavalry force, and barely escaped being taken prisoner by the Romans before Gergovia. vii. 31, 46.

Teutones, -um, or **Teutonī, -ōrum,** m., the *Teutones, Teutons.* They appeared in Gaul about B. C. 113, and were well-nigh annihilated by Gaius Marius at Aquae Sextiae (*Aix*), B. C. 102. The survivors established themselves between the Meuse and the Schelde, and became the ancestors of the Aduatuci. See N. to p. 67, 36.

tignum, -ī, n., *log, beam, pile.*

Tigurīnus, -a, -um, adj., *of the Tigurini;* pl. as noun, m., *the Tigurini,* one of the four divisions of the Helvetii, occupying the *pagus Tigurinus.* i. 12.

timeō, -ēre, -uī, no supine, 2, a. and n., *fear, be afraid of, be apprehensive, dread, be fearful* or *anxious.*

timidē [**timidus**], adv., *fearfully, timidly.*

timidus, -a, -um, [**timeo**], adj., *fearful, afraid, alarmed, cowardly, timid.*

timor, **-ōris**, [**timeo**], m., *fear, dread, apprehension, alarm, timidity.* See N. to p. 67, 2.

Titurius, **-ī**, m., *Quintus Titurius Sabinus*, a lieutenant of Caesar in Gaul, who lost his life in an ambuscade contrived by Ambiorix, king of the Eburones.

tolerō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, 1, a., *bear, support, endure, sustain, maintain; hold out.*

tollō, **tollere**, **sustulī**, **sublātum**, 3, a., *lift, raise, take on board; take away, do away with, set aside, remove, break off, destroy.* — **victōriā sublātus**, *elated by victory.* — **ancorās tollere**, *to weigh anchor.*

Tolōsa, **-ae**, f., a town of the Province, and capital of the Volcae Tectosages; now *Toulouse.* iii. 20.

Tolōsātes, -ium, m., *the inhabitants of Toulouse.*

tormentum, **-ī**, [**torqueo**, *twist*], n., *rope; military engine* for throwing missiles; *windlass* (vii. 22); *instrument of torture;* hence *torture, torment, suffering.*

torreō, **torrēre**, **torruī**, **tostum**, 2, a., *burn, scorch.* v. 43.

tot, indecl. adj., *so many.*

totidem [tot], indecl. adj., *just as many.*

tōtus, **-a**, **-um**, [gen. **tōtīus**], adj., *the whole, all, all the, entire;* often with adverbial force, *wholly, entirely.*

trabs, **trabis**, f., *beam, timber.*

tractus, see **traho**.

trādō, **-ere**, **-didī**, **-ditum**, [**trans** + **do**], 3, a., *hand over, give up, deliver, surrender; intrust, confide; transmit, teach, hand down to posterity.*

trādūcō, **-dūcere**, **-dūxī**, **-ductum**, [**trans** + **dūco**], 3, a., *lead* or *bring over* or *across, lead, transport, transfer.*

trāgula, **-ae**, f., *lance, javelin.*

trahō, **trahere**, **traxī**, **tractum**, 3, a., *draw, drag, drag along, pass along.* i. 53, vi. 38.

trāiciō (or **trājiciō**), **-icere**, **-iēcī**, **-iectum**, [**trans** + **iacio**], 3, a., *throw* or *cast over; carry across; strike* (through), *pierce, transfix.*

trāiectus, see **trāicio**.

trāiectus, **-ūs**, [**trāicio**], m., *crossing over, passage.*

trānō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, [**trāns** + **no**, *swim*], 1, n., *swim across* or *over.* i. 53.

tranquillitās, **-ātis**, [**tranquillus**, *still, calm*], f., *calmness, stillness, calm.* — **summa tranquillitās**, *a profound calm*, v. 23.

trāns, prep. with acc. only, *across, over, on the further side of, beyond.*

Trānsalpīnus, **-a**, **-um**, [**trāns** + **Alpēs**], adj., *beyond the Alps, Transalpine.* vii. 1, 6.

trānscendō, **-scendere**, **-scendī**, **-scēnsum**, [**trāns** + **scando**, *climb*], 3, n. and a., *climb over*, vii. 70. — **transcendere in nāvēs**, *to board the ships*, iii. 15.

trānseō, **-īre**, **-īvī** or **-iī**, **-itum**, [**trāns** + **eo**], irr. n. and a., *go over* or *across, pass over, cross over; pass* or *march through;* with **diēs**, etc., as subject, *pass by* or *away, elapse.*

trānsferō, **-ferre**, **-tulī**, **-lātum**, [**trāns** + **fero**], irr. a., *bear, bring,* or *carry over* or *across; transport, transfer.*

trānsfīgō, **-fīgere**, **-fīxī**, **-fīxum**, [**trāns** + **fīgo**, *fix, fasten*], 3, a., *pierce through, transfix.*

trānsfodiō, **-fodere**, **-fōdī**, **-fossum**, [**trāns** + **fodio**], 3, a., *pierce through, stab, transfix.* vii. 82.

trānsgredior, -gredī, -gressus sum, [**trāns** + **gradior,** *walk, go*], 3, dep., a. and n., *go* or *pass over* or *across; cross.*

trānsitus, -ūs, [**trānseo**], m., *going* or *crossing over, passage, crossing.*

trānslātus, see **trānsfero.**

trānsmarīnus -a, -um, [**trāns** + **mare**], adj., *across* or *beyond the sea.* vi. 24.

trānsmissus, -ūs, [**trānsmitto**], m., *passing over, passage.*

trānsmittō, -mittere, -mīsī, -missum, [**trāns** + **mitto**], 3, a., *send across* or *over.* vii. 61.

trānsportō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**trāns** + **porto**], 1, a., *carry over* or *across, transport.*

Trānsrhēnānus, -a, -um, [**trāns** + **Rhēnus**], adj., *beyond* or *on the other side of the Rhine;* pl. as noun, m., *those dwelling across the Rhine.*

trānstrum, -ī, [**trāns**], n., *thwart, cross-timber, cross-beam.* iii. 13.

trānsversus, part. of **trānsverto** as adj., *crosswise, athwart, transverse.* ii. 8.

Trebius, -ī, m., *M. Trebius Gallus,* a military tribune sent by P. Crassus to get grain from the Curiosolitae. iii. 7, 8.

Trebōnius, -ī, m., (1) *Gaius Trebonius,* a Roman made lieutenant by Caesar as a reward for procuring the province of Gaul for him for five years. Later, however, Trebonius joined the assassins of Caesar, but was himself at last put to death by Dolabella at Smyrna, B.C. 43. (2) *Gaius Trebonius,* a Roman knight. vi. 40.

trecentī, -ae, -a, [**trēs** + **centum**], num. adj., *three hundred.*

tredecim [**trēs** + **decem,** indecl. num. adj., *thirteen.*

trepidō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, n., *hurry in alarm* or *fear; be alarmed, be agitated, tremble* through fear.

trēs, tria, num. adj., *three.*

Trēverī, -ōrum, m., a powerful Belgic people between the Meuse and the Rhine; capital Augusta Treverorum, now *Trier.*

Tribōces, -um, or **Tribōcī, -ōrum,** m., a German tribe in the neighborhood of Strassburg.

tribūnus, -ī, [**tribus,** *tribe*], m., *tribune.* See p. 22.

tribuō, -ere, -uī, -ūtum, 3, a., *assign, ascribe, allot, give, concede; grant, pay, render.*

tribūtum, -ī, [**tribuo**], n., *tax, tribute.*

trīduum, -ī, [**trēs** + **diēs**], n., *space of three days, three days.*

triennium, -ī, [**trēs** + **annus**], n., *space of three years, three years.* iv. 4.

trīgintā, indecl. num. adj., *thirty.* vi. 35.

trīnī, -ae, -a, [**trēs**], distrib. adj., *three each, three by three; threefold, triple.*

Trinobantes, -um, m., a people in the east of England, occupying Essex and part of Suffolk; capital Camalodūnum, now *Colchester.* v. 20, et al.

tripertītō [**trēs** + **partēs**], adv., *in three divisions.*

triplex, -icis, [**trēs** + **plico,** *fold*], adj., *threefold, triple.*

triquetrus, -a, -um, adj., *three-cornered, triangular.* v. 13.

tristis, -e, adj., *sad, sorrowful, dejected.* i. 32.

tristitia, -ae, [**tristis**], f., *sadness, dejection.* i. 32.

truncus, -ī, m., *trunk of a tree.* iv. 17, vii. 73.

tū, tuī, pl. **vōs**, pers. pron., *thou, you.*

tuba, -ae, f., *trumpet.*

tueor, tuērī, tuitus or **tūtus sum**, 2, dep. a., *look at, behold, see; support, maintain, guard, protect, defend.*

tulī, see **fero.**

Tulingī, -ōrum, m., a German tribe along the Rhine, about Schaffhausen.

tum, adv., *then, thereupon; moreover.* — **cum . . . tum**, *both . . . and, not only . . . but also.*

tumultuor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [**tumultus**], 1, dep. n., *make a disturbance, be in confusion.* vii. 61.

tumultuōsē, [**tumultus**], adv., *with bustling, confusion.* vii. 45.

tumultus, -ūs, [**tumeo**, *swell*], m., *disturbance, confusion, disorder, uproar; uprising, rebellion.*

tumulus, -ī, [**tumeo**, *swell*], m., *mound of earth, heap, hillock.*

tunc, adv., *then, at that time, at this juncture.* v. 41.

turma, -ae, f., *troop* or *squadron of horsemen.* See p. 22.

Turones, -um, and **Turonī, -ōrum**, m., a people on the Loire. Their capital was Caesarodunum (now *Tours*), and their country is now called *Touraine.*

turpis, -e, adj., *ugly; disgraceful, base, infamous, dishonorable.*

turpiter [**turpis**], adv., *basely, shamefully, dishonorably.*

turpitūdō, -inis, [**turpis**], f., *baseness, disgrace, dishonor.* ii. 27.

turris, -is, f., *tower.* — **turris ambulātōria**, *movable tower*, built on wheels so that it could be moved up to the wall of a besieged city. See p. 35 and Plate VI. 7.

tūtē [**tūtus**], adv., *safely, securely.*

tūtō, [abl. of **tūtus**], adv., *in safety, safely, securely.*

tūtus, part. of **tueor** as adj., *safe, out of danger, secure.*

tuus, -a, -um, [**tū**], poss. pron., *thy, thine, your.* v. 44.

U.

ubi, adv., *where, when.* — **ubi iam**, *as soon as.* — **ubi prīmum**, *as soon as.*

ubicumque, adv., *wherever.* vii. 3.

ubīque [**ubi** + **que**], adv., *anywhere, everywhere.* iii. 16.

Ubius, -a, -um, adj., *of the Ubii, Ubian;* pl. as noun, m., **Ubiī, -ōrum**, m., a people of Germany, on the right bank of the Rhine, opposite Cologne. They were oppressed by the Suebi and appealed to Caesar, sending him cavalry to aid against the Gauls. Under Augustus they were transferred to the west bank of the Rhine, and their capital was Agrippina Colonia, now *Cologne.*

ulciscor, ulciscī, ultus sum, 3, dep., a., *take vengeance on, avenge, punish.*

ullus, -a, -um, (gen. **ullīus**), adj., *any;* as noun, *any one.*

ulterior, -ius, [**ultrā**], comp. adj., *farther, beyond, more remote* or *distant.*

ultimus, -a, -um, adj., sup. of **ulterior**, *farthest, most distant* or *remote; last.*

ultrā, prep. with acc. only, *on the farther side of, beyond.*

ultrō, adv., *to* or *on the farther side; besides, moreover; of one's own accord, voluntarily.* — **ultrō . . . citrōque**, *to and fro.*

ultus, see **ulciscor.**

ululātus, -ūs, [ululo, *howl, yell*], m., *howling, shouting, loud cry, shout*.

umquam [ūnus + quam], adv., *at any time, ever*.

ūnā [ūnus], adv., *at one and the same time, in company, together*. — **ūnā cum**, *along with, together with*.

unde, adv., *from which place, whence*.

undecim [ūnus + decem], indecl. num. adj., *eleven*.

undecimus, -a, -um, [undecim], num. adj., *eleventh*.

undēquadrāgintā [ūnus + dē + quadrāgintā], indecl. num. adj., *thirty-nine*.

undique [unde + que], adv., *from all sides* or *parts, on all sides, everywhere*.

ūniversus, -a, -um, [ūnus + verto], adj., *all together, all, the whole of, entire*.

ūnus, -a, -um, (gen. ūnīus), num. adj., *one alone, only one, only, sole;* pl. **ūnī**, *alone, only*. — **ūnō tempore**, *at one and the same time*. — **ad ūnum omnēs**, *all to a man*. — **Sequanī ūnī**, *the Sequani only*.

urbānus, -a, -um, [urbs], adj., *of the city* (Rome usually being meant).

urbs, urbis, f., *city;* often THE *city*, referring to Rome.

urgeo, urgēre, ursī, no supine, 2, a., *press, push; press hard, oppress*.

ūrus, -ī, m., [Keltic], *bison, wild ox*.

Usipetes, -um, m., a German tribe, originally in Saxony, but, being hard pressed by the Suebi, later settled along the Lippe. See **Tencteri**, with whom they were joined.

ūsitātus, -a, -um, part. of **ūsitor** as adj., *usual, customary, common, familiar*. vii. 22.

usque, adv., *even to, as far as;* especially in such phrases as **usque ad**, *up to, until*, **usque eō**, *to such an extent*.

ūsus, see **ūtor**.

ūsus, -ūs, [ūtor], m., *use, practice, exercise, employment; experience, familiarity with, skill; control; advantage, profit, benefit; need, necessity*.

ut (or **utī**), conj., *as, as though; how; that, in order that, so that, as to; although; when*.

uter, utra, utrum, (gen. utrīus), adj., *which* of two, *which*.

uterque, -traque, -trumque, [uter + que], adj., *both, each*.

utī, see **ut**.

ūtilis, -e, [ūtor], adj., *useful, serviceable, fit, profitable, advantageous*.

ūtilitās, -ātis, [ūtilis], f., *usefulness, advantage, service, benefit, profit*.

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, 3, dep., *use, employ, adopt, avail one's self of, enjoy; observe, maintain; exercise, display, show*.

utrimque [uterque], adv., *from* or *on both sides*.

utrum [uter], conj., not translated in direct questions; in indirect questions, *whether*. — **utrum . . . an**, *whether . . . or*, **utrum . . . necne**, *whether . . . or not*.

uxor, -ōris, f., *wife*.

V.

Vacalus (or **Vahalis**), -is, m., the Waal, a branch of the Rhine, uniting at Gorcum with the Meuse. iv. 10.

vacātiō, -ōnis, [vaco], f., *freedom, exemption, immunity*. vi. 14.

vacō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, n., *be unoccupied; be untilled, lie waste.*

vacuus, -a, -um, [vaco], adj., *empty, clear, free, vacant, unoccupied, destitute.*

vadum, -ī, n., *shoal, shallow, ford.*

vāgīna, -ae, f., *scabbard, sheath.* v. 44.

vagor, -ārī, -ātus sum, 1, dep., n., *wander, roam about, rove.*

valeō, -ēre, -uī, no supine, 2, n., *be powerful, be strong; have power, influence,* or *weight; avail.* See IDIOMS.

Valerius, -ī, m., (1) *L. Valerius Praeconinus,* who was killed in Aquitania some years before Caesar's arrival in Gaul, iii. 20. (2) *G. Valerius Flaccus,* who during his governorship in Gaul, B. C. 83, bestowed on G. Valerius Caburus the Roman citizenship, i. 47. (3) *G. Valerius Cabūrus,* a Gaul who was granted Roman citizenship, i. 47, vii. 65. (4) *G. Valerius Procillus,* son of Caburus. Caesar employed him as interpreter in his interview with Divitiacus. Later he was also sent as envoy to Ariovistus, and forcibly detained. i. 19, 47, 53. (5) *Gaius Valerius Donnotaurus,* son of Caburus, vii. 65.

Valetiacus, -ī, m., a chief of the Aedui, and brother of Cotus. vii. 32.

valētūdō, -inis, [valeo], f., *state of health* (good or bad), *health.*

vallis (or vallēs), -is, f., *valley.*

vallum, -ī, [vallus], n., *rampart* (set with palisades, see **vallus**), *wall, intrenchment.*

vallus, -ī, m., *stake, palisade.*

Vangiones, -um, m., a German tribe on the left bank of the Rhine, in territory taken from the Mediomatrici; capital, Borbetomagus, now *Worms.* i. 51.

varietās, -ātis [varius], f., *variety, difference, diversity, dappled character, mottled appearance.*

varius, -a, -um, adj., *varying, diverse, different, changing, various.*

vastō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [vastus], 1, a., *lay waste, devastate, ravage, ruin.*

vastus, -a, -um, adj., *vast, widespreading, immense, enormous.*

vāticinātiō, -ōnis, [vāticinor, *predict*], f., *divination, foretelling, prediction.* i. 50.

vectīgal, -ālis, [veho], n., *tax, toll; revenue.* See N. to p. 56, 1.

vectīgālis, -e, [vectīgal], adj., *tributary;* as noun, especially in pl., those paying tribute or tax, *tributaries.*

vectōrius, -a, -um, [veho], adj., *adapted to carry.* — **nāvigium vectōrium,** *a transport-ship.* v. 8.

vehementer, [vehemēns, *eager, violent*], adv., *vigorously, violently; very, exceedingly.*

vehō, vehere, vēxī, vēctum, 3, a., *bear, carry, convey.* i. 43.

vel [volo, *wish*], conj., *or; even.* — **vel . . . vel,** *either . . . or.*

Velanius, -ī, m., *Quintus Velanius,* a military tribune sent with T. Silius to get grain from the Veneti. iii. 7, et al.

Veliocasses, -ium, (dat. **Veliocassīs,** vii. 75), m. pl., a tribe on the right bank of the Seine; capital, Rotomagus, to-day *Rouen.*

Vellaunodūnum, -ī, a town of the Senones, on the road between Sens and Orléans, to-day *Château Landon.* vii. 11, 14.

Vellavī, -ōrum, m. pl., clients of the Arverni, in the Cévennes. vii. 75.

vēlōcitās, -ātis, [vēlōx], f., *swiftness, speed.* vi. 28.

vēlōciter [vēlōx], adv., *swiftly, rapidly, quickly.*

vēlōx, -ōcis, adj., *swift, rapid, active, quick.*

vēlum, -ī, n., *sail.* iii. 13, 14.

velut [vel + ut], adv., *just as.* — **velut sī,** *just as if,* i. 32.

vēnātiō, -ōnis, [**vēnor,** *hunt*] f., *hunting, the chase.*

vēnātor, -ōris, [**vēnor,** *hunt*], m., *hunter.*

vendō, -dere, -didī, -ditum, [**vēnum,** *sale,* + **do**], 3, a., *sell, offer for sale.*

Venellī, -ōrum, m. pl., a people on the west coast of Gaul, along the English Channel.

Venetī, -ōrum, m. pl., a Gallic people on the west coast, north of the Namnetes, noted for their commercial enterprise; chief town Dariorigum, now *Vannes.* They were defeated by Caesar and almost exterminated. Cf. N. to p. 96, 7.

Venetia, -ae, f., the country of the Veneti. iii. 9.

Veneticus, -a, -um, [Venetia], adj., *of the Veneti, Venetian.* — **Veneticum bellum,** *the war with the Veneti.*

venia, -ae, f., *favor, indulgence, pardon, forgiveness.*

veniō, venīre, vēnī, ventum, 4, n., *come; come to pass, happen.* See Idioms.

ventitō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [freq. of **venio**], 1, n., *come often, keep coming, come to and fro.*

ventus, -ī, m., *wind.*

vēr, vēris, n., *spring.* — **prīmō vēre,** *at the commencement of spring,* vi. 3.

Veragrī, -ōrum, m. pl., a tribe in the Valais, at the junction of the Drance with the Rhone; chief city Octodurus, now *Martigny.* iii. 1, 2.

Verbigēnus, -ī, m., one of the four cantons of the Helvetii, east of the *pāgus Tigurīnus.* i. 27.

verbum, -ī, n., *word.* — **verba facere,** *to speak,* ii. 14.

Vercassivellaunus, -ī, m., an Arvernian in command at Alesia, cousin of Vercingetorix, captured when the city fell.

Vercingetorix, -igis, m., a chief of the Arverni, in B. C. 52) chosen commander-in-chief of the Gallic army which endeavored to shake off the Roman yoke. He was besieged in Alesia, and compelled to surrender. He was led in triumph to Rome, and there put to death. vii. 4, etc. See pp. 41, 43, and N. to p. 211, 2.

vereor, -ērī, -itus sum, 2, dep., a. and n., *fear, be afraid of, dread, be apprehensive.*

vergō, -ere, no pf., no supine, 3, n., *incline, lie, slope; be situated* in a certain direction.

vergobretus, -ī, m., *vergobret,* title of the chief magistrate of the Aedui. The vergobret held office only one year, and had the power of life and death over his subjects. i. 16. Cf. N. to p. 55, 8.

vērīsimilis, -e, [vērus + similis], adj., *likely, probable.*

veritus, see **vereor.**

vērō [abl. of **vērus**], adv., *in truth, in fact, truly, certainly; but, but indeed, however.*

versō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [freq. of **verto**], 1, a., *turn often; change.*

versor, -ārī, -ātus sum, [verso], 1, dep., n., lit. *turn one's self about* or *move about* in any place; *dwell, live, be; be occupied, engaged, employed* or *busy.*

versum, see **quoqueversum**.

versus, **-ūs**, [**verto**], m., *line*, *verse*.

versus [**verto**], prep. with acc. only, and standing after the word it governs, *towards*, *in the direction of*.

Vertico, **-ōnis**, m., a Nervian nobleman friendly to the Romans. v. 45, 49.

vertō, **vertere**, **vertī**, **versum**, 3, a. and n., *turn*, *turn about*; *change*. — **terga vertere**, *to flee*.

Verucloetius, **-ī**, m., a Helvetian sent as ambassador in company with Nammeius to ask Caesar's permission to march through the Province. i. 7.

vērus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., *true*, *real*; *right*, *proper*, *fitting*, *reasonable*.

verūtum, **-ī**, [**verū**, *spit*, on which meat was roasted], n., *javelin*; *dart*, having a shaft 3½ feet long, and a triangular iron head. v. 44.

Vesontiō, **-ōnis**, m., a town in Gaul, now *Besançon* on the Doubs. It was the chief city of the Sequani. See N. to p. 66, 25. i. 38, 39.

vesper, **-erī** and **-eris**, m., *evening*.

vester, **-tra**, **-trum**, [**vōs**], poss. pron., *your*, *yours*.

vestīgium, **-ī**, n., *footprint*, *footstep*, *track*; *spot*; *point*, *moment*, *instant*. See Idioms.

vestiō, **-īre**, **-īvī**, **-ītum**, [**vestis**], 4, a., *cover*, *clothe*.

vestis, **-is**, f., *covering*; *garment*, *clothing*. vii. 47.

vestītus, **-ūs**, [**vestio**], m., *clothing*, *dress*, *clothes*.

veterānus, **-a**, **-um**, [**vetus**], adj., *old*, *veteran*; pl. as noun, **veterānī**, **-ōrum**, m., *veteran troops*, *veterans*. i. 24.

vetō, **-āre**, **-uī**, **-itum**, 1, a., *forbid*, *not allow* or *permit*; *oppose*, *prevent*.

vetus, **-eris**, adj., *old*, *former*, *ancient*, *long-standing*.

vexillum, **-ī**, n., *standard*, *flag*. See p. 25.

vexō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, [intensive form of **veho**], 1, a., *harass*, *disturb*, *plunder*, *waste*, *overrun*.

via, **-ae**, f., *way*, *road*, *journey*; *passage*.

viātor, **-ōris**, [**via**], m., *traveller*. iv. 5.

vīcēnī, **-ae**, **-a**, [**vīgintī**], distrib. num. adj., *twenty each*, *twenty*.

vīcēsimus, **-a**, **-um**, [**vīgintī**], num. adj., *twentieth*. vi. 21.

vīciēs [**vīgintī**], num. adv., *twenty times*. v. 13.

vīcīnitās, **-ātis**, [**vīcīnus**, *near*], f., *neighborhood*; *people in a neighborhood*, *neighbors*. vi. 34.

vicis (gen., nom. wanting), f., *change*, *alternation*, *succession*. — **in vicem**, *in turn*. iv. 1.

victima, **-ae**, [perhaps from **vincio**], f., *victim*, *sacrifice*. vi. 16.

victor, **-ōris**, [**vinco**], m., *conqueror*; as adj., *victorious*, *triumphant*.

victōria, **-ae**, [**victor**], f., *victory*.

victus, see **vinco**.

victus, **-ūs**, [**vīvo**], m., *living*, *mode of living*; *food*, *provisions*.

vīcus, **-ī**, m., *village*, *hamlet*.

videō, **vidēre**, **vīdī**, **vīsum**, 2, a., *see*, *perceive*, *observe*, *look at*; *understand*; pass. as dep., **videor**, **vidērī**, **vīsus sum**, *seem*, *appear*; *seem proper*, *right*, or *good*.

Vienna, **-ae**, f., the chief town of the Allobroges on the east side of the Rhone, a few miles south of Lyons, now *Vienne*. The modern town abounds in Roman remains. vii. 9.

vigilia, **-ae**, [**vigil**, *watchman*], f., *sleeplessness*, *wakefulness*; *watch*.

The Romans divided the night into four watches of three Roman hours each. See p. 33.

vīgintī, indecl. num. adj., *twenty*.

vīmen, -inis, [**vieo**, *weave*, *bind*], n., *pliant twig*, *osier*.

vinciō, vincīre, vinxī, vinctum, 4, a., *bind*. i. 53.

vincō, vincere, vīcī, victum, 3, a., *conquer*, *overcome*, *defeat*, *subdue*; *exceed*, *surpass*; *carry one's point*, *have one's own way*.

vinculum, -ī, [**vincio**], n., *chain*, *bond*, *fetters*.

vindicō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**vīs** + **dīco**], 1, a., *claim*, *demand*; *set free*, *liberate*; *avenge*, *revenge*, *take vengeance on* or *for*, *punish* (followed by **in**).

vīnea, -ae, f., *vinea*, a movable shed made with a sloping roof of planks and with sides of wicker-work covered over with raw hides, etc., to prevent its being set on fire. It was generally 8 feet high and 16 feet long, and under shelter of it the soldiers used to approach the walls of towns, or work the battering-ram and other engines. Cf. pp. 35, 36.

vīnum, -ī, n., *wine*. ii. 15, iv. 2.

violō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**vīs**], 1, a., *do violence to*, *injure*; *invade*, *lay waste*.

vir, virī, m., *man*; *brave* or *noble man*; *husband*.

vīrēs, see **vīs**.

virgō, -inis, f., *maid*, *maiden*, *virgin*. v. 14.

virgultum, -ī, n., *brushwood*, *underbrush*, *brush*. iii. 18, vii. 73.

Viridomarus, -ī, m., a chief of the Aedui. vii. 38, et al.

Viridovix, -icis, m., chief of the Venelli, conquered by Titurius. iii. 17, 18.

virītim [**vir**], adv., *man by man*, *to each one individually*.

Viromanduī and **Veromanduī, -ōrum**, pl. m., a Belgic tribe north of the Oise, and southeast of the Ambiani; capital, Augusta Viromanduorum, now *St. Quentin* on the Somme. The country was formerly called *Vermandois*.

virtūs, -ūtis, [**vir**], f., *manliness*, *courage*, *bravery*, *valor*, *vigor*, *prowess*; *worth*, *goodness*; in pl. *manly qualities*, *virtues*.

vīs, vīs, f., *strength*, *power*, *force*, *energy*; *violence*; *influence*; *amount*, *number*, *quantity*, *multitude*. See IDIOMS.

vīsus, see **video**.

vīta, -ae, [**vīvo**], f., *life*.

vītō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, 1, a., *shun*, *avoid*, *try to escape*.

vitrum, -ī, n., *woad*, a plant used for dyeing blue. v. 14.

vīvō, vīvere, vīxī, victum, 3, n., *live*; *live on*.

vīvus, -a, -um, [**vīvo**], adj., *living*, *alive*.

vix, adv., *with difficulty*, *hardly*, *scarcely*, *barely*.

Vocātes, -ium, m. pl., a tribe in Aquitania who submitted to P. Crassus. iii. 23, 27.

Vocciō, -ōnis, m., a king of Noricum, a sister of whom was married to Ariovistus, and perished in Caesar's defeat of the Germans B. C. 58. i. 53.

vocō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [**vōx**], 1, a., *call*, *summon*; *call for*, *demand*; *rouse*, *incite*; *name*.

Vocontiī, -ōrum, pl. m., a Gallic tribe in the Province, between the Rhone and the Durance. i. 10.

Volcae, -ārum, pl. m., a tribe divided into the Volcae Arecomici and the Volcae Tectosages, and

occupying the southwest part of the Province. See **Arecomici** and **Tectosages**.

Volcatius, -ī, m., *Gaius Volcatius Tullus*, one of Caesar's officers, left in charge of the bridge over the Rhine, when Caesar went in pursuit of the Suebi. vi. 29.

volō, velle, voluī, no supine, irr., a. and n., *be willing, wish, desire; mean, intend.*

voluntārius, -a, -um, [volo], adj., *willing, voluntary;* as noun, m., *volunteer.* v. 56.

voluntās, -ātis, [volo], f., *will, wish, inclination, desire; good-will, affection; consent.*

voluptās, -ātis, [volo], f., *pleasure, enjoyment, delight.*

Volusēnus, -ī, m., *Gaius Volusenus Quadratus*, an officer of Caesar's sent to reconnoitre Britain.

Vorēnus, -ī, m., a Roman centurion, the rival of Pulio. v. 44.

Vosegus, -ī, m., *the Vosges*, a range of mountains, running parallel with the Rhine for about 170 miles. iv. 10.

voveō, vovēre, vōvī, vōtum, 2, a., *vow; promise solemnly, consecrate.* vi. 16.

vōx, vōcis, f., *voice, utterance, cry, sound; word;* pl. **vōcēs,** *words, language, speeches, statements, sayings.* — **māgna vōx,** *a loud voice.*

Vulcānus, -ī, m., *Vulcan*, the son of Jupiter and Juno, god of fire and work in metals: *fire.* vi. 21.

vulgō [vulgus], adv., *generally, commonly, everywhere, universally.*

vulgus, -ī, n. (sometimes m.), *common people, mass, multitude, crowd.*

vulnerō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, [vulnus], 1, a., *wound, hurt.*

vulnus, -eris, n., *wound.*

vultus, -ūs, [volo, i. e. the *wish* expressed by the looks], m., *expression, countenance, looks.* i. 39.